To our customers,

Old Company Name in Catalogs and Other Documents

On April 1st, 2010, NEC Electronics Corporation merged with Renesas Technology Corporation, and Renesas Electronics Corporation took over all the business of both companies. Therefore, although the old company name remains in this document, it is a valid Renesas Electronics document. We appreciate your understanding.

Renesas Electronics website: http://www.renesas.com

April 1st, 2010
Renesas Electronics Corporation

Issued by: Renesas Electronics Corporation (http://www.renesas.com)

Send any inquiries to http://www.renesas.com/inquiry.

Notice

1. All information included in this document is current as of the date this document is issued. Such information, however, is subject to change without any prior notice. Before purchasing or using any Renesas Electronics products listed herein, please confirm the latest product information with a Renesas Electronics sales office. Also, please pay regular and careful attention to additional and different information to be disclosed by Renesas Electronics such as that disclosed through our website.
2. Renesas Electronics does not assume any liability for infringement of patents, copyrights, or other intellectual property rights of third parties by or arising from the use of Renesas Electronics products or technical information described in this document. No license, express, implied or otherwise, is granted hereby under any patents, copyrights or other intellectual property rights of Renesas Electronics or others.
3. You should not alter, modify, copy, or otherwise misappropriate any Renesas Electronics product, whether in whole or in part.
4. Descriptions of circuits, software and other related information in this document are provided only to illustrate the operation of semiconductor products and application examples. You are fully responsible for the incorporation of these circuits, software, and information in the design of your equipment. Renesas Electronics assumes no responsibility for any losses incurred by you or third parties arising from the use of these circuits, software, or information.
5. When exporting the products or technology described in this document, you should comply with the applicable export control laws and regulations and follow the procedures required by such laws and regulations. You should not use Renesas Electronics products or the technology described in this document for any purpose relating to military applications or use by the military, including but not limited to the development of weapons of mass destruction. Renesas Electronics products and technology may not be used for or incorporated into any products or systems whose manufacture, use, or sale is prohibited under any applicable domestic or foreign laws or regulations.
6. Renesas Electronics has used reasonable care in preparing the information included in this document, but Renesas Electronics does not warrant that such information is error free. Renesas Electronics assumes no liability whatsoever for any damages incurred by you resulting from errors in or omissions from the information included herein.
7. Renesas Electronics products are classified according to the following three quality grades: "Standard", "High Quality", and "Specific". The recommended applications for each Renesas Electronics product depends on the product's quality grade, as indicated below. You must check the quality grade of each Renesas Electronics product before using it in a particular application. You may not use any Renesas Electronics product for any application categorized as "Specific" without the prior written consent of Renesas Electronics. Further, you may not use any Renesas Electronics product for any application for which it is not intended without the prior written consent of Renesas Electronics. Renesas Electronics shall not be in any way liable for any damages or losses incurred by you or third parties arising from the use of any Renesas Electronics product for an application categorized as "Specific" or for which the product is not intended where you have failed to obtain the prior written consent of Renesas Electronics. The quality grade of each Renesas Electronics product is "Standard" unless otherwise expressly specified in a Renesas Electronics data sheets or data books, etc.

   "Standard": Computers; office equipment; communications equipment; test and measurement equipment; audio and visual equipment; home electronic appliances; machine tools; personal electronic equipment; and industrial robots.

   "High Quality": Transportation equipment (automobiles, trains, ships, etc.); traffic control systems; anti-disaster systems; anti-crime systems; safety equipment; and medical equipment not specifically designed for life support.

   "Specific": Aircraft; aerospace equipment; submersible repeaters; nuclear reactor control systems; medical equipment or systems for life support (e.g. artificial life support devices or systems), surgical implantations, or healthcare intervention (e.g. excision, etc.), and any other applications or purposes that pose a direct threat to human life.
8. You should use the Renesas Electronics products described in this document within the range specified by Renesas Electronics, especially with respect to the maximum rating, operating supply voltage range, movement power voltage range, heat radiation characteristics, installation and other product characteristics. Renesas Electronics shall have no liability for malfunctions or damages arising out of the use of Renesas Electronics products beyond such specified ranges.
9. Although Renesas Electronics endeavors to improve the quality and reliability of its products, semiconductor products have specific characteristics such as the occurrence of failure at a certain rate and malfunctions under certain use conditions. Further, Renesas Electronics products are not subject to radiation resistance design. Please be sure to implement safety measures to guard them against the possibility of physical injury, and injury or damage caused by fire in the event of the failure of a Renesas Electronics product, such as safety design for hardware and software including but not limited to redundancy, fire control and malfunction prevention, appropriate treatment for aging degradation or any other appropriate measures. Because the evaluation of microcomputer software alone is very difficult, please evaluate the safety of the final products or system manufactured by you.
10. Please contact a Renesas Electronics sales office for details as to environmental matters such as the environmental compatibility of each Renesas Electronics product. Please use Renesas Electronics products in compliance with all applicable laws and regulations that regulate the inclusion or use of controlled substances, including without limitation, the EU RoHS Directive. Renesas Electronics assumes no liability for damages or losses occurring as a result of your noncompliance with applicable laws and regulations.
11. This document may not be reproduced or duplicated, in any form, in whole or in part, without prior written consent of Renesas Electronics.
12. Please contact a Renesas Electronics sales office if you have any questions regarding the information contained in this document or Renesas Electronics products, or if you have any other inquiries.

(Note 1) "Renesas Electronics" as used in this document means Renesas Electronics Corporation and also includes its majority-owned subsidiaries.

(Note 2) "Renesas Electronics product(s)" means any product developed or manufactured by or for Renesas Electronics.

User's Manual

16

M16C/64 Group

Hardware Manual

RENESAS MCU
M16C FAMILY / M16C/60 SERIES

All information contained in these materials, including products and product specifications, represents information on the product at the time of publication and is subject to change by Renesas Electronics Corp. without notice. Please review the latest information published by Renesas Electronics Corp. through various means, including the Renesas Electronics Corp. website (http://www.renesas.com).

Renesas Electronics
www.renesas.com

Rev.1.05 2009.03

Notes regarding these materials

1. This document is provided for reference purposes only so that Renesas customers may select the appropriate Renesas products for their use. Renesas neither makes warranties or representations with respect to the accuracy or completeness of the information contained in this document nor grants any license to any intellectual property rights or any other rights of Renesas or any third party with respect to the information in this document.
2. Renesas shall have no liability for damages or infringement of any intellectual property or other rights arising out of the use of any information in this document, including, but not limited to, product data, diagrams, charts, programs, algorithms, and application circuit examples.
3. You should not use the products or the technology described in this document for the purpose of military applications such as the development of weapons of mass destruction or for the purpose of any other military use. When exporting the products or technology described herein, you should follow the applicable export control laws and regulations, and procedures required by such laws and regulations.
4. All information included in this document such as product data, diagrams, charts, programs, algorithms, and application circuit examples, is current as of the date this document is issued. Such information, however, is subject to change without any prior notice. Before purchasing or using any Renesas products listed in this document, please confirm the latest product information with a Renesas sales office. Also, please pay regular and careful attention to additional and different information to be disclosed by Renesas such as that disclosed through our website. (http://www.renesas.com)
5. Renesas has used reasonable care in compiling the information included in this document, but Renesas assumes no liability whatsoever for any damages incurred as a result of errors or omissions in the information included in this document.
6. When using or otherwise relying on the information in this document, you should evaluate the information in light of the total system before deciding about the applicability of such information to the intended application. Renesas makes no representations, warranties or guaranties regarding the suitability of its products for any particular application and specifically disclaims any liability arising out of the application and use of the information in this document or Renesas products.
7. With the exception of products specified by Renesas as suitable for automobile applications, Renesas products are not designed, manufactured or tested for applications or otherwise in systems the failure or malfunction of which may cause a direct threat to human life or create a risk of human injury or which require especially high quality and reliability such as safety systems, or equipment or systems for transportation and traffic, healthcare, combustion control, aerospace and aeronautics, nuclear power, or undersea communication transmission. If you are considering the use of our products for such purposes, please contact a Renesas sales office beforehand. Renesas shall have no liability for damages arising out of the uses set forth above.
8. Notwithstanding the preceding paragraph, you should not use Renesas products for the purposes listed below:
   (1) artificial life support devices or systems
   (2) surgical implantations
   (3) healthcare intervention (e.g., excision, administration of medication, etc.)
   (4) any other purposes that pose a direct threat to human life

   Renesas shall have no liability for damages arising out of the uses set forth in the above and purchasers who elect to use Renesas products in any of the foregoing applications shall indemnify and hold harmless Renesas Technology Corp., its affiliated companies and their officers, directors, and employees against any and all damages arising out of such applications.
9. You should use the products described herein within the range specified by Renesas, especially with respect to the maximum rating, operating supply voltage range, movement power voltage range, heat radiation characteristics, installation and other product characteristics. Renesas shall have no liability for malfunctions or damages arising out of the use of Renesas products beyond such specified ranges.
10. Although Renesas endeavors to improve the quality and reliability of its products, IC products have specific characteristics such as the occurrence of failure at a certain rate and malfunctions under certain use conditions. Please be sure to implement safety measures to guard against the possibility of physical injury, and injury or damage caused by fire in the event of the failure of a Renesas product, such as safety design for hardware and software including but not limited to redundancy, fire control and malfunction prevention, appropriate treatment for aging degradation or any other applicable measures. Among others, since the evaluation of microcomputer software alone is very difficult, please evaluate the safety of the final products or system manufactured by you.
11. In case Renesas products listed in this document are detached from the products to which the Renesas products are attached or affixed, the risk of accident such as swallowing by infants and small children is very high. You should implement safety measures so that Renesas products may not be easily detached from your products. Renesas shall have no liability for damages arising out of such detachment.
12. This document may not be reproduced or duplicated, in any form, in whole or in part, without prior written approval from Renesas.
13. Please contact a Renesas sales office if you have any questions regarding the information contained in this document, Renesas semiconductor products, or if you have any other inquiries.

General Precautions in the Handling of MPU/MCU Products

The following usage notes are applicable to all MPU/MCU products from Renesas. For detailed usage notes on the products covered by this manual, refer to the relevant sections of the manual. If the descriptions under General Precautions in the Handling of MPU/MCU Products and in the body of the manual differ from each other, the description in the body of the manual takes precedence.

1. Handling of Unused Pins

   Handle unused pins in accord with the directions given under Handling of Unused Pins in the manual.

   — The input pins of CMOS products are generally in the high-impedance state. In operation with an unused pin in the open-circuit state, extra electromagnetic noise is induced in the vicinity of LSI, an associated shoot-through current flows internally, and malfunctions occur due to the false recognition of the pin state as an input signal become possible. Unused pins should be handled as described under Handling of Unused Pins in the manual.

2. Processing at Power-on

   The state of the product is undefined at the moment when power is supplied.

   — The states of internal circuits in the LSI are indeterminate and the states of register settings and pins are undefined at the moment when power is supplied.

   In a finished product where the reset signal is applied to the external reset pin, the states of pins are not guaranteed from the moment when power is supplied until the reset process is completed.

   In a similar way, the states of pins in a product that is reset by an on-chip power-on reset function are not guaranteed from the moment when power is supplied until the power reaches the level at which resetting has been specified.

3. Prohibition of Access to Reserved Addresses

   Access to reserved addresses is prohibited.

   — The reserved addresses are provided for the possible future expansion of functions. Do not access these addresses; the correct operation of LSI is not guaranteed if they are accessed.

4. Clock Signals

   After applying a reset, only release the reset line after the operating clock signal has become stable. When switching the clock signal during program execution, wait until the target clock signal has stabilized.

   — When the clock signal is generated with an external resonator (or from an external oscillator) during a reset, ensure that the reset line is only released after full stabilization of the clock signal. Moreover, when switching to a clock signal produced with an external resonator (or by an external oscillator) while program execution is in progress, wait until the target clock signal is stable.

5. Differences between Products

   Before changing from one product to another, i.e. to one with a different part number, confirm that the change will not lead to problems.

   — The characteristics of MPU/MCU in the same group but having different part numbers may differ because of the differences in internal memory capacity and layout pattern. When changing to products of different part numbers, implement a system-evaluation test for each of the products.

HOW TO USE THIS MANUAL

1. Purpose and Target Readers

This manual is designed to provide the user with an understanding of the hardware functions and electrical characteristics of the MCU. It is intended for users designing application systems incorporating the MCU. A basic knowledge of electric circuits, logical circuits, and MCUs is necessary in order to use this manual.
The manual comprises an overview of the product; descriptions of the CPU, system control functions, peripheral functions, and electrical characteristics; and usage notes.

Particular attention should be paid to the precautionary notes when using the manual. These notes occur within the body of the text, at the end of each section, and in the Usage Notes section.

The revision history summarizes the locations of revisions and additions. It does not list all revisions. Refer to the text of the manual for details.

The following documents apply to the M16C/64 Group. Make sure to refer to the latest versions of these documents. The newest versions of the documents listed may be obtained from the Renesas Technology Web site.

Document Type	Description	Document Title	Document No.
Datasheet	Hardware overview and electrical characteristics	M16C/64 Group Datasheet	REJ03B0216
Hardware manual	Hardware specifications (pin assignments, memory maps, peripheral function specifications, electrical characteristics, timing charts) and operation description Note: Refer to the application notes for details on using peripheral functions.	M16C/64 Group Hardware Manual	This hardware manual
Software Manual	Descriptions of Instruction set	M16C/60, M16C/20, M16C/Tiny Series Software Manual	REJ09B0137
Application note	Information on using peripheral functions and application examples Sample programs Information on writing programs in assembly language and C	Available from Renesas Technology Web site.	
Renesas technical update	Product specifications, updates on documents, etc.		

2. Notation of Numbers and Symbols

The notation conventions for register names, bit names, numbers, and symbols used in this manual are described below.

(1) Register Names, Bit Names, and Pin Names

Registers, bits, and pins are referred to in the text by symbols. The symbol is accompanied by the word “register,” “bit,” or “pin” to distinguish the three categories.

Examples the PM03 bit in the PM0 register
P3_5 pin, VCC pin

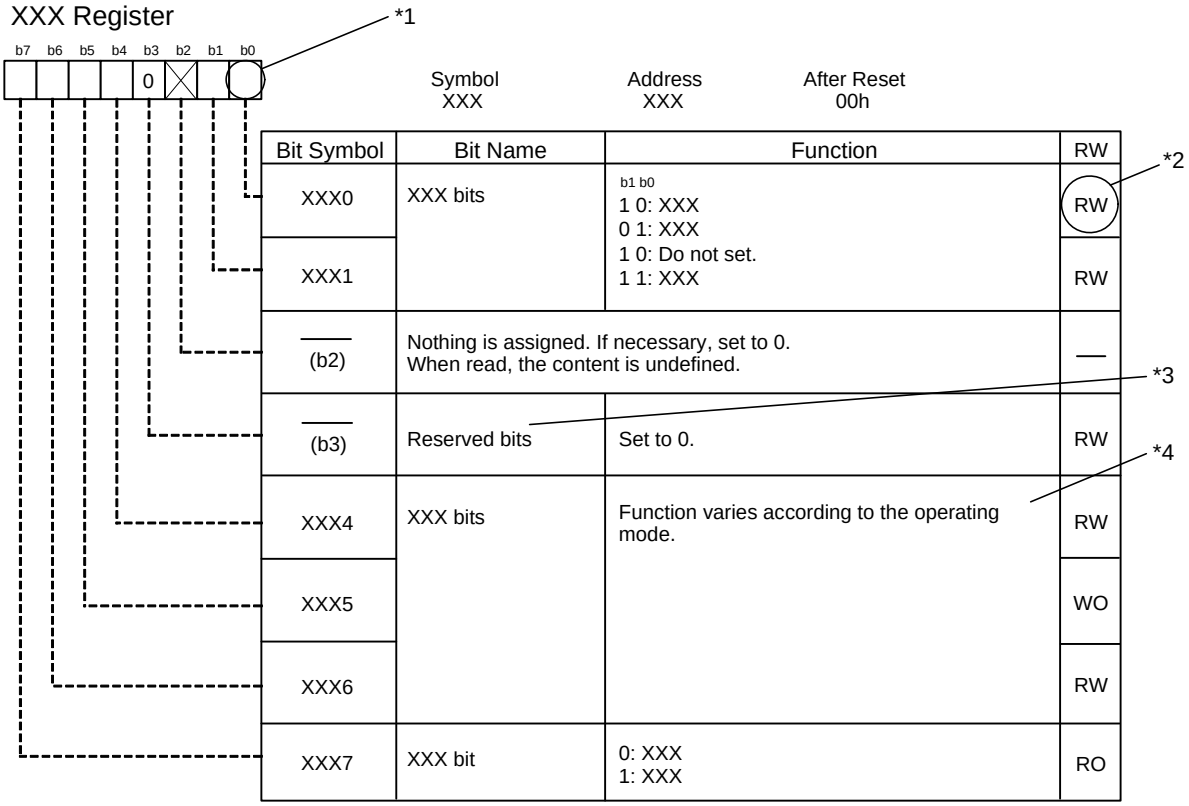
(2) Notation of Numbers

The indication “b” is appended to numeric values given in binary format. However, nothing is appended to the values of single bits. The indication “h” is appended to numeric values given in hexadecimal format. Nothing is appended to numeric values given in decimal format.

Examples Binary: 11b
Hexadecimal: EFA0h
Decimal: 1234

3. Register Notation

The symbols and terms used in register diagrams are described below.



*1

Blank: Set to 0 or 1 according to the application.
0: Set to 0.
1: Set to 1.
X: Nothing is assigned.

*2

RW: Read and write.
RO: Read only.
WO: Write only.
–: Nothing is assigned.

*3

- Reserved bit
  Reserved bit. Set to specified value.

*4

- Nothing is assigned
  Nothing is assigned to the bit. As the bit may be used for future functions, if necessary, set to 0.
- Do not set to a value
  Operation is not guaranteed when a value is set.
- Function varies according to the operating mode.
  The function of the bit varies with the peripheral function mode. Refer to the register diagram for information on the individual modes.

4. List of Abbreviations and Acronyms

Abbreviation	Full Form
ACIA	Asynchronous Communication Interface Adapter
bps	bits per second
CRC	Cyclic Redundancy Check
DMA	Direct Memory Access
DMAC	Direct Memory Access Controller
GSM	Global System for Mobile Communications
Hi-Z	High Impedance
IEBus	Inter Equipment bus
I/O	Input/Output
IrDA	Infrared Data Association
LSB	Least Significant Bit
MSB	Most Significant Bit
NC	Non-Connection
PLL	Phase Locked Loop
PWM	Pulse Width Modulation
SIM	Subscriber Identity Module
UART	Universal Asynchronous Receiver/Transmitter
VCO	Voltage Controlled Oscillator

All trademarks and registered trademarks are the property of their respective owners.

IEBus is a registered trademark of NEC Electronics Corporation.

Table of Contents

SFR Page Reference B-1

1. Overview 1
   1.1 Features 1
      1.1.1 Applications 1
   1.2 Specifications 2
   1.3 Product List 4
   1.4 Block Diagram 6
   1.5 Pin Assignments 7
   1.6 Pin Functions 11

2. Central Processing Unit (CPU) 14
   2.1 Data Registers (R0, R1, R2 and R3) 14
   2.2 Address Registers (A0 and A1) 15
   2.3 Frame Base Registers (FB) 15
   2.4 Interrupt Table Register (INTB) 15
   2.5 Program Counter (PC) 15
   2.6 User Stack Pointer (USP) and Interrupt Stack Pointer (ISP) 15
   2.7 Static Base Register (SB) 15
   2.8 Flag Register (FLG) 15
      2.8.1 Carry Flag (C Flag) 15
      2.8.2 Debug Flag (D Flag) 15
      2.8.3 Zero Flag (Z Flag) 15
      2.8.4 Sign Flag (S Flag) 15
      2.8.5 Register Bank Select Flag (B Flag) 15
      2.8.6 Overflow Flag (O Flag) 15
      2.8.7 Interrupt Enable Flag (I Flag) 15
      2.8.8 Stack Pointer Select Flag (U Flag) 16
      2.8.9 Processor Interrupt Priority Level (IPL) 16
      2.8.10 Reserved Space 16

3. Memory 17
4. Special Function Registers (SFRs) 18
5. Reset 32
5.1 Hardware Reset 1 32
5.1.1 Reset on a Stable Supply Voltage 32
5.1.2 Power-on Reset 32
5.2 Brown-out Reset 35
5.3 Software Reset 35
5.4 Watchdog Timer Reset 35
5.5 Oscillation Stop Detection Reset 35
5.6 Internal Space 36
6. Voltage Detection Circuit 37
6.1 Brown-out Reset 41
6.2 Low Voltage Detection Interrupt 42
6.3 Limitations on Exiting Stop Mode 44
6.4 Limitations on Exiting Wait Mode 44
6.5 Cold Start-up / Warm Start-up Discrimination 45
7. Processor Mode 47
7.1 Types of Processor Mode 47
7.2 Setting Processor Modes 47
7.3 Internal Memory 51
8. Bus 53
8.1 Bus Mode 53
8.1.1 Separate Bus 53
8.1.2 Multiplexed Bus 53
8.2 Bus Control 54
8.2.1 Address Bus 54
8.2.2 Data Bus 54
8.2.3 Chip Select Signal 54
8.2.4 Read and Write Signals 57
8.2.5 ALE Signal 57
8.2.6 $\overline{\text{RDY}}$ Signal 58

8.2.7 $\overline{\text{HOLD}}$ Signal 59
8.2.8 BCLK Output 59
8.2.9 External Bus Status When Internal Area IS Accessed 61
8.2.10 Software Wait 61

9. Memory Space Expansion Function 66
9.2 4-Mbyte Mode 66
9.2.1 Addresses 04000h to 3FFFFh, C0000h to FFFFFh 66
9.2.2 Addresses 40000h to BFFFFh 66

10. Clock Generation Circuit 74
10.1 Type of the Clock Generation Circuit 74
10.1.1 Main Clock 81
10.1.2 Sub Clock 82
10.1.3 125 kHz On-Chip Oscillator Clock (fOCO-S) 83
10.1.4 PLL Clock 83
10.2 CPU Clock and Peripheral Function Clock 86
10.2.1 CPU Clock and BCLK 86
10.2.2 Peripheral Function Clock (f1, fC32) 87
10.3 Clock Output Function 87
10.4 Power Control 88
10.4.1 Normal Operating Mode 88
10.4.2 Wait Mode 90
10.4.3 Stop Mode 92
10.5 System Clock Protection Function 95
10.6 Oscillation Stop and Re-Oscillation Detect Function 96
10.6.1 Operation When CM27 bit = 0 (Oscillation Stop Detection Reset) 96
10.6.2 Operation When CM27 bit = 1 (Oscillation Stop and Re-oscillation Detect Interrupt) 96
10.6.3 How to Use Oscillation Stop and Re-Oscillation Detect Function 97

11. Protection 98

12. Interrupt 99
12.1 Type of Interrupts 99
12.2 Software Interrupts 100
12.2.1 Undefined Instruction Interrupt 100

12.2.2 Overflow Interrupt 100
12.2.4 INT Instruction Interrupt 100
12.3 Hardware Interrupts 101
12.3.1 Special Interrupts 101
12.3.2 Peripheral Function Interrupts 101
12.4 Interrupts and Interrupt Vector 102
12.4.1 Fixed Vector Tables 102
12.4.2 Relocatable Vector Tables 103
12.5 Interrupt Control 105
12.5.1 I Flag 107
12.5.2 IR Bit 107
12.5.3 Bits ILVL2 to ILVL0 and IPL 107
12.5.4 Interrupt Sequence 108
12.5.5 Interrupt Response Time 109
12.5.6 Variation of IPL when Interrupt Request IS Accepted 109
12.5.7 Saving Registers 110
12.5.8 Returning from an Interrupt Routine 111
12.5.9 Interrupt Priority 111
12.5.10 Interrupt Priority Level Select Circuit 111
12.6 $\overline{\text{INT}}$ Interrupt 113
12.7 $\overline{\text{NMI}}$ Interrupt 115
12.8 Key Input Interrupt 115
12.9 Address Match Interrupt 116

13. Watchdog Timer 118
13.1 Count Source Protection Mode Disabled 121
13.2 Count Source Protection Mode Enabled 122

14. DMAC 123
14.1 Transfer Cycles 130
14.1.1 Effect of Source and Destination Addresses 130
14.1.2 Effect of BYTE Pin Level 130
14.1.3 Effect of Software Wait 130
14.1.4 Effect of $\overline{\text{RDY}}$ Signal 130
14.2 DMA Transfer Cycles 132
14.3 DMA Enabled 133

14.4 DMA Request 133
14.5 Channel Priority and DMA Transfer Timing 134

15. Timers 135
15.1 Timer A 138
15.1.1 Timer Mode 144
15.1.2 Event Counter Mode 145
15.1.3 One-Shot Timer Mode 150
15.1.4 PWM Mode (Pulse Width Modulation Mode) 152
15.2 Timer B 155
15.2.1 Timer Mode 159
15.2.2 Event Counter Mode 161
15.2.3 Pulse Period and Pulse Width Measurement Modes 163

16. Three-Phase Motor Control Timer Function 166

17. Serial Interface 176
17.1 UARTi (i = 0 to 2, 5 to 7) 176
17.1.1 Clock Synchronous Serial I/O Mode 187
17.1.2 Clock Asynchronous Serial I/O (UART) Mode 195
17.1.3 Special Mode 1 (I^2C mode) 203
17.1.4 Special Mode 2 213
17.1.5 Special Mode 3 (IE mode) 218
17.1.6 Special Mode 4 (SIM Mode) (UART2) 220
17.2 SI/O3 and SI/O4 225
17.2.1 SI/Oi Operation Timing 229
17.2.2 CLK Polarity Selection 229
17.2.3 Functions for Setting an SOUTi Initial Value 230
17.2.4 Functions for Selecting SOUTi State after Transmission 231

18. A/D Converter 232
18.1 Mode Description 236
18.1.1 One-Shot Mode 236
18.1.2 Repeat Mode 238
18.1.3 Single Sweep Mode 240
18.1.4 Repeat Sweep Mode 0 242
18.1.5 Repeat Sweep Mode 1 244

18.2 Conversion Rate 246
18.3 Extended Analog Input Pins 246
18.4 Current Consumption Reducing Function 246
18.5 External Sensor 247

19. D/A Converter 249
19.1 Summary 249

20. CRC Operation 251

21. Programmable I/O Ports 253
21.1 Port Pi Direction Register (PDi Register, i = 0 to 10) 253
21.2 Port Pi Register (Pi Register, i = 0 to 10) 253
21.3 Pull-up Control Register 0 to Pull-up Control Register 2 (Registers PUR0 to PUR2) 253
21.4 Port Control Register (PCR Register) 253

22. Flash Memory Version 266
22.1 Memory Map 267
22.1.1 Boot Mode 268
22.1.2 User Boot Function 268
22.2 Functions to Prevent Flash Memory from Rewriting 270
22.2.1 ROM Code Protect Function 270
22.2.2 ID Code Check Function 270
22.2.3 Forced Erase Function 271
22.2.4 Standard Serial I/O Mode Disable Function 271
22.3 CPU Rewrite Mode 273
22.3.1 EW0 Mode 274
22.3.2 EW1 Mode 274
22.3.3 Flash Memory Control Register (Registers FMR0, FMR1, FMR2 and FMR6) 275
22.3.4 Precautions on CPU Rewrite Mode 286
22.3.5 Software Commands 288
22.3.6 Data Protect Function 294
22.3.7 Status Register 294
22.3.8 Full Status Check 296
22.4 Standard Serial I/O Mode 298

22.4.1 ID Code Check Function 298
22.4.2 Example of Circuit Application in the Standard Serial I/O Mode 302
22.5 Parallel I/O Mode 304
22.5.1 ROM Code Protect Function 304

23. Electrical Characteristics 305
23.1 Electrical Characteristics 305

24. Precautions 345
24.1 SFR 345
24.1.1 Register Settings 345
24.2 Reset 346
24.2.1 VCC1 346
24.2.2 CNVSS 346
24.3 Bus 347
24.4 PLL Frequency Synthesizer 348
24.5 Power Control 349
24.6 Protect 351
24.7 Interrupt 352
24.7.1 Reading address 00000h 352
24.7.2 SP Setting 352
24.7.3 $\overline{\text{NMI}}$ Interrupt 352
24.7.4 Changing an Interrupt Generate Factor 353
24.7.5 $\overline{\text{INT}}$ Interrupt 353
24.7.6 Rewriting the Interrupt Control Register 354
24.7.7 Watchdog Timer Interrupt 355
24.8 DMAC 356
24.8.1 Write to the DMAE Bit in the DMiCON Register (i = 0 to 3) 356
24.8.2 DMAC Channel Priority 356
24.9 Timers 357
24.9.1 Timer A 357
24.9.2 Timer B 361
24.10 Serial Interface 364
24.10.1 Clock Synchronous Serial I/O 364
24.10.2 UART (Clock Asynchronous Serial I/O) Mode 366
24.10.3 Special Mode 1 (I2C Mode) 366

24.10.4 Special Mode 4 (SIM Mode) 366
24.10.5 SI/O3, SI/O4 367
24.11 A/D Converter 368
24.11.1 Repeat Mode, Repeat Sweep Mode 0, and Repeat Sweep Mode 1 370
24.12 Programmable I/O Ports 371
24.13 Flash Memory Version 372
24.13.1 Functions to Inhibit Rewriting Flash Memory 372
24.13.2 Stop Mode 372
24.13.3 Wait Mode 372
24.13.4 Low Power Consumption Mode, On-Chip Oscillator Low Power Consumption Mode 372
24.13.5 Writing Command and Data 372
24.13.6 Program Command 372
24.13.7 Lock Bit Program Command 372
24.13.8 Operation Speed 373
24.13.9 Instructions Inhibited against Use 373
24.13.10 Interrupts 373
24.13.11 How to Access 373
24.13.12 Writing 374
24.13.13 DMA transfer 374
24.13.14 Programming / Erasing Endurance and Execution Time 375
24.13.15 When Entering to Boot Mode 375
24.14 Noise 376

Appendix 1.Package Dimensions 377

Appendix 2.Difference Between M16C/64 and M16C/62P 379

REGISTER INDEX 382

SFR Page Reference

Address	Register	Symbol	Page
0000h			
0001h			
0002h			
0003h			
0004h	Processor Mode Register 0	PM0	48
0005h	Processor Mode Register 1	PM1	49
0006h	System Clock Control Register 0	CM0	76
0007h	System Clock Control Register 1	CM1	77
0008h	Chip Select Control Register	CSR	55
0009h			
000Ah	Protect Register	PRCR	98
000Bh	Data Bank Register	DBR	67
000Ch	Oscillation Stop Detection Register	CM2	78
000Dh			
000Eh			
000Fh			
0010h	Program 2 Area Control Register	PRG2C	50
0011h			
0012h	Peripheral Clock Select Register	PCLKR	79
0013h			
0014h			
0015h	Clock Prescaler Reset Flag	CPSRF	142
0016h			
0017h			
0018h	Reset Source Determine Flag	RSTFR	46
0019h	Voltage Detection 2 Circuit Flag Register	VCR1	38
001Ah	Voltage Detection Circuit Operation Enable Register	VCR2	38
001Bh	Chip Select Expansion Control Register	CSE	62
001Ch	PLL Control Register 0	PLC0	80
001Dh			
001Eh	Processor Mode Register 2	PM2	79
001Fh	Low Voltage Detection Interrupt Register	D4INT	39
0020h			
0021h			
0022h			
0023h			
0024h			
0025h			
0026h			
0027h			
0028h			
0029h			
002Ah	Voltage Monitor 0 Circuit Control Register	VW0C	40
002Bh			
002Ch			
002Dh			
002Eh			
002Fh			
0030h			
0031h			
0032h			
0033h			
0034h			
0035h			
0036h			
0037h			
0038h			
0039h			
003Ah			
003Bh			
003Ch			
003Dh			
003Eh			
003Fh			
0040h			
0041h			

NOTE: 1. Blank columns are all reserved space. No access is allowed.

Address	Register	Symbol	Page
0042h	INT7 Interrupt Control Register	INT7IC	106
0043h	INT6 Interrupt Control Register	INT6IC	106
0044h	INT3 Interrupt Control Register	INT3IC	106
0045h	Timer B5 Interrupt Control Register	TB5IC	105
0046h	Timer B4 Interrupt Control Register, UART1 BUS Collision Detection Interrupt Control Register	TB4IC, U1BCNIC	105
0047h	Timer B3 Interrupt Control Register, UART0 BUS Collision Detection Interrupt Control Register	TB3IC, U0BCNIC	105
0048h	SI/O4 Interrupt Control Register, INT5 Interrupt Control Register	S4IC, INT5IC	106
0049h	SI/O3 Interrupt Control Register, INT4 Interrupt Control Register	S3IC, INT4IC	106
004Ah	UART2 BUS Collision Detection Interrupt Control Register	BCNIC	106
004Bh	DMA0 Interrupt Control Register	DM0IC	105
004Ch	DMA1 Interrupt Control Register	DM1IC	105
004Dh	Key Input Interrupt Control Register	KUPIC	105
004Eh	A/D Conversion Interrupt Control Register	ADIC	105
004Fh	UART2 Transmit Interrupt Control Register	S2TIC	105
0050h	UART2 Receive Interrupt Control Register	S2RIC	105
0051h	UART0 Transmit Interrupt Control Register	S0TIC	105
0052h	UART0 Receive Interrupt Control Register	S0RIC	105
0053h	UART1 Transmit Interrupt Control Register	S1TIC	105
0054h	UART1 Receive Interrupt Control Register	S1RIC	105
0055h	Timer A0 Interrupt Control Register	TA0IC	105
0056h	Timer A1 Interrupt Control Register	TA1IC	105
0057h	Timer A2 Interrupt Control Register	TA2IC	105
0058h	Timer A3 Interrupt Control Register	TA3IC	105
0059h	Timer A4 Interrupt Control Register	TA4IC	105
005Ah	Timer B0 Interrupt Control Register	TB0IC	105
005Bh	Timer B1 Interrupt Control Register	TB1IC	105
005Ch	Timer B2 Interrupt Control Register	TB2IC	105
005Dh	INT0 Interrupt Control Register	INT0IC	106
005Eh	INT1 Interrupt Control Register	INT1IC	106
005Fh	INT2 Interrupt Control Register	INT2IC	106
0060h			
0061h			
0062h			
0063h			
0064h			
0065h			
0066h			
0067h			
0068h			
0069h	DMA2 Interrupt Control Register	DM2IC	105
006Ah	DMA3 Interrupt Control Register	DM3IC	105
006Bh	UART5 BUS Collision Detection Interrupt Control Register	U5BCNIC	105
006Ch	UART5 Transmit Interrupt Control Register	S5TIC	105
006Dh	UART5 Receive Interrupt Control Register	S5RIC	105
006Eh	UART6 BUS Collision Detection Interrupt Control Register	U6BCNIC	105
006Fh	UART6 Transmit Interrupt Control Register	S6TIC	105
0070h	UART6 Receive Interrupt Control Register	S6RIC	105
0071h	UART7 BUS Collision Detection Interrupt Control Register	U7BCNIC	105
0072h	UART7 Transmit Interrupt Control Register	S7TIC	105
0073h	UART7 Receive Interrupt Control Register	S7RIC	105
0074h			
0075h			
0076h			
0077h			
0078h			
0079h			
007Ah			
007Bh			
007Ch			
007Dh			
007Eh			
007Fh			
D080h to D17Fh			

Address	Register	Symbol	Page
0180h 0181h 0182h	DMA0 Source Pointer	SAR0	129
0183h			
0184h 0185h 0186h	DMA0 Destination Pointer	DAR0	129
0187h			
0188h 0189h	DMA0 Transfer Counter	TCR0	129
018Ah			
018Bh			
018Ch	DMA0 Control Register	DM0CON	129
018Dh			
018Eh			
018Fh			
0190h 0191h 0192h	DMA1 Source Pointer	SAR1	129
0193h			
0194h 0195h 0196h	DMA1 Destination Pointer	DAR1	129
0197h			
0198h 0199h	DMA1 Transfer Counter	TCR1	129
019Ah			
019Bh			
019Ch	DMA1 Control Register	DM1CON	128
019Dh			
019Eh			
019Fh			
01A0h 01A1h 01A2h	DMA2 Source Pointer	SAR2	129
01A3h			
01A4h 01A5h 01A6h	DMA2 Destination Pointer	DAR2	129
01A7h			
01A8h 01A9h	DMA2 Transfer Counter	TCR2	129
01AAh			
01ABh			
01ACh	DMA2 Control Register	DM2CON	128
01ADh			
01AEh			
01AFh			
01B0h 01B1h 01B2h	DMA3 Source Pointer	SAR3	129
01B3h			
01B4h 01B5h 01B6h	DMA3 Destination Pointer	DAR3	129
01B7h			
01B8h 01B9h	DMA3 Transfer Counter	TCR3	129
01BAh			
01BBh			
01BCh	DMA3 Control Register	DM3CON	129
01BDh			
01BEh			
01BFh			
01C0h			
01C1h			
01C2h			

Address	Register	Symbol	Page
01C3h			
01C4h			
01C5h			
01C6h			
01C7h			
01C8h	Timer B Count Source Select Register 0	TBCS0	158
01C9h	Timer B Count Source Select Register 1	TBCS1	158
01CAh			
01CBh			
01CCh			
01CDh			
01CEh			
01CFh			
01D0h	Timer A Count Source Select Register 0	TACS0	142
01D1h	Timer A Count Source Select Register 1	TACS1	142
01D2h	Timer A Count Source Select Register 2	TACS2	143
01D3h			
01D4h			
01D5h	Timer A Waveform Output Function Select Register	TAPOFS	143
01D6h			
01D7h			
01D8h			
01D9h			
01DAh			
01DBh			
01DEh			
01DCh			
01DDh			
01DFh			
01E0h			
01E1h			
01E2h			
01E3h			
01E4h			
01E5h			
01E6h			
01E7h			
01E8h	Timer B Count Source Select Register 2	TBCS2	158
01E9h	Timer B Count Source Select Register 3	TBCS3	158
01EAh			
01EBh			
01ECh			
01EDh			
01EEh			
01EFh			
01F0h			
01F1h			
01F2h			
01F3h			
01F4h			
01F5h			
01F6h			
01F7h			
01F8h			
01F9h			
01FAh			
01FBh			
01FCh			
01FDh			
01FEh			
01FFh			
0200h			
0201h			
0202h			
0203h			
0204h			

NOTE: 1. Blank columns are all reserved space. No access is allowed.

Address	Register	Symbol	Page
0205h	Interrupt Source Select Register 3	IFSR3A	114
0206h	Interrupt Source Select Register 2	IFSR2A	114
0207h	Interrupt Source Select Register	IFSR	113
0208h			
0209h			
020Ah			
020Bh			
020Ch			
020Dh			
020Eh	Address Match Interrupt Enable Register	AIER	117
020Fh	Address Match Interrupt Enable Register 2	AIER2	117
0210h 0211h 0212h	Address Match Interrupt Register 0	RMAD0	117
0213h			
0214h 0215h 0216h	Address Match Interrupt Register 1	RMAD1	117
0217h			
0218h 0219h 021Ah	Address Match Interrupt Register 2	RMAD2	117
021Bh			
021Ch 021Dh 021Eh	Address Match Interrupt Register 3	RMAD3	117
021Fh			
0220h	Flash Memory Control Register 0	FMR0	275
0221h	Flash Memory Control Register 1	FMR1	276
0222h	Flash Memory Control Register 2	FMR2	277
0223h			
0224h			
0225h			
0226h			
0227h			
0228h			
0229h			
022Ah			
022Bh			
022Ch			
022Dh			
022Eh			
022Fh			
0230h	Flash Memory Control Register 6	FMR6	278
0231h			
0232h			
0233h			
0234h			
0235h			
0236h			
0237h			
0238h			
0239h			
023Ah			
023Bh			
023Ch			
023Dh			
023Eh			
023Fh			
0240h			
0241h			
0242h			
0243h			
0244h	UART0 Special Mode Register 4	U0SMR4	186
0245h	UART0 Special Mode Register 3	U0SMR3	185
0246h	UART0 Special Mode Register 2	U0SMR2	185
0247h	UART0 Special Mode Register	U0SMR	184
0248h	UART0 Transmit/Receive Mode Register	U0MR	181

Address	Register	Symbol	Page
0249h	UART0 Bit Rate Register	U0BRG	181
024Ah 024Bh	UART0 Transmit Buffer Register	U0TB	180
024Ch	UART0 Transmit/Receive Control Register 0	U0C0	182
024Dh	UART0 Transmit/Receive Control Register 1	U0C1	183
024Eh 024Fh	UART0 Receive Buffer Register	U0RB	180
0250h	UART Transmit/Receive Control Register 2	UCON	184
0251h			
0252h			
0253h			
0254h	UART1 Special Mode Register 4	U1SMR4	186
0255h	UART1 Special Mode Register 3	U1SMR3	185
0256h	UART1 Special Mode Register 2	U1SMR2	185
0257h	UART1 Special Mode Register	U1SMR	184
0258h	UART1 Transmit/Receive Mode Register	U1MR	181
0259h	UART1 Bit Rate Register	U1BRG	181
025Ah 025Bh	UART1 Transmit Buffer Register	U1TB	171
025Ch	UART1 Transmit/Receive Control Register 0	U1C0	181
025Dh	UART1 Transmit/Receive Control Register 1	U1C1	183
025Eh 025Fh	UART1 Receive Buffer Register	U1RB	171
0260h			
0261h			
0262h			
0263h			
0264h	UART2 Special Mode Register 4	U2SMR4	186
0265h	UART2 Special Mode Register 3	U2SMR3	185
0266h	UART2 Special Mode Register 2	U2SMR2	185
0267h	UART2 Special Mode Register	U2SMR	184
0268h	UART2 Transmit/Receive Mode Register	U2MR	181
0269h	UART2 Bit Rate Register	U2BRG	181
026Ah 026Bh	UART2 Transmit Buffer Register	U2TB	171
026Ch	UART2 Transmit/Receive Control Register 0	U2C0	182
026Dh	UART2 Transmit/Receive Control Register 1	U2C1	183
026Eh 026Fh	UART2 Receive Buffer Register	U2RB	180
0270h	SI/O3 Transmit/Receive Register	S3TRR	226
0271h			
0272h	SI/O3 Control Register	S3C	226
0273h	SI/O3 Bit Rate Register	S3BRG	226
0274h	SI/O4 Transmit/Receive Register	S4TRR	226
0275h			
0276h	SI/O4 Control Register	S4C	226
0277h	SI/O4 Bit Rate Register	S4BRG	226
0278h	SI/O34 Control Register 2	S34C2	227
0279h			
027Ah			
027Bh			
027Ch			
027Dh			
027Eh			
027Fh			
0280h			
0281h			
0282h			
0283h			
0284h	UART5 Special Mode Register 4	U5SMR4	186
0285h	UART5 Special Mode Register 3	U5SMR3	185
0286h	UART5 Special Mode Register 2	U5SMR2	185
0287h	UART5 Special Mode Register	U5SMR	184
0288h	UART5 Transmit/Receive Mode Register	U5MR	181
0289h	UART5 Bit Rate Register	U5BRG	181

NOTE: 1. Blank columns are all reserved space. No access is allowed.

Address	Register	Symbol	Page
028Ah 028Bh	UART5 Transmit Buffer Register	U5TB	180
028Ch	UART5 Transmit/Receive Control Register 0	U5C0	182
028Dh	UART5 Transmit/Receive Control Register 1	U5C1	183
028Eh 028Fh	UART5 Receive Buffer Register	U5RB	171
0290h			
0291h			
0292h			
0293h			
0294h	UART6 Special Mode Register 4	U6SMR4	186
0295h	UART6 Special Mode Register 3	U6SMR3	185
0296h	UART6 Special Mode Register 2	U6SMR2	185
0297h	UART6 Special Mode Register	U6SMR	184
0298h	UART6 Transmit/Receive Mode Register	U6MR	181
0299h	UART6 Bit Rate Register	U6BRG	181
029Ah 029Bh	UART6 Transmit Buffer Register	U6TB	180
029Ch	UART6 Transmit/Receive Control Register 0	U6C0	182
029Dh	UART6 Transmit/Receive Control Register 1	U6C1	183
029Eh	UART6 Receive Buffer Register	U6RB	180
029Fh			
02A0h			
02A1h			
02A2h			
02A3h			
02A4h	UART7 Special Mode Register 4	U7SMR4	186
02A5h	UART7 Special Mode Register 3	U7SMR3	185
02A6h	UART7 Special Mode Register 2	U7SMR2	185
02A7h	UART7 Special Mode Register	U7SMR	184
02A8h	UART7 Transmit/Receive Mode Register	U7MR	181
02A9h	UART7 Bit Rate Register	U7BRG	181
02AAh 02ABh	UART7 Transmit Buffer Register	U7TB	180
02ACh	UART7 Transmit/Receive Control Register 0	U7C0	182
02ADh	UART7 Transmit/Receive Control Register 1	U7C1	183
02AEh 02AFh	UART7 Receive Buffer Register	U7RB	180
02B0h to 02FFh			
0300h	Timer B3,4,5 Count Start Flag	TBSR	157
0301h			
0302h 0303h	Timer A1-1 Register	TA11	171
0304h 0305h	Timer A2-1 Register	TA21	171
0306h 0307h	Timer A4-1 Register	TA41	171
0308h	Three-Phase PWM Control Register 0	INVC0	168
0309h	Three-Phase PWM Control Register 1	INVC1	169
030Ah	Three-Phase Output Buffer Register 0	IDB0	170
030Bh	Three-Phase Output Buffer Register 1	IDB1	170
030Ch	Dead Time Timer	DTT	170
030Dh	Timer B2 Interrupt Generation Frequency Set Counter	ICTB2	170
030Eh			
030Fh			
0310h 0311h	Timer B3 Register	TB3	156
0312h 0313h	Timer B4 Register	TB4	156
0314h 0315h	Timer B5 Register	TB5	156
0316h			
0317h			
0318h			
0319h			

Address	Register	Symbol	Page
031Ah			
031Bh	Timer B3 Mode Register	TB3MR	156
031Ch	Timer B4 Mode Register	TB4MR	156
031Dh	Timer B5 Mode Register	TB5MR	156
031Eh			
031Fh			
0320h	Count Start Flag	TABSR	157
0321h			
0322h	One-Shot Start Flag	ONSF	141
0323h	Trigger Select Register	TRGSR	141
0324h	Up/Down Flag	UDF	140
0325h			
0326h 0327h	Timer A0 Register	TA0	153
0328h 0329h	Timer A1 Register	TA1	153
032Ah 032Bh	Timer A2 Register	TA2	153
032Ch 032Dh	Timer A3 Register	TA3	153
032Eh 032Fh	Timer A4 Register	TA4	153
0330h 0331h	Timer B0 Register	TB0	156
0332h 0333h	Timer B1 Register	TB1	156
0334h 0335h	Timer B2 Register	TB2	156
0336h	Timer A0 Mode Register	TA0MR	139
0337h	Timer A1 Mode Register	TA1MR	139
0338h	Timer A2 Mode Register	TA2MR	139
0339h	Timer A3 Mode Register	TA3MR	139
033Ah	Timer A4 Mode Register	TA4MR	139
033Bh	Timer B0 Mode Register	TB0MR	156
033Ch	Timer B1 Mode Register	TB1MR	156
033Dh	Timer B2 Mode Register	TB2MR	156
033Eh	Timer B2 Special Mode Register	TB2SC	171
033Fh			
0340h			
0341h			
0342h			
0343h			
0344h			
0345h			
0346h			
0347h			
0348h			
0349h			
034Ah			
034Bh			
034Ch			
034Dh			
034Eh			
034Fh			
0350h			
0351h			
0352h			
0353h			
0354h			
0355h			
0356h			
0357h			
0358h			
0359h			
035Ah			
035Bh			

NOTE: 1. Blank columns are all reserved space. No access is allowed.

Address	Register	Symbol	Page
035Ch			
035Dh			
035Eh			
035Fh			
0360h	Pull-Up Control Register 0	PUR0	261
0361h	Pull-Up Control Register 1	PUR1	261
0362h	Pull-Up Control Register 2	PUR2	262
0363h			
0364h			
0365h			
0366h	Port Control Register	PCR	262
0367h			
0368h			
0369h			
036Ah			
036Bh			
036Ch			
036Dh			
036Eh			
036Fh			
0370h			
0371h			
0372h			
0373h			
0374h			
0375h			
0376h			
0377h			
0378h			
0379h			
037Ah			
037Bh			
037Ch	Count Source Protection Mode Register	CSPR	120
037Dh	Watchdog Timer Reset Register	WDTR	119
037Eh	Watchdog Timer Start Register	WDTS	119
037Fh	Watchdog Timer Control Register	WDC	119
0380h			
0381h			
0382h			
0383h			
0384h			
0385h			
0386h			
0387h			
0388h			
0389h			
038Ah			
038Bh			
038Ch			
038Dh			
038Eh			
038Fh			
0390h	DMA2 Source Select Register	DM2SL	125
0391h			
0392h	DMA3 Source Select Register	DM3SL	125
0393h			
0394h			
0395h			
0396h			
0397h			
0398h	DMA0 Source Select Register	DM0SL	125
0399h			
039Ah	DMA1 Source Select Register	DM1SL	125
039Bh			
039Ch			
039Dh			
039Eh			
039Fh			

Address	Register	Symbol	Page
03A0h			
03A1h			
03A2h			
03A3h			
03A4h			
03A5h			
03A6h			
03A7h			
03A8h			
03A9h			
03AAh			
03ABh			
03ACh			
03ADh			
03AEh			
03AFh			
03B0h			
03B1h			
03B2h			
03B3h			
03B4h			
03B5h			
03B6h			
03B7h			
03B8h			
03B9h			
03BAh			
03BBh			
03BCh 03BDh	CRC Data Register	CRCD	251
03BEh	CRC Input Register	CRCIN	251
03BFh			
03C0h 03C1h	A/D Register 0	AD0	235
03C2h 03C3h	A/D Register 1	AD1	235
03C4h 03C5h	A/D Register 2	AD2	235
03C6h 03C7h	A/D Register 3	AD3	235
03C8h 03C9h	A/D Register 4	AD4	235
03CAh 03CBh	A/D Register 5	AD5	235
03CCh 03CDh	A/D Register 6	AD6	235
03CEh 03CFh	A/D Register 7	AD7	235
03D0h			
03D1h			
03D2h			
03D3h			
03D4h	A/D Control Register 2	ADCON2	235
03D5h			
03D6h	A/D Control Register 0	ADCON0	234
03D7h	A/D Control Register 1	ADCON1	234
03D8h	D/A0 Register	DA0	250
03D9h			
03DAh	D/A1 Register	DA1	250
03DBh			
03DCh	D/A Control Register	DACON	250
03DDh			
03DEh			
03DFh			
03E0h	Port P0 Register	P0	260
03E1h	Port P1 Register	P1	260
03E2h	Port P0 Direction Register	PD0	259
03E3h	Port P1 Direction Register	PD1	259

NOTE: 1. Blank columns are all reserved space. No access is allowed.

Address	Register	Symbol	Page
03E4h	Port P2 Register	P2	260
03E5h	Port P3 Register	P3	260
03E6h	Port P2 Direction Register	PD2	259
03E7h	Port P3 Direction Register	PD3	259
03E8h	Port P4 Register	P4	260
03E9h	Port P5 Register	P5	260
03EAh	Port P4 Direction Register	PD4	259
03EBh	Port P5 Direction Register	PD5	259
03ECh	Port P6 Register	P6	260
03EDh	Port P7 Register	P7	260
03EEh	Port P6 Direction Register	PD6	259
03EFh	Port P7 Direction Register	PD7	259
03F0h	Port P8 Register	P8	260
03F1h	Port P9 Register	P9	260
03F2h	Port P8 Direction Register	PD8	259
03F3h	Port P9 Direction Register	PD9	259
03F4h	Port P10 Register	P10	260
03F5h			
03F6h	Port P10 Direction Register	PD10	259
03F7h			
03F8h			
03F9h			
03FAh			
03FBh			
03FCh			
03FDh			
03FEh			
03FFh			
D000h to D7FFh			

OFS1	Optional Feature Select Address	OFS1	272

NOTE: 1. Blank columns are all reserved space. No access is allowed.

1. Overview

1.1 Features

The M16C/64 Group MCUs incorporate the M16C/60 Series CPU core and flash memory, employing sophisticated instructions for a high level of efficiency. With 1 Mbyte of address space (expandable to 4 Mbyte), this MCU is capable of executing instructions at high speed. In addiditon, the CPU core boasts a multiplier for high-speed operation processing.
Power consumption is low, and the M16C/64 Group supports operating modes that allow additional power control. The MCU also uses an anti-noise configuration to reduce emissions of electromagnetic noise and is designed to withstand EMI. Integration of many peripheral functions, including multifunction timer and serial interface, reduces the number of system components.

1.1.1 Applications

Audio, cameras, television, home appliance, office equipment, communication equipment, portable equipment, industrial equipment, etc.

1.2 Specifications

Tables 1.1 and 1.2 list Specifications Outline.

Table 1.1 Specifications (1)

Item	Function	Specification
CPU	Central processing unit	M16C/60 core (multiplier: 16-bit × 16-bit → 32 bits, multiply and accumulate instruction: 16 × 16 + 32 →32 bits) • Number of basic instructions: 91 • Minimum instruction execution time: 40.0 ns (f(BCLK) = 25 MHz, VCC1 = VCC2 = 2.7 to 5.5 V) • Operating modes: Single-chip, memory expansion, and microprocessor
Memory	ROM, RAM, data flash	See **Table 1.3 "Product List".**
Voltage Detection	Voltage detection circuit	Low-voltage detection unit
Clock	Clock generation circuit	• 4 circuits: Main clock, sub clock, on-chip oscillator (125 kHz), PLL frequency synthesize • Oscillation stop detection: Main clock oscillation stop detection and re-oscillation detection function • Frequency divider circuit: Divide ratio selectable from 1, 2, 4, 8 and 16 • Low-power consumption modes: Wait mode, stop mode
External Bus Expansion	Bus and memory expansion	• Address space: 1 Mbyte • External bus interface: 0 to 3 waits states, chip select 4 outputs, memory area expansion function (up to 4 Mbytes) • Bus format: Separate bus or multiplexed bus selectable, data bus width selectable (8 or 16 bits), number of address buses selectable (12, 16, or 20 buses)
I/O Ports	Programmable I/O ports	• CMOS I/O ports: 85, selectable pull-up resistor • Nch open drain ports: 3
Interrupts		• Interrupt vectors: 70 • External interrupt input: 13 ($\overline{\text{NMI}}$, $\overline{\text{INT}}$ × 8, key input × 4) • Interrupt priority levels: 7
Watchdog Timer		15 bits × 1 (with prescaler) Automatic reset start function selectable
DMA	DMAC	• 4 channels, cycle steal mode • Trigger sources: 43 • Transfer modes: 2 (single transfer, repeat transfer)
Timer	Timer A	16-bit timer × 5 Timer mode, event counter mode, one shot timer mode, pulse width modulation (PWM) mode Event counter two-phase pulse signal processing (two-phase encoder input) × 3 channels
	Timer B	16-bit timer × 6 Timer mode, event counter mode, pulse period measurement mode, pulse width measurement mode
	Timer functions for three-phase motor control	Three-phase inverter control (timer A1, timer A2, timer A4, timer B2), On-chip dead time timer
Serial Interface	UART0 to UART2, UART5 to UART7	Clock synchronous/asynchronous × 6 channels I^2C-bus, IEBus (1), special mode 2, SIM (UART2)
	SI/O3, SI/O4	Clock synchronization only × 2 channels

Note:
1. IEBus is a registered trademark of NEC Electronics Corporation.

Table 1.2 Specifications (2)

Item	Function	Specification
A/D Converter		10-bit resolution × 26 channels, including sample and hold function, Conversion time: 1.72 µs
D/A Converter		8-bit resolution × 2
CRC Calculation Circuit		CRC-CCITT ($X^{16} + X^{12} + X^5 + 1$) compliant
Flash Memory		Programming and erasure power supply voltage: 2.7 V to 5.5 V Programming and erasure endurance: 100 times Program security: ROM code protect, ID code check
Debug Function		Functions on-chip debug, on-board flash rewrite function, address match × 4
Operation Frequency/Supply Voltage		25 MHz/VCC1 = VCC2 = 2.7 to 5.5 V
Power Consumption		20 mA (25 MHz/VCC1 = VCC2 = 3 V)TBD 3.0 µA(VCC1 = VCC2 = 3 V, in stop mode)
Operating Temperature		-20°C to 85°C, -40°C to 85°C
Package		100-pin QFP: PRQP0100JD-B (Previous package code: 100P6F-A) 100-pin LQFP: PLQP0100KB-A (Previous package code: 100P6Q-A)

1.3 Product List

Table 1.3 lists product information. Figure 1.1 shows part numbers, memory sizes, and packages. Figure 1.2 shows a Marking Diagram of Flash Memory Version (Top View).

Table 1.3 Product List

Part No.	ROM Capacity			RAM Capacity	Package Code	Remarks
	Program ROM 1	Program ROM 2	Data Flash			
R5F36406NFA (D)	128 Kbytes	16 Kbytes	4 Kbytes × 2 blocks	12 Kbytes	PRQP0100JD-B	Operating temperature -20°C to 85°C
R5F36406NFB (D)					PLQP0100KB-A	
R5F3640DNFA (D)	256 Kbytes	16 Kbytes	4 Kbytes × 2 blocks	16 Kbytes	PRQP0100JD-B	
R5F3640DNFB (D)					PLQP0100KB-A	
R5F3640MNFA (D)	512 Kbytes	16 Kbytes	4 Kbytes × 2 blocks	31 Kbytes	PRQP0100JD-B	
R5F3640MNFB (D)					PLQP0100KB-A	
R5F36406DFA (D)	128 Kbytes	16 Kbytes	4 Kbytes × 2 blocks	12 Kbytes	PRQP0100JD-B	Operating temperature -40°C to 85°C
R5F36406DFB (D)					PLQP0100KB-A	
R5F3640DDFA (D)	256 Kbytes	16 Kbytes	4 Kbytes × 2 blocks	16 Kbytes	PRQP0100JD-B	
R5F3640DDFB (D)					PLQP0100KB-A	
R5F3640MDFA (D)	512 Kbytes	16 Kbytes	4 Kbytes × 2 blocks	31 Kbytes	PRQP0100JD-B	
R5F3640MDFB (D)					PLQP0100KB-A	

(D) : Under development

Note:
1. Previous package codes are as follows.
   PRQP0100JD-B: 100P6F-A, PLQP0100KB-A: 100P6Q-A

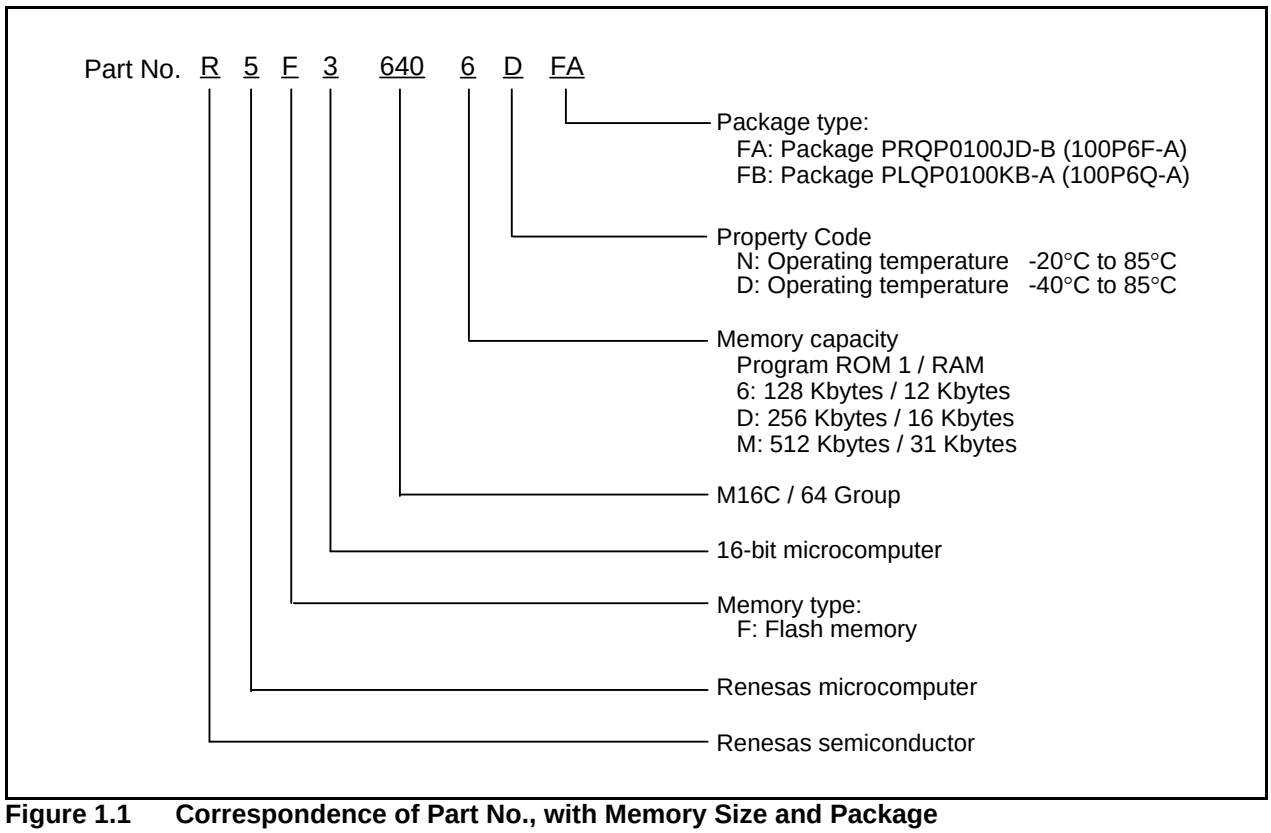


Figure 1.1 Correspondence of Part No., with Memory Size and Package

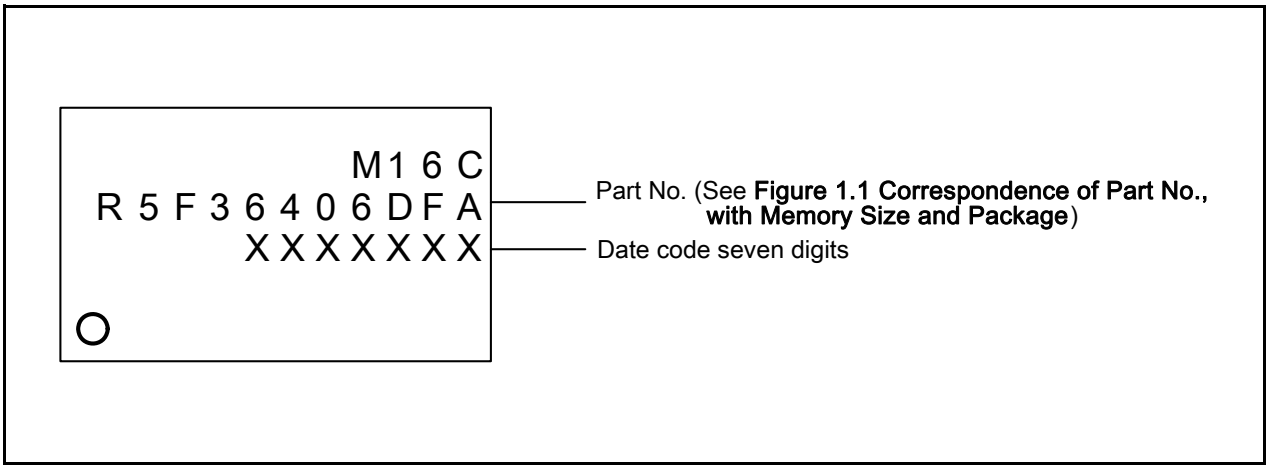
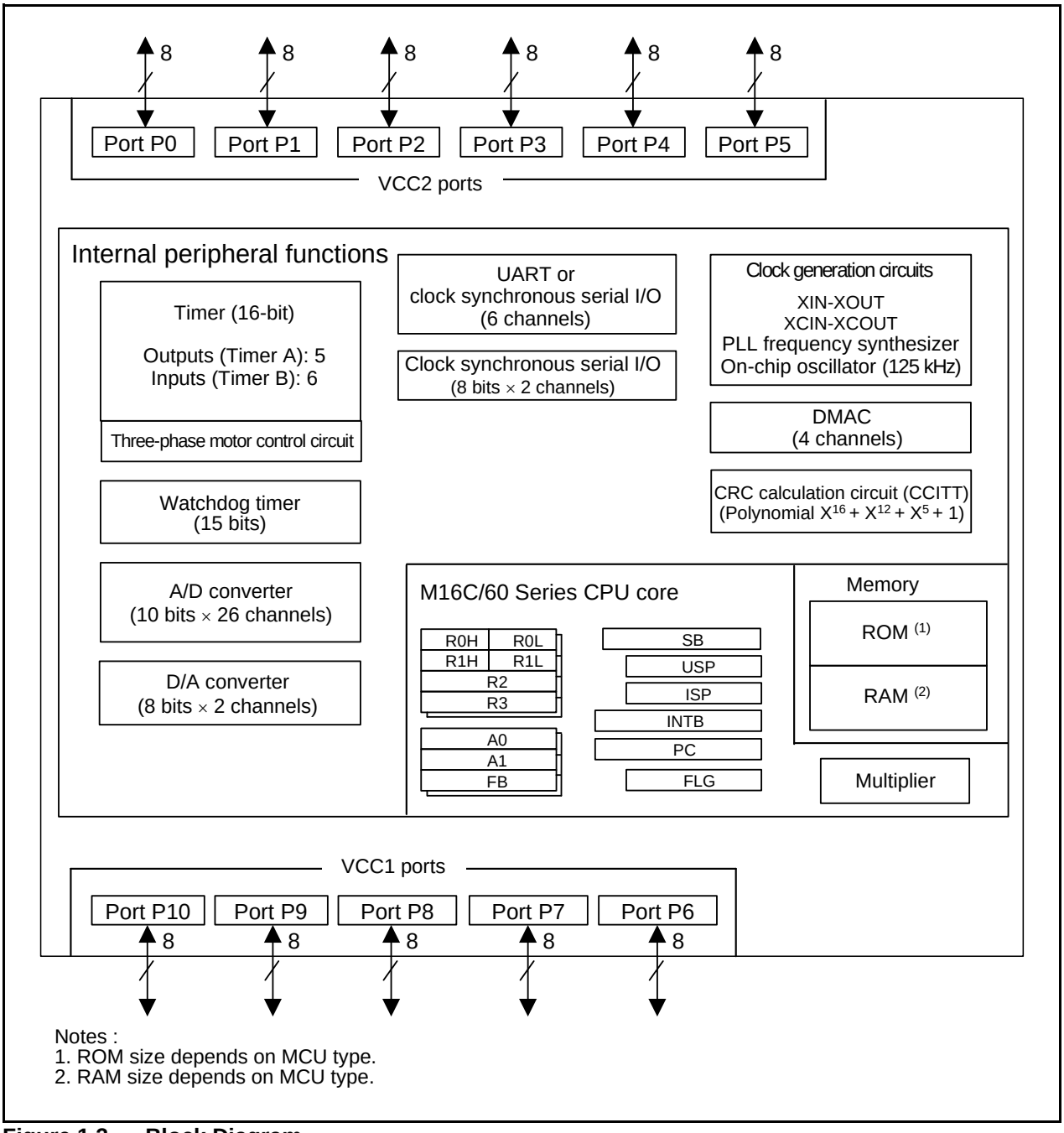


Figure 1.2 Marking Diagram of Flash Memory Version (Top View)

1.4 Block Diagram

Figure 1.3 is a M16C/64 Group Block Diagram.

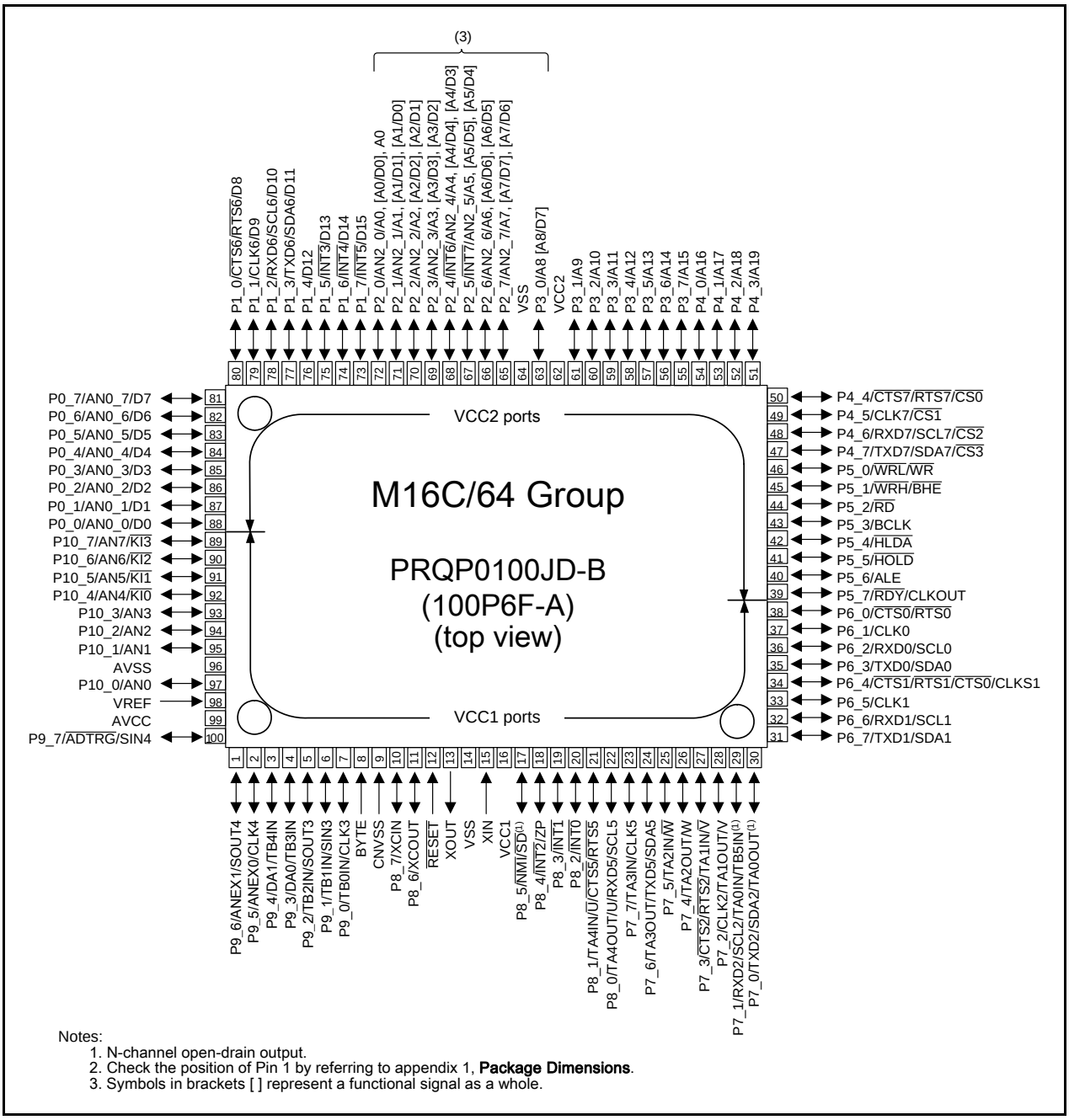


Notes :
1. ROM size depends on MCU type.
2. RAM size depends on MCU type.

Figure 1.3 Block Diagram

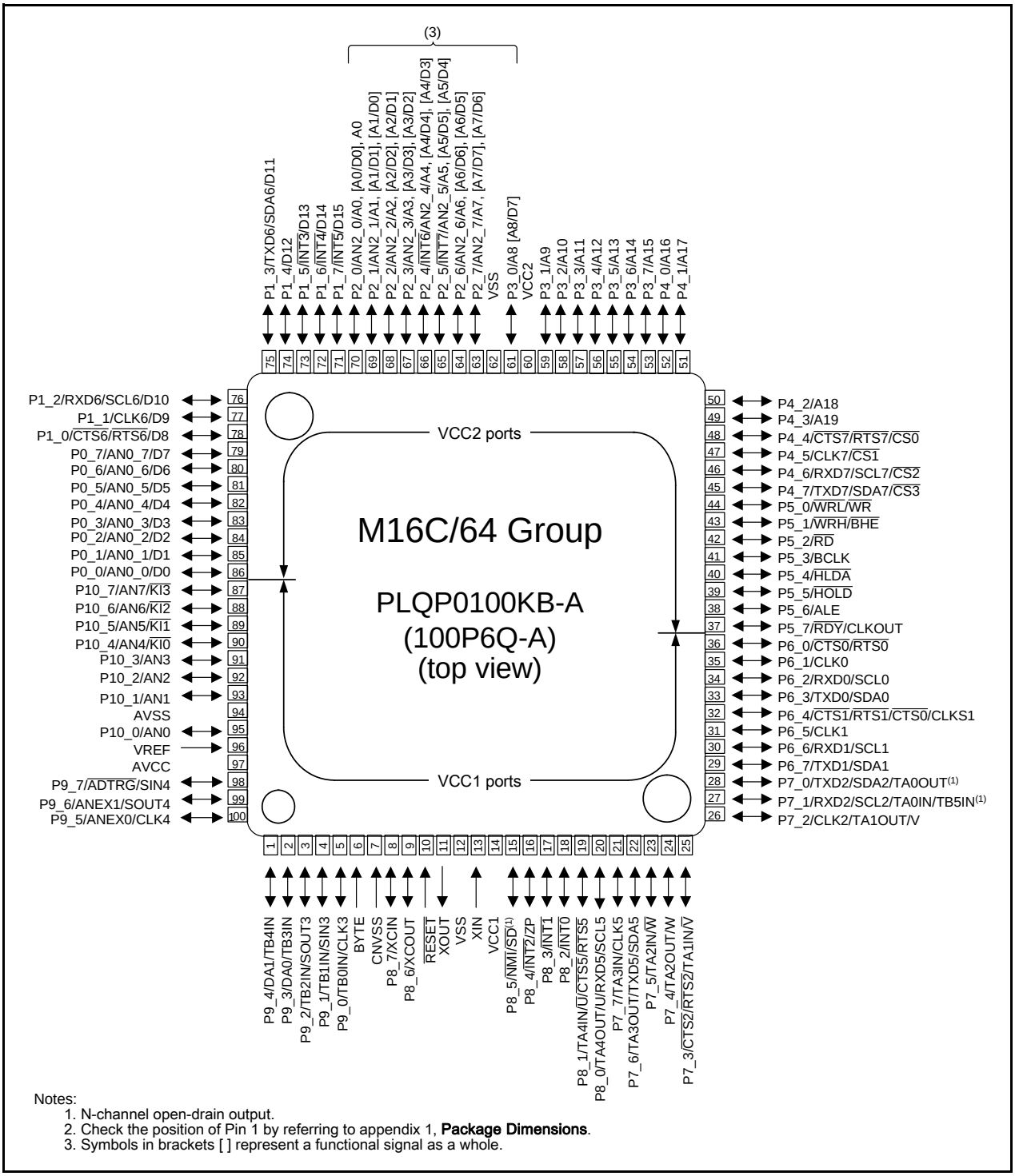
1.5 Pin Assignments

Figures 1.4 and 1.5 show pin assignments (top view). Tables 1.4 and 1.5list Pin Names, for 100-Pin Package.



Notes:
1. N-channel open-drain output.
2. Check the position of Pin 1 by referring to appendix 1, **Package Dimensions**.
3. Symbols in brackets [ ] represent a functional signal as a whole.

Figure 1.4 Pin Assignment (Top View)



Notes:
1. N-channel open-drain output.
2. Check the position of Pin 1 by referring to appendix 1, **Package Dimensions**.
3. Symbols in brackets [ ] represent a functional signal as a whole.

Figure 1.5 Pin Assignment (Top View)

Table 1.4 Pin Names for 100-Pin Package(1)

Pin No.		Control Pin	Port	I/O Pin Functions for of Peripheral Modules				Bus Control Pin
FA	FB			Interrupt	Timer	Serial interface	A/D converter D/A converter	
1	99		P9_6			SOUT4	ANEX1	
2	100		P9_5			CLK4	ANEX0	
3	1		P9_4		TB4IN		DA1	
4	2		P9_3		TB3IN		DA0	
5	3		P9_2		TB2IN	SOUT3		
6	4		P9_1		TB1IN	SIN3		
7	5		P9_0		TB0IN	CLK3		
8	6	BYTE						
9	7	CNVSS						
10	8	XCIN	P8_7					
11	9	XCOUT	P8_6					
12	10	$\overline{\text{RESET}}$						
13	11	XOUT						
14	12	VSS						
15	13	XIN						
16	14	VCC1						
17	15		P8_5	$\overline{\text{NMI}}$	$\overline{\text{SD}}$			
18	16		P8_4	$\overline{\text{INT2}}$	ZP			
19	17		P8_3	$\overline{\text{INT1}}$				
20	18		P8_2	$\overline{\text{INT0}}$				
21	19		P8_1		TA4IN/$\overline{\text{U}}$	$\overline{\text{CTS5}}$/$\overline{\text{RTS5}}$		
22	20		P8_0		TA4OUT/U	RXD5/SCL5		
23	21		P7_7		TA3IN	CLK5		
24	22		P7_6		TA3OUT	TXD5/SDA5		
25	23		P7_5		TA2IN/$\overline{\text{W}}$			
26	24		P7_4		TA2OUT/W			
27	25		P7_3		TA1IN/$\overline{\text{V}}$	$\overline{\text{CTS2}}$/$\overline{\text{RTS2}}$		
28	26		P7_2		TA1OUT/V	CLK2		
29	27		P7_1		TA0IN/TB5IN	RXD2/SCL2		
30	28		P7_0		TA0OUT	TXD2/SDA2		
31	29		P6_7			TXD1/SDA1		
32	30		P6_6			RXD1/SCL1		
33	31		P6_5			CLK1		
34	32		P6_4			$\overline{\text{CTS1}}$/$\overline{\text{RTS1}}$/$\overline{\text{CTS0}}$/CLKS1		
35	33		P6_3			TXD0/SDA0		
36	34		P6_2			RXD0/SCL0		
37	35		P6_1			CLK0		
38	36		P6_0			$\overline{\text{CTS0}}$/$\overline{\text{RTS0}}$		
39	37		P5_7					$\overline{\text{RDY}}$/CLKOUT
40	38		P5_6					ALE
41	39		P5_5					$\overline{\text{HOLD}}$
42	40		P5_4					$\overline{\text{HLDA}}$
43	41		P5_3					BCLK
44	42		P5_2					$\overline{\text{RD}}$
45	43		P5_1					$\overline{\text{WRH}}$/$\overline{\text{BHE}}$
46	44		P5_0					$\overline{\text{WRL}}$/$\overline{\text{WR}}$
47	45		P4_7			TXD7/SDA7		$\overline{\text{CS3}}$
48	46		P4_6			RXD7/SCL7		$\overline{\text{CS2}}$
49	47		P4_5			CLK7		$\overline{\text{CS1}}$
50	48		P4_4			$\overline{\text{CTS7}}$/$\overline{\text{RTS7}}$		$\overline{\text{CS0}}$

Table 1.5 Pin Names for 100-Pin Package(2)

Pin No.		Control Pin	Port	I/O Pin Functions for of Peripheral Modules				Bus Control Pin
FA	FB			Interrupt	Timer	Serial interface	A/D converter D/A converter	
51	49		P4_3					A19
52	50		P4_2					A18
53	51		P4_1					A17
54	52		P4_0					A16
55	53		P3_7					A15
56	54		P3_6					A14
57	55		P3_5					A13
58	56		P3_4					A12
59	57		P3_3					A11
60	58		P3_2					A10
61	59		P3_1					A9
62	60	VCC2						
63	61		P3_0					A8, [A8/D7]
64	62	VSS						
65	63		P2_7				AN2_7	A7, [A7/D7], [A7/D6]
66	64		P2_6				AN2_6	A6, [A6/D6], [A6/D5]
67	65		P2_5	$\overline{INT7}$			AN2_5	A5, [A5/D5], [A5/D4]
68	66		P2_4	$\overline{INT6}$			AN2_4	A4, [A4/D4], [A4/D3]
69	67		P2_3				AN2_3	A3, [A3/D3], [A3/D2]
70	68		P2_2				AN2_2	A2, [A2/D2], [A2/D1]
71	69		P2_1				AN2_1	A1, [A1/D1], [A1/D0]
72	70		P2_0				AN2_0	A0, [A0/D0], A0
73	71		P1_7	$\overline{INT5}$				D15
74	72		P1_6	$\overline{INT4}$				D14
75	73		P1_5	$\overline{INT3}$				D13
76	74		P1_4					D12
77	75		P1_3			TXD6/SDA6		D11
78	76		P1_2			RXD6/SCL6		D10
79	77		P1_1			CLK6		D9
80	78		P1_0			$\overline{CTS6}/\overline{RTS6}$		D8
81	79		P0_7				AN0_7	D7
82	80		P0_6				AN0_6	D6
83	81		P0_5				AN0_5	D5
84	82		P0_4				AN0_4	D4
85	83		P0_3				AN0_3	D3
86	84		P0_2				AN0_2	D2
87	85		P0_1				AN0_1	D1
88	86		P0_0				AN0_0	D0
89	87		P10_7	$\overline{KI3}$			AN7	
90	88		P10_6	$\overline{KI2}$			AN6	
91	89		P10_5	$\overline{KI1}$			AN5	
92	90		P10_4	$\overline{KI0}$			AN4	
93	91		P10_3				AN3	
94	92		P10_2				AN2	
95	93		P10_1				AN1	
96	94	AVSS						
97	95		P10_0				AN0	
98	96	VREF						
99	97	AVCC						
100	98		P9_7			SIN4	$\overline{ADTRG}$	

1.6 Pin Functions

Table 1.6 Pin Functions (1)

Signal Name	Pin Name	I/O	Power Supply	Description
Power supply input	VCC1 VCC2 VSS	I	-	Apply 2.7 to 5.5 V to pins VCC1 and VCC2 (VCC1 =VCC2) and 0 V to the VSS pin (1)
Analog power supply input	AVCC AVSS	I	VCC1	Apply the power supply for the A/D converter. Connect the AVCC pin to VCC1. Connect the AVSS pin to VSS.
Reset input	$\overline{\text{RESET}}$	I	VCC1	Low active input pin. Driving this pin Low resets the MCU.
CNVSS	CNVSS	I	VCC1	Input pin to switch processor mode. To start up in single-chip mode after a reset, connect the CNVSS pin to VSS via resister. To start up in microprocessor mode, connect the CNVSS pin to VSS1.
External data bus width select input	BYTE	I	VCC1	Input pin to select the data bus of the external memory area. The data bus is 16-bit when it is Low and 8-bit when it is High. This pin must be fixed either High or Low. Connect the BYTE pin to VSS in single-chip mode
Bus control pins	D0 to D7	I/O	VCC2	Inputs or outputs data (D0 to D7) while accessing an external memory area with separate bus
	D8 to D15	I/O	VCC2	Inputs or outputs data (D8 to D15) while accessing an external memory area with 16-bit separate bus
	A0 to A19	O	VCC2	Outputs address bits A0 to A19
	A0/D0 to A7/D7	I/O	VCC2	Inputs or outputs data (D0 to D7) and outputs address bits (A0 to A7) by timesharing, while accessing an external memory area with 8-bit multiplexed bus
	A1/D0 to A8/D7	I/O	VCC2	Inputs or outputs data (D0 to D7) and outputs address bits (A1 to A8) by timesharing, while accessing an external memory area with 16-bit multiplexed bus
	$\overline{\text{CS0}}$ to $\overline{\text{CS3}}$	O	VCC2	Outputs chip-select signals $\overline{\text{CS0}}$ to $\overline{\text{CS3}}$ to specify an external memory area
	$\overline{\text{WRL}}$/$\overline{\text{WR}}$ $\overline{\text{WRH}}$/$\overline{\text{BHE}}$ $\overline{\text{RD}}$	O	VCC2	Low active output pins. Outputs $\overline{\text{WRL}}$, $\overline{\text{WRH}}$, ($\overline{\text{WR}}$, $\overline{\text{BHE}}$), $\overline{\text{RD}}$ signals. $\overline{\text{WRL}}$ and $\overline{\text{WRH}}$ can be switched with or $\overline{\text{WR}}$ and $\overline{\text{BHE}}$ can be selected by a program. $\overline{\text{WRL}}$, $\overline{\text{WRH}}$ and $\overline{\text{RD}}$ selected If the external data bus is 16-bit, data is written to an even address in external memory area when $\overline{\text{WRL}}$ is driven low. Data is written to an odd address when $\overline{\text{WRH}}$ is driven low. Data is read when $\overline{\text{RD}}$ is driven low. $\overline{\text{WR}}$, $\overline{\text{BHE}}$ and $\overline{\text{RD}}$ are selected Data is written to external memory area when $\overline{\text{WR}}$ is driven low. Data in external memory area is read when $\overline{\text{RD}}$ is driven low. An odd address is accessed when $\overline{\text{BHE}}$ is driven low. Select $\overline{\text{WR}}$, $\overline{\text{BHE}}$, and $\overline{\text{RD}}$ for external 8-bit data bus
	ALE	O	VCC2	Output ALE signal to latch address.
	$\overline{\text{HOLD}}$	I	VCC2	Low active input pin. The MCU is placed in hold state while the $\overline{\text{HOLD}}$ pin is driven low.
	$\overline{\text{HLDA}}$	O	VCC2	Low active output pin. In a hold state, $\overline{\text{HLDA}}$ outputs a low-level signal.
	$\overline{\text{RDY}}$	I	VCC2	Low active input pin. The MCU is placed in wait state while the $\overline{\text{RDY}}$ pin is driven low.

Note:
1. VCC1 is hereinafter referred to as VCC unless otherwise noted.

Table 1.7 Pin Functions (2)

Signal Name	Pin Name	I/O	Power Supply	Description
Main clock input	XIN	I	VCC1	I/O pins for the main clock oscillation circuit. Connect a ceramic resonator or crystal oscillator between XIN and XOUT(1). To apply an external clock, connect it to XIN and leave XOUT open.
Main clock output	XOUT	O	VCC1	
Sub clock input	XCIN	I	VCC1	I/O pins for a sub clock oscillation circuit. Connect a crystal oscillator between XCIN and XCOUT (1). To apply an external clock, connect it to XCIN and leave XCOUT open
Sub clock output	XCOUT	O	VCC1	
BCLK output	BCLK	O	VCC2	Output pin for BCLK signal
Clock output	CLKOUT	O	VCC2	This pin outputs the clock having the same frequency as fC, f1, f8, or f32
$\overline{\text{INT}}$ interrupt input	$\overline{\text{INT0}}$ to $\overline{\text{INT2}}$	I	VCC1	Low active input pins for $\overline{\text{INT}}$ interrupt
	$\overline{\text{INT3}}$ to $\overline{\text{INT7}}$	I	VCC2	
$\overline{\text{NMI}}$ interrupt input	$\overline{\text{NMI}}$	I	VCC1	Low active input pin for $\overline{\text{NMI}}$ interrupt
Key input interrupt input	$\overline{\text{KI0}}$ to $\overline{\text{KI3}}$	I	VCC1	Low active input pins for key input interrupt
Timer A	TA0OUT to TA4OUT	I/O	VCC1	Timer A0 to A4 I/O pins (TA0OUT as an output pin is N-channel open drain output)
	TA0IN to TA4IN	I	VCC1	Timer A0 to A4 input pins
	ZP	I	VCC1	Input pin for Z-phase
Timer B	TB0IN to TB5IN	I	VCC1	Timer B0 to B5 input pins
Three-phase motor control timer	U, $\overline{\text{U}}$, V, $\overline{\text{V}}$, W, $\overline{\text{W}}$	O	VCC1	Output pins for three-phase motor control timer output
	$\overline{\text{SD}}$	I	VCC1	Input pin for three-phase motor control timer input
Serial interface UART0 to UART2, UART5 to UART7	$\overline{\text{CTS0}}$ to $\overline{\text{CTS2}}$, $\overline{\text{CTS5}}$	I	VCC1	Input pins to control data transmission
	$\overline{\text{CTS6}}$, $\overline{\text{CTS7}}$	I	VCC2	
	$\overline{\text{RTS0}}$ to $\overline{\text{RTS2}}$, $\overline{\text{RTS5}}$	O	VCC1	Output pins to control data reception
	$\overline{\text{RTS6}}$, $\overline{\text{RTS7}}$	O	VCC2	
	CLK0 to CLK2, CLK5	I/O	VCC1	Transfer clock I/O pins
	CLK6, CLK7	I/O	VCC2	
	RXD0 to RXD2, RXD5	I	VCC1	Serial data input pins
	RXD6, RXD7	I	VCC2	
	TXD0 to TXD2, TXD5	O	VCC1	Serial data output pins(2)
	TXD6, TXD7	O	VCC2	
	CLKS1	O	VCC1	Output pin for transfer clock multiple-pin output function

Notes:
1. Consult the oscillator manufacturer regarding the oscillation characteristics.
2. TXD2, SDA2, and SCL2 are N-channel open-drain output pins. TXDi (i = 0, 1, 5 to 7), SDAi, and SCLi can be selected as CMOS output pins or N-channel open-drain output pins by a program.

Table 1.8 Pin Functions (3)

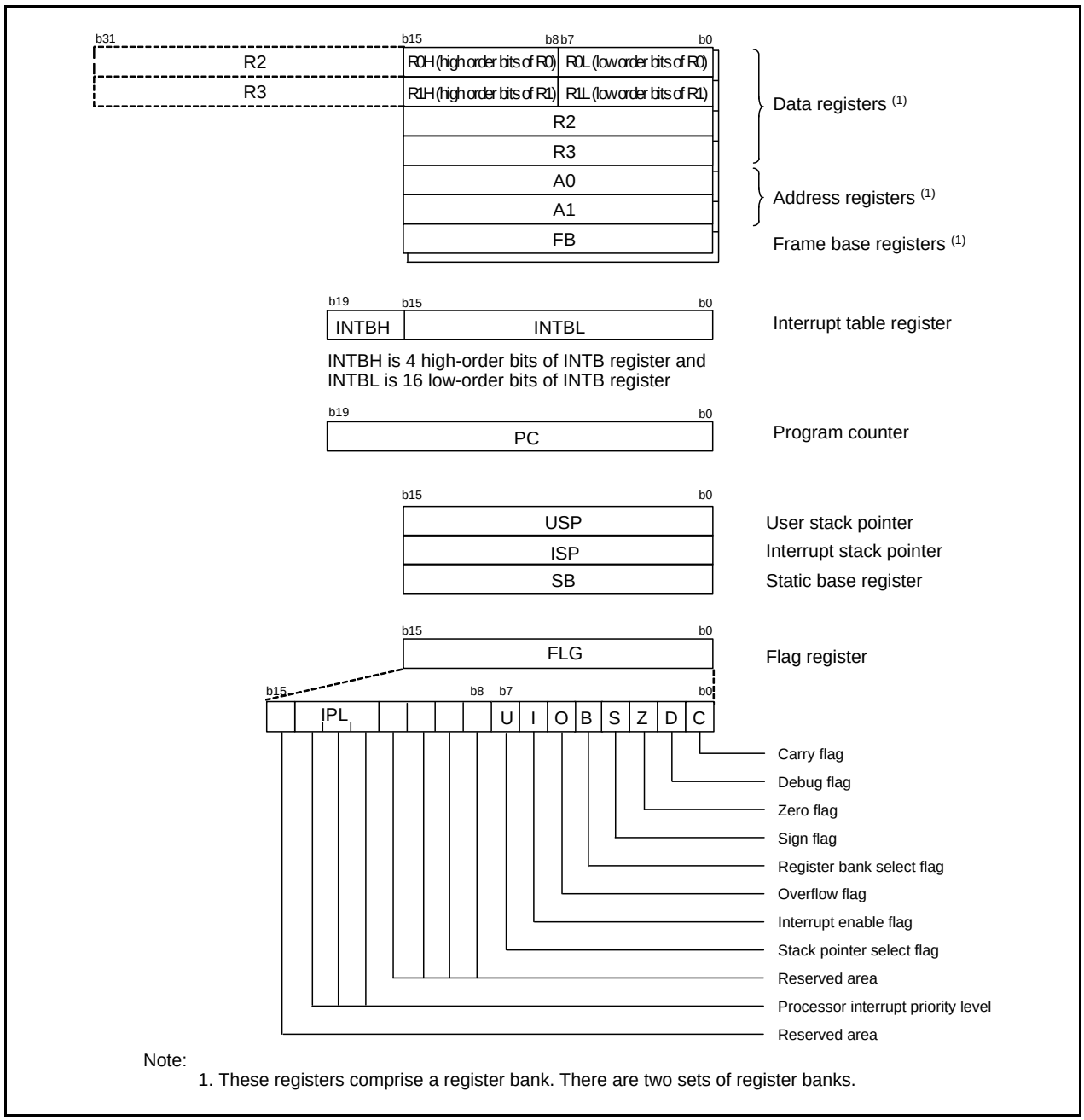
Signal Name	Pin Name	I/O	Power Supply	Description
UART0 to UART2, UART5 to UART7 I^2C mode	SDA0 to SDA2, SDA5	I/O	VCC1	Serial data I/O pins (1)
	SDA6, SDA7	I/O	VCC2	
	SCL0 to SCL2, SCL5	I/O	VCC1	Transfer clock I/O pins (1)
	SCL6, SCL7	I/O	VCC2	
Serial interface SI/03, SI/04	CLKS3, CLKS4	I/O	VCC1	Transfer clock I/O pins
	SIN3, SIN4	I	VCC1	Serial data input pins
	SOUT3, SOUT4	O	VCC1	Serial data output pins
Reference voltage input	VREF	I	VCC1	Reference voltage input pins for the A/D converter and D/A converter. Connect to VCC1.
A/D converter	AN0 to AN7	I	VCC1	Analog input pins for the A/D converter
	AN0_0 to AN0_7 AN2_0 to AN2_7	I	VCC2	
	$\overline{\text{ADTRG}}$	I	VCC1	Input pin for an external A/D trigger
	ANEX0, ANEX1	I	VCC1	Extended analog input pin for the A/D converter
D/A converter	DA0, DA1	O	VCC1	Output pin for the D/A converter
I/O port	P0_0 to P0_7 P1_0 to P1_7 P2_0 to P2_7 P3_0 to P3_7 P4_0 to P4_7 P5_0 to P5_7	I/O	VCC2	8-bit CMOS I/O ports. A direction register determines whether each pin is used as an input port or an output port. A pull-up resistor may be enabled or disabled for input ports in 4-bit units.
	P6_0 to P6_7 P7_0 to P7_7 P8_0 to P8_7 P9_0 to P9_7 P10_0 to P10_7	I/O	VCC1	8-bit I/O ports having equivalent functions to P0. However, P7_0, P7_1, and P8_5 are N-channel open-drain output ports. No pull-up resistor is provided. P8_5 is an input port for verifying the NMI pin level and shares a pin with NMI.

Note:

1. TXD2, SDA2, and SCL2 are N-channel open drain output pins. TXDi (i = 0, 1, 5 to 7), SDAi, SCLi can be selected as CMOS output pin or N-channel open drain output pin by program.

2. Central Processing Unit (CPU)

Figure 2.1 shows the CPU registers. Seven registers (R0, R1, R2, R3, A0, A1, and FB) out of thirteen registers configure a register bank. There are two sets of register banks.



Note:
1. These registers comprise a register bank. There are two sets of register banks.

Figure 2.1 Central Processing Unit Register

2.1 Data Registers (R0, R1, R2 and R3)

R0, R1, R2, and R3 are 16-bit registers used for transfer, arithmetic and logic operations. R0 and R1 can be split into high-order (R0H/R1H) and low-order bits (R0L/R1L) to be used separately as 8-bit data registers. R0 can be combined with R2 and used as a 32-bit data register (R2R0). The same applies to R3R1.

2.2 Address Registers (A0 and A1)

A0 and A1 are 16-bit registers used for A0-/A1-indirect addressing, A0-/A1-relative addressing, transfer, arithmetic and logic operations. A0 can be combined with A1 and used as a 32-bit address register (A1A0).

2.3 Frame Base Registers (FB)

FB is configured with 16 bits, and is used for FB relative addressing.

2.4 Interrupt Table Register (INTB)

INTB is a 20-bit register indicating the start address of an relocatable interrupt vector table.

2.5 Program Counter (PC)

PC is 20 bits wide and indicates the address of the next instruction to be executed.

2.6 User Stack Pointer (USP) and Interrupt Stack Pointer (ISP)

The stack pointers (SP), as USP and ISP, are each 16 bits wide. The U flag is used to switch between USP and ISP.

2.7 Static Base Register (SB)

SB is a 16-bit register used for SB-relative addressing.

2.8 Flag Register (FLG)

FLG is a 11-bit register indicating the CPU state.

2.8.1 Carry Flag (C Flag)

The C flag retains a carry, borrow, or shift-out bit that has been generated by the arithmetic/logic unit.

2.8.2 Debug Flag (D Flag)

The D flag is for debugging purpose only. Set it to 0.

2.8.3 Zero Flag (Z Flag)

The Z flag is set to 1 when an arithmetic operation results in 0; otherwise to 0.

2.8.4 Sign Flag (S Flag)

The S flag is set to 1 when an arithmetic operation results in a negative value; otherwise to 0.

2.8.5 Register Bank Select Flag (B Flag)

Register bank 0 is selected when the B flag is set to 0. Register bank 1 is selected when this flag is set to 1.

2.8.6 Overflow Flag (O Flag)

The O flag is set to 1 when an arithmetic operation results in an overflow; otherwise to 0.

2.8.7 Interrupt Enable Flag (I Flag)

The I flag enables maskable interrupts.
Maskable interrupts are disabled when the I flag is set to 0, and enabled when it is set to 1. The I flag is set to 0 when an interrupt request is acknowledged.

2.8.8 Stack Pointer Select Flag (U Flag)

ISP is selected when the U flag is set to 0; USP is selected when the U flag is set to 1.
The U flag is set to 0 when a hardware interrupt request is acknowledged or the INT instruction of software interrupt number 0 to 31 is executed.

2.8.9 Processor Interrupt Priority Level (IPL)

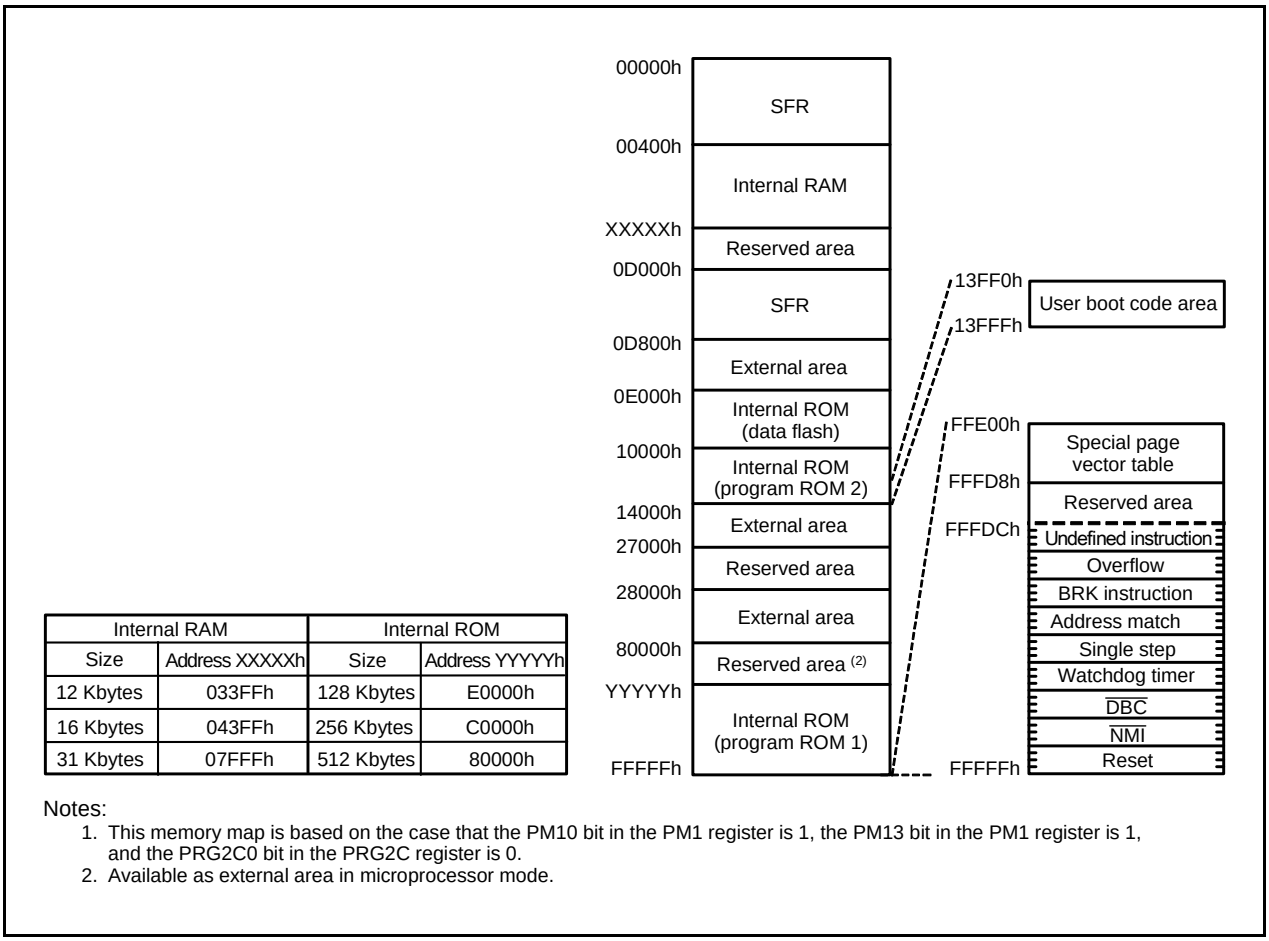
IPL is 3 bits wide and assigns processor interrupt priority levels from level 0 to level 7.
If a requested interrupt has higher priority than IPL, the interrupt is enabled.

2.8.10 Reserved Space

Only write 0 to bits assigned as reserved bits. The read value is undefined.

3. Memory

Figure 3.1 is a memory map of the M16C/64 Group. The M16C/64 Group has 1 Mbyte address space from address 00000h to FFFFFh.
The internal ROM is flash memory. Program ROM 1 is allocated from address FFFFFh to lower.
For example, a 64-Kbyte program ROM 1 is addressed from F0000h to FFFFFh. An 8-Kbyte data flash is addressed from 0E000h to 0FFFFh. This data flash space is used not only for data storage but also for program storage. Program ROM 2 is allocated addresses 10000h to 13FFFh. The user boot code area is assigned addresses 13FF0h to 13FFFh in the program ROM 2.
The fixed interrupt vectors are addressed from FFFDCh to FFFFFh. They store the starting address of each interrupt routine.
The internal RAM is allocated from address 00400h to higher. For example, a 10-Kbyte internal RAM is addressed from 00400h to 02BFFh. The internal RAM is used not only for data storage but also for stack area when subroutines are called or when interrupt request are acknowledged.
SFRs are allocated from address 00000h to 003FFh and from 0D000h to 0D7FFh. Peripheral function control registers are located here. All blank spaces within SFRs are reserved and cannot be accessed by users.
The special page vectors are addressed from FFE00h to FFFD7h. They are used for the JMPS instruction and JSRS instruction. Refer to the **M16C/60, M16C/20, M16C/Tiny Series Software Manual** for details.
In memory expansion mode or microprocessor mode, some spaces are reserved and cannot be accessed by users.



Internal RAM		Internal ROM	
Size	Address XXXXXh	Size	Address YYYYYh
12 Kbytes	033FFh	128 Kbytes	E0000h
16 Kbytes	043FFh	256 Kbytes	C0000h
31 Kbytes	07FFFh	512 Kbytes	80000h

Notes:
1. This memory map is based on the case that the PM10 bit in the PM1 register is 1, the PM13 bit in the PM1 register is 1, and the PRG2C0 bit in the PRG2C register is 0.
2. Available as external area in microprocessor mode.

Figure 3.1 Memory Map

4. Special Function Registers (SFRs)

An SFR (Special Function Register) is a control register for a peripheral function. Tables 4.1 to 4.14 list SFR information.

Table 4.1 SFR Information (1) (1)

Address	Register	Symbol	After Reset
0000h			
0001h			
0002h			
0003h			
0004h	Processor Mode Register 0	PM0	00000000b (CNVSS pin is “L”) 00000011b(CNVSS pin is “H”) (2)
0005h	Processor Mode Register 1	PM1	00001000b
0006h	System Clock Control Register 0	CM0	01001000b
0007h	System Clock Control Register 1	CM1	00100000b
0008h	Chip Select Control Register	CSR	00000001b
0009h			
000Ah	Protect Register	PRCR	00h
000Bh	Data Bank Register	DBR	00h
000Ch	Oscillation Stop Detection Register	CM2	0X000010b (3)
000Dh			
000Eh			
000Fh			
0010h	Program 2 Area Control Register	PRG2C	XXXXXX00b
0011h			
0012h	Peripheral Clock Select Register	PCLKR	00000011b
0013h			
0014h			
0015h	Clock Prescaler Reset Flag	CPSRF	0XXXXXXXb
0016h			
0017h			
0018h	Reset Source Determine Flag	RSTFR	0XXXXXXXb (4)
0019h	Voltage Detection 2 Circuit Flag Register	VCR1	00001000b (2)
001Ah	Voltage Detection Circuit Operation Enable Register	VCR2	000X0000b (Hardware reset 1) 001X0000b (Brown-out reset) (2)
001Bh	Chip Select Expansion Control Register	CSE	00h
001Ch	PLL Control Register 0	PLC0	0X01X010b
001Dh			
001Eh	Processor Mode Register 2	PM2	XX000X01b
001Fh	Low Voltage Detection Interrupt Register	D4INT	00h
0020h			
0021h			
0022h			
0023h			
0024h			
0025h			
0026h			
0027h			
0028h			
0029h			
002Ah	Voltage Monitor 0 Circuit Control Register	VW0C	10001X10b (Hardware Reset 1) 11001X11b (Brown-out reset) (2)
002Bh			
002Ch			
002Dh			
002Eh			
002Fh			

Notes: X: Undefined

1. The blank areas are reserved and cannot be accessed by users.
2. Software reset, watchdog timer reset, and oscillation stop detection reset do not affect bits PM01 and PM00 in the PM0 register, and registers VCR1, VCR2, and VW0C.
3. Oscillation stop detection reset do not affect bits CM20, CM21, and CM27.
4. The CWR bit in the RSTFR register is set to 0 after brown-out reset. This bit does not change by any other reset.

Table 4.2 SFR Information (2) (1)

Address	Register	Symbol	After Reset
0030h			
0031h			
0032h			
0033h			
0034h			
0035h			
0036h			
0037h			
0038h			
0039h			
003Ah			
003Bh			
003Ch			
003Dh			
003Eh			
003Fh			
0040h			
0041h			
0042h	INT7 Interrupt Control Register	INT7IC	XX00X000b
0043h	INT6 Interrupt Control Register	INT6IC	XX00X000b
0044h	INT3 Interrupt Control Register	INT3IC	XX00X000b
0045h	Timer B5 Interrupt Control Register	TB5IC	XXXXX000b
0046h	Timer B4 Interrupt Control Register, UART1 BUS Collision Detection Interrupt Control Register	TB4IC, U1BCNIC	XXXXX000b
0047h	Timer B3 Interrupt Control Register, UART0 BUS Collision Detection Interrupt Control Register	TB3IC, U0BCNIC	XXXXX000b
0048h	SI/O4 Interrupt Control Register, INT5 Interrupt Control Register	S4IC, INT5IC	XX00X000b
0049h	SI/O3 Interrupt Control Register, INT4 Interrupt Control Register	S3IC, INT4IC	XX00X000b
004Ah	UART2 BUS Collision Detection Interrupt Control Register	BCNIC	XXXXX000b
004Bh	DMA0 Interrupt Control Register	DM0IC	XXXXX000b
004Ch	DMA1 Interrupt Control Register	DM1IC	XXXXX000b
004Dh	Key Input Interrupt Control Register	KUPIC	XXXXX000b
004Eh	A/D Conversion Interrupt Control Register	ADIC	XXXXX000b
004Fh	UART2 Transmit Interrupt Control Register	S2TIC	XXXXX000b
0050h	UART2 Receive Interrupt Control Register	S2RIC	XXXXX000b
0051h	UART0 Transmit Interrupt Control Register	S0TIC	XXXXX000b
0052h	UART0 Receive Interrupt Control Register	S0RIC	XXXXX000b
0053h	UART1 Transmit Interrupt Control Register	S1TIC	XXXXX000b
0054h	UART1 Receive Interrupt Control Register	S1RIC	XXXXX000b
0055h	Timer A0 Interrupt Control Register	TA0IC	XXXXX000b
0056h	Timer A1 Interrupt Control Register	TA1IC	XXXXX000b
0057h	Timer A2 Interrupt Control Register	TA2IC	XXXXX000b
0058h	Timer A3 Interrupt Control Register	TA3IC	XXXXX000b
0059h	Timer A4 Interrupt Control Register	TA4IC	XXXXX000b
005Ah	Timer B0 Interrupt Control Register	TB0IC	XXXXX000b
005Bh	Timer B1 Interrupt Control Register	TB1IC	XXXXX000b
005Ch	Timer B2 Interrupt Control Register	TB2IC	XXXXX000b
005Dh	INT0 Interrupt Control Register	INT0IC	XX00X000b
005Eh	INT1 Interrupt Control Register	INT1IC	XX00X000b
005Fh	INT2 Interrupt Control Register	INT2IC	XX00X000b

Note: X: Undefined

1. The blank areas are reserved and cannot be accessed by users.

Table 4.3 SFR Information (3) (1)

Address	Register	Symbol	After Reset
0060h			
0061h			
0062h			
0063h			
0064h			
0065h			
0066h			
0067h			
0068h			
0069h	DMA2 Interrupt Control Register	DM2IC	XXXXX000b
006Ah	DMA3 Interrupt Control Register	DM3IC	XXXXX000b
006Bh	UART5 BUS Collision Detection Interrupt Control Register	U5BCNIC	XXXXX000b
006Ch	UART5 Transmit Interrupt Control Register	S5TIC	XXXXX000b
006Dh	UART5 Receive Interrupt Control Register	S5RIC	XXXXX000b
006Eh	UART6 BUS Collision Detection Interrupt Control Register	U6BCNIC	XXXXX000b
006Fh	UART6 Transmit Interrupt Control Register	S6TIC	XXXXX000b
0070h	UART6 Receive Interrupt Control Register	S6RIC	XXXXX000b
0071h	UART7 BUS Collision Detection Interrupt Control Register	U7BCNIC	XXXXX000b
0072h	UART7 Transmit Interrupt Control Register	S7TIC	XXXXX000b
0073h	UART7 Receive Interrupt Control Register	S7RIC	XXXXX000b
0074h			
0075h			
0076h			
0077h			
0078h			
0079h			
007Ah			
007Bh			
007Ch			
007Dh			
007Eh			
007Fh			
0080h			
0081h			
0082h			
0083h			
0084h			
0085h			
0086h			
0087h			
0088h			
0089h			
008Ah			
008Bh			
008Ch			
008Dh			
008Eh			
008Fh			
0090h			
0091h			
0092h			
0093h			
0094h			
0095h			
0096h			
0097h			
0098h			
0099h			
009Ah			
009Bh			
009Ch			
009Dh			
009Eh			
009Fh to 015Fh			

Note: X: Undefined

1. The blank areas are reserved and cannot be accessed by users.

Table 4.4 SFR Information (4) (1)

Address	Register	Symbol	After Reset
0160h			
0161h			
0162h			
0163h			
0164h			
0165h			
0166h			
0167h			
0168h			
0169h			
016Ah			
016Bh			
016Ch			
016Dh			
016Eh			
016Fh			
0170h			
0171h			
0172h			
0173h			
0174h			
0175h			
0176h			
0177h			
0178h			
0179h			
017Ah			
017Bh			
017Ch			
017Dh			
017Eh			
017Fh			
0180h	DMA0 Source Pointer	SAR0	XXh
0181h			XXh
0182h			0Xh
0183h			
0184h	DMA0 Destination Pointer	DAR0	XXh
0185h			XXh
0186h			0Xh
0187h			
0188h	DMA0 Transfer Counter	TCR0	XXh
0189h			XXh
018Ah			
018Bh			
018Ch	DMA0 Control Register	DM0CON	00000X00b
018Dh			
018Eh			
018Fh			
0190h	DMA1 Source Pointer	SAR1	XXh
0191h			XXh
0192h			0Xh
0193h			
0194h	DMA1 Destination Pointer	DAR1	XXh
0195h			XXh
0196h			0Xh
0197h			
0198h	DMA1 Transfer Counter	TCR1	XXh
0199h			XXh
019Ah			
019Bh			
019Ch	DMA1 Control Register	DM1CON	00000X00b
019Dh			
019Eh			
019Fh			

Note: X: Undefined

1. The blank areas are reserved and cannot be accessed by users.

Table 4.5 SFR Information (5) (1)

Address	Register	Symbol	After Reset
01A0h	DMA2 Source Pointer	SAR2	XXh
01A1h			XXh
01A2h			0Xh
01A3h			
01A4h	DMA2 Destination Pointer	DAR2	XXh
01A5h			XXh
01A6h			0Xh
01A7h			
01A8h	DMA2 Transfer Counter	TCR2	XXh
01A9h			XXh
01AAh			
01ABh			
01ACh	DMA2 Control Register	DM2CON	00000X00b
01ADh			
01AEh			
01AFh			
01B0h	DMA3 Source Pointer	SAR3	XXh
01B1h			XXh
01B2h			0Xh
01B3h			
01B4h	DMA3 Destination Pointer	DAR3	XXh
01B5h			XXh
01B6h			0Xh
01B7h			
01B8h	DMA3 Transfer Counter	TCR3	XXh
01B9h			XXh
01BAh			
01BBh			
01BCh	DMA3 Control Register	DM3CON	00000X00b
01BDh			
01BEh			
01BFh			
01C0h			
01C1h			
01C2h			
01C3h			
01C4h			
01C5h			
01C6h			
01C7h			
01C8h	Timer B Count Source Select Register 0	TBCS0	00h
01C9h	Timer B Count Source Select Register 1	TBCS1	X0h
01CAh			
01CBh			
01CCh			
01CDh			
01CEh			
01CFh			
01D0h	Timer A Count Source Select Register 0	TACS0	00h
01D1h	Timer A Count Source Select Register 1	TACS1	00h
01D2h	Timer A Count Source Select Register 2	TACS2	X0h
01D3h			
01D4h			
01D5h	Timer A Waveform Output Function Select Register	TAPOFS	XXX00000b
01D6h			
01D7h			
01D8h			
01D9h			
01DAh			
01DBh			
01DCh			
01DDh			
01DEh			
01DFh			

Note: X: Undefined

1. The blank areas are reserved and cannot be accessed by users.

Table 4.6 SFR Information (6) (1)

Address	Register	Symbol	After Reset
01E0h			
01E1h			
01E2h			
01E3h			
01E4h			
01E5h			
01E6h			
01E7h			
01E8h	Timer B Count Source Select Register 2	TBCS2	00h
01E9h	Timer B Count Source Select Register 3	TBCS3	X0h
01EAh			
01EBh			
01ECh			
01EDh			
01EEh			
01EFh			
01F0h			
01F1h			
01F2h			
01F3h			
01F4h			
01F5h			
01F6h			
01F7h			
01F8h			
01F9h			
01FAh			
01FBh			
01FCh			
01FDh			
01FEh			
01FFh			
0200h			
0201h			
0202h			
0203h			
0204h			
0205h	Interrupt Source Select Register 3	IFSR3A	00h
0206h	Interrupt Source Select Register 2	IFSR2A	00h
0207h	Interrupt Source Select Register	IFSR	00h
0208h			
0209h			
020Ah			
020Bh			
020Ch			
020Dh			
020Eh	Address Match Interrupt Enable Register	AIER	XXXXXX00b
020Fh	Address Match Interrupt Enable Register 2	AIER2	XXXXXX00b
0210h	Address Match Interrupt Register 0	RMAD0	00h
0211h			00h
0212h			X0h
0213h			
0214h	Address Match Interrupt Register 1	RMAD1	00h
0215h			00h
0216h			X0h
0217h			
0218h	Address Match Interrupt Register 2	RMAD2	00h
0219h			00h
021Ah			X0h
021Bh			
021Ch	Address Match Interrupt Register 3	RMAD3	00h
021Dh			00h
021Eh			X0h
021Fh			

Note: X: Undefined

1. The blank areas are reserved and cannot be accessed by users.

Table 4.7 SFR Information (7) (1)

Address	Register	Symbol	After Reset
0220h	Flash Memory Control Register 0	FMR0	0000 0001b (Other than user boot mode) 0010 0001b (User boot mode)
0221h	Flash Memory Control Register 1	FMR1	00X0XX0Xb
0222h	Flash Memory Control Register 2	FMR2	XXXX0000b
0223h			
0224h			
0225h			
0226h			
0227h			
0228h			
0229h			
022Ah			
022Bh			
022Ch			
022Dh			
022Eh			
022Fh			
0230h	Flash Memory Control Register 6	FMR6	XX0XXX00b
0231h			
0232h			
0233h			
0234h			
0235h			
0236h			
0237h			
0238h			
0239h			
023Ah			
023Bh			
023Ch			
023Dh			
023Eh			
023Fh			
0240h			
0241h			
0242h			
0243h			
0244h	UART0 Special Mode Register 4	U0SMR4	00h
0245h	UART0 Special Mode Register 3	U0SMR3	000X0X0Xb
0246h	UART0 Special Mode Register 2	U0SMR2	X0000000b
0247h	UART0 Special Mode Register	U0SMR	X0000000b
0248h	UART0 Transmit/Receive Mode Register	U0MR	00h
0249h	UART0 Bit Rate Register	U0BRG	XXh
024Ah	UART0 Transmit Buffer Register	U0TB	XXh
024Bh			XXh
024Ch	UART0 Transmit/Receive Control Register 0	U0C0	00001000b
024Dh	UART0 Transmit/Receive Control Register 1	U0C1	00XX0010b
024Eh	UART0 Receive Buffer Register	U0RB	XXh
024Fh			XXh
0250h	UART Transmit/Receive Control Register 2	UCON	X0000000b
0251h			
0252h			
0253h			
0254h	UART1 Special Mode Register 4	U1SMR4	00h
0255h	UART1 Special Mode Register 3	U1SMR3	000X0X0Xb
0256h	UART1 Special Mode Register 2	U1SMR2	X0000000b
0257h	UART1 Special Mode Register	U1SMR	X0000000b
0258h	UART1 Transmit/Receive Mode Register	U1MR	00h
0259h	UART1 Bit Rate Register	U1BRG	XXh
025Ah	UART1 Transmit Buffer Register	U1TB	XXh
025Bh			XXh
025Ch	UART1 Transmit/Receive Control Register 0	U1C0	00001000b
025Dh	UART1 Transmit/Receive Control Register 1	U1C1	00XX0010b
025Eh	UART1 Receive Buffer Register	U1RB	XXh
025Fh			XXh

Note:
1. The blank areas are reserved and cannot be accessed by users.

X: Undefined

Table 4.8 SFR Information (8) (1)

Address	Register	Symbol	After Reset
0260h			
0261h			
0262h			
0263h			
0264h	UART2 Special Mode Register 4	U2SMR4	00h
0265h	UART2 Special Mode Register 3	U2SMR3	000X0X0Xb
0266h	UART2 Special Mode Register 2	U2SMR2	X0000000b
0267h	UART2 Special Mode Register	U2SMR	X0000000b
0268h	UART2 Transmit/Receive Mode Register	U2MR	00h
0269h	UART2 Bit Rate Register	U2BRG	XXh
026Ah	UART2 Transmit Buffer Register	U2TB	XXh
026Bh			XXh
026Ch	UART2 Transmit/Receive Control Register 0	U2C0	00001000b
026Dh	UART2 Transmit/Receive Control Register 1	U2C1	00000010b
026Eh	UART2 Receive Buffer Register	U2RB	XXh
026Fh			XXh
0270h	SI/O3 Transmit/Receive Register	S3TRR	XXh
0271h			
0272h	SI/O3 Control Register	S3C	01000000b
0273h	SI/O3 Bit Rate Register	S3BRG	XXh
0274h	SI/O4 Transmit/Receive Register	S4TRR	XXh
0275h			
0276h	SI/O4 Control Register	S4C	01000000b
0277h	SI/O4 Bit Rate Register	S4BRG	XXh
0278h	SI/O34 Control Register 2	S34C2	00XXX0X0b
0279h			
027Ah			
027Bh			
027Ch			
027Dh			
027Eh			
027Fh			
0280h			
0281h			
0282h			
0283h			
0284h	UART5 Special Mode Register 4	U5SMR4	00h
0285h	UART5 Special Mode Register 3	U5SMR3	000X0X0Xb
0286h	UART5 Special Mode Register 2	U5SMR2	X0000000b
0287h	UART5 Special Mode Register	U5SMR	X0000000b
0288h	UART5 Transmit/Receive Mode Register	U5MR	00h
0289h	UART5 Bit Rate Register	U5BRG	XXh
028Ah	UART5 Transmit Buffer Register	U5TB	XXh
028Bh			XXh
028Ch	UART5 Transmit/Receive Control Register 0	U5C0	00001000b
028Dh	UART5 Transmit/Receive Control Register 1	U5C1	00000010b
028Eh	UART5 Receive Buffer Register	U5RB	XXh
028Fh			XXh
0290h			
0291h			
0292h			
0293h			
0294h	UART6 Special Mode Register 4	U6SMR4	00h
0295h	UART6 Special Mode Register 3	U6SMR3	000X0X0Xb
0296h	UART6 Special Mode Register 2	U6SMR2	X0000000b
0297h	UART6 Special Mode Register	U6SMR	X0000000b
0298h	UART6 Transmit/Receive Mode Register	U6MR	00h
0299h	UART6 Bit Rate Register	U6BRG	XXh
029Ah	UART6 Transmit Buffer Register	U6TB	XXh
029Bh			XXh
029Ch	UART6 Transmit/Receive Control Register 0	U6C0	00001000b
029Dh	UART6 Transmit/Receive Control Register 1	U6C1	00000010b
029Eh	UART6 Receive Buffer Register	U6RB	XXh
029Fh			XXh

Note: X: Undefined

1. The blank areas are reserved and cannot be accessed by users.

Table 4.9 SFR Information (9) (1)

Address	Register	Symbol	After Reset
02A0h			
02A1h			
02A2h			
02A3h			
02A4h	UART7 Special Mode Register 4	U7SMR4	00h
02A5h	UART7 Special Mode Register 3	U7SMR3	000X0X0Xb
02A6h	UART7 Special Mode Register 2	U7SMR2	X0000000b
02A7h	UART7 Special Mode Register	U7SMR	X0000000b
02A8h	UART7 Transmit/Receive Mode Register	U7MR	00h
02A9h	UART7 Bit Rate Register	U7BRG	XXh
02AAh	UART7 Transmit Buffer Register	U7TB	XXh
02ABh			XXh
02ACh	UART7 Transmit/Receive Control Register 0	U7C0	00001000b
02ADh	UART7 Transmit/Receive Control Register 1	U7C1	00000010b
02AEh	UART7 Receive Buffer Register	U7RB	XXh
02AFh			XXh
02B0h			
02B1h			
02B2h			
02B3h			
02B4h			
02B5h			
02B6h			
02B7h			
02B8h			
02B9h			
02BAh			
02BBh			
02BCh			
02BDh			
02BEh			
02BFh			
02C0h			
02C1h			
02C2h			
02C3h			
02C4h			
02C5h			
02C6h			
02C7h			
02C8h			
02C9h			
02CAh			
02CBh			
02CCh			
02CDh			
02CEh			
02CFh			
02D0h			
02D1h			
02D2h			
02D3h			
02D4h			
02D5h			
02D6h			
02D7h			
02D8h			
02D9h			
02DAh			
02DBh			
02DCh			
02DDh			
02DEh			
02DFh			

Note: X: Undefined

1. The blank areas are reserved and cannot be accessed by users.

Table 4.10 SFR Information (10) (1)

Address	Register	Symbol	After Reset
02E0h			
02E1h			
02E2h			
02E3h			
02E4h			
02E5h			
02E6h			
02E7h			
02E8h			
02E9h			
02EAh			
02EBh			
02ECh			
02EDh			
02EEh			
02EFh			
02F0h			
02F1h			
02F2h			
02F3h			
02F4h			
02F5h			
02F6h			
02F7h			
02F8h			
02F9h			
02FAh			
02FBh			
02FCh			
02FDh			
02FEh			
02FFh			
0300h	Timer B3,4,5 Count Start Flag	TBSR	000XXXXXb
0301h			
0302h	Timer A1-1 Register	TA11	XXh
0303h			XXh
0304h	Timer A2-1 Register	TA21	XXh
0305h			XXh
0306h	Timer A4-1 Register	TA41	XXh
0307h			XXh
0308h	Three-Phase PWM Control Register 0	INVC0	00h
0309h	Three-Phase PWM Control Register 1	INVC1	00h
030Ah	Three-Phase Output Buffer Register 0	IDB0	XX111111b
030Bh	Three-Phase Output Buffer Register 1	IDB1	XX111111b
030Ch	Dead Time Timer	DTT	XXh
030Dh	Timer B2 Interrupt Generation Frequency Set Counter	ICTB2	XXh
030Eh			
030Fh			
0310h	Timer B3 Register	TB3	XXh
0311h			XXh
0312h	Timer B4 Register	TB4	XXh
0313h			XXh
0314h	Timer B5 Register	TB5	XXh
0315h			XXh
0316h			
0317h			
0318h			
0319h			
031Ah			
031Bh	Timer B3 Mode Register	TB3MR	00XX0000b
031Ch	Timer B4 Mode Register	TB4MR	00XX0000b
031Dh	Timer B5 Mode Register	TB5MR	00XX0000b
031Eh			
031Fh			

Note: X: Undefined

1. The blank areas are reserved and cannot be accessed by users.

Table 4.11 SFR Information (11) (1)

Address	Register	Symbol	After Reset
0320h	Count Start Flag	TABSR	00h
0321h			
0322h	One-Shot Start Flag	ONSF	00h
0323h	Trigger Select Register	TRGSR	00h
0324h	Up/Down Flag	UDF	00h
0325h			
0326h	Timer A0 Register	TA0	XXh
0327h			XXh
0328h	Timer A1 Register	TA1	XXh
0329h			XXh
032Ah	Timer A2 Register	TA2	XXh
032Bh			XXh
032Ch	Timer A3 Register	TA3	XXh
032Dh			XXh
032Eh	Timer A4 Register	TA4	XXh
032Fh			XXh
0330h	Timer B0 Register	TB0	XXh
0331h			XXh
0332h	Timer B1 Register	TB1	XXh
0333h			XXh
0334h	Timer B2 Register	TB2	XXh
0335h			XXh
0336h	Timer A0 Mode Register	TA0MR	00h
0337h	Timer A1 Mode Register	TA1MR	00h
0338h	Timer A2 Mode Register	TA2MR	00h
0339h	Timer A3 Mode Register	TA3MR	00h
033Ah	Timer A4 Mode Register	TA4MR	00h
033Bh	Timer B0 Mode Register	TB0MR	00XX0000b
033Ch	Timer B1 Mode Register	TB1MR	00XX0000b
033Dh	Timer B2 Mode Register	TB2MR	00XX0000b
033Eh	Timer B2 Special Mode Register	TB2SC	XXXXXX00b
033Fh			
0340h			
0341h			
0342h			
0343h			
0344h			
0345h			
0346h			
0347h			
0348h			
0349h			
034Ah			
034Bh			
034Ch			
034Dh			
034Eh			
034Fh			
0350h			
0351h			
0352h			
0353h			
0354h			
0355h			
0356h			
0357h			
0358h			
0359h			
035Ah			
035Bh			
035Ch			
035Dh			
035Eh			
035Fh			

Note: X: Undefined
1. The blank areas are reserved and cannot be accessed by users.

Table 4.12 SFR Information (12) (1)

Address	Register	Symbol	After Reset
0360h	Pull-Up Control Register 0	PUR0	00h
0361h	Pull-Up Control Register 1	PUR1	00000000b (2) 00000010b
0362h	Pull-Up Control Register 2	PUR2	00h
0363h			
0364h			
0365h			
0366h	Port Control Register	PCR	00000XX0bh
0367h			
0368h			
0369h			
036Ah			
036Bh			
036Ch			
036Dh			
036Eh			
036Fh			
0370h			
0371h			
0372h			
0373h			
0374h			
0375h			
0376h			
0377h			
0378h			
0379h			
037Ah			
037Bh			
037Ch	Count Source Protection Mode Register	CSPR	00h (3)
037Dh	Watchdog Timer Reset Register	WDTR	XXh
037Eh	Watchdog Timer Start Register	WDTS	XXh
037Fh	Watchdog Timer Control Register	WDC	00XXXXXXb
0380h			
0381h			
0382h			
0383h			
0384h			
0385h			
0386h			
0387h			
0388h			
0389h			
038Ah			
038Bh			
038Ch			
038Dh			
038Eh			
038Fh			

Notes: X: Undefined

1. The blank areas are reserved and cannot be accessed by users.
2. Values after hardware reset 1 or brown-out reset are as follows:
   - 00000000b when "L" is input to the CNVSS pin
   - 00000010b when "H" is input to the CNVSS pin

   Values after software reset, watchdog timer reset, and oscillation stop detection reset are as follows:
   - 00000000b when bits PM01 and PM00 in the PM0 register are set to 00b (single-chip mode).
   - 00000010b when bits PM01 and PM00 in the PM0 register are set to 01b (memory expansion mode) or 11b (microprocessor mode).
3. When the CSPROINI bit in the OFS1 address is set to 0, value after reset is 10000000b

Table 4.13 SFR Information (13) (1)

Address	Register	Symbol	After Reset
0390h	DMA2 Source Select Register	DM2SL	00h
0391h			
0392h	DMA3 Source Select Register	DM3SL	00h
0393h			
0394h			
0395h			
0396h			
0397h			
0398h	DMA0 Source Select Register	DM0SL	00h
0399h			
039Ah	DMA1 Source Select Register	DM1SL	00h
039Bh			
039Ch			
039Dh			
039Eh			
039Fh			
03A0h			
03A1h			
03A2h			
03A3h			
03A4h			
03A5h			
03A6h			
03A7h			
03A8h			
03A9h			
03AAh			
03ABh			
03ACh			
03ADh			
03AEh			
03AFh			
03B0h			
03B1h			
03B2h			
03B3h			
03B4h			
03B5h			
03B6h			
03B7h			
03B8h			
03B9h			
03BAh			
03BBh			
03BCh	CRC Data Register	CRCD	XXh
03BDh			XXh
03BEh	CRC Input Register	CRCIN	XXh
03BFh			
03C0h	A/D Register 0	AD0	XXXXXXXXb
03C1h			000000XXb
03C2h	A/D Register 1	AD1	XXXXXXXXb
03C3h			000000XXb
03C4h	A/D Register 2	AD2	XXXXXXXXb
03C5h			000000XXb
03C6h	A/D Register 3	AD3	XXXXXXXXb
03C7h			000000XXb
03C8h	A/D Register 4	AD4	XXXXXXXXb
03C9h			000000XXb

Note: X: Undefined

1. The blank areas are reserved and cannot be accessed by users.

Table 4.14 SFR Information (14) (1)

Address	Register	Symbol	After Reset
03CAh 03CBh	A/D Register 5	AD5	XXXXXXXXb 000000XXb
03CCh 03CDh	A/D Register 6	AD6	XXXXXXXXb 000000XXb
03CEh 03CFh	A/D Register 7	AD7	XXXXXXXXb 000000XXb
03D0h			
03D1h			
03D2h			
03D3h			
03D4h	A/D Control Register 2	ADCON2	0000X00Xb
03D5h			
03D6h	A/D Control Register 0	ADCON0	00000XXXb
03D7h	A/D Control Register 1	ADCON1	0000X000b
03D8h	D/A0 Register	DA0	00h
03D9h			
03DAh	D/A1 Register	DA1	00h
03DBh			
03DCh	D/A Control Register	DACON	00h
03DDh			
03DEh			
03DFh			
03E0h	Port P0 Register	P0	XXh
03E1h	Port P1 Register	P1	XXh
03E2h	Port P0 Direction Register	PD0	00h
03E3h	Port P1 Direction Register	PD1	00h
03E4h	Port P2 Register	P2	XXh
03E5h	Port P3 Register	P3	XXh
03E6h	Port P2 Direction Register	PD2	00h
03E7h	Port P3 Direction Register	PD3	00h
03E8h	Port P4 Register	P4	XXh
03E9h	Port P5 Register	P5	XXh
03EAh	Port P4 Direction Register	PD4	00h
03EBh	Port P5 Direction Register	PD5	00h
03ECh	Port P6 Register	P6	XXh
03EDh	Port P7 Register	P7	XXh
03EEh	Port P6 Direction Register	PD6	00h
03EFh	Port P7 Direction Register	PD7	00h
03F0h	Port P8 Register	P8	XXh
03F1h	Port P9 Register	P9	XXh
03F2h	Port P8 Direction Register	PD8	00h
03F3h	Port P9 Direction Register	PD9	00h
03F4h	Port P10 Register	P10	XXh
03F5h			
03F6h	Port P10 Direction Register	PD10	00h
03F7h			
03F8h			
03F9h			
03FAh			
03FBh			
03FCh			
03FDh			
03FEh			
03FFh			
D000h to D7FFh			

Note: X: Undefined

1. The blank areas are reserved and cannot be accessed by users.

5. Reset

Hardware reset 1, brown-out reset, software reset, watchdog timer reset and oscillation stop detection reset are available to reset the microcomputer.

5.1 Hardware Reset 1

The microcomputer resets pins, the CPU, and SFR by setting the $\overline{\text{RESET}}$ pin. If the supply voltage meets the recommended operating conditions, the microcomputer resets all pins, the CPU, and SFR when an "L" signal is applied to the $\overline{\text{RESET}}$ pin (see **Table 5.1 "Pin Status When RESET Pin Level is "L""**).
When the signal applied to the $\overline{\text{RESET}}$ pin changes low ("L") to high ("H"), the microcomputer executes the program in an address indicated by the reset vector. The 125 kHz on-chip oscillator clock divided by 8 is automatically selected as a CPU clock after reset.
Refer to **4. "Special Function Registers (SFRs)"** for SFR states after reset.
The internal RAM is not reset. When an "L" signal is applied to the $\overline{\text{RESET}}$ pin while writing data to the internal RAM, the internal RAM is in an indeterminate state.
Figure 5.1 shows an Example Reset Circuit. Figure 5.2 shows a Reset Sequence. Table 5.1 lists Pin Status When $\overline{\text{RESET}}$ Pin Level is "L".

5.1.1 Reset on a Stable Supply Voltage

(1) Apply "L" to the $\overline{\text{RESET}}$ pin
(2) Wait for 1/fOCO-S × 20
(3) Apply an "H" signal to the $\overline{\text{RESET}}$ pin

5.1.2 Power-on Reset

(1) Apply "L" to the $\overline{\text{RESET}}$ pin
(2) Raise the supply voltage to the recommended operating level
(3) Insert td(P-R) ms as wait time for the internal voltage to stabilize
(4) Wait for 1/fOCO-S × 20
(5) Apply "H" to the $\overline{\text{RESET}}$ pin

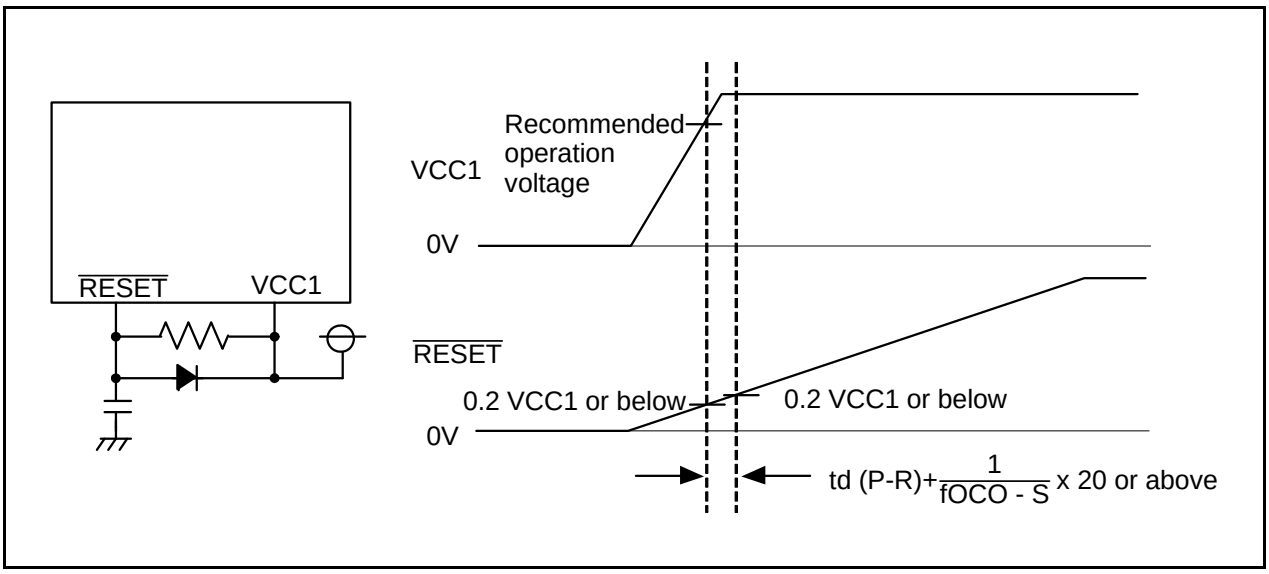


Figure 5.1 Example Reset Circuit

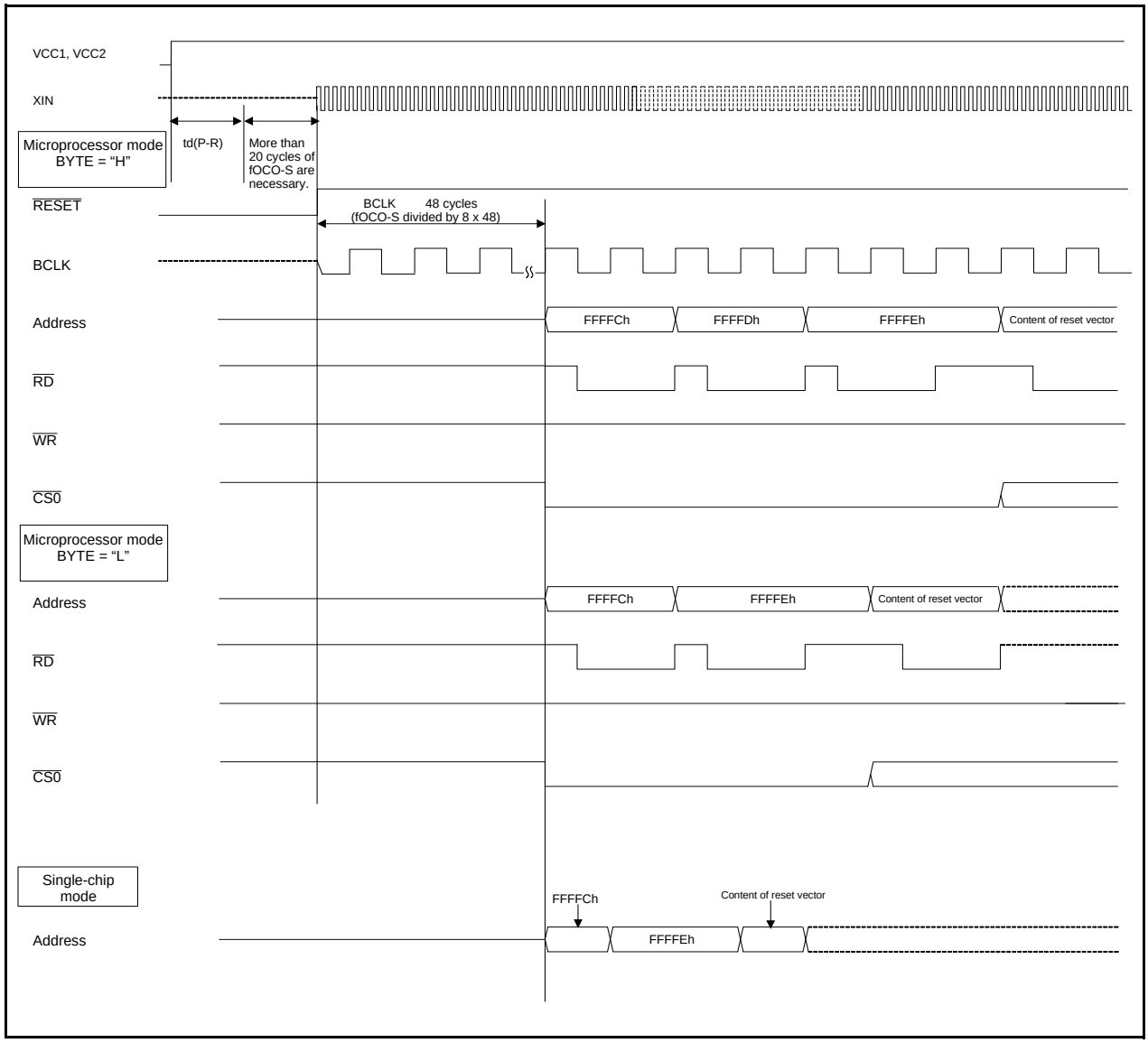


Figure 5.2 Reset Sequence

Table 5.1 Pin Status When $\overline{\text{RESET}}$ Pin Level is "L"

Pin Name	Status		
	CNVSS = VSS	CNVSS = VCC1 (1)	
		BYTE = VSS	BYTE = VCC1
P0	Input port	Data input	Data input
P1	Input port	Data input	Input port
P2, P3, P4_0 to P4_3	Input port	Address output (undefined)	Address output (undefined)
P4_4	Input port	$\overline{\text{CS0}}$ output ("H" is output)	$\overline{\text{CS0}}$ output ("H" is output)
P4_5 to P4_7	Input port	Input port (pulled high)	Input port (pulled high)
P5_0	Input port	$\overline{\text{WR}}$ output ("H" is output)	$\overline{\text{WR}}$ output ("H" is output)
P5_1	Input port	$\overline{\text{BHE}}$ output (undefined)	$\overline{\text{BHE}}$ output (undefined)
P5_2	Input port	$\overline{\text{RD}}$ output ("H" is output)	$\overline{\text{RD}}$ output ("H" is output)
P5_3	Input port	BCLK output	BCLK output
P5_4	Input port	$\overline{\text{HLDA}}$ output (The output value depends on the input to the $\overline{\text{HOLD}}$ pin)	$\overline{\text{HLDA}}$ output (The output value depends on the input to the $\overline{\text{HOLD}}$ pin)
P5_5	Input port	$\overline{\text{HOLD}}$ input (2)	$\overline{\text{HOLD}}$ input (2)
P5_6	Input port	ALE output ("L" is output)	ALE output ("L" is output)
P5_7	Input port	$\overline{\text{RDY}}$ input	$\overline{\text{RDY}}$ input
P6, P7, P8, P9, P10	Input port	Input port	Input port

Note:
1. Shown here is the valid pin state when the internal power supply voltage has stabilized after power on. When CNVSS = VCC1, the pin state is indeterminate until the internal power supply voltage stabilizes.
2. Apply a "H" signal.

5.2 Brown-out Reset

The microcomputer resets pins, the CPU, or SFRs by setting the built-in voltage detection 0 circuit. The voltage detection 0 circuit monitors the voltage applied to the VCC1 pin (Vdet0).

The microcomputer resets pins, the CPU, and SFR as soon as the voltage that is applied to the VCC1 pin drops to Vdet0 or below.

Then, 125 kHz on-chip oscillator clock starts counting when the voltage that is applied to the VCC1 pin goes up to Vdet0 or above. The internal reset signal becomes “H” after the 125 kHz on-chip oscillator clock is counted 32 times, and then reset sequence starts (see Figure 5.2). The 125 kHz on-chip oscillator clock divided by 8 is automatically selected as a CPU clock after reset.

Refer to **4. “Special Function Registers (SFRs)”** for the SFR status after brown-out reset.

The internal RAM is not reset. When the voltage that is applied to the VCC1 pin drops to Vdet0 or below while writing data to the internal RAM, the internal RAM is in an indeterminate state.

Refer to **6. “Voltage Detection Circuit”** for details of the voltage detection 0 circuit.

5.3 Software Reset

The microcomputer resets pins, the CPU, and SFRs when the PM03 bit in the PM0 register is set to 1 (microcomputer reset). Then the microcomputer executes the program in an address determined by the reset vector. The 125 kHz on-chip oscillator clock divided by 8 is automatically selected as a CPU clock after reset.

In the software reset, the microcomputer does not reset a part of the SFRs. Refer to **4. “Special Function Registers (SFRs)”** for details.

The internal RAM is not reset.

5.4 Watchdog Timer Reset

The microcomputer resets pins, the CPU, and SFRs when the PM12 bit in the PM1 register is set to 1 (reset when watchdog timer underflows) and the watchdog timer underflows. Then the microcomputer executes the program in an address determined by the reset vector. The 125 kHz on-chip oscillator clock divided by 8 is automatically selected as a CPU clock after reset.

In the watchdog timer reset, the microcomputer does not reset a part of the SFRs. Refer to **4. “Special Function Registers (SFRs)”** for details.

The internal RAM is not reset. When the watchdog timer underflows while writing data to the internal RAM, the internal RAM is in an indeterminate state.

Refer to **13. “Watchdog Timer”** for details.

5.5 Oscillation Stop Detection Reset

The microcomputer resets and stops pins, the CPU, and SFRs when the CM27 bit in the CM2 register is 0 (reset when oscillation stop detected), if it detects main clock oscillation circuit stop. Refer to **10.6 “Oscillation Stop and Re-Oscillation Detect Function”** for details.

In the oscillation stop detection reset, the microcomputer does not reset a part of the SFRs. Refer to **4. “Special Function Registers (SFRs)”** for details. Processor mode remains unchanged since bits PM01 to PM00 in the PM0 register are not reset.

5.6 Internal Space

Figure 5.3 shows CPU Register Status After Reset. Refer to **4. "Special Function Registers (SFRs)"** for SFR states after reset.

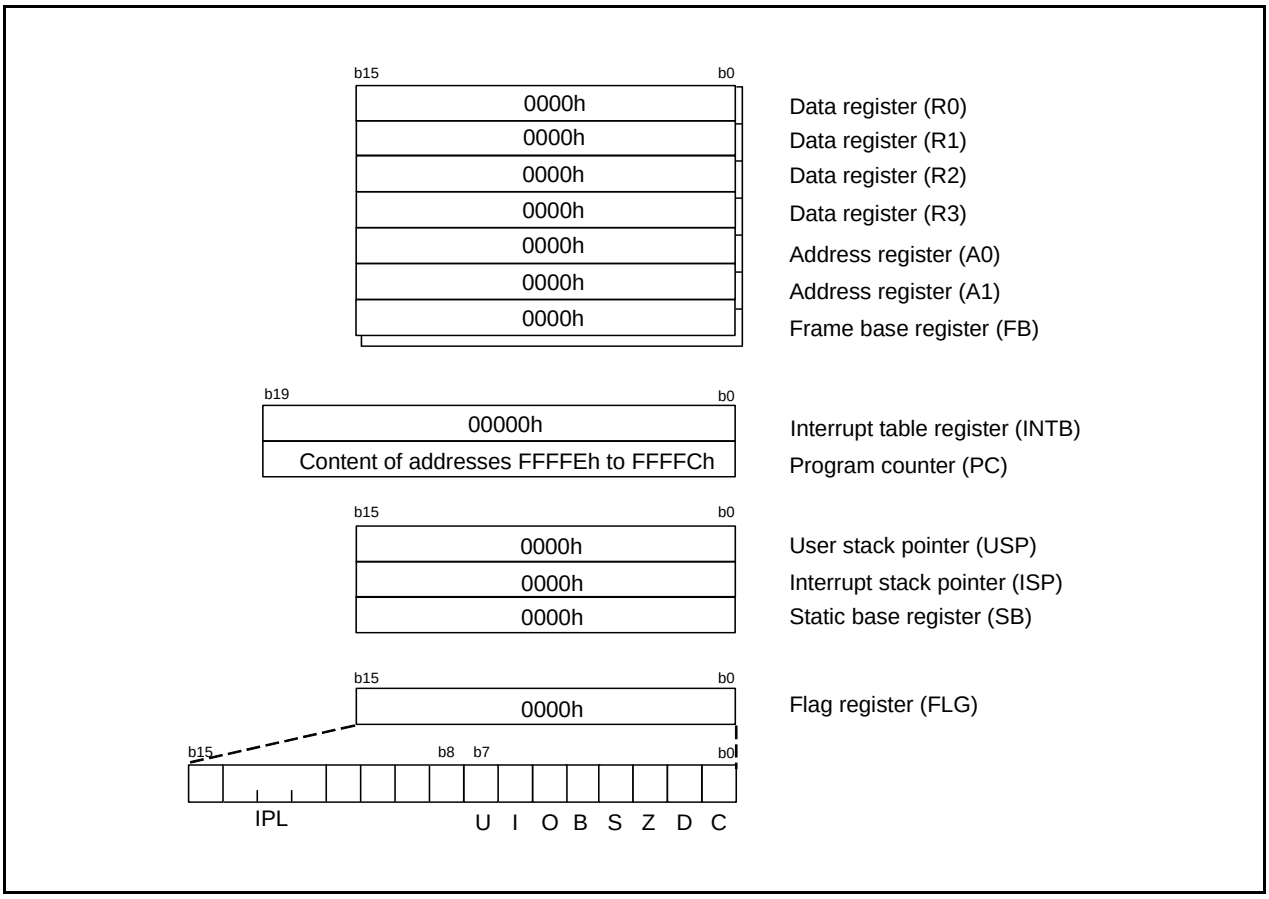


Figure 5.3 CPU Register Status After Reset

6. Voltage Detection Circuit

The voltage detection circuit consists of the voltage detection 0 circuit and the low voltage detection circuit.

The voltage detection 0 circuit monitors the voltage applied to the VCC1 pin. The microcomputer is reset if the voltage detection 0 circuit detects VCC1 is Vdet0 or below.

The low voltage detection circuit also monitors the voltage applied to the VCC1 pin. The low voltage detection signal is generated when the low voltage detection circuit detects that VCC1 passes through Vdet2. This signal generates the low voltage detection interrupt. The VC13 bit in the VCR1 register determines whether VCC1 is Vdet2 and above or below Vdet2.

The voltage detection circuit is available when VCC1 = 5 V.

Figure 6.1 shows a Voltage Detection Circuit Block Diagram. Figure 6.2 shows the Registers VCR1 and VCR2, Figure 6.3 shows the D4INT Register, and Figure 6.4 shows the VW0C Register.

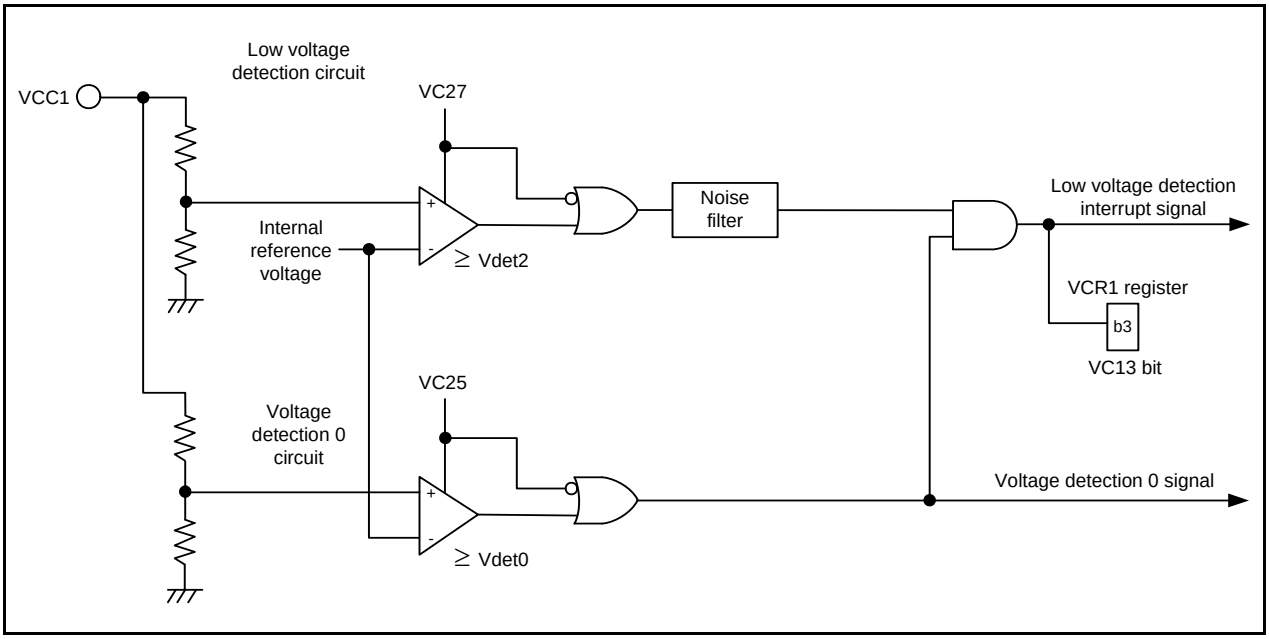
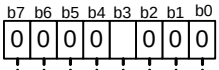


Figure 6.1 Voltage Detection Circuit Block Diagram

Voltage Detection 2 Circuit Flag Register

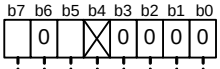


Symbol	Address	After Reset (2)
VCR1	0019h	00001000b

Bit Symbol	Bit Name	Function	RW
— (b2-b0)	Reserved bits	Set to 0	RW
VC13	Low voltage monitor flag (1)	0 : VCC1 < Vdet2 1 : VCC1 ≥ Vdet2	RO
— (b7-b4)	Reserved bits	Set to 0	RW

Notes :
1. The VC13 bit is enabled when the VC27 bit in the VCR2 register is set to 1 (low voltage detection circuit enabled). The VC13 bit is always 1 (VCC1 ≥ Vdet2) when the VC27 bit is set to 0 (low voltage detection circuit disabled).
2. This register dose not change at software reset, watchdog timer reset, and oscillation stop detection reset.

Voltage Detection Circuit Operation Enable Register (1)



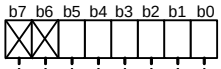
Symbol	Address	After Reset (4)
VCR2	001Ah	000X0000b (Hardware reset 1) 001X0000b (Brown-out reset)

Bit Symbol	Bit Name	Function	RW
— (b3-b0)	Reserved bits	Set to 0	RW
— (b4)	No register bit. If necessary, set to 0. Read as undefined value		—
VC25	Voltage detection 0 enable bit (2, 5)	0 : Disable voltage detection 0 circuit 1 : Enable voltage detection 0 circuit	RW
— (b6)	Reserved bit	Set to 0	RW
VC27	Low voltage monitor bit (3, 5)	0 : Disable low voltage detection circuit 1 : Enable low voltage detection circuit	RW

Notes :
1. Write to this register after setting the PRC3 bit in the PRCR register to 1 (write enabled).
2. To use brown-out reset, set the VC25 bit to 1 (voltage detection 0 circuit enabled).
3. When the VC13 bit in the VCR1 register and D42 bit in the D4INT register are used or the D40 bit is set to 1 (low voltage detection interrupt enabled), set the VC27 bit to 1 (low voltage detection circuit enabled).
4. This register does not change at software reset, watchdog timer reset, and oscillation stop detection reset.
5. The detection circuit does not start operation until td(E-A) elapses after the VC25 bit or VC27 bit is set to 1.

Figure 6.2 Registers VCR1 and VCR2

Low Voltage Detection Interrupt Register (1)



Symbol	Address	After Reset
D4INT	001Fh	00h

Bit Symbol	Bit Name	Function	RW
D40	Low voltage detection interrupt enable bit (5)	0 : Disabled 1 : Enabled	RW
D41	STOP mode deactivation control bit (4, 6)	0 : Disabled (the low voltage detection interrupt is not used for recovery from stop mode) 1 : Enabled (the low voltage detection interrupt is used for recovery from stop mode)	RW
D42	Voltage change detection flag (2)	0 : Not detected 1 : Vdet2 passing detection	RW (3)
D43	WDT overflow detect flag	0 : Not detected 1 : Detected	RW (3)
DF0	Sampling clock select bit	b5 b4 0 0 : D4INT clock divided by 8 0 1 : D4INT clock divided by 16 1 0 : D4INT clock divided by 32 1 1 : D4INT clock divided by 64	RW
DF1			RW
— (b7-b6)	No register bits. If necessary, set to 0. Read as undefined value.		—

Notes :
1. Write to this register after setting the PRC3 bit in the PRCR register to 1 (write enabled).
2. This flag is enabled when the VC27 bit in the VCR2 register is set to 1 (low voltage detection circuit enabled). If the VC27 bit is set to 0 (low voltage detection circuit disabled), the D42 bit is set to 0 (not detected).
3. This bit is set to 0 by writing a 0 in a program. (writing a 1 has no effect.)
4. If the low voltage detection interrupt needs to be used to get out of stop mode again after once used for that purpose, reset the D41 bit by writing a 0 and then a 1.
5. The D40 bit is effective when the VC27 bit in the VCR2 register = 1.
   To set the D40 bit to 1, set bits in the following order.
   (a) Set the VC27 bit to 1.
   (b) Wait for td(E-A) until the detection circuit is actuated.
   (c) Wait for the sampling time. (See **Table 6.3 Sampling Period**.)
   (d) Set the D40 bit to 1.
6. This bit is used for wait mode exiting control when the CM02 bit in the CM0 register is 1 (stop peripheral function clock f1 in wait mode).

Figure 6.3 D4INT Register

Voltage Monitor 0 Circuit Control Register (1)

b7	b6	b5	b4	b3	b2	b1	b0
1	1				0		

Symbol	Address	After Reset (2)
VW0C	002Ah	10001X10b (Hardware reset 1) 11001X11b (Brown-out reset)

Bit Symbol	Bit Name	Function	RW
VW0C0	Brown-out reset enable bit (3)	0 : Disabled 1 : Enabled	RW
VW0C1	Voltage monitor 0 digital filter disable mode select bit	0 : Enable digital filter 1 : Disable digital filter	RW
— (b2)	Reserved bit	Set to 0. Read as undefined value	RW
— (b3)	Reserved bit	Read as undefined value	RO
VW0F0	Sampling clock select bit	b5 b4 0 0 : fOCO-S divided by 1 0 1 : fOCO-S divided by 2 1 0 : fOCO-S divided by 4 1 1 : fOCO-S divided by 8	RW
VW0F1			
— (b7-b6)	Reserved bits	Set to 1	RW

Notes :
1. Set the PRC3 bit in the PRCR register to 1 (write enabled) to rewrite the VW0C register.
2. The value of this register remain unchanged after software reset, watchdog timer reset, or oscillation stop detection reset.
3. Set the VC25 bit in the VCR2 register to 1 (voltage detection 0 circuit enabled) to enable the VW0C0 bit. Set the VW0C0 bit to 0 (disabled) when the VC25 bit is set to 0 (voltage detection 0 circuit disabled).

Figure 6.4 VW0C Register

6.1 Brown-out Reset

Figure 6.5 is a block diagram illustrating brown-out reset generation circuit. Table 6.1 shows a setting procedure of the bits for brown-out reset. Figure 6.6 provides an example of brown-out reset operation.
When using brown-out reset to exit stop mode, set the VW0C1 bit in the VW0C register to 1 (digital filter disabled).

Table 6.1 Setting Procedures of the Bits for Brown-out Reset

Procedure	When using the digital filter	When not using the digital filter
1	Set the PM25 bit in the PM2 register to 1 (D4INT clock provide enable)	
2	Set the VC25 bit in the VCR2 register to 1 (voltage detection 0 circuit enabled)	
3	Wait for td (E-A)	
4	Use bits VW0F0 to VW0F1 in the VW0C register to select the digital filter sampling clock. Set the VW0C1 bit to 0 (digital filter enabled), bits 6 and 7 to 1	Set the VW0C1 bit in the VW0C register to 1 (digital filter disabled), and bits 6 and 7 to 1
5	Set bit 2 in the VW0C register to 0 (setting bit 2 to 0 once again after procedure 3 is necessary)	
6	Set the CM14 bit in the CM1 register to 0 (125 kHz on-chip oscillator oscillates)	-
7	Wait for digital filter sampling clock x 4 cycles	- (no wait time)
8	Set the VW0C0 bit in the VW0C register to 1 (brown-out reset enabled)	

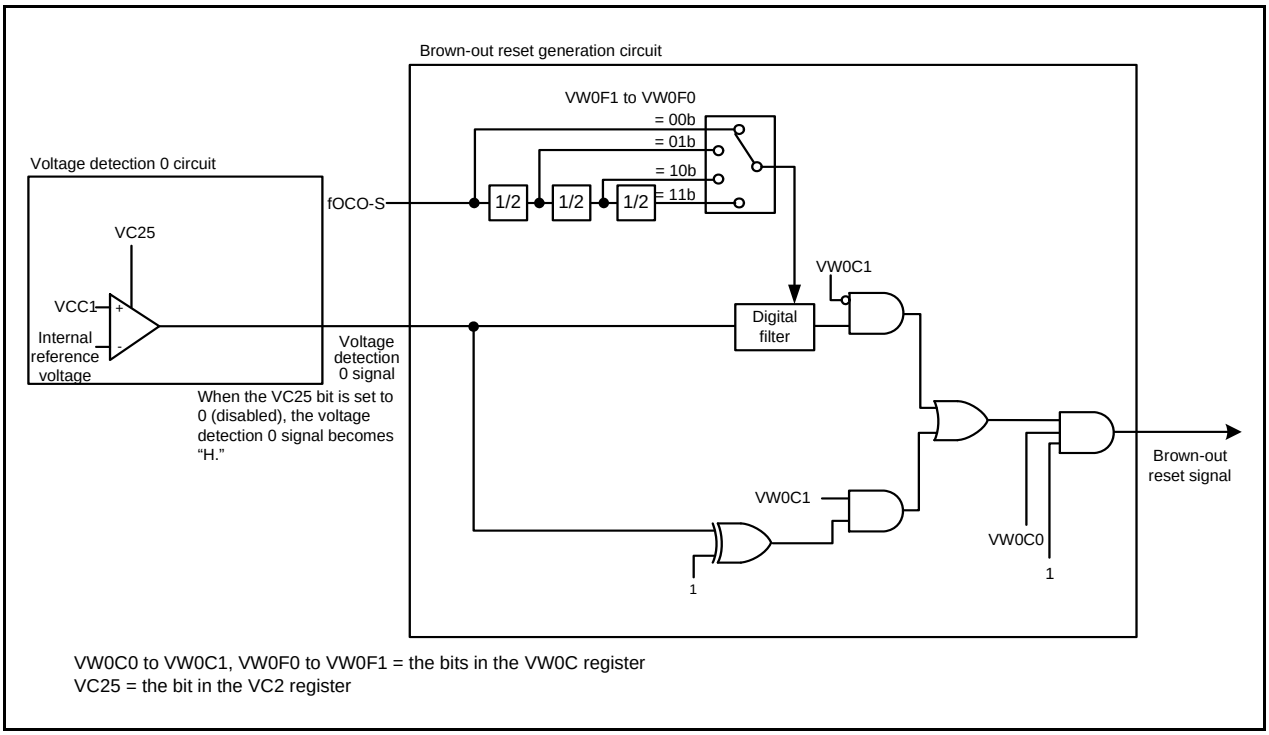


Figure 6.5 Brown-out Reset Generation Circuit

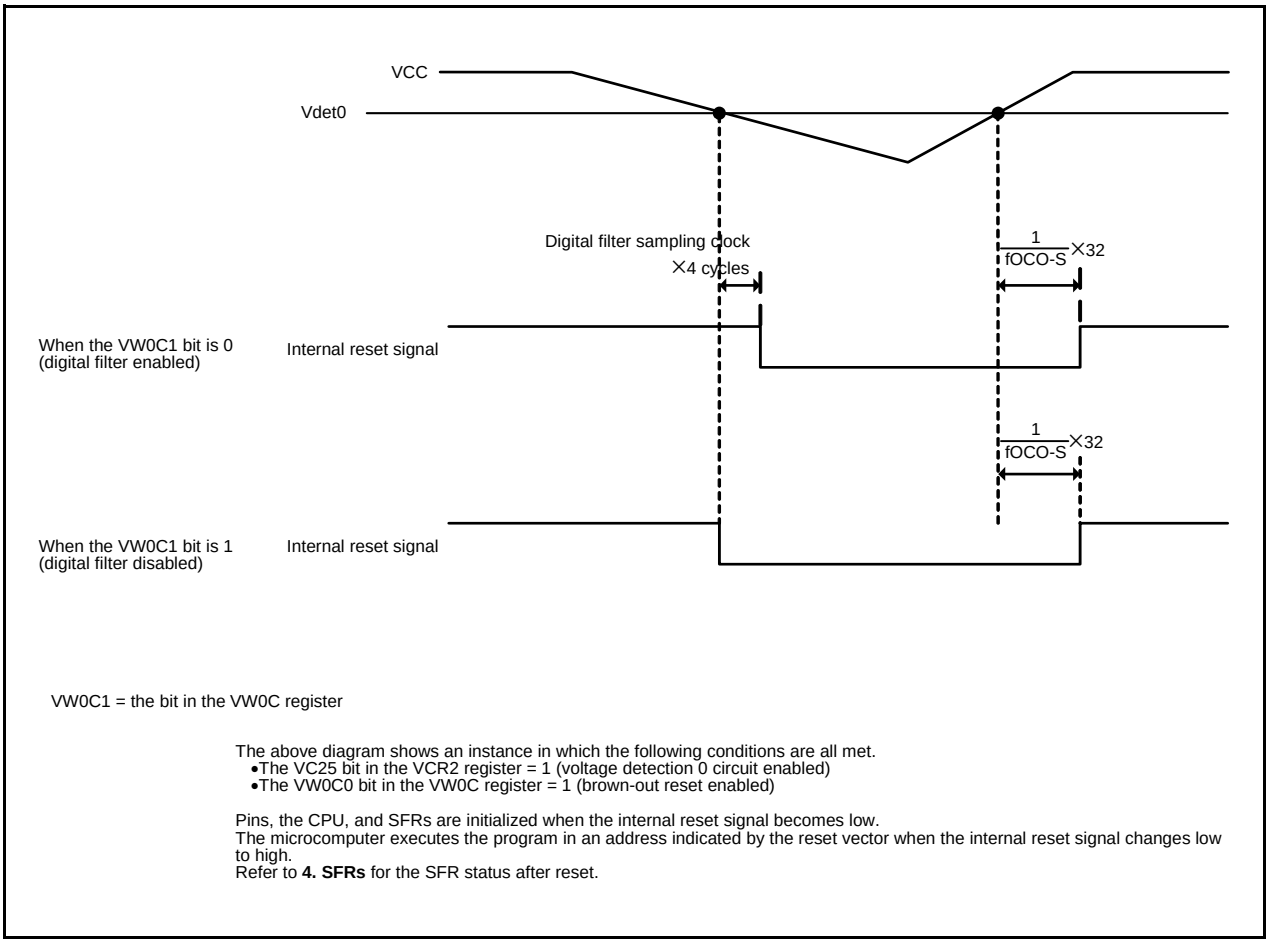


Figure 6.6 Brown-out Reset Operation Example

6.2 Low Voltage Detection Interrupt

If the D40 bit in the D4INT register is set to 1 (low voltage detection interrupt enabled), the low voltage detection interrupt request is generated when the voltage applied to the VCC1 pin is above or below Vdet2. The low voltage detection interrupt shares the same interrupt vector with the watchdog timer interrupt, oscillation stop, and re-oscillation detection interrupt.

Set the D41 bit in the D4INT register to 1 (enabled) to use the low voltage detection interrupt to exit stop mode.

The D42 bit in the D4INT register is set to 1 as soon as the voltage applied to the VCC1 pin reaches Vdet2 due to the voltage rise and voltage drop. When the D42 bit changes 0 to 1, the low voltage detection interrupt request is generated. Set the D42 bit to 0 by program. However, when the D41 bit is set to 1 and the microcomputer is in stop mode, the low voltage detection interrupt request is generated regardless of the D42 bit state if the voltage applied to the VCC1 pin is detected to be above Vdet2. The microcomputer then exits stop mode.

Table 6.2 shows Low Voltage Detection Interrupt Request Generation Conditions.

Bits DF1 to DF0 in the D4INT register determine the sampling period that detects the voltage applied to the VCC1 pin reaches Vdet2. Table 6.3 shows the Sampling Periods. Figure 6.7 shows Low Voltage detection Interrupt Generation Block Diagram, and Figure 6.8 shows a Low Voltage Detection Interrupt Generation Circuit Operation Example

Table 6.2 Low Voltage Detection Interrupt Request Generation Conditions

Operating Mode	VC27 Bit	D40 Bit	D41 Bit	D42 Bit	CM02 Bit	VC13 Bit
Normal Operating Mode (1)	1	1	-	0 to 1	-	0 to 1 (3)
						1 to 0 (3)
Wait Mode (2)			-	0 to 1	0	0 to 1 (3)
						1 to 0 (3)
				-	1	0 to 1
Stop Mode (2)			1	-	0	0 to 1

- indicates either 0 or 1 is settable.

Note:
1. The status except wait mode and stop mode is handled as normal mode. (Refer to **10. "Clock Generation Circuit"**)
2. Refer to **6.3 "Limitations on Exiting Stop Mode"** and **6.4 "Limitations on Exiting Wait Mode"**.
3. An interrupt request for voltage reduction is generated after the value of the VC13 bit changes and a sampling time elapses. See **Figure 6.8 "Low Voltage Detection Interrupt Generation Circuit Operation Example"** for details.

Table 6.3 Sampling Periods

CPU Clock (D4INT clock) (MHz)	Sampling Clock (μs)			
	DF1 to DF0 = 00 (CPU clock divided by 8)	DF1 to DF0 = 01 (CPU clock divided by 16)	DF1 to DF0 = 10 (CPU clock divided by 32)	DF1 to DF0 = 11 (CPU clock divided by 64)
16	3.0	6.0	12.0	24.0

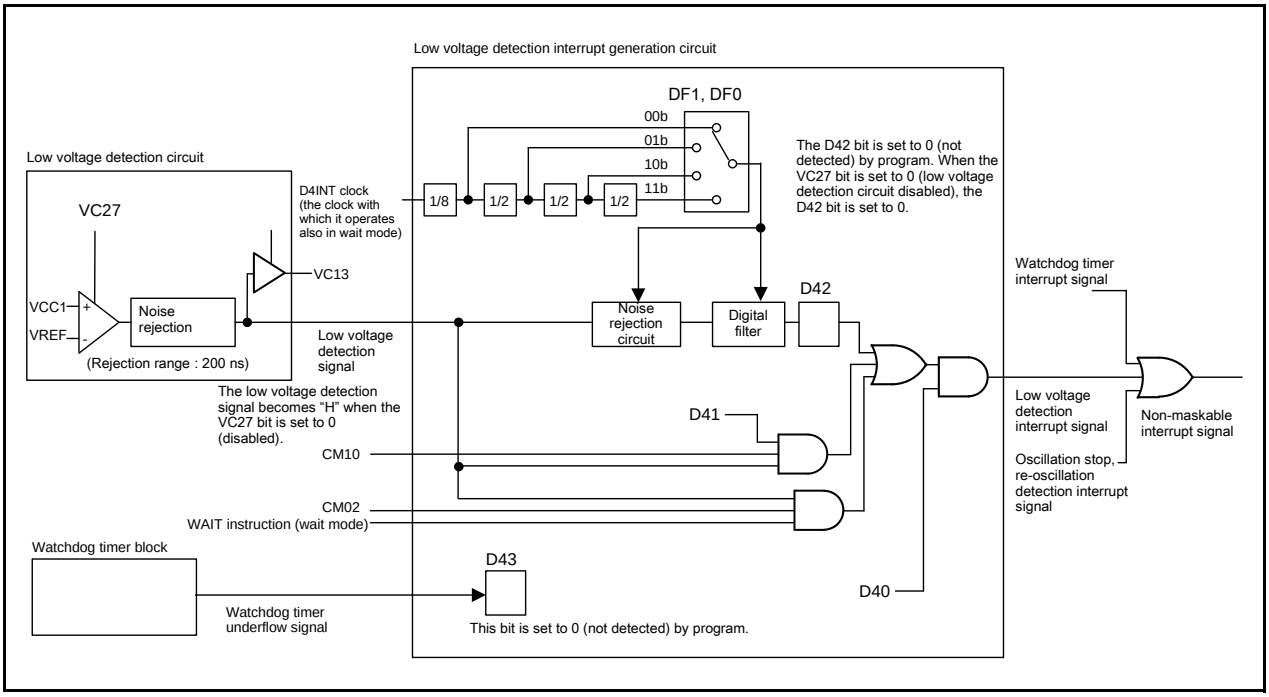


Figure 6.7 Low Voltage detection Interrupt Generation Block Diagram

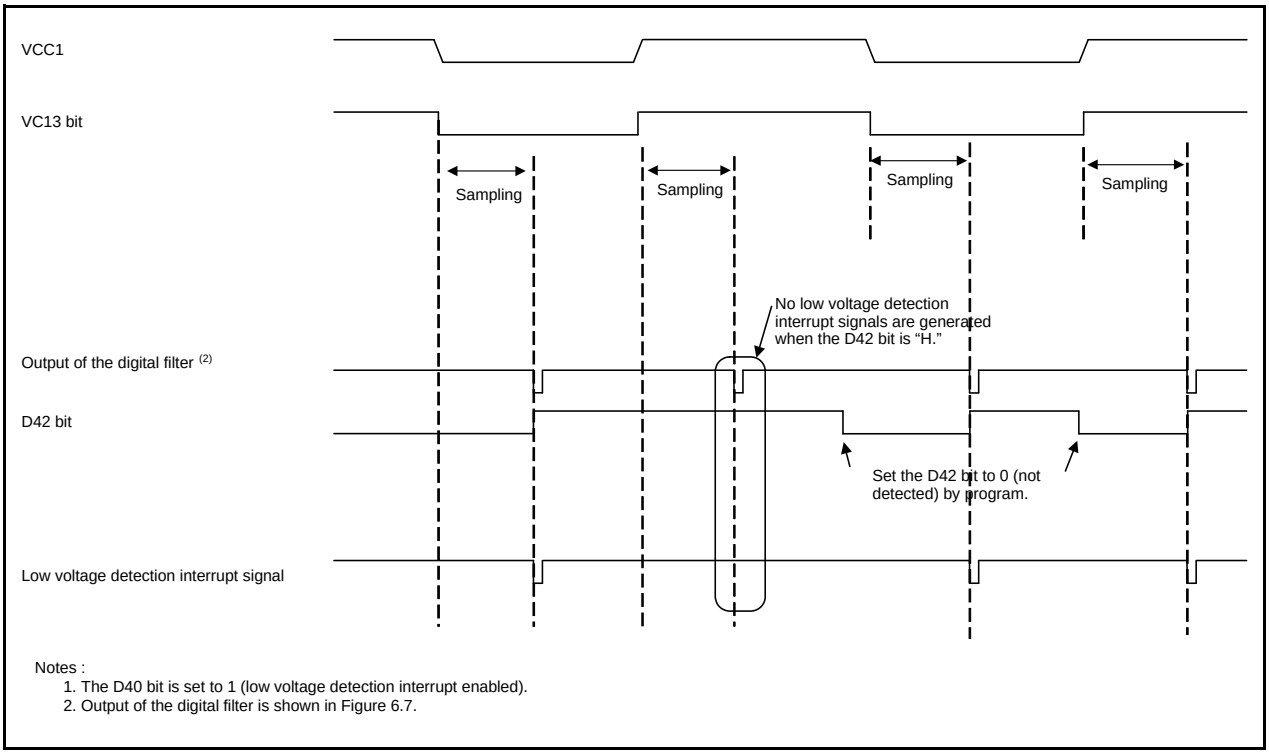


Figure 6.8 Low Voltage Detection Interrupt Generation Circuit Operation Example

6.3 Limitations on Exiting Stop Mode

The low voltage detection interrupt is immediately generated and the microcomputer exits stop mode if the CM10 bit in the CM1 register is set to 1 (stop mode) under the conditions below.

- The VC27 bit in the VCR2 register is set to 1 (low voltage detection circuit enabled)
- The D40 bit in the D4INT register is set to 1 (low voltage detection interrupt enabled)
- The D41 bit in the D4INT register is set to 1 (low voltage detection interrupt is used to exit stop mode)
- The voltage applied to the VCC1 pin is higher than Vdet2 (the VC13 bit in the VCR1 register is 1)

If the microcomputer is set to enter stop mode when the voltage applied to the VCC1 pin drops below Vdet2 and to exit stop mode when the voltage applied rises to Vdet2 or above, set the CM10 bit to 1 when VC13 bit is 0 (VCC1 < Vdet2).

6.4 Limitations on Exiting Wait Mode

The low voltage detection interrupt is immediately generated and the microcomputer exits wait mode If WAIT instruction is executed under the conditions below.

- The CM02 bit in the CM0 register is set to 1 (stop peripheral function clock)
- The VC27 bit in the VCR2 register is set to 1 (low voltage detection circuit enabled)
- The D40 bit in the D4INT register is set to 1 (low voltage detection interrupt enabled)
- The D41 bit in the D4INT register is set to 1 (low voltage detection interrupt is used to exit wait mode)
- The voltage applied to the VCC1 pin is higher than Vdet2 (the VC13 bit in the VCR1 register is 1)

If the microcomputer is set to enter wait mode when the voltage applied to the VCC1 pin drops below Vdet2 and to exit wait mode when the voltage applied rises to Vdet2 or above, perform WAIT instruction when the VC13 bit is 0 (VCC1 < Vdet2).

6.5 Cold Start-up / Warm Start-up Discrimination

As for the cold start-up / warm start-up discrimination, the CWR bit in the RSTFR register determines either cold start-up (reset process) when power-on or warm start-up (reset process) when reset signal is applied during the microcomputer running.

The value of the CWR bit is 0 when power is applied. The CWR bit is also set to 0 after brown-out reset. The CWR bit is set to 1 by writing a 1 in a program and does not change at hardware reset 1, software reset, watchdog timer reset, and oscillation stop detection reset.

Use brown-out reset for cold start-up / warm start-up discrimination.

Follow Table 6.1 Setting Procedures of the Bits for Brown-out Reset to set the bits for brown-out reset.

Figure 6.9 shows Cold Start-up / Warm Start-up Discrimination Example. Figure 6.10 shows RSTFR Register.

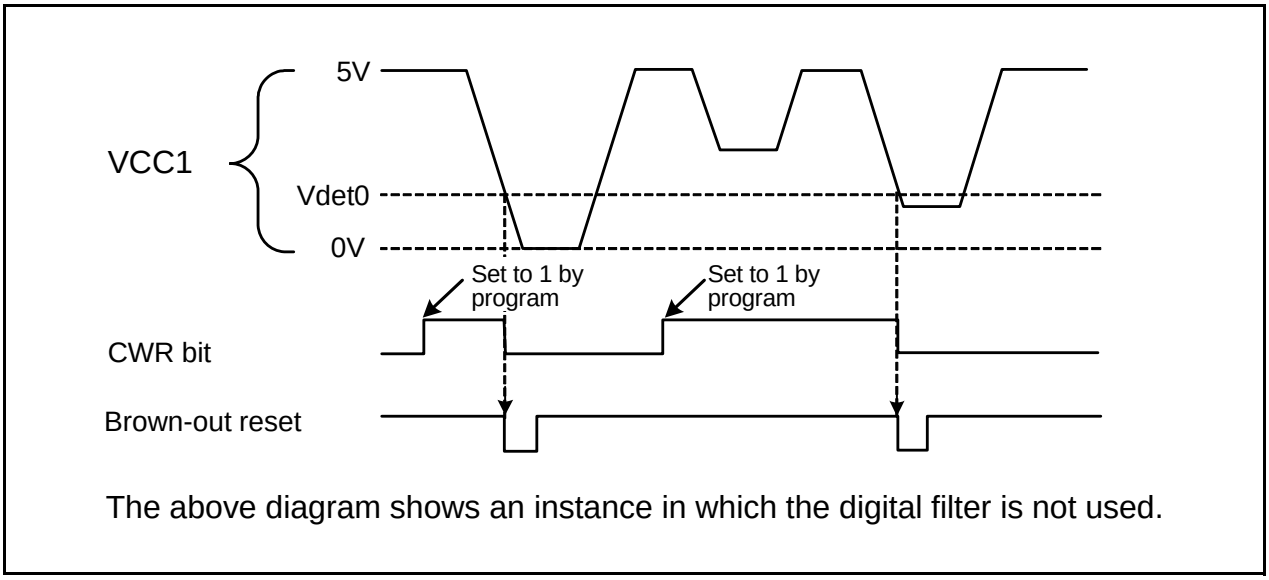
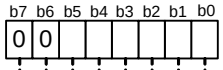


Figure 6.9 Cold Start-up / Warm Start-up Discrimination Example

Reset Source Determine Flag



Symbol	Address	After Reset
RSTFR	0018h	0XXXXXXXb (1)

Bit Symbol	Bit Name	Function	RW
CWR	Cold start-up / warm start determine flag (2, 3)	0 : Cold start-up 1 : Warm start-up	RW
— (b5-b1)	Reserved bits	Read as undefined value	RO
— (b7-b6)	Reserved bits	Set to 0	RW

Notes :
1. The CWR bit is set to 0 (cold start-up) after power activation or brown-out reset. The CWR bit remains unchanged after hardware reset 1, software reset, watchdog timer reset, or oscillation stop detection reset.
2. The CWR bit is set to 1 by writing a 1 in a program (writing a 0 has no effect).
3. The CWR bit is undefined when the VW0C0 bit in the VW0C register is set to 0 (brown-out reset disabled).

Figure 6.10 RSTFR Register

7. Processor Mode

7.1 Types of Processor Mode

Three processor modes are available to choose from: single-chip mode, memory expansion mode, and microprocessor mode. Table 7.1 shows the Features of Processor Modes.

Table 7.1 Features of Processor Modes

Processor Modes	Access Space	Pins Which Are Assigned I/O Ports
Single-chip mode	SFR, internal RAM, internal ROM	All pins are I/O ports or peripheral function I/O pins
Memory expansion mode	SFR, internal RAM, internal ROM, external area (1)	Some pins serve as bus control pins (1)
Microprocessor mode	SFR, internal RAM, external area (1)	Some pins serve as bus control pins (1)

Note:
1. Refer to **8. "Bus"** for details.

7.2 Setting Processor Modes

Processor mode is set by using the CNVSS pin and bits PM01 to PM00 in the PM0 register.
Table 7.2 shows the Processor Mode After Hardware Reset. Table 7.3 shows Bits PM01 to PM00 Set Values and Processor Modes

Table 7.2 Processor Mode After Hardware Reset

CNVSS Pin Input Level	Processor Modes
VSS	Single-chip mode
VCC1 (1, 2)	Microprocessor mode

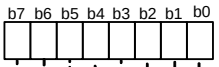
Notes:
1. If the microcomputer is reset in hardware by applying VCC1 to the CNVSS pin (hardware reset 1 or brown-out reset), the internal ROM cannot be accessed regardless of the status of bits PM10 to PM00.
2. The multiplexed bus cannot be assigned to the entire $\overline{CS}$ space.

Table 7.3 Bits PM01 to PM00 Set Values and Processor Modes

Bits PM01 to PM00	Processor Modes
00b	Single-chip mode
01b	Memory expansion mode
10b	Do not set
11b	Microprocessor mode

Rewriting bits PM01 to PM00 places the microcomputer in the corresponding processor mode regardless of whether the input level on the CNVSS pin is "H" or "L". Note, however, that bits PM01 to PM00 cannot be rewritten to 01b (memory expansion mode) or 11b (microprocessor mode) at the same time bits PM07 to PM02 are rewritten. Note also that these bits cannot be rewritten to enter microprocessor mode in the internal ROM, nor can they be rewritten to exit microprocessor mode in areas overlapping the internal ROM.
If the microcomputer is reset in hardware by applying VCC1 to the CNVSS pin (hardware reset 1 or brown-out reset), the internal ROM cannot be accessed regardless of bits PM01 to PM00.
Figures 7.1 to 7.3 show the PM0 Register and PM1 Register.

Processor Mode Register 0 (1)



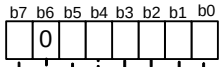
Symbol	Address	After Reset (4)
PM0	0004h	00000000b (CNVSS pin = "L") 00000011b (CNVSS pin = "H")

Bit Symbol	Bit Name	Function	RW
PM00	Processor mode bit (4)	b1 b0 0 0 : Single-chip mode 0 1 : Memory expansion mode 1 0 : Do not set 1 1 : Microprocessor mode	RW
PM01			RW
PM02	R/W mode select bit (2)	0 : $\overline{RD}$, $\overline{BHE}$, $\overline{WR}$ 1 : $\overline{RD}$, $\overline{WRH}$, $\overline{WRL}$	RW
PM03	Software reset bit	Setting this bit to 1 resets the microcomputer. Read as 0	RW
PM04	Multiplexed bus space select bit (2)	b5 b4 0 0 : Multiplexed bus is unused (separate bus in the entire $\overline{CS}$ space) 0 1 : Allocated to $\overline{CS2}$ space 1 0 : Allocated to $\overline{CS1}$ space 1 1 : Allocated to the entire $\overline{CS}$ space (3)	RW
PM05			RW
PM06	Port P4_0 to P4_3 function select bit (2)	0 : Address output 1 : Port function (address is not output)	RW
PM07	BCLK output disable bit (2)	0 : BCLK is output 1 : BCLK is not output (pin is left high-impedance)	RW

Notes :
1. Write to this register after setting the PRC1 bit in the PRCR register to 1 (write enabled).
2. Bits PM02, and PM04 to PM07 are effective when bits PM01 and PM00 are set to 01b (memory expansion mode) or 11b (microprocessor mode).
3. To set bits PM01 and PM00 to 01b and bits PM05 and PM04 to 11b (multiplexed bus assigned to the entire $\overline{CS}$ space), apply an "H" signal to the BYTE pin (external data bus is 8 bits wide). While the CNVSS pin is held "H" (= VCC1), do not rewrite the PM05 and PM04 bits to 11b after reset. If bits PM05 and PM04 are set to 11b during memory expansion mode, P3_1 to P3_7 and P4_0 to P4_3 become I/O ports, in which case the accessible area for each $\overline{CS}$ is 256 bytes.
4. Bits PM01 and PM00 do not change at software reset, watchdog timer reset, and oscillation stop detection reset.

Figure 7.1 PM0 Register

Processor Mode Register 1 (1)



Symbol	Address	After Reset
PM1	0005h	00001000b

Bit Symbol	Bit Name	Function	RW
PM10	$\overline{CS2}$ area switch bit (data flash enable bit) (2)	0 : $\overline{CS2}$ (0E000h to 0FFFFh) 1 : Data flash (0E000h to 0FFFFh)	RW
PM11	Port P3_7 to P3_4 function select bit (3)	0 : Address output 1 : Port function	RW
PM12	Watchdog timer function select bit (4)	0 : Watchdog timer interrupt 1 : Watchdog timer reset	RW
PM13	Internal reserved area expansion bit (2, 6)	(NOTE 6)	RW
PM14	Memory area expansion bit (3)	b5 b4 0 0 : 1-Mbyte mode (no expansion) 0 1 : Do not set 1 0 : Do not set 1 1 : 4-Mbyte mode	RW
PM15			RW
— (b6)	Reserved bit	Set to 0	RW
PM17	Wait bit (5)	0 : No wait state 1 : Wait state (1 wait)	RW

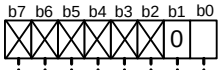
Notes :

1. Write to this register after setting the PRC1 bit in the PRCR register to 1 (write enabled).
2. Bits PM10 and PM13 are automatically set to 1 while the FMR01 bit in the FMR0 register is set to 1 (CPU rewrite mode).
3. Bits PM11, PM14, and PM 15 are effective when bits PM01 and PM00 are set to 01b (memory expansion mode) or 11b (microprocessor mode).
4. The PM12 bit is set to 1 by writing a 1 in a program (writing a 0 has no effect).
   The PM12 bit is automatically set to 1 when the CSPRO bit in the CSPR register is 1 (count source protection mode enabled).
5. When the PM17 bit is set to 1 (wait state), one wait state is inserted when accessing the internal RAM or internal ROM.
   When the PM17 bit is set to 1 and accesses an external area, set the CSiW bit in the CSR register (i = 0 to 3) to 0 (wait state).
6. The access area is changed by the PM13 bit as listed in the table below.

Access Area		PM13 = 0	PM13 = 1
Internal	RAM	Up to Addresses 00400h to 03FFFh (15 Kbytes)	The entire area is usable
	Program ROM 1	Up to Addresses D0000h to FFFFFh (192 Kbytes)	The entire area is usable
External		Address 04000h to 0CFFFh are usable Address 80000h to CFFFFh are usable	Address 04000h to 0CFFFh are reserved Address 80000h to CFFFFh are reserved (in memory expansion mode)

Figure 7.2 PM1 Register

Program 2 Area Control Register (1)



Symbol	Address	After Reset
PRG2C(1)	0010h	XXXXXX00b

Bit Symbol	Bit Name	Function	RW
PRG2C	Program ROM 2 disable bit	0 : Enable program ROM 2 1 : Disable program ROM 2	RW
— (b1)	Reserved bit	Set to 0	RW
— (b7-b2)	No register bits. If necessary, set to 0. Read as undefined value		—

Note :
1. Write to this register after setting the PRC6 bit in the PRCR register to 1 (write enabled).

Figure 7.3 PRG2C Register

7.3 Internal Memory

The internal RAM can be used in all processor modes. The range of the internal RAM depends on the setting of the PM 13 bit in the PM1 register.

The internal ROM is used in single-chip mode and memory expansion mode. Three internal ROMs are available: data flash, program ROM 2, and program ROM 1.

Data flash includes block A (addresses 0E000h to 0EFFFh) and block B (addresses 0F000h to 0FFFFh). When data flash is selected by the setting of the PM10 bit in the PM1 register, both block A and block B can be used. Table 7.4 shows Data Flash (addresses 0E000h to 0FFFFh).

Table 7.4 Data Flash (addresses 0E000h to 0FFFFh)

PM10 Bit in PM1 Register		0	1
Processor Modes	Single-chip mode	Unusable	Data flash
	Memory expansion mode	External area	Data flash
	Microprocessor mode	External area	Reserved area

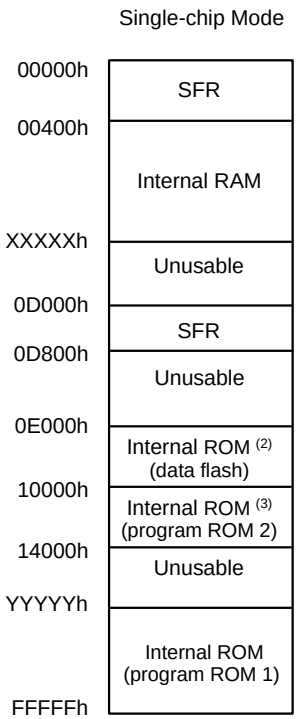
Set the PRG2C0 bit in the PRG2C register to select program ROM 2. Table 7.5 shows Program ROM 2 (addresses 10000h to 13FFFh).

Do not use the last 16 bytes (addresses 13FF0h to 13FFFh) when using program ROM 2 in single-chip mode or memory expansion mode. These bytes are assigned as the user boot code area (refer to **22.1.2 “User Boot Function”**).

Table 7.5 Program ROM 2 (addresses 10000h to 13FFFh)

PRG2C0 bit in PRG2C Register		0	1
Processor Modes	Single-chip mode	Program ROM 2	External area
	Memory expansion mode	Program ROM 2	External area
	Microprocessor mode	Reserved area	External area

The range of program ROM 1 depends on the setting of the PM13 bit in the PM1 register. Figure 7.4 indicates the Memory Map in Single-Chip Mode.



PM13 = 0

Internal RAM		Internal ROM	
Size	Address XXXXXh	Size	Address YYYYYh
12 Kbytes	033FFh	128 Kbytes	E0000h
16 Kbytes	03FFFh (1)	256 Kbytes	D0000h (1)
31 Kbytes	03FFFh (1)	512 Kbytes	D0000h (1)

PM13 = 1

Internal RAM		Internal ROM	
Size	Address XXXXXh	Size	Address YYYYYh
12 Kbytes	033FFh	128 Kbytes	E0000h
16 Kbytes	043FFh	256 Kbytes	C0000h
31 Kbytes	07FFFh	512 Kbytes	80000h

Notes :
1. If the PM13 bit is set to 0, 15 Kbytes of the internal RAM and 192 Kbytes of the internal ROM can be used.
2. Data flash can be used when the PM10 bit in the PM1 register is 1 (0E000h to 0FFFFh = data flash).
3. Program ROM 2 can be used when the PRG2C0 bit in the PRG2C register is 0 (program ROM 2 enabled).

Figure 7.4 Memory Map in Single-Chip Mode

8. Bus

During memory expansion or microprocessor mode, some pins serve as the bus control pins to perform data input /output to and from external devices. These bus control pins include A0 to A19, D0 to D15, $\overline{CS0}$ to $\overline{CS3}$, $\overline{RD}$, $\overline{WRL}$ /$\overline{WR}$, $\overline{WRH}$ / $\overline{BHE}$, ALE, $\overline{RDY}$, $\overline{HOLD}$, $\overline{HLDA}$, and BCLK.

8.1 Bus Mode

Bus mode, either multiplexed or separate, can be selected using bits PM05 and PM04 in the PM0 register. Table 8.1 shows the Difference between Separate Bus and Multiplexed Bus.

8.1.1 Separate Bus

In this bus mode, data and address are separate.

8.1.2 Multiplexed Bus

In this bus mode, data and address are multiplexed.

8.1.2.1 When the Input Level on BYTE Pin is High (8-Bit Data Bus)

D0 to D7 and A0 to A7 are multiplexed.

8.1.2.2 When the Input Level on BYTE Pin is Low (16-Bit Data Bus)

D0 to D7 and A1 to A8 are multiplexed. D8 to D15 are not multiplexed. Do not use D8 to D15. External devices connecting to a multiplexed bus are allocated to only the even addresses of the microcomputer. Odd addresses cannot be accessed.

Table 8.1 Difference between Separate Bus and Multiplexed Bus

Pin Name (1)	Separate Bus	Multiplexed Bus	
		BYTE = “H”	BYTE = “L”
P0_0 to P0_7 / D0 to D7	D0 to D7	(NOTE 2)	(NOTE 2)
P1_0 to P1_7 / D8 to D15	D8 to D15	I/O port P1_0 to P1_7	(NOTE 2)
P2_0 / A0 (/ D0)	A0	A0 D0	A0
P2_1 to P2_7 / A1 to A7 (/ D1 to D7 / D0 to D6)	A1 to A7	A1 to A7 D1 to D7	A1 to A7 D0 to D6
P3_0 / A8 (/ D7)	A8	A8	A8 D7

Notes:
1. See **Table 8.6 “Pin Functions for Each Processor Mode”** for bus control signals other than the above.
2. It changes with a setting of PM05 and PM04, and area to access.
   See **Table 8.6 “Pin Functions for Each Processor Mode”** for details.

8.2 Bus Control

The following describes the signals needed for accessing external devices and the functionality of software wait.

8.2.1 Address Bus

The address bus consists of 20 lines: A0 to A19. The address bus width can be chosen to be 12, 16, or 20 bits by using the PM06 bit in the PM0 register and the PM11 bit in the PM1 register. Table 8.2 shows the Set Value of Bits PM06 and PM11, and Address Bus Width.

Table 8.2 Set Value of Bits PM06 and PM11, and Address Bus Width

Bits Set Value (1)	Pin Function	Address Bus Width
PM11 = 1	P3_4 to P3_7	12 bits
PM06 = 1	P4_0 to P4_3	
PM11 = 0	A12 to A15	16 bits
PM06 = 1	P4_0 to P4_3	
PM11 = 0	A12 to A15	20 bits
PM06 = 0	A16 to A19	

Note:
1. No values other than those shown above can be set.

When processor mode is changed from single-chip mode to memory expansion mode, the address bus is indeterminate until any external area is accessed.

8.2.2 Data Bus

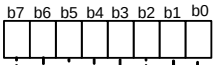
When input on the BYTE pin is high (data bus is 8 bits wide), 8 lines D0 to D7 comprise the data bus; when input on the BYTE pin is low (data bus is 16 bits wide), 16 lines D0 to D15 comprise the data bus. Do not change the input level on the BYTE pin while in operation.

8.2.3 Chip Select Signal

The chip select (hereafter referred to as the $\overline{CS}$) signals are output from the $\overline{CSi}$ (i = 0 to 3) pins. These pins can be chosen to function as I/O ports or as $\overline{CS}$ by using the $\overline{CSi}$ bit in the CSR register. Figure 8.1 shows the CSR Register.

During 1-Mbyte mode, the external area can be separated into up to 4 by the $\overline{CSi}$ signal which is output from the $\overline{CSi}$ pin. During 4-Mbyte mode, $\overline{CSi}$ signal or bank number is output from the $\overline{CSi}$ pin. Refer to **9. “Memory Space Expansion Function”**. Figure 8.2 shows Examples of Address Bus and $\overline{CSi}$ Signal Output in 1-Mbyte mode.

Chip Select Control Register



Symbol	Address	After Reset
CSR	0008h	01h

Bit Symbol	Bit Name	Function	RW
CS0	$\overline{CS0}$ output enable bit	0 : Disable chip select output (functions as I/O port) 1 : Enable chip select output	RW
CS1	$\overline{CS1}$ output enable bit		RW
CS2	$\overline{CS2}$ output enable bit		RW
CS3	$\overline{CS3}$ output enable bit		RW
CS0W	$\overline{CS0}$ wait bit	0 : Wait state 1 : No wait state (1, 2, 3)	RW
CS1W	$\overline{CS1}$ wait bit		RW
CS2W	$\overline{CS2}$ wait bit		RW
CS3W	$\overline{CS3}$ wait bit		RW

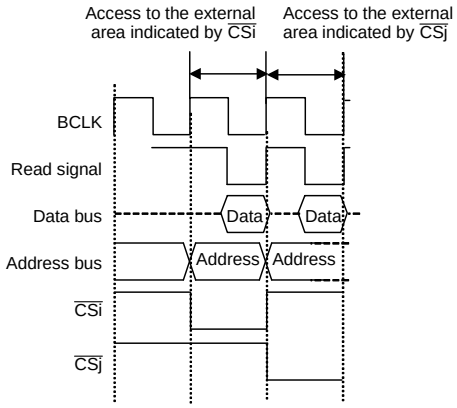
Notes :
1. When the $\overline{RDY}$ signal is used in the area indicated by $\overline{CSi}$ (i = 0 to 3) or the multiplex bus is used, set the CSiW bit to 0 (wait state).
2. When the PM17 bit in the PM1 register is set to 1 (wait state), set the CSiW bit to 0 (wait state).
3. When the CSiW bit = 0 (wait state), the number of wait states can be selected using bits CSEi1W to CSEi0W in the CSE register.

Figure 8.1 CSR Register

Example 1

To access the external area indicated by $\overline{CSj}$ in the next cycle after accessing the external area indicated by $\overline{CSi}$

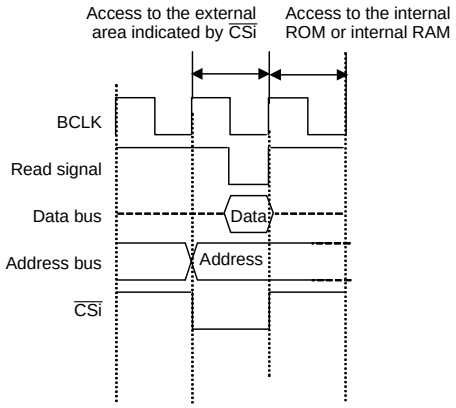
The address bus and chip select signal both change state between these two cycles.



Example 2

To access the internal ROM or internal RAM in the next cycle after accessing the external area indicated by $\overline{CSi}$

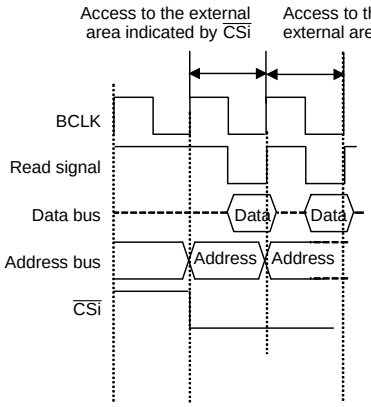
The chip select signal changes state but the address bus does not change state



Example 3

To access the external area indicated by $\overline{CSi}$ in the next cycle after accessing the external area indicated by the same $\overline{CSi}$

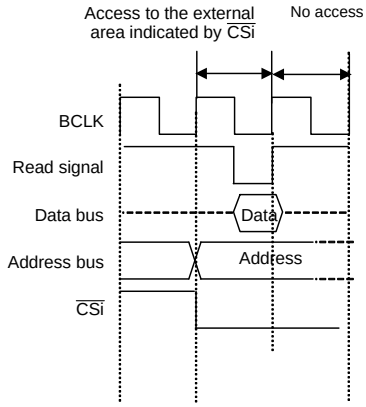
The address bus changes state but the chip select signal does not change state



Example 4

Not to access any area (nor instruction prefetch generated) in the next cycle after accessing the external area indicated by $\overline{CSi}$

Neither the address bus nor the chip select signal changes state between these two cycles



Note :
1. These examples show the address bus and chip select signal when accessing areas in two successive cycles. The chip select bus cycle may be extended more than two cycles depending on a combination of these examples.

Shown above is the case where separate bus is selected and the area is accessed for read without wait states.
i = 0 to 3, j = 0 to 3 (not including i, however)

Figure 8.2 Examples of Address Bus and $\overline{CSi}$ Signal Output in 1-Mbyte Mode

8.2.4 Read and Write Signals

When the data bus is 16 bits wide, the read and write signals can be chosen to be a combination of $\overline{RD}$, $\overline{BHE}$, and, $\overline{WR}$ or a combination of $\overline{RD}$, $\overline{WRL}$, and $\overline{WRH}$ by using the PM02 bit in the PM0 register. When the data bus is 8 bits wide, use a combination of $\overline{RD}$, $\overline{WR}$, and $\overline{BHE}$.

Table 8.3 shows the Operation of $\overline{RD}$, $\overline{WRL}$, and $\overline{WRH}$ Signals. Table 8.4 shows the Operation of $\overline{RD}$, $\overline{WR}$, and $\overline{BHE}$ Signals.

Table 8.3 Operation of $\overline{RD}$, $\overline{WRL}$, and $\overline{WRH}$ Signals

Data Bus Width	$\overline{RD}$	$\overline{WRL}$	$\overline{WRH}$	Status of External Data Bus
16-bit (BYTE pin input = “L”)	L	H	H	Read data
	H	L	H	Write 1 byte of data to an even address
	H	H	L	Write 1 byte of data to an odd address
	H	L	L	Write data to both even and odd addresses

Table 8.4 Operation of $\overline{RD}$, $\overline{WR}$, and $\overline{BHE}$ Signals

Data Bus Width	$\overline{RD}$	$\overline{WR}$	$\overline{BHE}$	A0	Status of External Data Bus
16-bit (BYTE pin input = “L”)	H	L	L	H	Write 1 byte of data to an odd address
	L	H	L	H	Read 1 byte of data from an odd address
	H	L	H	L	Write 1 byte of data to an even address
	L	H	H	L	Read 1 byte of data from an even address
	H	L	L	L	Write data to both even and odd addresses
	L	H	L	L	Read data from both even and odd addresses
8-bit (BYTE pin input = “H”)	H	L	– (1)	H or L	Write 1 byte of data
	L	H	– (1)	H or L	Read 1 byte of data

Note:
1. Do not use.

8.2.5 ALE Signal

The ALE signal latches the address when accessing the multiplexed bus space. Latch the address when the ALE signal falls.

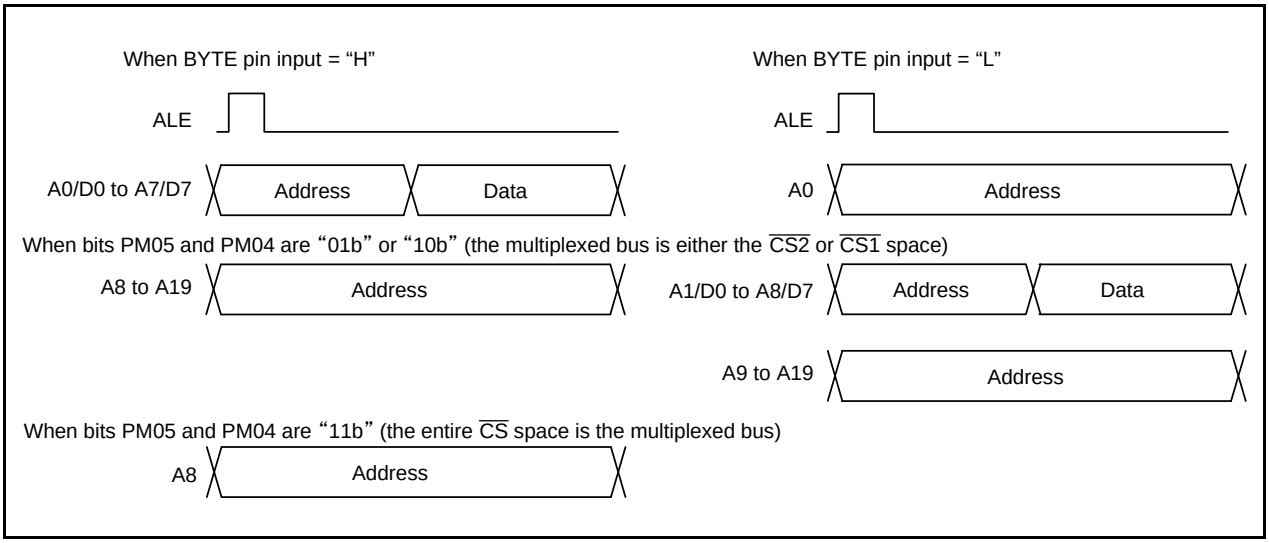


Figure 8.3 ALE Signal, Address Bus, Data Bus

8.2.6 $\overline{\text{RDY}}$ Signal

This signal is provided for accessing external devices which need to be accessed at low speed. If input on the $\overline{\text{RDY}}$ pin is low at the last falling edge of BCLK of the bus cycle, one wait state is inserted in the bus cycle. While in a wait state, the following signals retain the state in which they were when the $\overline{\text{RDY}}$ signal was acknowledged.

A0 to A19, D0 to D15, $\overline{\text{CS0}}$ to $\overline{\text{CS3}}$, $\overline{\text{RD}}$, $\overline{\text{WRL}}$, $\overline{\text{WRH}}$, $\overline{\text{WR}}$, $\overline{\text{BHE}}$, ALE, $\overline{\text{HLDA}}$

Then, when the input on the $\overline{\text{RDY}}$ pin is detected high at the falling edge of BCLK, the remaining bus cycle is executed. Figure 8.4 shows Examples in which the Wait State was Inserted into Read Cycle by $\overline{\text{RDY}}$ Signal. To use the $\overline{\text{RDY}}$ signal, set the corresponding bit (bits CS3W to CS0W) in the CSR register to 0 (with wait state). When not using the $\overline{\text{RDY}}$ signal, the $\overline{\text{RDY}}$ pin need to be pulled-up.

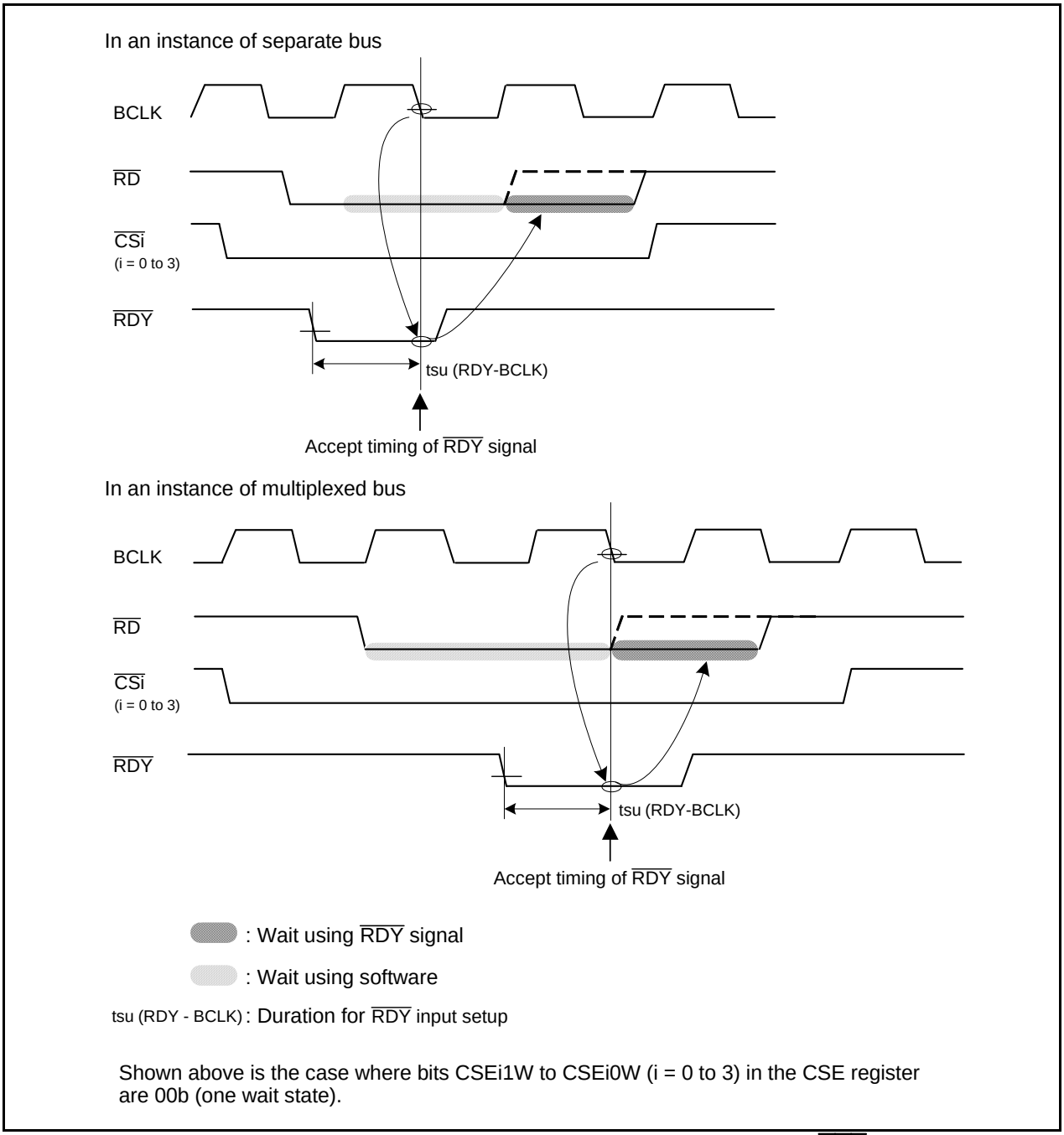


Figure 8.4 Examples in Which Wait State Was Inserted into Read Cycle by $\overline{\text{RDY}}$ Signal

8.2.7 $\overline{\text{HOLD}}$ Signal

This signal is used to transfer control of the bus from the CPU or DMAC to an external circuit. When the input on the $\overline{\text{HOLD}}$ pin is pulled low, the microcomputer is placed in a hold state after the bus access at that time finishes. The microcomputer remains in the hold state while the $\overline{\text{HOLD}}$ pin is held low, during which time the $\overline{\text{HLDA}}$ pin outputs a low-level signal.

Table 8.5 shows the Microcomputer Status in Hold State.

Bus-using priorities are given to $\overline{\text{HOLD}}$, DMAC, and CPU in descending order. However, if the CPU is accessing an odd address in word units, the DMAC cannot gain control of the bus during two separate accesses.

$\overline{\text{HOLD}}$ > DMAC > CPU

Figure 8.5 Bus-Using Priorities

Table 8.5 Microcomputer Status in Hold State

Item		Status
BCLK		Output
A0 to A19, D0 to D15, $\overline{\text{CS0}}$ to $\overline{\text{CS3}}$, $\overline{\text{RD}}$, $\overline{\text{WRL}}$,$\overline{\text{WRH}}$, $\overline{\text{WR}}$, $\overline{\text{BHE}}$		High-impedance
I/O ports	P0, P1, P3, P4 (1)	High-impedance
	P6 to P10	Maintains status when $\overline{\text{HOLD}}$ signal is received
$\overline{\text{HLDA}}$		Output “L”
Internal Peripheral Circuits		On (but watchdog timer stops) (2)
ALE		Undefined

Notes:
1. When I/O port function is selected.
2. The watchdog timer does not stop when the CSPRO bit in the CSPR register is set to 1 (count source protection mode enabled).

8.2.8 BCLK Output

If the PM07 bit in the PM0 register is set to 0 (output enabled), a clock with the same frequency as that of the CPU clock is output as BCLK from the BCLK pin. Refer to **10.2 “CPU Clock and Peripheral Function Clock”**.

Table 8.6 Pin Functions for Each Processor Mode

Processor Mode		Memory Expansion Mode or Microprocessor Mode				Memory Expansion Mode
Bits PM05 and PM04		00b (separate bus)		01b ($\overline{CS2}$ is for multiplexed bus and the others are for separate bus) 10b ($\overline{CS1}$ is for multiplexed bus and the others are for separate bus)		11b (multiplexed bus for the entire space) (1)
Data Bus Width BYTE Pin		8 bits "H"	16 bits "L"	8 bits "H"	16 bits "L"	8 bits "H"
P0_0 to P0_7		D0 to D7	D0 to D7	D0 to D7 (4)	D0 to D7 (4)	I/O ports
P1_0 to P1_7		I/O ports	D8 to D15	I/O ports	D8 to D15(4)	I/O ports
P2_0		A0	A0	A0/D0 (2)	A0	A0/D0
P2_1 to P2_7		A1 to A7	A1 to A7	A1 to A7 /D1 to D7 (2)	A1 to A7 /D0 to D6 (2)	A1 to A7 /D1 to D7
P3_0		A8	A8	A8	A8/D7 (2)	A8
P3_1 to P3_3		A9 to A11				I/O ports
P3_4 to P3_7	PM11 = 0	A12 to A15				I/O ports
	PM11 = 1	I/O ports				
P4_0 to P4_3	PM06 = 0	A16 to A19				I/O ports
	PM06 = 1	I/O ports				
P4_4	CS0 = 0	I/O ports				
	CS0 = 1	$\overline{CS0}$				
P4_5	CS1 = 0	I/O ports				
	CS1 = 1	$\overline{CS1}$				
P4_6	CS2 = 0	I/O ports				
	CS2 = 1	$\overline{CS2}$				
P4_7	CS3 = 0	I/O ports				
	CS3 = 1	$\overline{CS3}$				
P5_0	PM02 = 0	$\overline{WR}$				
	PM02 = 1	- (3)	$\overline{WRL}$	– (3)	$\overline{WRL}$	– (3)
P5_1	PM02 = 0	$\overline{BHE}$				
	PM02 = 1	– f	$\overline{WRH}$	– (3)	$\overline{WRH}$	– (3)
P5_2		$\overline{RD}$				
P5_3		BCLK				
P5_4		$\overline{HLDA}$				
P5_5		$\overline{HOLD}$				
P5_6		ALE				
P5_7		$\overline{RDY}$				

I/O ports : Function as I/O ports or peripheral function I/O pins.

Notes:

1. When bits PM01 and PM00 are set to 01b (memory expansion mode) and bits PM05 and PM04 are set to 11b (multiplexed bus assigned to the entire $\overline{CS}$ space), apply "H" to the BYTE pin (external data bus 8 bits wide). While the CNVSS pin is held "H" (= VCC1), do not rewrite bits PM05 and PM04 to 11b after reset. If bits PM05 and PM04 are set to 11b during memory expansion mode, P3_1 to P3_7 and P4_0 to P4_3 become I/O ports, in which case the accessible area for each $\overline{CS}$ is 256 bytes.
2. In separate bus mode, these pins serve as the address bus.
3. If the data bus is 8 bits wide, make sure the PM02 bit is set to 0 ($\overline{RD}$, $\overline{BHE}$, $\overline{WR}$).
4. When accessing the area that uses a multiplexed bus, these pins output an indeterminate value during a write.

8.2.9 External Bus Status When Internal Area IS Accessed

Table 8.7 shows the External Bus Status When Internal Area Accessed.

Table 8.7 External Bus Status When Internal Area Accessed

Item		SFR Accessed	Internal ROM, RAM Accessed
A0 to A19		Address output	Maintain the last accessed address of external area or SFR
D0 to D15	When Read	High-impedance	High-impedance
	When Write	Output data	Undefined
$\overline{RD}$, $\overline{WR}$, $\overline{WRL}$, $\overline{WRH}$		$\overline{RD}$, $\overline{WR}$, $\overline{WRL}$, $\overline{WRH}$ output	Output “H”
BHE		$\overline{BHE}$ output	Maintain the last accessed status of external area or SFR
$\overline{CS0}$ to $\overline{CS3}$		Output “H”	Output “H”
ALE		Output “L”	Output “L”

8.2.10 Software Wait

The PM17 bit in the PM1 register, which is a software-wait-related bit, has an influence over the internal memory and the external area.

The SFR area is accessed in 2 BCLK or 3 BCLK cycles as determined by the PM20 bit in the PM2 register. Data flash, one of the internal ROMs, is affected by the PM17 bit and the FMR17 bit in the FMR1 register.

Software waits can be inserted to the external area by setting the PM17 bit or setting the CSiW bit in the CSR register or bits CSEi1W to CSEi0W in the CSE register for each CSi (i = 0 to 3). To use the $\overline{RDY}$ signal, set the corresponding CSiW bit to 0 (with wait state).

Table 8.8 shows the Bits and Bus Cycles Related to Software Wait (SFR, Internal Memory), Figure 8.6 shows the CSE register, and Table 8.9 shows the Bits and Bus Cycles Related to Software Wait (External Area).

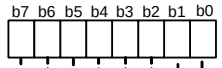
Table 8.8 Bits and Bus Cycles Related to Software Wait (SFR, Internal Memory)

Area		Setting of Software-Wait-related Bits			Soft-ware Wait	Bus cycle
		PM2 Register PM20 Bit (1)	FMR1 Register FMR17 Bit	PM1 Register PM17 Bit		
SFR		1	-	-	1 wait	2 BCLK cycles(3)
		0	-	-	2 waits	3 BCLK cycles
Internal RAM		-	-	0	No wait	1 BCLK cycle(3)
				1	1 wait	2 BCLK cycles
Internal ROM	Program ROM 1 Program ROM 2	-	-	0	No wait	1 BCLK cycle(3)
				1	1 wait	2 BCLK cycles
	Data Flash (2)	-	0	-	1 wait	2 BCLK cycles(3)
			1	0	No wait	1 BCLK cycle
				1	1 wait	2 BCLK cycle

– indicates that either 0 or 1 can be set.

Notes:
1. The PM 20 bit is valid when the PLC07 bit in the PLC0 register is set to 1 (PLL operation).
2. When 2.7 V ≤ VCC1 ≤ 3.0 V and f (BCLK) ≥ 16 MHz, or when 3.0 V < VCC1 ≤ 5.5 V and f (BCLK) ≥ 20 MHz, 1 wait is necessary to read data flash. Use the PM17 bit or the FMR 17 bit to set 1 wait.
3. Status after reset.

Chip Select Expansion Control Register



Symbol	Address	After Reset
CSE	001Bh	00h

Bit Symbol	Bit Name	Function	RW
CSE00W	$\overline{CS0}$ wait expansion bit (1)	b1 b0 0 0 : 1 wait 0 1 : 2 waits 1 0 : 3 waits 1 1 : Do not set	RW
CSE01W			RW
CSE10W	$\overline{CS1}$ wait expansion bit (1)	b3 b2 0 0 : 1 wait 0 1 : 2 waits 1 0 : 3 waits 1 1 : Do not set	RW
CSE11W			RW
CSE20W	$\overline{CS2}$ wait expansion bit (1)	b5 b4 0 0 : 1 wait 0 1 : 2 waits 1 0 : 3 waits 1 1 : Do not set	RW
CSE21W			RW
CSE30W	$\overline{CS3}$ wait expansion bit (1)	b7 b6 0 0 : 1 wait 0 1 : 2 waits 1 0 : 3 waits 1 1 : Do not set	RW
CSE31W			RW

Note :
1. Set the CSiW bit (i = 0 to 3) in the CSR register to 0 (wait state) before writing to bits CSEi1W to CSEi0W. If the CSiW bit needs to be set to 1 (no wait state), set bits CSEi1W and CSEi0W to 00b before setting it.

Figure 8.6 CSE Register

Table 8.9 Bits and Bus Cycles Related to Software Wait (External Area)

Area	Bus Mode	Setting of Software-Wait-related Bits			Software Wait	Bus Cycle
		PM1 Register PM17 Bit	CSR Register CSiW Bit (1)	CSE Register Bits CSEi1W to CSEi0W		
External Area	Separate Bus	0	1	00b	No wait	1 BCLK cycle (Read)
						2 BCLK cycles (Write)
		-	0	00b	1 wait	2 BCLK cycles (4)
		-	0	01b	2 waits	3 BCLK cycles
		-	0	10b	3 waits	4 BCLK cycles
		1	0 (3)	00b	1 wait	2 BCLK cycles
	Multiplexed Bus	-	0 (2)	00b	1 wait	3 BCLK cycles
		-	0 (2)	01b	2 waits	3 BCLK cycles
		-	0 (2)	10b	3 waits	4 BCLK cycles
		1	0 (2, 3)	00b	1 wait	3 BCLK cycles

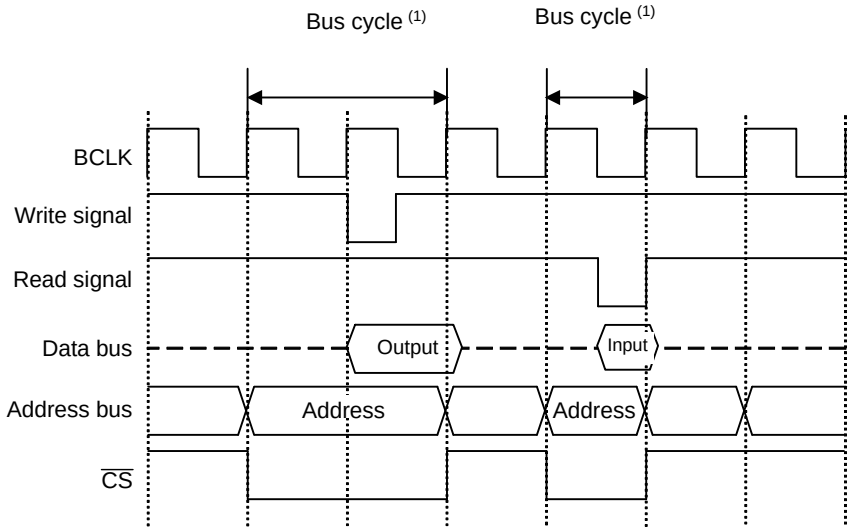
i = 0 to 3

– indicates that either 0 or 1 can be set.

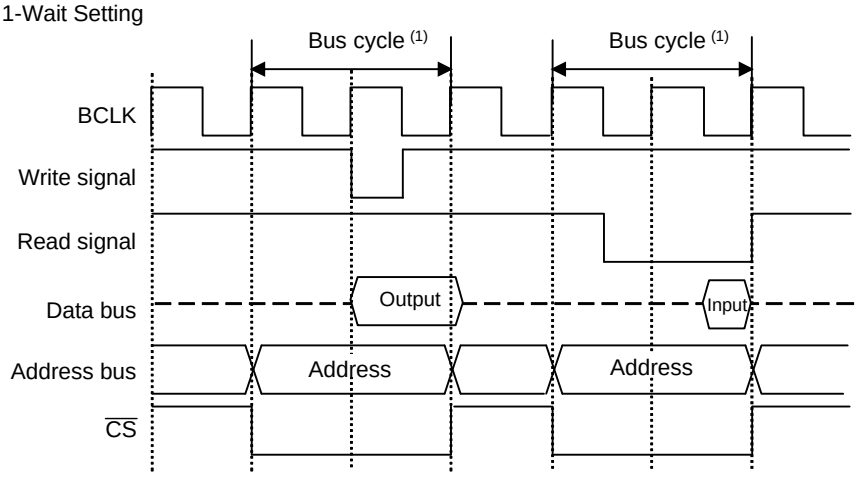
Notes:

1. To use the $\overline{RDY}$ signal, set the CSiW bit to 0 (with wait state).
2. To access in multiplexed bus mode, set the CSiW bit to 0 (with wait state).
3. When the PM17 bit is set to 1 and accesses an external area, set the CSiW bit to 0 (with wait state).
4. After reset, the PM17 bit is set to 0 (without wait state), bits CS0W to CS3W are set to 0 (with wait state), and the CSE register is set to 00h (one wait state for $\overline{CS0}$ to $\overline{CS3}$). Therefore, all external areas are accessed with one wait state.

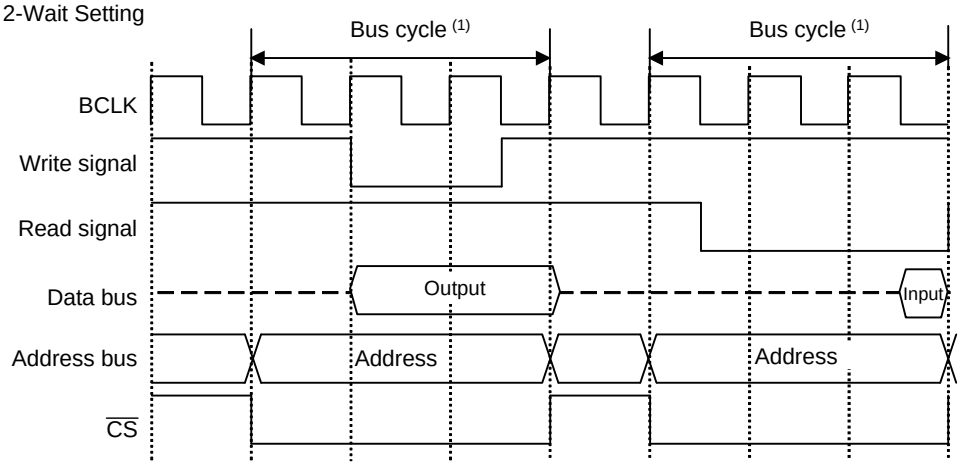
(1) Separate Bus, No Wait Setting



(2) Separate Bus, 1-Wait Setting



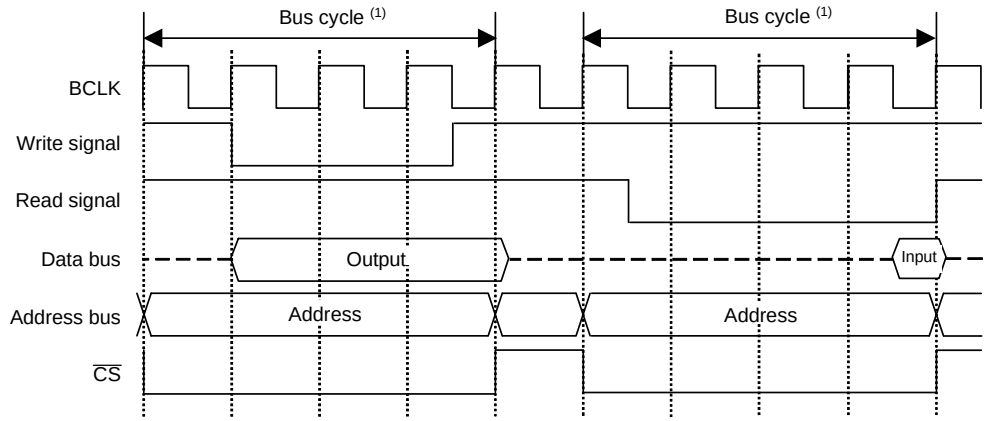
(3) Separate Bus, 2-Wait Setting



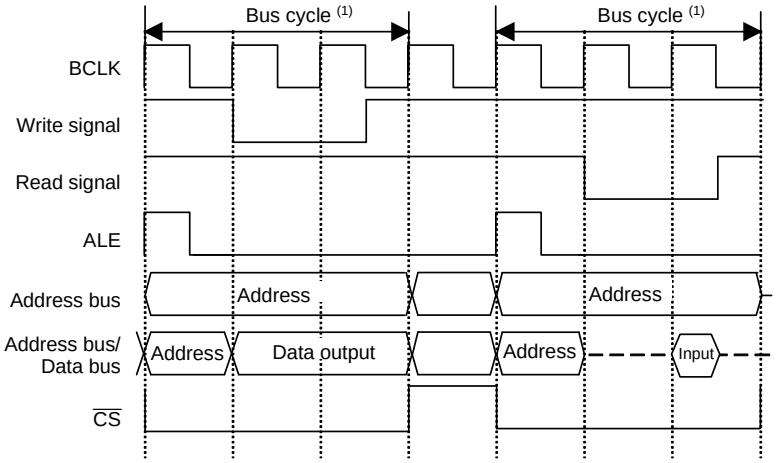
Note :
1. These example timing charts indicate bus cycle length. After this bus cycle sometimes come read and write cycles in succession.

Figure 8.7 Typical Bus Timings Using Software Wait (1)

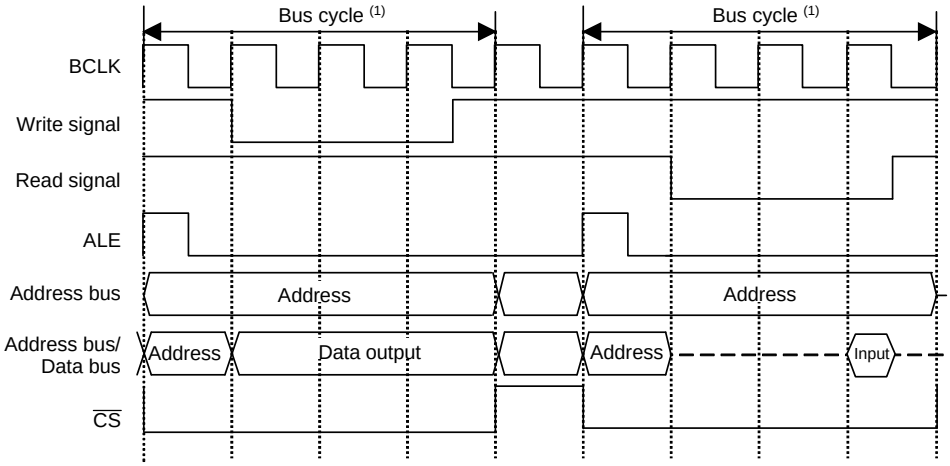
(1) Separate Bus, 3-Wait Setting



(2) Multiplexed Bus, 1- or 2-Wait Setting



(3) Multiplexed Bus, 3-Wait Setting



Note :
1. These example timing charts indicate bus cycle length. After this bus cycle sometimes come read and write cycles in succession.

Figure 8.8 Typical Bus Timings Using Software Wait (2)

9. Memory Space Expansion Function

The following describes a memory space expansion function.
During memory expansion or microprocessor mode, the memory space expansion function allows the access space to be expanded using the appropriate register bits.
Table 9.1 shows Setting of Memory Space Expansion Function, Memory Space.

Table 9.1 Setting of Memory Space Expansion Function, Memory Space

Memory Space Expansion Function	Setting (PM15 to PM14)	Memory Space
1-Mbyte Mode	00b	1 Mbyte (no expansion)
4-Mbyte Mode	11b	4 Mbytes

9.1 1-Mbyte Mode

In this mode, the memory space is 1 Mbyte. In 1-Mbyte mode, the external area to be accessed is specified using the $\overline{CSi}$ (i = 0 to 3) signals (hereafter referred to as the $\overline{CSi}$ area). Figures 9.2 and 9.3 show the Memory Mapping and $\overline{CS}$ Area in 1-Mbyte mode.

9.2 4-Mbyte Mode

In this mode, the memory space is 4 Mbytes. Figure 9.1 shows the DBR Register. Bits BSR2 to BSR0 in the DBR register select a bank number which is to be accessed to read or write data. Setting the OFS bit to 1 (with offset) allows the accessed address to be offset by 40000h.

In 4-Mbyte mode, the $\overline{CSi}$ (i = 0 to 3) pin function differs depending on an area to be accessed.

9.2.1 Addresses 04000h to 3FFFFh, C0000h to FFFFFh

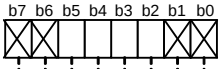
- The $\overline{CSi}$ signal is output from the $\overline{CSi}$ pin (same operation as 1-Mbyte mode; however, the last address of the $\overline{CS1}$ area is 3FFFFh).

9.2.2 Addresses 40000h to BFFFFh

- The $\overline{CS0}$ pin outputs “L”
- Pins $\overline{CS1}$ to $\overline{CS3}$ output the setting values of bits BSR2 to BSR0 (bank number)

Figures 9.4 and 9.5 show the Memory Mapping and $\overline{CS}$ Area in 4-Mbyte mode. Note that banks 0 to 6 are data-only areas. Locate the program in bank 7 or the $\overline{CSi}$ area.

Data Bank Register (1)

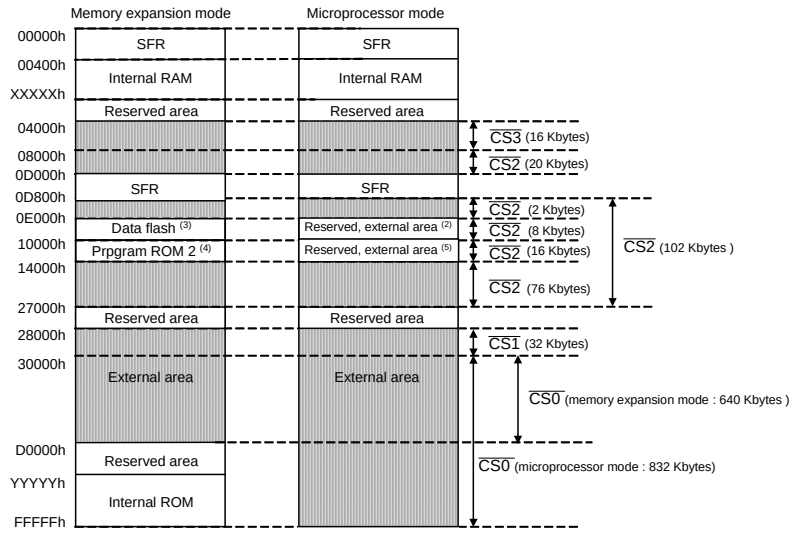


Symbol	Address	After Reset
DBR	000Bh	00h

Bit Symbol	Bit Name	Function	RW
— (b1-b0)	No register bits. If necessary, set to 0. Read as 0		—
OFS	Offset bit	0 : Not offset 1 : Offset	RW
BSR0	Bank selection bits	b5 b4 b3 0 0 0 : Bank 0 0 1 0 : Bank 2 1 0 0 : Bank 4 1 1 0 : Bank 6 b5 b4 b3 0 0 1 : Bank 1 0 1 1 : Bank 3 1 0 1 : Bank 5 1 1 1 : Bank 7	RW
BSR1			RW
BSR2			RW
— (b7-b6)	No register bits. If necessary, set to 0. Read as 0		—

Note :
1. Effective when bits PM01 and PM00 in the PM0 register are set to 01b (memory expansion mode) or 11b (microprocessor mode).

Figure 9.1 DBR Register

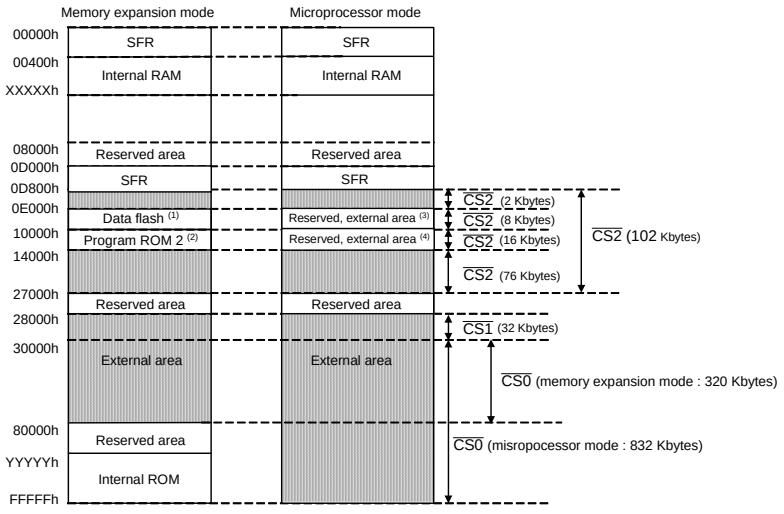


PM13 = 0

Internal RAM		Internal ROM		External Area			
Capacity	Address XXXXXh	Capacity	Address YYYYYh	CS0	CS1	CS2	CS3
12 Kbytes	033FFh	128 Kbytes	E0000h	Memory expansion mode 30000h to CFFFFh Microprocessor mode 30000h to FFFFFh	28000h to 2FFFFh	08000h to 0CFFFh 0D800h to 26FFFh Note that this applies to the following areas only in the conditions described below. When PM10 = 0 0E000h to 0FFFFh When PRG2C0 = 1 10000h to 13FFFh	04000h to 07FFFh
16 Kbytes	03FFFh (1)	256 Kbytes	D0000h (1)				
31 Kbytes	03FFFh (1)	512 Kbytes	D0000h (1)				

Notes :
1. When the PM13 bit in the PM1 register is set to 0, 15 Kbytes of the internal RAM and 192 Kbytes of the internal ROM can be used.
2. When the PM10 bit is set to 0, this area is used as external area; when 1, reserved area.
3. When the PM10 bit is set to 0, this area is used as external area; when 1, internal ROM (data flash).
4. When the PRG2C0 bit in the PRG2C register is set to 1, this area is used as external area; when 0, internal ROM (program ROM 2).
5. When the PRG2C0 bit in the PRG2C register is set to 1, this area is used as external area; when 0, reserved area.

Figure 9.2 Memory Mapping and $\overline{CS}$ Area in 1-Mbyte Mode (PM13 = 0)

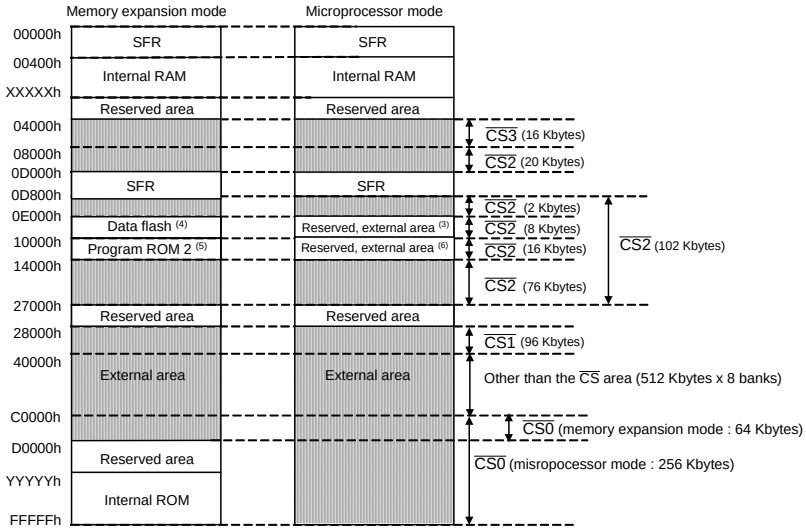


PM13 = 1

Internal RAM		Internal ROM		External area			
Capacity	Address XXXXXh	Capacity	Address YYYYYh	CS0	CS1	CS2	CS3
12 Kbytes	033FFh	128 Kbytes	E0000h	Memory expansion mode 30000h to 7FFFFh Microprocessor mode 30000h to FFFFFh	28000h to 2FFFFh	0D800h to 26FFFh Note that this applies to the following areas only in the conditions described below. When PM10 = 0, 0E000h to 0FFFFh When PRG2C0 = 1, 10000h to 13FFFh	No area
16 Kbytes	043FFh	256 Kbytes	C0000h				

Notes :
1. When the PM10 bit is set to 0, this area is used as external area; when 1, internal ROM (data flash).
2. When the PRG2C0 bit in the PRG2C register is set to 1, this area is used as external area; when 0, internal ROM (program ROM 2).
3. When the PM10 bit is set to 0, this area is used as external area; when 1, reserved area.
4. When the PRG2C0 bit in the PRG2C register is set to 1, this area is used as external area; when 0, reserved area.

Figure 9.3 Memory Mapping and $\overline{CS}$ Area in 1-Mbyte Mode (PM13 = 1)

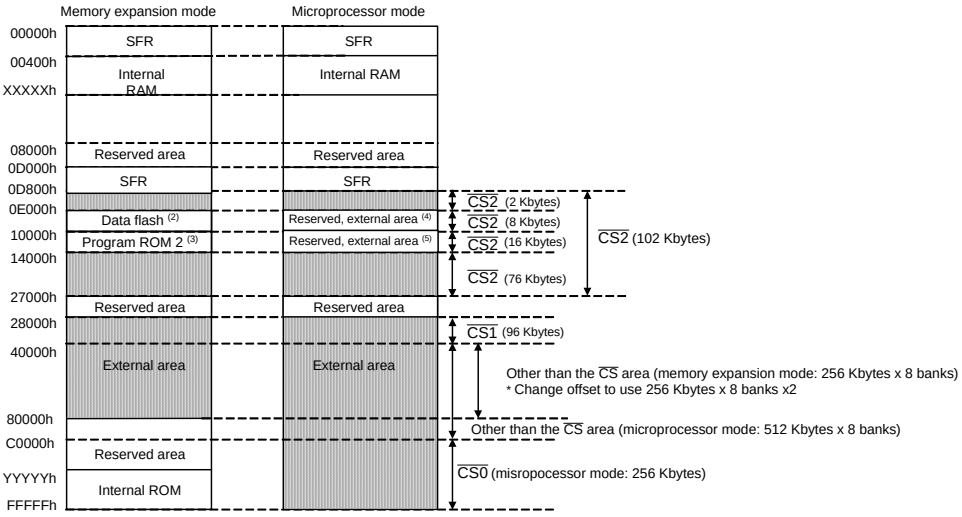


PM13 = 0

Internal RAM		Internal ROM		External area				
Capacity	Address XXXXXh	Capacity	Address YYYYYh	CS0	CS1	CS2	CS3	Other than the CS area (1)
12 Kbytes	033FFh	128 Kbytes	E0000h	Memory expansion mode C0000h to CFFFFh Microprocessor mode C0000h to FFFFFh	28000h to 3FFFFh	08000h to 0CFFFh 0D800h to 26FFFh Note that this applies to the following areas only in the conditions described below. When PM10 = 0, 0E000h to 0FFFFh: When PRG2C0 = 1, 10000h to 13FFFh	04000h to 07FFFh	40000h to BFFFFh
16 Kbytes	03FFFh (2)	256 Kbytes	D0000h (2)					
31 Kbytes	03FFFh (2)	512 Kbytes	D0000h (2)					

Notes :
1. The CS0 pin outputs a low signal, and pins CS1 to CS3 output a bank number.
2. When the PM13 bit is set to 0, 15 Kbytes of the internal RAM and 192 Kbytes of the internal ROM can be used.
3. When the PM10 bit is set to 0, this area is used as external area; when 1, reserved area.
4. When the PM10 bit is set to 0, this area is used as external area; when 1, internal ROM (data flash).
5. When the PRG2C0 bit in the PRG2C register is set to 1, this area is used as external area; when 0, internal ROM (program ROM 2).
6. When the PRG2C0 bit in the PRG2C register is set to 1, this area is used as external area; when 0, reserved area.

Figure 9.4 Memory Mapping and CS Area in 4-Mbyte Mode (PM13 = 0)



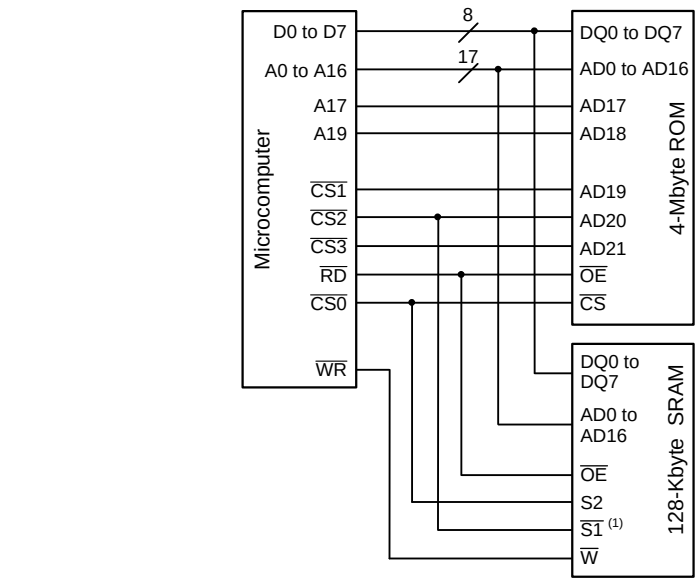
PM13 = 1

Internal RAM		Internal ROM		External Area				
Capacity	Address XXXXXh	Capacity	Address YYYYYh	CS0	CS1	CS2	CS3	Other than the CS area (1)
12 Kbytes	033FFh	128 Kbytes	E0000h	Microprocessor mode C0000h to FFFFFh	28000h to 3FFFFh	0D800h to 26FFFh Note that this applies to the following areas only in the conditions described below. When PM10 = 0, 0E000h to 0FFFFh When PRG2C0 = 1, 10000h to 13FFFh	No area	Memory expansion mode 40000h to 7FFFFh Microprocessor mode 40000h to BFFFFh
16 Kbytes	043FFh	256 Kbytes	C0000h					
31 Kbytes	07FFFh	512 Kbytes	80000h					

Notes :
1. The CS0 pin outputs a low signal, and pins CS1 to CS3 output a bank number.
2. When the PM10 bit is set to 0, this area is used as external area; when 1, internal ROM (data flash).
3. When the PRG2C0 bit in the PRG2C register is set to 1, this area is used as external area; when 0, internal ROM (program ROM 2).
4. When the PM10 bit is set to 0, this area is used as external area; when 1, reserved area.
5. When the PRG2C0 bit in the PRG2C register is set to 1, this area is used as external area; when 0, reserved area.

Figure 9.5 Memory Mapping and CS Area in 4-Mbyte Mode (PM13 = 1)

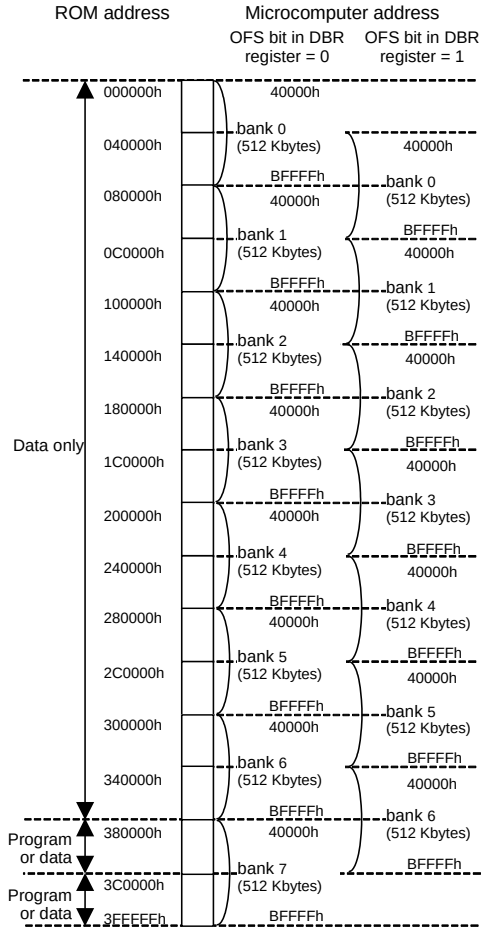
Figure 9.6 shows the External Memory Connect Example in 4-Mbyte Mode.
In this example, the $\overline{CS}$ pin of 4-Mbyte ROM is connected to the $\overline{CS0}$ pin of the microcomputer. The 4-Mbyte ROM address input pins AD21, AD20, and AD19 are connected to pins $\overline{CS3}$, $\overline{CS2}$, and $\overline{CS1}$ of the microcomputer, respectively. The address input AD18 pin is connected to the A19 pin of microcomputer. Figures 9.7 to 9.9 show the relationship of addresses between the 4-Mbyte ROM and the microcomputer for the case of a connection example in Figure 9.6.
In microprocessor mode or in memory expansion mode where the PM13 bit in the PM1 register is 0, banks are located every 512 Kbytes. Setting the OFS bit in the DBR register to 1 (offset) allows the accessed address to be offset by 40000h, so that even the data overlapping at a bank boundary can be accessed in succession.
In memory expansion mode where the PM13 bit is 1, each 512-Kbyte bank can be accessed in 256 Kbyte units by switching them over with the OFS bit.
Because the SRAM can be accessed on condition that the chip select signals S2 = “H” and $\overline{S1}$ = “L”, $\overline{CS0}$ and $\overline{CS2}$ can be connected to S2 and $\overline{S1}$, respectively. If the SRAM does not have the input pins which accept “H” active and “L” active chip select signals ($\overline{S1}$, S2), $\overline{CS0}$ and $\overline{CS2}$ should be decoded external to the chip.



Note :
1. If only one chip select pin ($\overline{S1}$ or S2) is present, using an external circuit is required for decode.

Figure 9.6 External Memory Connect Example in 4-Mbyte Mode

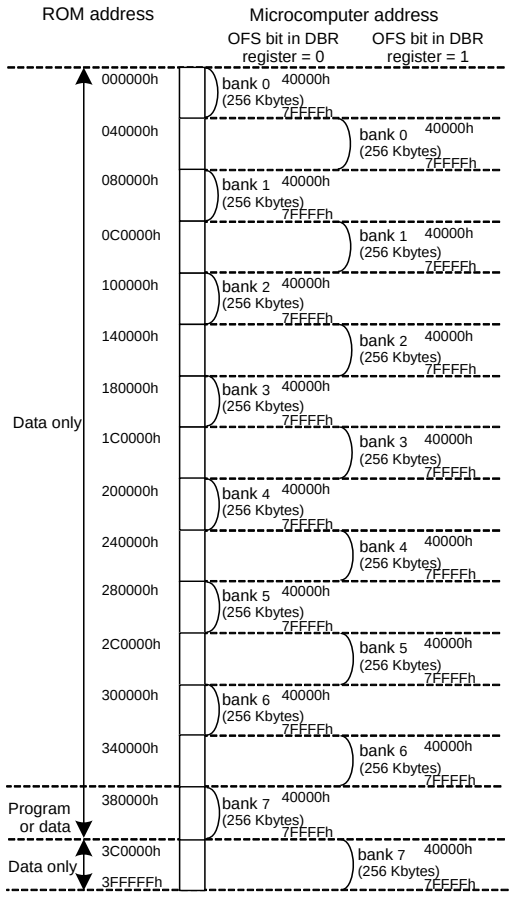
Memory expansion mode where PM13 = 0



Bank Number	OFS	Access Area	Output from the Microcomputer Pins								
			$\overline{CS}$ Output			Address Output					
			$\overline{CS3}$	$\overline{CS2}$	$\overline{CS1}$	A19	A18	A17	A16	A15 to A0	
0	0	40000h	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0000h	000000h
		BFFFFFh	0	0	0	1	0	1	1	FFFFFh	07FFFFh
	1	40000h	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0000h	040000h
		BFFFFFh	0	0	1	0	1	1	1	FFFFFh	0BFFFFh
1	0	40000h	0	0	1	0	1	0	0	0000h	080000h
		BFFFFFh	0	0	1	1	0	1	1	FFFFFh	0FFFFFh
	1	40000h	0	0	1	1	0	0	0	0000h	0C0000h
		BFFFFFh	0	1	0	0	1	1	1	FFFFFh	13FFFFh
2	0	40000h	0	1	0	0	1	0	0	0000h	100000h
		BFFFFFh	0	1	0	1	0	1	1	FFFFFh	17FFFFh
	1	40000h	0	1	0	1	0	0	0	0000h	140000h
		BFFFFFh	0	1	1	0	1	1	1	FFFFFh	1BFFFFh
3	0	40000h	0	1	1	0	1	0	0	0000h	180000h
		BFFFFFh	0	1	1	1	0	1	1	FFFFFh	1FFFFFh
	1	40000h	0	1	1	1	0	0	0	0000h	1C0000h
		BFFFFFh	1	0	0	0	1	1	1	FFFFFh	23FFFFh
4	0	40000h	1	0	0	0	1	0	0	0000h	200000h
		BFFFFFh	1	0	0	1	0	1	1	FFFFFh	27FFFFh
	1	40000h	1	0	0	1	0	0	0	0000h	240000h
		BFFFFFh	1	0	1	0	1	1	1	FFFFFh	2BFFFFh
5	0	40000h	1	0	1	0	1	0	0	0000h	280000h
		BFFFFFh	1	0	1	1	0	1	1	FFFFFh	2FFFFFh
	1	40000h	1	0	1	1	0	0	0	0000h	2C0000h
		BFFFFFh	1	1	0	0	1	1	1	FFFFFh	33FFFFh
6	0	40000h	1	1	0	0	1	0	0	0000h	300000h
		BFFFFFh	1	1	0	1	0	1	1	FFFFFh	37FFFFh
	1	40000h	1	1	0	1	0	0	0	0000h	340000h
		BFFFFFh	1	1	1	0	1	1	1	FFFFFh	3BFFFFh
7	0	40000h	1	1	1	0	1	0	0	0000h	380000h
		7FFFFh	1	1	1	0	1	1	1	FFFFFh	3BFFFFh
		80000h	1	1	1	1	0	0	0	0000h	3C0000h
		BFFFFFh	1	1	1	1	0	1	1	FFFFFh	3FFFFFh
		C0000h	1	1	1	1	1	0	0	0000h	3C0000h
		CFFFFFh	1	1	1	1	1	0	0	FFFFFh	3CFFFFh
		D0000h									Internal ROM access
		DFFFFFh									Internal ROM access
		D0000h									Internal ROM access
		DFFFFFh									Internal ROM access
			A21	A20	A19	A18	N.C.	A17	A16	A15 to A0	4-Mbyte ROM access area
			Address input for 4-Mbyte ROM								

Figure 9.7 Relationship Between Addresses on 4-Mbyte ROM and Those on Microcomputer (1)

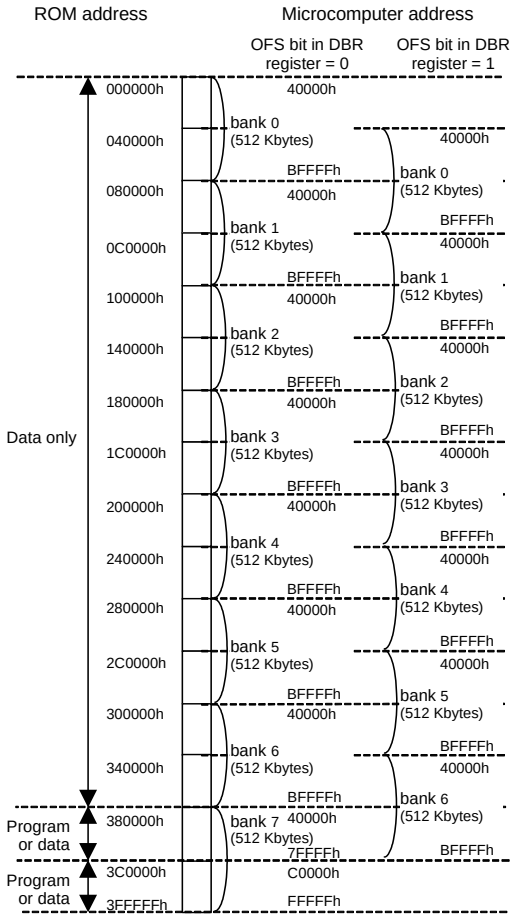
Memory expansion mode where PM13 = 1



Bank Number	OFS	Access Area	Output from the Microcomputer Pins								
			$\overline{CS}$ Output			Address Output					
			$\overline{CS3}$	$\overline{CS2}$	$\overline{CS1}$	A19	A18	A17	A16	A15 to A0	
0	0	40000h	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0000h	000000h
		7FFFFh	0	0	0	0	1	1	1	FFFFh	03FFFFh
	1	40000h	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0000h	040000h
		7FFFFh	0	0	0	1	0	1	1	FFFFh	07FFFFh
1	0	40000h	0	0	1	0	1	0	0	0000h	080000h
		7FFFFh	0	0	1	0	1	1	1	FFFFh	0BFFFFh
	1	40000h	0	0	1	1	0	0	0	0000h	0C0000h
		7FFFFh	0	0	1	1	0	1	1	FFFFh	0FFFFFh
2	0	40000h	0	1	0	0	1	0	0	0000h	100000h
		7FFFFh	0	1	0	0	1	1	1	FFFFh	13FFFFh
	1	40000h	0	1	0	1	0	0	0	0000h	140000h
		7FFFFh	0	1	0	1	0	1	1	FFFFh	17FFFFh
3	0	40000h	0	1	1	0	1	0	0	0000h	180000h
		7FFFFh	0	1	1	0	1	1	1	FFFFh	1BFFFFh
	1	40000h	0	1	1	1	0	0	0	0000h	1C0000h
		7FFFFh	0	1	1	1	0	1	1	FFFFh	1FFFFFh
4	0	40000h	1	0	0	0	1	0	0	0000h	200000h
		7FFFFh	1	0	0	0	1	1	1	FFFFh	23FFFFh
	1	40000h	1	0	0	1	0	0	0	0000h	240000h
		7FFFFh	1	0	0	1	0	1	1	FFFFh	27FFFFh
5	0	40000h	1	0	1	0	1	0	0	0000h	280000h
		7FFFFh	1	0	1	0	1	1	1	FFFFh	2BFFFFh
	1	40000h	1	0	1	1	0	0	0	0000h	2C0000h
		7FFFFh	1	0	1	1	0	1	1	FFFFh	2FFFFFh
6	0	40000h	1	1	0	0	1	0	0	0000h	300000h
		7FFFFh	1	1	0	0	1	1	1	FFFFh	33FFFFh
	1	40000h	1	1	0	1	0	0	0	0000h	340000h
		7FFFFh	1	1	0	1	0	1	1	FFFFh	37FFFFh
7	0	40000h	1	1	1	0	1	0	0	0000h	380000h
		7FFFFh	1	1	1	0	1	1	1	FFFFh	3BFFFFh
		80000h									Internal ROM access
		FFFFFh									Internal ROM access
7	1	40000h	1	1	1	1	0	0	0	0000h	3C0000h
		7FFFFh	1	1	1	1	0	1	1	FFFFh	3FFFFFh
		80000h									Internal ROM access
		FFFFFh									Internal ROM access
			A21	A20	A19	A18	N.C.	A17	A16	A15 to A0	4-Mbyte ROM access area
			Address input for 4-Mbyte ROM								

Figure 9.8 Relationship Between Addresses on 4-Mbyte ROM and Those on Microcomputer (2)

Microprocessor mode



Bank Number	OFS	Access Area	Output from the Microcomputer Pins								
			$\overline{CS}$ Output			Address Output					
			$\overline{CS3}$	$\overline{CS2}$	$\overline{CS1}$	A19	A18	A17	A16	A15 to A0	
0	0	40000h	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0000h	000000h
		BFFFFh	0	0	0	1	0	1	1	FFFFh	07FFFFh
	1	40000h	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0000h	040000h
		BFFFFh	0	0	1	0	1	1	1	FFFFh	0BFFFFh
1	0	40000h	0	0	1	0	1	0	0	0000h	080000h
		BFFFFh	0	0	1	1	0	1	1	FFFFh	0FFFFFh
	1	40000h	0	0	1	1	0	0	0	0000h	0C0000h
		BFFFFh	0	1	0	0	1	1	1	FFFFh	13FFFFh
2	0	40000h	0	1	0	0	1	0	0	0000h	100000h
		BFFFFh	0	1	0	1	0	1	1	FFFFh	17FFFFh
	1	40000h	0	1	0	1	0	0	0	0000h	140000h
		BFFFFh	0	1	1	0	1	1	1	FFFFh	1BFFFFh
3	0	40000h	0	1	1	0	1	0	0	0000h	180000h
		BFFFFh	0	1	1	1	0	1	1	FFFFh	1FFFFFh
	1	40000h	0	1	1	1	0	0	0	0000h	1C0000h
		BFFFFh	1	0	0	0	1	1	1	FFFFh	23FFFFh
4	0	40000h	1	0	0	0	1	0	0	0000h	200000h
		BFFFFh	1	0	0	1	0	1	1	FFFFh	27FFFFh
	1	40000h	1	0	0	1	0	0	0	0000h	240000h
		BFFFFh	1	0	1	0	1	1	1	FFFFh	2BFFFFh
5	0	40000h	1	0	1	0	1	0	0	0000h	280000h
		BFFFFh	1	0	1	1	0	1	1	FFFFh	2FFFFFh
	1	40000h	1	0	1	1	0	0	0	0000h	2C0000h
		BFFFFh	1	1	0	0	1	1	1	FFFFh	33FFFFh
6	0	40000h	1	1	0	0	1	0	0	0000h	300000h
		BFFFFh	1	1	0	1	0	1	1	FFFFh	37FFFFh
	1	40000h	1	1	0	1	0	0	0	0000h	340000h
		BFFFFh	1	1	1	0	1	1	1	FFFFh	3BFFFFh
7	0	40000h	1	1	1	0	1	0	0	0000h	380000h
		7FFFFh	1	1	1	0	1	1	1	FFFFh	3BFFFFh
		80000h	1	1	1	1	0	0	0	0000h	3C0000h
		BFFFFh	1	1	1	1	0	1	1	FFFFh	3FFFFFh
		C0000h	1	1	1	1	1	0	0	0000h	3C0000h
		FFFFFh	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	FFFFh	3FFFFFh
			A21	A20	A19	A18	N.C.	A17	A16	A15 to A0	4-Mbyte ROM access area
			Address input for 4-Mbyte ROM								

Figure 9.9 Relationship Between Addresses on 4-Mbyte ROM and Those on Microcomputer (3)

10. Clock Generation Circuit

10.1 Type of the Clock Generation Circuit

4 circuits are incorporated to generate the system clock signal:

- Main clock oscillation circuit
- Sub clock oscillation circuit
- 125 kHz on-chip oscillator
- PLL frequency synthesizer

Table 10.1 lists the Clock Generation Circuit Specifications. Figure 10.1 shows the System Clock Generation Circuit.
Figures 10.2 to 10.6 show the clock-related registers.

Table 10.1 Clock Generation Circuit Specifications

Item	Main Clock Oscillation Circuit	Sub Clock Oscillation Circuit	125 kHz On-Chip Oscillator	PLL Frequency Synthesizer
Use of Clock	CPU clock source Peripheral function clock source	CPU clock source Clock source of timer A and B.	CPU clock source Peripheral function clock source CPU and peripheral function clock sources when the main clock stops oscillating	CPU clock source Peripheral function clock source
Clock Frequency	0 to 20 MHz	32.768 kHz	125 kHz	10 to 25 MHz
Usable Oscillator	Ceramic oscillator Crystal oscillator	Crystal oscillator	-	- (1)
Pins to Connect Oscillator	XIN, XOUT	XCIN, XCOUT	-	- (1)
Oscillation Stop, Restart Function	Presence	Presence	Presence	Presence
Oscillator Status After Reset	Oscillating	Stopped	Oscillating	Stopped
Other	Externally derived clock can be input		-	- (1)

Note:
1. The PLL frequency synthesizer uses the main clock oscillation circuit as a reference clock source. The items above are based on those of the main clock oscillation circuit.

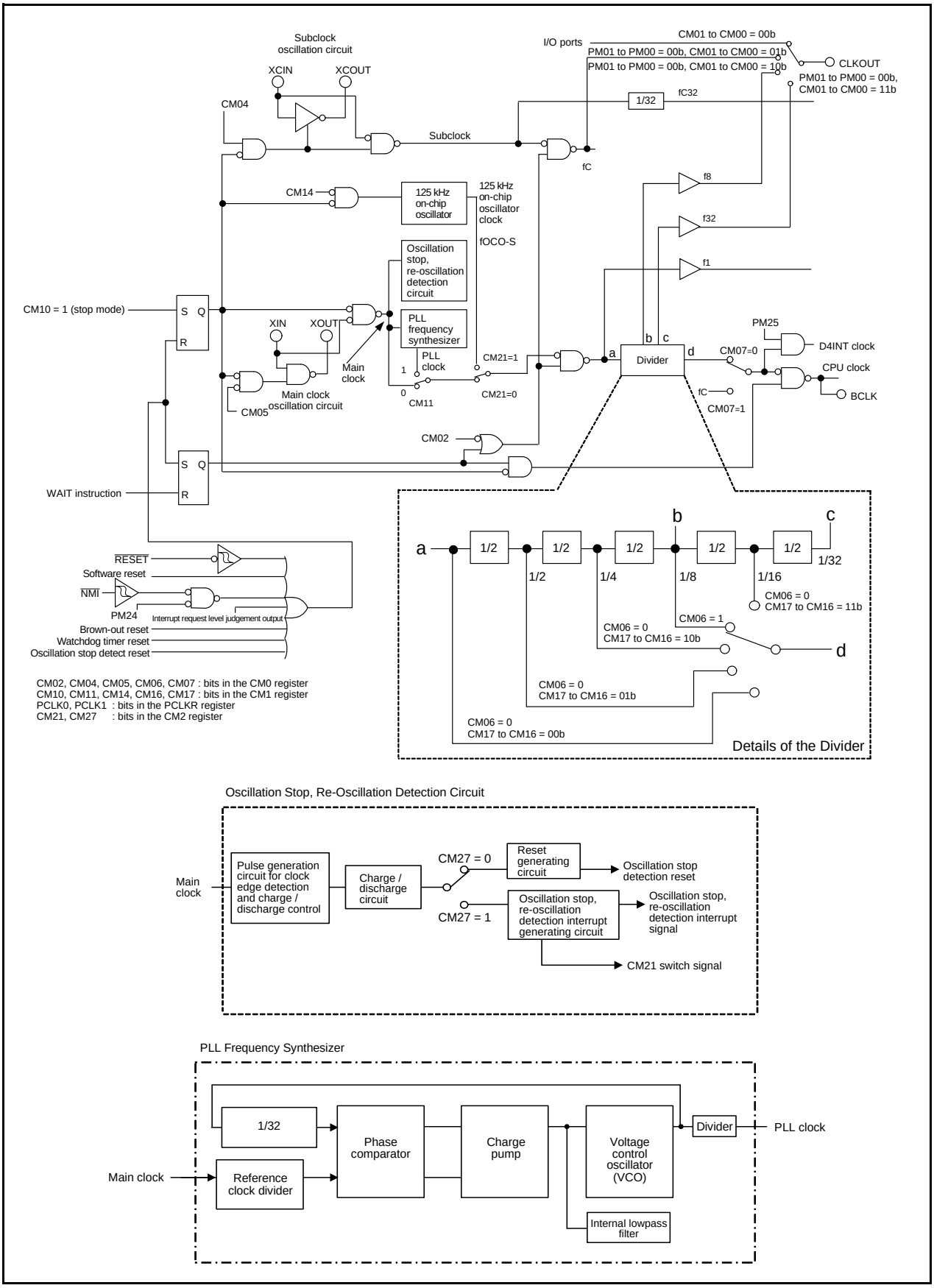
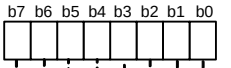


Figure 10.1 System Clock Generation Circuit

System Clock Control Register 0 (1)



Symbol	Address	After Reset
CM0	0006h	01001000b

Bit Symbol	Bit Name	Function	RW
CM00	Clock output function select bit (valid only in single-chip mode)	b1 b0 0 0 : I/O port P5_7 0 1 : Output fC 1 0 : Output f8 1 1 : Output f32	RW
CM01			
CM02	WAIT mode peripheral function clock stop bit (10)	0 : Peripheral function clock f1 does not stop in wait mode 1 : Peripheral function clock f1 stops in wait mode (8)	RW
CM03	XCIN-XCOUT drive capacity select bit (2)	0 : Low 1 : High	RW
CM04	Port XC select bit (2)	0 : I/O ports P8_6, P8_7 1 : XCIN-XCOUT oscillation function (9)	RW
CM05	Main clock stop bit (3, 4, 10, 12, 13)	0 : On 1 : Off (5)	RW
CM06	Main clock division select bit 0 (7, 13, 14)	0 : CM16 and CM17 enabled 1 : Division-by-8 mode	RW
CM07	System clock select bit (6, 10, 11, 12)	0 : Main clock, PLL clock, or 125 kHz on-chip oscillator clock 1 : Sub clock	RW

Notes:
1. Rewrite this register after setting the PRC0 bit in the PRCR register to 1 (write enabled).
2. The CM03 bit is set to 1 (high) while the CM04 bit is set to 0 (I/O port) or when entering stop mode.
3. This bit is provided to stop the main clock when the low power consumption mode or 125 kHz on-chip oscillator low power dissipation mode is selected. This bit cannot be used for detection as to whether the main clock stops or not. To stop the main clock, set bits as follows:
   (a) Set the CM07 bit to 1 (sub clock selected) with the sub-clock stably oscillates, or set the CM21 bit in the CM2 register to 1 (125 kHz on-chip oscillator selected).
   (b) Set the CM20 bit in the CM2 register to 0 (oscillation stop, re-oscillation detection function disabled).
   (c) Set the CM05 bit to 1 (stop).
4. During external clock input, set the CM05 bit to 0 (oscillate).
5. When the CM05 bit is set to 1, the XOUT pin is held ìHî. Because the internal feedback resistor remains connected, the XIN pin is pulled ìHî to the same level as XOUT via the feedback resistor.
6. After setting the CM04 bit to 1 (XCIN-XCOUT oscillator function), wait until the sub-clock oscillates stably before switching the CM07 bit from 0 to 1 (sub clock).
7. When entering stop mode, the CM06 bit is set to 1 (divide-by-8 mode).
8. The fC32 and fOCO-S clocks, which are clock sources of time A and B, do not stop.
9. To use a sub-clock, set this bit to 1. Also make sure ports P8_6 and P8_7 are directed for input, with no pull-ups.
10. When the PM21 bit in the PM2 register is set to 1 (disable clock modification), the value remains unchanged even if writing to bits CM02, CM05, and CM07.
11. When setting the PM21 bit to 1, set the CM07 bit to 0 (main clock) before setting the PM21 bit to 1.
12. To use the main clock as the clock source for the CPU clock, set bits as follows.
   (a) Set the CM05 bit to 0 (oscillate).
   (b) Wait the main clock oscillation stabilizes.
   (c) Set bits CM11, CM21, and CM07 to 0.
13. When the CM07 bit is set to 1 (sub clock) and the CM05 bit is set to 1 (main clock stops), the CM06 bit is fixed to 1 (divide-by-8 mode) and the CM15 bit is fixed to 1 (drive capacity high).
14. To return from 125 kHz on-chip oscillator mode to high-speed or middle-speed mode, set bits CM06 and CM15 to 1.

Figure 10.2 CM0 Register

System Clock Control Register 1 (1)

b7	b6	b5	b4	b3	b2	b1	b0
				0	0		

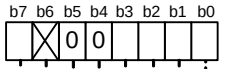
Symbol	Address	After Reset
CM1	0007h	00100000b

Bit Symbol	Bit Name	Function	RW
CM10	All clock stop control bit (4, 6)	0 : Clock on 1 : All clocks off (stop mode)	RW
CM11	System clock select bit 1 (6, 7)	0 : Main clock 1 : PLL clock (5)	RW
— (b3-b2)	Reserved bits	Set to 0	RW
CM14	125 kHz on-chip oscillator stop bit (8, 9)	0 : 125 kHz on-chip oscillator on 1 : 125 kHz on-chip oscillator off	RW
CM15	XIN-XOUT drive capacity select bit (2)	0 : Low 1 : High	RW
CM16	Main clock division select bit 1 (3)	b7 b6 0 0 : No division mode 0 1 : Divide-by-2 mode 1 0 : Divide-by-4 mode 1 1 : Divide-by-16 mode	RW
CM17			

Notes :
1. Rewrite this register after setting the PRC0 bit in the PRCR register to 1 (write enabled).
2. When entering stop mode or the CM05 bit is set to 1 (main clock stops) in low speed mode, the CM15 bit is set to 1 (drive capacity high).
3. This bit is valid when the CM06 bit is set to 0 (bits CM16 and CM17 enabled).
4. If the CM10 bit is set to 1 (stop mode), XOUT is held “H” and the internal feedback resistor is disconnected. Pins XCIN and XCOUT are in high-impedance state. When the CM11 bit is set to 1 (PLL clock), or the CM20 bit in the CM2 register is set to 1 (oscillation stop detection function enabled), do not set the CM10 bit to 1.
5. After setting the PLC07 bit in the PLC0 register to 1 (PLL operation), wait tsu (PLL) elapses before setting the CM11 bit to 1 (PLL clock).
6. When the PM21 bit in the PM2 register is set to 1 (disable clock modification), the value remains unchanged even if writing to bits CM10 and CM11. When the CSPRO bit in the CSPR register is set to 1 (count source protection mode), the value remains unchanged even if writing to the CM10 bit.
7. The CM11 bit is valid when bits CM07 and CM21 are set to 0.
8. The CM14 bit can be set to 1 (125 kHz on-chip oscillator off) when the CM21 bit is set to 0 (main clock or PLL clock). When the CM21 bit is set to 1 (125 kHz on-chip oscillator clock), the CM14 bit is set to 0 (125 kHz on-chip oscillator on) and remains unchanged even if writing 1 to this bit.
9. When the CSPRO bit in the CSPR register is set to 1 (count source protection mode), the CM14 bit is automatically set to 0 (125 kHz on-chip oscillator on) and remains unchanged even if writing a 1 to this bit (125 kHz on-chip oscillator does not stop).

Figure 10.3 CM1 Register

Oscillation Stop Detection Register (1)



Symbol	Address	After Reset
CM2	000Ch	0X000010b (11)

Bit Symbol	Bit Name	Function	RW
CM20	Oscillation stop and re-oscillation detection enable bit (7, 9, 10,11)	0: Oscillation stop and re-oscillation detection function disabled 1: Oscillation stop and re-oscillation detection function enabled	RW
CM21	System clock select bit 2 (2, 3, 6, 8, 11, 12)	0: Main clock or PLL clock 1: 125 kHz on-chip oscillator clock	RW
CM22	Oscillation stop and re-oscillation detection flag (4)	0: Main clock stops and re-oscillation not detected 1: Main clock stops and re-oscillation detected	RW
CM23	XIN monitor flag (5)	0: Main clock oscillates 1: Main clock stops	RO
— (b5-b4)	Reserved bits	Set to 0	RW
— (b6)	No register bit. If necessary, set to 0. Read as undefined value		—
CM27	Operation select bit (when an oscillation stops and re-oscillation is detected) (11)	0: Oscillation stop detection reset 1: Oscillation stop, re-oscillation detection interrupt	RW

Notes :
1. Rewrite this register after setting the PRC0 bit in the PRCR register to 1 (write enabled).
2. When the CM20 bit is set to 1 (oscillation stop and re-oscillation detection function enabled), the CM27 bit is set to 1 (oscillation stop and re-oscillation detection interrupt), and the CPU clock source is the main clock, the CM21 bit is set to 1 (125 kHz on-chip oscillator clock) if the main clock stop is detected.
3. If the CM20 bit is set to 1 and the CM23 bit is set to 1 (main clock stops), do not set the CM21 bit to 0.
4. This bit is set to 1 when the main clock stop is detected and the main clock re-oscillation is detected. When this flag changes state from 0 to 1, an oscillation stop or a re-oscillation detection interrupt is generated. Use this bit in an interrupt routine to determine the factors of interrupts between the oscillation stop, re-oscillation etection interrupt and the watchdog timer interrupt. This bit is set to 0 by writing 0 in a program. (This bit remains unchanged even if a 1 is written. Nor is it set to 0 when an oscillation stop or a re-oscillation detection interrupt request is acknowledged.) When the CM22 bit is set to 1 and an oscillation stop or a re-oscillation is detected, an oscillation stop or a re-oscillation detection interrupt is not generated.
5. Determine the main clock status by reading the CM23 bit several times in an oscillation stop or a re-oscillation detection interrupt routine.
6. This bit is valid when the CM07 bit in the CM0 register is set to 0.
7. When the PM21 bit in the PM2 register is set to 1 (disable clock modification), the value remains unchanged even if writing to the CM20 bit.
8. When the CM20 bit is set to 1 (oscillation stop and re-oscillation detection function enabled), the CM27 bit is 1 (oscillation stop and re-oscillation detection interrupt), and the CM11 bit is set to 1 (PLL clock is selected as the CPU clock source), the CM21 bit remains unchanged even if a main clock stop is detected. When the CM22 bit is set to 0 under these conditions, an oscillation stop, a re-oscillation detection interrupt request is generated at main clock stop detection. Set the CM21 bit to 1 (125 kHz on-chip oscillator clock) in the interrupt routine.
9. Set the CM20 bit to 0 (disabled) before entering stop mode. Exit stop mode before setting the CM20 bit back to 1 (enabled).
10. Set the CM20 bit in the CM2 register to 0 (disabled) before setting the CM05 bit in the CM0 register to 1 (main clock stops).
11. Bits CM20, CM21, and CM27 remain unchanged at the oscillation stop detection reset.
12. When the CM21 bit is set to 0 (main clock or PLL clock) and the CM05 bit is set to 1 (main clock stops), the CM06 bit is fixed to 1 (divide-by-8 mode) and the CM15 bit is fixed to 1 (drive capacity high).

Figure 10.4 CM2 Register

Peripheral Clock Select Register (1)

b7	b6	b5	b4	b3	b2	b1	b0
0	0	0	0	0	0		

Symbol	Address	After Reset
PCLKR	0012h	00000011b

Bit Symbol	Bit Name	Function	RW
PCLK0	Timers A and B clock select bit (clock source for Timers A , B, and the dead time timer)	0 : f2TIMAB 1 : f1TIMAB	RW
PCLK1	SI/O clock select bit (clock source for UART0 to UART2, UART5 to UART7, SI/O3, and SI/O4)	0 : f2SIO 1 : f1SIO	RW
— (b7-b2)	Reserved bits	Set to 0. Read as undefined value	RW

Processor Mode Register 2 (1)

b7	b6	b5	b4	b3	b2	b1	b0
X	X			0	X		

Symbol	Address	After Reset
PM2	001Eh	XX000X01b

Bit Symbol	Bit Name	Function	RW
PM20	Specifying wait when accessing SFR at PLL operation (2)	0 : 2 waits 1 : 1 wait	RW
PM21	System clock protection bit (3, 4)	0 : Clock is protected by PRCR register 1 : Clock modification disabled	RW
— (b2)	No register bit. If necessary, set to 0. Read as undefined value		—
— (b3)	Reserved bit	Set to 0	RW
PM24	$\overline{\text{NMI}}$ interrupt enable bit (3)	0 : $\overline{\text{NMI}}$ interrupt disabled 1 : $\overline{\text{NMI}}$ interrupt enabled	RW
PM25	D4INT/fC clock provide enable bit (5)	0 : provide enabled 1 : provide disabled	RW
— (b7-b6)	No register bits. If necessary, set to 0. Read as undefined value		—

Notes:
1. Write to this register after setting the PRC1 bit in the PRCR register to 1 (write enabled).
2. The PM20 bit becomes effective when the PLC07 bit in the PLC0 register is set to 1 (PLL on). Change the PM20 bit when the PLC07 bit is set to 0 (PLL off).
3. Once this bit is set to 1, it cannot be cleared to 0 in a program.
4. If the PM21 bit is set to 1, writing to the following bits has no effect:
   - CM02 bit in CM0 register
   - CM05 bit in CM0 register (main clock does not stop)
   - CM07 bit in CM0 register (clock source for the CPU clock does not change)
   - CM10 bit in CM1 register (stop mode is not entered)
   - CM11 bit in CM1 register (clock source for the CPU clock does not change)
   - CM20 bit in CM2 register (oscillation stop and re-oscillation detection function settings do not change)
   - All bits in PLC0 register (PLL frequency synthesizer settings do not change)

   Be aware that the WAIT instruction cannot be executed when the PM21 bit is set to 1.
5. When using low voltage detection interrupt, set the PM25 bit to 1 (provide enabled).

Figure 10.5 PCLKR Register and PM2 Register

PLL Control Register 0 (1, 2)

b7	b6	b5	b4	b3	b2	b1	b0	Symbol	Address	After Reset
	X							PLC0	001Ch	0X01X010b

Bit Symbol	Bit Name	Function	RW
PLC00	PLL multiplying factor select bit (3)	b2 b1 b0 0 0 0 : Do not set 0 0 1 : Multiply by 2 0 1 0 : Multiply by 4 0 1 1 : Multiply by 6 1 0 0 : Multiply by 8 1 0 1 : 1 1 0 : Do not set 1 1 1 :	RW
PLC01			RW
PLC02			RW
— (b3)	Reserved bit	Read as undefined value	RO
PLC04	Reference frequency counter set bit (3)	b5 b4 0 0 : No division 0 1 : Divide-by-2 1 0 : Divide-by-4 1 1 : Do not set	RW
PLC05			RW
— (b6)	No register bit. If necessary, set to 0. Read as undefined value		—
PLC07	Operation enable bit (4)	0 : PLL off 1 : PLL on	RW

Notes :
1. Write to this register after setting the PRC0 bit in the PRCR register to 1 (write enabled).
2. When the PM21 bit in the PM2 register is 1 (clock modification disabled), the values of this register do not change even if writing to this register.
3. Bits PLC00 to PLC02, PLC04, and PLC5 can only be modified when the PLC07 bit is set to 0 (PLL turned off).
4. Before setting the PLC07 bit to 1, set the CM05 bit to 0 (main clock oscillation).

Figure 10.6 PLC0 Register

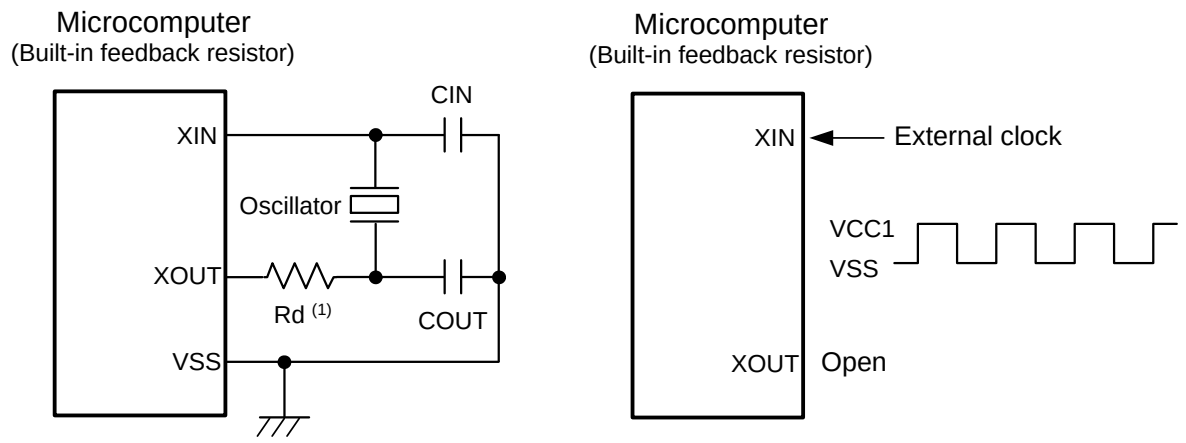
The following describes the clocks generated by the clock generation circuit.

10.1.1 Main Clock

This clock is provided by the main clock oscillation circuit and used as the clock source for the CPU and peripheral function clocks. The main clock oscillation circuit is configured by connecting a resonator between pins XIN and XOUT. The main clock oscillation circuit contains a feedback resistor, which is disconnected from the oscillation circuit during stop mode in order to reduce the amount of power consumed in the chip. The main clock oscillation circuit may also be configured by feeding an externally generated clock to the XIN pin. Figure 10.7 shows the Examples of Main Clock Connection Circuit.

The power consumption in the chip can be reduced by setting the CM05 bit in the CM0 register to 1 (main clock oscillation circuit turned off) after switching the clock source for the CPU clock to a sub clock or 125 kHz on-chip oscillation clock. In this case, XOUT goes “H”. Furthermore, because the internal feedback resistor remains on, XIN is pulled “H” to XOUT via the feedback resistor.

During stop mode, all clocks including the main clock are turned off. Refer to **10.4 “Power Control”** for details.



Note :
1. Place a damping resistor if required. The resistance will vary depending on the oscillator and the oscillation drive capacity setting. Use the value recommended by each oscillator manufacturer.
When the oscillation drive capacity is set to low, check if oscillation is stable at low.
Also, place a feedback resistor between XIN and XOUT if the oscillator manufacturer recommends placing the resistor externally.

Figure 10.7 Examples of Main Clock Connection Circuit

10.1.2 Sub Clock

The sub clock is generated by the sub clock oscillation circuit. This clock is used as the clock source for the CPU clock, as well as the timer A and timer B count sources. In addition, an fC clock with the same frequency as that of the sub clock can be output from the CLKOUT pin.

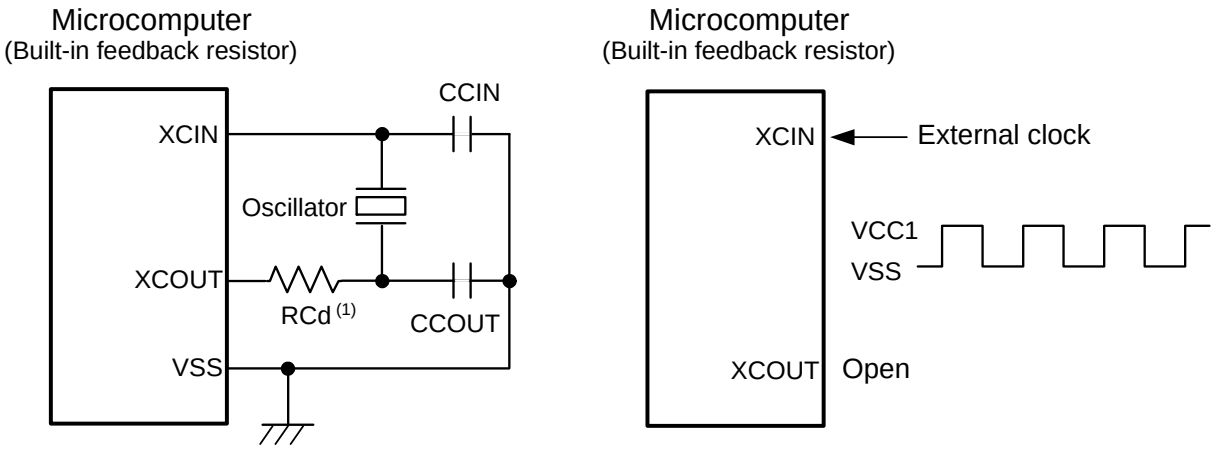
The sub clock oscillation circuit is configured by connecting a crystal resonator between pins XCIN and XCOUT. The sub clock oscillation circuit contains a feedback resistor, which is disconnected from the oscillation circuit during stop mode in order to reduce the amount of power consumed in the chip. The sub clock oscillation circuit may also be configured by feeding an externally generated clock to the XCIN pin.

Figure 10.8 shows the Examples of Sub Clock Connection Circuit.

After reset, the sub clock is turned off. At this time, the feedback resistor is disconnected from the oscillation circuit.

To use the sub clock for the CPU clock, set the CM07 bit in the CM0 register to 1 (sub clock) after the sub clock becomes oscillating stably.

During stop mode, all clocks including the sub clock are turned off. Refer to **10.4 "Power Control"** for details.



Note:
1. Place a damping resistor if required. The resistance will vary depending on the oscillator and the oscillation drive capacity setting. Use the value recommended by each oscillator manufacturer.
When the oscillation drive capacity is set to low, check if oscillation is stable at low. Also, place a feedback resistor between XCIN and XCOUT if the oscillator manufacturer recommends placing the resistor externally.

Figure 10.8 Examples of Sub Clock Connection Circuit

10.1.3 125 kHz On-Chip Oscillator Clock (fOCO-S)

This clock, approximately 125 kHz, is supplied by 125 kHz on-chip oscillator. This clock is used as the clock source for the CPU and peripheral function clocks. In addition, if the CSPRO bit in the CSPR register is 1 (count source protection mode enabled), this clock is used as the count source for the watchdog timer (Refer to **13.2 "Count Source Protection Mode Enabled"**).

After reset, the 125 kHz on-chip oscillator divided by 8 provides the CPU clock. It stops when the CM14 bit in the CM1 register is set to 0 (125 kHz on-chip oscillator stops). If the main clock stops oscillating when the CM20 bit in the CM2 register is 1 (oscillation stop, re-oscillation detection function enabled) and the CM27 bit is 1 (oscillation stop, re-oscillation detection interrupt), the 125 kHz on-chip oscillator automatically starts operating and supplying the necessary clock for the microcomputer.

10.1.4 PLL Clock

The PLL clock is generated by the PLL frequency synthesizer. This clock is used as the clock source for the CPU and peripheral function clocks. After reset, the PLL frequency synthesizer is turned off. The PLL frequency synthesizer is activated by setting the PLC07 bit to 1 (PLL operation). When the PLL clock is used as the clock source for the CPU clock, wait for tsu (PLL) until the PLL clock to be stable, and then set the CM11 bit in the CM1 register to 1.

Before entering wait mode or stop mode, be sure to set the CM11 bit to 0 (CPU clock source is the main clock). Furthermore, before entering stop mode, be sure to set the PLC07 bit in the PLC0 register to 0 (PLL stops). Figure 10.10 shows the Procedure to Use PLL Clock as CPU Clock Source.

The PLL clock is the main clock divided by the selected values of bits PLC05 and PLC04 in the PLC0 register, and then multiplied by the selected values of bits PLC02 to PLC00. Set bits PLC05 and PLC04 to fit divided frequency between 2 MHz and 5 MHz. Figure 10.9 shows the Relation between the Main Clock and the PLL Clock.

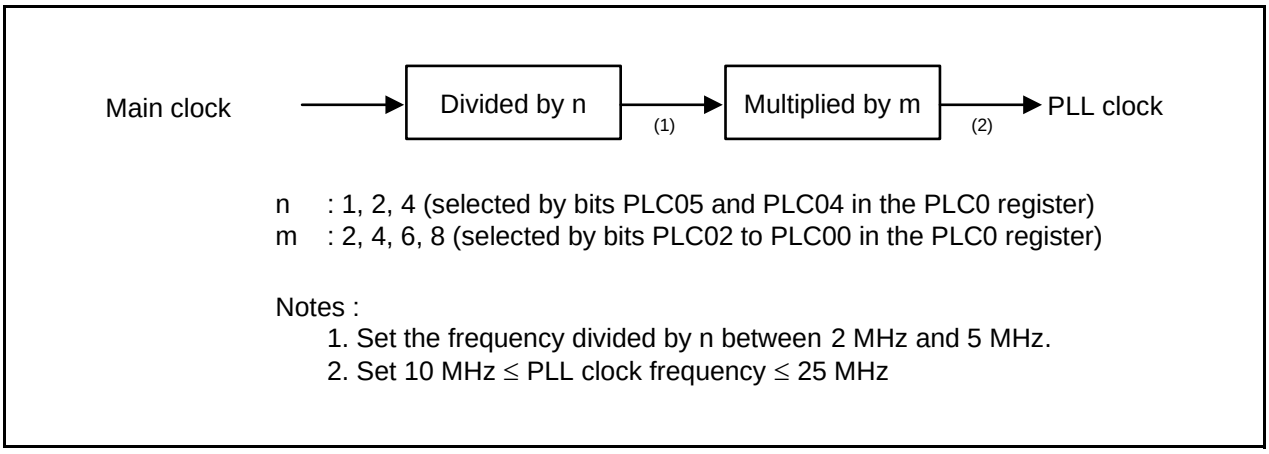


Figure 10.9 Relation between the Main Clock and the PLL Clock

Table 10.2 shows the Example for Setting PLL Clock Frequencies.

Table 10.2 Example for Setting PLL Clock Frequencies

Main Clock	Setting Value		PLL Clock
	Bits PLC05 and PLC04	Bits PLC02 to PLC00	
10 MHz	01b (divided by 2)	010b (multiplied by 4)	20 MHz
5 MHz	00b (not divided)	010b (multiplied by 4)	
12 MHz	10b (divided by 4)	100b (multiplied by 8)	24 MHz
6 MHz	01b (divided by 2)	100b (multiplied by 8)	

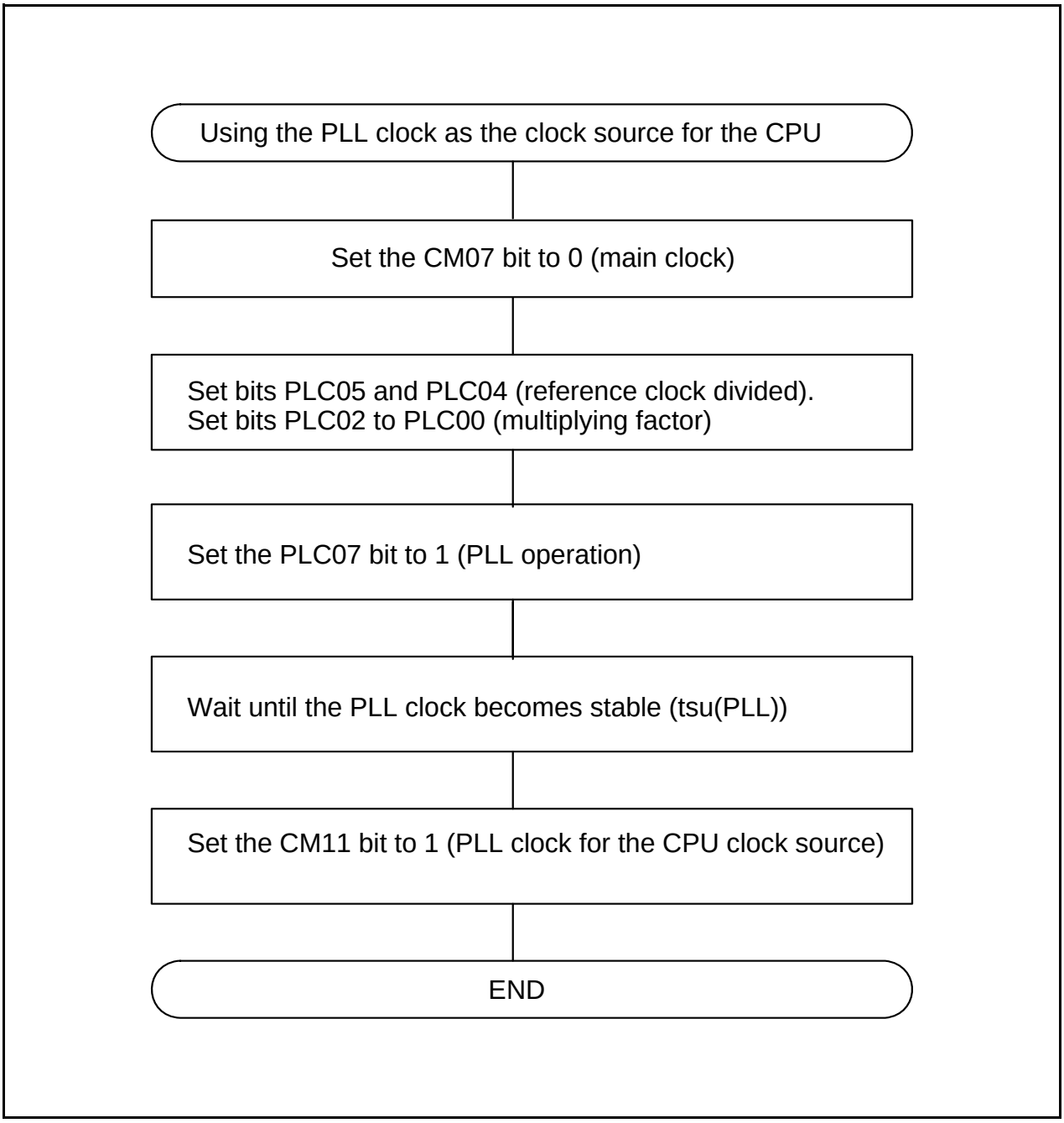


Figure 10.10 Procedure to Use PLL Clock as CPU Clock Source

10.2 CPU Clock and Peripheral Function Clock

Two types of clock exists: CPU clock to operate the CPU
Peripheral function clocks to operate the peripheral functions.

10.2.1 CPU Clock and BCLK

These are operating clocks for the CPU and watchdog timer.
The main clock, sub clock, 125 kHz on-chip oscillator clock, or the PLL clock can be selected as the clock source for the CPU clock.
When the main clock, PLL clock, or 125 kHz on-chip oscillator clock is selected as the clock source for the CPU clock, the selected clock source can be divided by 1 (undivided), 2, 4, 8 or 16 to produce the CPU clock. Use the CM06 bit in the CM0 register and bits CM17 and CM16 in the CM1 register to select a divide-by-n value.
After reset, the 125 kHz on-chip oscillator clock divided by 8 provides the CPU clock.
During memory expansion or microprocessor mode, a BCLK signal with the same frequency as the CPU clock can be output from the BCLK pin by setting the PM07 bit in the PM0 register to 0 (output enabled).
Note that when entering stop mode or when the CM05 bit in the CM0 register is set to 1 (stop) in low-speed mode, the CM06 bit in the CM0 register is set to 1 (divide-by-8 mode).

10.2.2 Peripheral Function Clock (f1, fC32)

These are operating clocks for the peripheral functions.
f1 is produced from the main clock, the PLL clock, or the 125 kHz on-chip oscillator clock, and is used for timers A and B, UART0 to UART2, UART5 to UART7, SI/O3, SI/O4, and A/D converter.
When the WAIT instruction is executed after setting the CM02 bit in the CM0 register to 1 (peripheral function clock f1 turned off during wait mode), or when the microcomputer is in low power consumption mode, the f1 clock is turned off.
The fC32 clock is produced from the sub clock, and is used for timers A and B. This clock can be used when the sub clock is on.
fOCO-S is used for timers A and B. fOCO-S can be used when the CM14 bit in the CM1 register is set to 0 (125 kHz on-chip oscillator oscillates).
Figure 10.11 shows the Peripheral Function Clock.

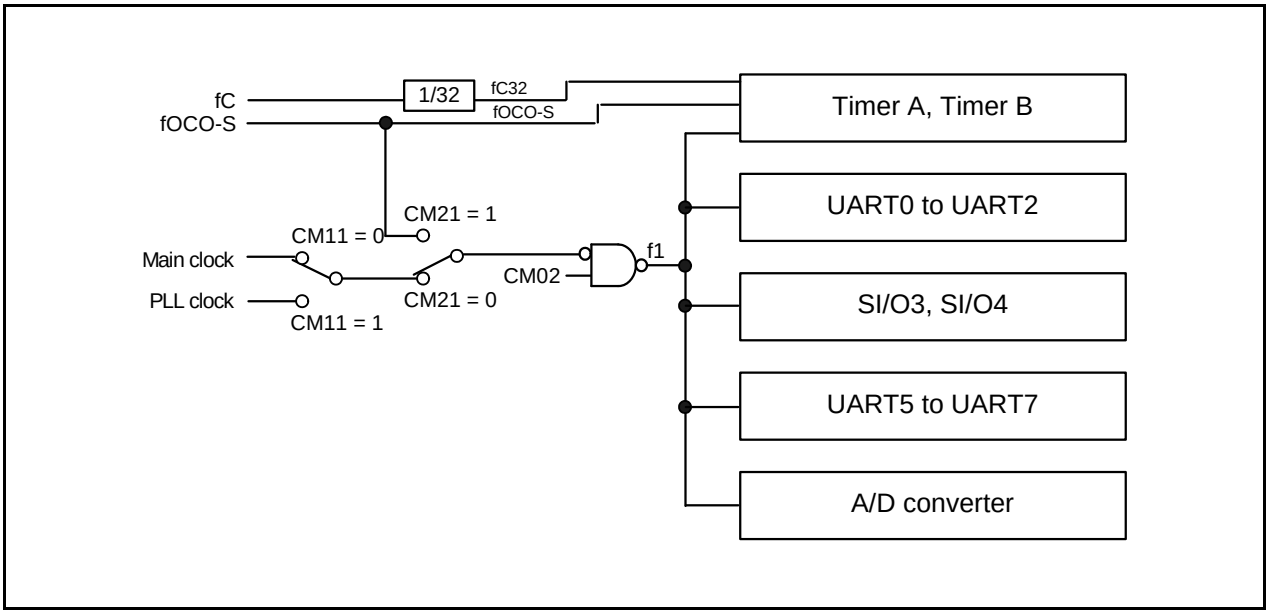


Figure 10.11 Peripheral Function Clock

10.3 Clock Output Function

During single-chip mode, the f8, f32, or fC clock can be output from the CLKOUT pin. Use bits CM01 and CM00 in the CM0 register to select.

10.4 Power Control

Normal operating mode, wait mode, and stop mode are provided as the power consumption control. All mode states, except wait mode and stop mode, are called normal operating mode in this document.

10.4.1 Normal Operating Mode

Normal operating mode is further classified into seven modes.
In normal operating mode, because the CPU clock and the peripheral function clocks both are on, the CPU and the peripheral functions are operating. Power control is exercised by controlling the CPU clock frequency. The higher the CPU clock frequency, the greater the processing capability. The lower the CPU clock frequency, the smaller the power consumption in the chip. If the unnecessary oscillator circuits are turned off, the power consumption is further reduced.
Before the clock sources for the CPU clock can be switched over, the new clock source to which switched must be oscillating stably. If the new clock source is the main clock, sub clock, or PLL clock, allow a sufficient wait time in a program until it becomes oscillating stably.
When the CPU clock source is changed from the 125 kHz on-chip oscillator to the main clock, change the operating mode to the medium speed mode (divided by 8 mode) after the clock was divided by 8 (the CM06 bit in the CM0 register was set to 1) in the 125 kHz on-chip oscillator mode.

10.4.1.1 High-speed Mode

The main clock divided by 1 provides the CPU clock. If the sub clock is on, fC32 can be used as the count source for timers A and B.

10.4.1.2 PLL Operating Mode

The PLL clock serves as the CPU clock. If the sub clock is on, fC32 can be used as the count source for timers A and B. If fOCO-S is oscillating, fOCO-S can be used as the count source for timers A and B. PLL operating mode can be entered from high-speed mode or medium-speed mode. If PLL operating mode is to be changed to wait or stop mode, first go to high-speed mode or medium-speed mode before changing.

10.4.1.3 Medium-Speed Mode

The main clock divided by 2, 4, 8, or 16 provides the CPU clock. If the sub clock is on, fC32 can be used as the count source for timers A and B. If fOCO-S is oscillating, fOCO-S can be used as the count source for timers A and B.

10.4.1.4 Low-Speed Mode

The sub clock provides the CPU clock. The main clock is used as the clock source for the peripheral function clock when the CM21 bit in the CM2 register is set to 0 (main clock or PLL clock), and the 125 kHz on-chip oscillator clock is used when the CM21 bit is set to 1 (125 kHz on-chip oscillator clock).
The fC32 clock can be used as the count source for timers A and B.

10.4.1.5 Low Power Consumption Mode

In this mode, the main clock is turned off after being placed in low speed mode. The sub clock provides the CPU clock. The fC32 clock can be used as the count source for timers A and B.
If fOCO-S is oscillating, fOCO-S can be used as the count source for timers A and B.
Simultaneously when this mode is selected, the CM06 bit in the CM0 register becomes 1 (divided by 8 mode). In the low power consumption mode, do not change the CM06 bit. Consequently, the medium-speed (divided by 8) mode is to be selected when the main clock is operated next.

10.4.1.6 125 kHz On-Chip Oscillator Mode

The 125 kHz on-chip oscillator clock divided by 1 (undivided), 2, 4, 8, or 16 provides the CPU clock. The 125 kHz on-chip oscillator clock is also the clock source for the peripheral function clocks. If the sub clock is on, fC32 can be used as the count source for timers A and B. When the operating mode is returned to the high- and medium-speed modes, set the CM06 bit in the CM0 register to 1 (divided by 8 mode).

10.4.1.7 125 kHz On-Chip Oscillator Low Power Consumption Mode

The main clock is turned off after being placed in 125 kHz on-chip oscillator mode. The CPU clock can be selected as in the 125 kHz on-chip oscillator mode. The 125 kHz on-chip oscillator clock is the clock source for the peripheral function clocks. If the sub clock is on, fC32 can be used as the count source for timers A and B.

Table 10.3 Setting Clock Related Bit and Modes

Mode		CM2 Register	CM1 Register			CM0 Register			
		CM21	CM11	CM14	CM17, CM16	CM07	CM06	CM05	CM04
PLL Operating Mode	divided by 1	0	1	-	00b	0	0	0	-
	divided by 2	0	1	-	01b	0	0	0	-
	divided by 4	0	1	-	10b	0	0	0	-
	divided by 8	0	1	-	-	0	1	0	-
	divided by 16	0	1	-	11b	0	0	0	-
High-Speed Mode		0	0	-	00b	0	0	0	-
Medium-Speed Mode	divided by 2	0	0	-	01b	0	0	0	-
	divided by 4	0	0	-	10b	0	0	0	-
	divided by 8	0	0	-	-	0	1	0	-
	divided by 16	0	0	-	11b	0	0	0	-
Low-Speed Mode		-	0	-	-	1	-	0	1
Low Power Consumption Mode		0	0	-	-	1	1 (1)	1 (1)	1
125 kHz On-chip Oscillator Mode	divided by 1	1	0	0	00b	0	0	0	-
	divided by 2	1	0	0	01b	0	0	0	-
	divided by 4	1	0	0	10b	0	0	0	-
	divided by 8	1	0	0	-	0	1	0	-
	divided by 16	1	0	0	11b	0	0	0	-
125 kHz On-Chip Oscillator Low Power Consumption Mode		1	0	0	(2)	0	(2)	1	-

- indicates that either 0 or 1 is set.

Notes:
1. When the CM05 bit is set to 1 (main clock turned off) in low-speed mode, the mode goes to low power consumption mode and the CM06 bit is set to 1 (divided by 8 mode) simultaneously.
2. The divide-by-n value can be selected the same way as in 125 kHz on-chip oscillator mode.

10.4.2 Wait Mode

In wait mode, the CPU clock is turned off, so are the CPU and the watchdog timer because they are operated by the CPU clock. However, if the CSPRO bit in the CSPR register is 1 (count source protection enabled), the watchdog timer remains active. Because the main clock, sub clock, and 125 kHz on-chip oscillator clock all are on, the peripheral functions using these clocks keep operating.

10.4.2.1 Peripheral Function Clock Stop Function

If the CM02 bit in the CM0 register is 1 (peripheral function clock f1 turned off during wait mode), the f1 clock is turned off while in wait mode, with the power consumption reduced that much. However, fC32 and fOCO-S (clock source of Timers A and B) remain on for the CM02 bit.

10.4.2.2 Entering Wait Mode

The microcomputer is placed into wait mode by executing the WAIT instruction.
When the CM11 bit = 1 (CPU clock source is the PLL clock), be sure to clear the CM11 bit in the CM1 register to 0 (CPU clock source is the main clock) before going to wait mode. The power consumption of the chip can be reduced by clearing the PLC07 bit in the PLC0 register to 0 (PLL stops).

10.4.2.3 Pin Status during Wait Mode

Table 10.4 lists Pin Status during Wait Mode.

Table 10.4 Pin Status during Wait Mode

Pin		Memory Expansion Mode Microprocessor Mode	Single-Chip Mode
A0 to A19, D0 to D15, $\overline{CS0}$ to $\overline{CS3}$, $\overline{BHE}$		Retains status just prior to entering wait mode	Cannot be used as a bus control pin
$\overline{RD}$, $\overline{WR}$, $\overline{WRL}$, $\overline{WRH}$		“H”	
$\overline{HLDA}$, BCLK		“H”	
ALE		“L”	
I/O ports		Retains status just prior to entering wait mode	Retains status before wait mode
CLKOUT	When fC selected	Cannot be used as a CLKOUT pin	Does not stop
	When f8, f32 selected		Does not stop when the CM02 bit is 0. When the CM02 bit is 1, the status immediately prior to entering wait mode is maintained

10.4.2.4 Exiting Wait Mode

The microcomputer is moved out of wait mode by a hardware reset, $\overline{\text{NMI}}$ interrupt, low voltage detection interrupt or peripheral function interrupt.

If the microcomputer is to exit wait mode by a hardware reset, $\overline{\text{NMI}}$ interrupt, or low voltage detection interrupt, set the peripheral function interrupt bits ILVL2 to ILVL0 to 000b (interrupts disabled) before executing the WAIT instruction.

The peripheral function interrupts are affected by the CM02 bit. If the CM02 bit is 0 (peripheral function clocks not turned off during wait mode), peripheral function interrupts can be used to exit wait mode. If the CM02 bit is 1 (peripheral function clocks turned off during wait mode), the peripheral functions using the peripheral function clocks stop operating, so that only the peripheral functions activated by external signals can be used to exit wait mode.

Table 10.5 Resets and Interrupts to Exit Wait Mode and Use Conditions

Reset, Interrupt	CM02 = 0	CM02 = 1
$\overline{\text{NMI}}$ Interrupt	Usable	Usable
Serial Interface Interrupt	Usable when operating with internal or external clock	Usable when operating with external clock
Key Input Interrupt	Usable	Usable
A/D Conversion Interrupt	Usable in one-shot mode or single sweep mode	Do not use
Timer A Interrupt Timer B Interrupt	Usable in all modes	Usable in event counter mode or when the count source is fC32
$\overline{\text{INT}}$ Interrupt	Usable	Usable
Low Voltage Detection Interrupt	Usable	Usable
Hardware Reset 1	Usable	
Brown-out Reset	Usable (See **6.1 “Brown-out Reset”**)	
Watchdog Timer Reset	Usable when count source protection mode is enabled (CSPRO = 1)	

Table 10.5 lists the Resets and Interrupts to Exit Wait Mode and Use Conditions.

If the microcomputer is to be moved out of wait mode by a peripheral function interrupt, set up the following before executing the WAIT instruction.

(1) Set bits ILVL2 to ILVL0 in the interrupt control register, for peripheral function interrupts used to exit wait mode.
Bits ILVL2 to ILVL0 in all other interrupt control registers, for peripheral function interrupts not used to exit wait mode, are set to 000b (interrupt disabled).
(2) Set the I flag to 1.
(3) Start operating the peripheral functions used to exit wait mode.
When the peripheral function interrupt is used, an interrupt routine is performed after an interrupt request is generated and then the CPU clock is supplied again.

When the microcomputer exits wait mode by the peripheral function interrupt, the CPU clock is the same clock as the CPU clock executing the WAIT instruction.

10.4.3 Stop Mode

In stop mode, all oscillator circuits are turned off, so are the CPU clock and the peripheral function clocks.

Therefore, the CPU and the peripheral functions clocked by these clocks stop operating. The least amount of power is consumed in this mode. If the voltage applied to pins VCC1 and VCC2 is VRAM or greater, the internal RAM is retained. When applying 2.7 or less voltage to pins VCC1 and VCC2, make sure VCC1 = VCC2 ≥ VRAM.

However, the peripheral functions activated by external signals keep operating. The following resets and interrupts can be used to exit stop mode. Table 10.6 lists Resets and Interrupts to Stop Mode and Use Conditions

Table 10.6 Resets and Interrupts to Stop Mode and Use Conditions

Reset, Interrupt	Condition
$\overline{\text{NMI}}$ Interrupt	Usable
Key Input Interrupt	Usable
$\overline{\text{INT}}$ Interrupt	Usable
Timer A Interrupt Timer B Interrupt	Usable when counting external pulses in event counter mode
Serial Interface Interrupt	Usable when external clock is selected
Low Voltage Detection Interrupt	Usable (See **6.2 “Low Voltage Detection Interrupt”**)
Hardware Reset 1	Usable
Brown-out Reset	Usable when digital filter is disabled (VW0C = 1)

10.4.3.1 Entering Stop Mode

The microcomputer is placed into stop mode by setting the CM10 bit in the CM1 register to 1 (all clocks turned off). At the same time, the CM06 bit in the CM0 register is set to 1 (divide-by-8 mode) and the CM15 bit in the CM1 register is set to 1 (main clock oscillator circuit drive capability high).

Before entering stop mode, set the CM20 bit in the CM2 register to 0 (oscillation stop, re-oscillation detection function disabled).

Also, if the CM11 bit in the CM1 register is 1 (PLL clock for the CPU clock source), set the CM11 bit to 0 (main clock for the CPU clock source) and the PLC07 bit in the PLC0 register to 0 (PLL turned off) before entering stop mode.

10.4.3.2 Pin Status in Stop Mode

Table 10.7 lists Pin Status in Stop Mode.

Table 10.7 Pin Status in Stop Mode

Pin	Memory Expansion Mode Microprocessor Mode	Single-Chip Mode
A0 to A19, D0 to D15, $\overline{\text{CS0}}$ to $\overline{\text{CS3}}$, $\overline{\text{BHE}}$	Retains status just prior to stop mode	Cannot be used as a bus control pin
$\overline{\text{RD}}$, $\overline{\text{WR}}$, $\overline{\text{WRL}}$, $\overline{\text{WRH}}$	“H”	
$\overline{\text{HLDA}}$, BCLK	“H”	
ALE	indeterminate	
I/O ports	Retains status just prior to stop mode	Retains status just prior to stop mode
CLKOUT	Cannot be used as a CLKOUT pin	“H”

10.4.3.3 Exiting Stop Mode

Stop mode is exited by a hardware reset, $\overline{\text{NMI}}$ interrupt, low voltage detection interrupt, or peripheral function interrupt.

When the hardware reset, $\overline{\text{NMI}}$ interrupt, or low voltage detection interrupt is used to exit stop mode, set bits ILVL2 to ILVL0 in the interrupt control registers for the peripheral function interrupt to 000b (interrupt disabled) before setting the CM10 bit to 1.

When the peripheral function interrupt is used to exit stop mode, set the CM10 bit to 1 after the following settings are completed.

(1) Set bits ILVL2 to ILVL0 in the interrupt control registers to decide the peripheral priority level of the peripheral function interrupt.
Set the interrupt priority levels of the interrupts, not being used to exit stop mode, to 0 by setting bits ILVL2 to ILVL0 to 000b (interrupt disabled).

(2) Set the I flag to 1.

(3) Start operation of peripheral function being used to exit stop mode.
When exiting stop mode by the peripheral function interrupt, the interrupt routine is performed after an interrupt request is generated and then the CPU clock is supplied again.

When stop mode is exited by the peripheral function interrupt, low voltage detection interrupt, or $\overline{\text{NMI}}$ interrupt, the CPU clock source is as follows, in accordance with the CPU clock source setting before the microcomputer had entered stop mode.

- When the sub clock is the CPU clock before entering stop mode: sub clock
- When the main clock is the CPU clock source before entering stop mode: main clock divided by 8
- When the 125 kHz on-chip oscillator clock is the CPU clock source before entering stop mode: 125 kHz on-chip oscillator clock divided by 8

Figure 10.12 shows the power Control Transition

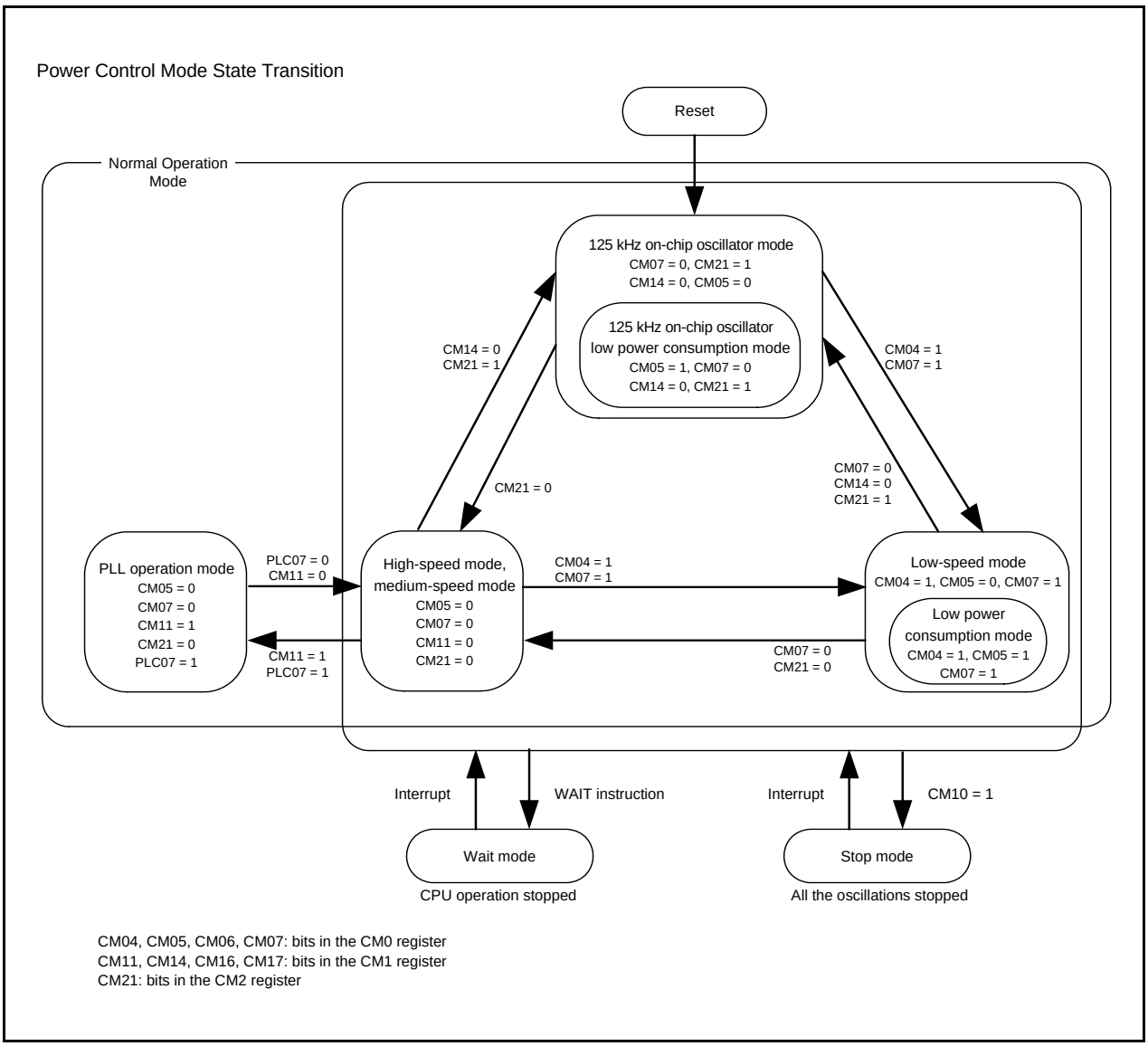


Figure 10.12 Power Control Transition

10.5 System Clock Protection Function

The system clock protection function prohibits the CPU clock from changing clock sources when the main clock is selected as the CPU clock source. This is to prevent the CPU clock from stopping by an unexpected program operation.

When the PM21 bit in the PM2 register is set to 1 (clock change disabled), the following bits cannot be written to:

- Bits CM02, CM05, and CM07 in the CM0 register
- Bits CM10 and CM11 in the CM1 register
- The CM20 bit in the CM2 register
- All bits in the PLC0 register

When using the system clock protection function, set the CM05 bit in the CM0 register to 0 (main clock oscillation) and CM07 bit to 0 (main clock as CPU clock source) and follow the procedure below.

(1) Set the PRC1 bit in the PRCR register to 1 (write to the PM2 register enabled).
(2) Set the PM21 bit in the PM2 register to 1 (clock change disabled).
(3) Set the PRC1 bit in the PRCR register to 0 (write to the PM2 register disabled).

When the PM21 bit is set to 1, do not execute the WAIT instruction.

10.6 Oscillation Stop and Re-Oscillation Detect Function

The oscillation stop and re-oscillation detect function is such that main clock oscillation circuit stop and re-oscillation are detected. At oscillation stop or re-oscillation detection, reset oscillation stop or re-oscillation detection interrupt are generated. Which is to be generated can be selected using the CM27 bit in the CM2 register. The oscillation stop and re-oscillation detect function can be enabled and disabled by the CM20 bit in the CM2 register. Table 10.8 lists a Specification Overview of Oscillation Stop and Re-Oscillation Detect Function.

Table 10.8 Specification Overview of Oscillation Stop and Re-Oscillation Detect Function

Item	Specification
Oscillation Stop Detectable Clock and Frequency Bandwidth	f(XIN) ≥ 2 MHz
Enabling Condition for Oscillation Stop, Re-Oscillation Detect Function	Set CM20 bit to 1 (enabled)
Operation at Oscillation Stop, Re-Oscillation Detection	Reset occurs (when CM27 bit = 0) Oscillation stop, re-oscillation detection interrupt generated (when CM27 bit = 1)

10.6.1 Operation When CM27 bit = 0 (Oscillation Stop Detection Reset)

When main clock stop is detected when the CM20 bit is 1 (oscillation stop, re-oscillation detection function enabled), the microcomputer is initialized, coming to a halt (oscillation stop reset. Refer to **4. "Special Function Registers (SFRs)", 5. "Reset"**).

This status is reset with hardware reset 1 or brown-out reset. Also, even when re-oscillation is detected, the microcomputer can be initialized and stopped; it is, however, necessary to avoid such usage (During main clock stop, do not set the CM20 bit to 1 and the CM27 bit to 0).

10.6.2 Operation When CM27 bit = 1 (Oscillation Stop and Re-oscillation Detect Interrupt)

When the main clock corresponds to the CPU clock source and the CM20 bit is 1 (oscillation stop and re-oscillation detect function enabled), the system is placed in the following state if the main clock comes to a halt.

- Oscillation stop and re-oscillation detect interrupt request occurs.
- CM14 bit = 0 (125 kHz on-chip oscillator clock oscillates)
- CM21 bit = 1 (125 kHz on-chip oscillator clock for CPU clock source and clock source of peripheral function.)
- CM22 bit = 1 (main clock stop detected)
- CM23 bit = 1 (main clock stopped)

When the PLL clock corresponds to the CPU clock source and the CM20 bit is 1, the system is placed in the following state if the main clock comes to a halt. Since the CM21 bit remains unchanged, set it to 1 (125 kHz on-chip oscillator clock) inside the interrupt routine.

- Oscillation stop and re-oscillation detect interrupt request occurs.
- CM14 bit = 0 (125 kHz on-chip oscillator clock oscillates)
- CM22 bit = 1 (main clock stop detected)
- CM23 bit = 1 (main clock stopped)
- CM21 bit remains unchanged

When the CM20 bit is 1, the system is placed in the following state if the main clock re-oscillates from the stop condition.

- Oscillation stop and re-oscillation detect interrupt request occurs.
- CM14 bit = 0 (125 kHz on-chip oscillator clock oscillates)
- CM22 bit = 1 (main clock re-oscillation detected)
- CM23 bit = 0 (main clock oscillation)
- CM21 bit remains unchanged

10.6.3 How to Use Oscillation Stop and Re-Oscillation Detect Function

- The oscillation stop and re-oscillation detect interrupt shares the vector with the watchdog timer interrupt and low voltage detection interrupt. If the oscillation stop, re-oscillation detection and watchdog timer interrupts both are used, read the CM22 bit in an interrupt routine to determine which interrupt source is requesting the interrupt. Set CM22 bit to “0” (not detected) in a program after determined the inerrupt source.
- When the main clock re-oscillated after oscillation stop, the clock source for the CPU clock and peripheral functions must be switched to the main clock in a program. Figure 10.13 shows the Procedure to Switch Clock Source from 125 kHz On-chip Oscillator to Main Clock.
- Simultaneously with oscillation stop and re-oscillation detection interrupt occurrence, the CM22 bit becomes 1. When the CM22 bit is set to 1, oscillation stop and re-oscillation detection interrupt are disabled. By setting the CM22 bit to 0 in a program, oscillation stop and re-oscillation detection interrupt are enabled.
- If the main clock stops during low speed mode where the CM20 bit is 1, an oscillation stop and re-oscillation detection interrupt request is generated. At the same time, the 125 kHz on-chip oscillator starts oscillating. In this case, although the CPU clock is derived from the sub clock as it was before the interrupt occurred, the peripheral function clocks now are derived from the 125 kHz on-chip oscillator clock.
- To enter wait mode while using the oscillation stop and re-oscillation detection function, set the CM02 bit to 0 (peripheral function clocks not turned off during wait mode).
- Since the oscillation stop and re-oscillation detection function is provided in preparation for main clock stop due to external factors, set the CM20 bit to 0 (oscillation stop and re-oscillation detection function disabled) where the main clock is stopped or oscillated in a program, that is where the stop mode is selected or the CM05 bit is altered.
- This function cannot be used if the main clock frequency is 2 MHz or less. In that case, set the CM20 bit to 0.

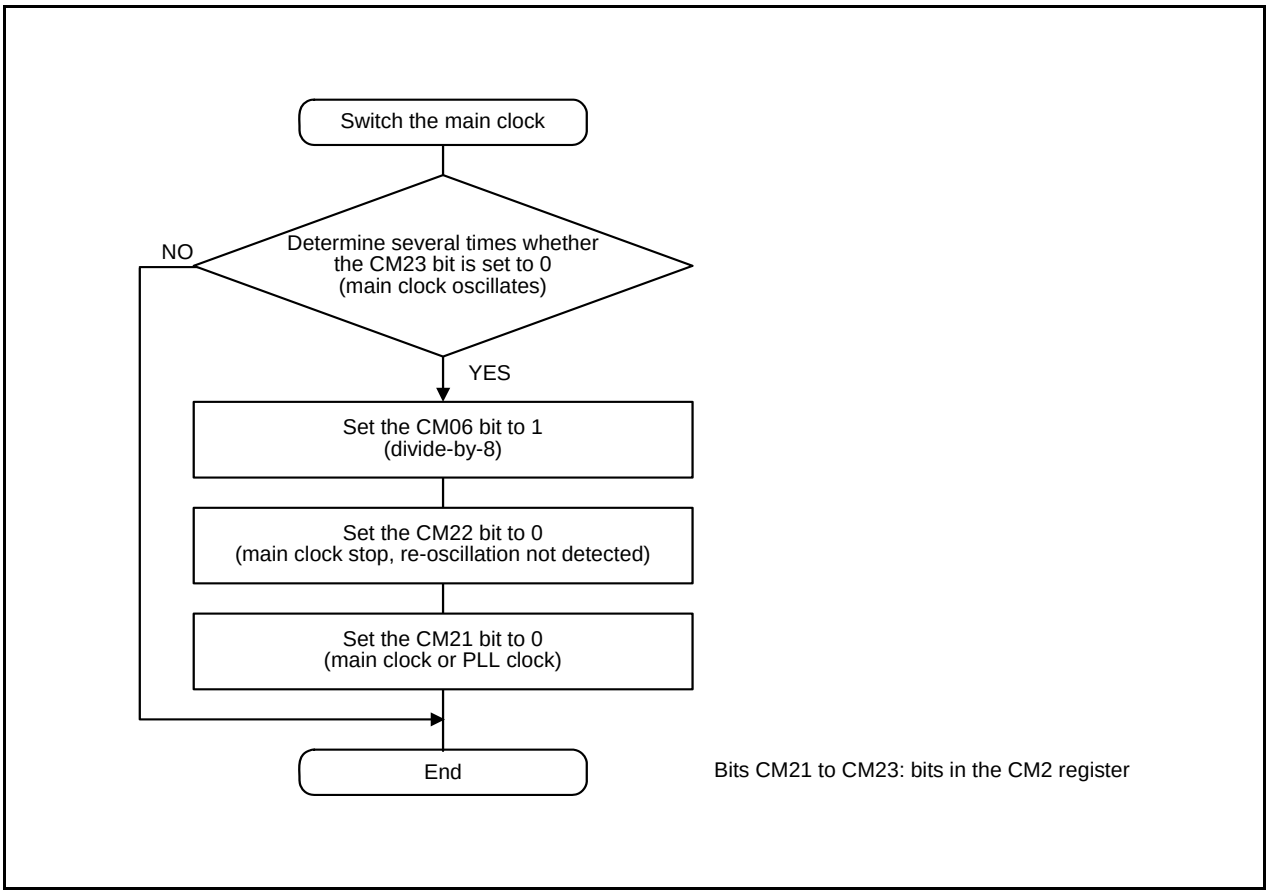


Figure 10.13 Procedure to Switch Clock Source From 125 kHz On-chip Oscillator to Main Clock

11. Protection

In the event that a program runs out of control, this function protects the important registers so that they will not be rewritten easily. Figure 11.1 shows the PRCR Register. The following lists the registers protected by the PRCR register.

- The PRC0 bit protects registers CM0, CM1, CM2, PLC0, and PCLKR.
- The PRC1 bit protects registers PM0, PM1, PM2, TB2SC, INVC0, and INVC1.
- The PRC2 bit protects registers PD9, S3C, and S4C.
- The PRC3 bit protects registers VCR2, D4INT, and VW0C.
- The PRC6 bit protects the PRG2C register.

Set the PRC2 bit to 1 (write enabled) and then write to given SFR address, and the PRC2 bit will be cleared to 0 (write protected). The registers protected by the PRC2 bit should be changed in the next instruction after setting the PRC2 bit to 1. Make sure no interrupts or DMA transfers will occur between the instruction in which the PRC2 bit is set to 1 and the next instruction. Bits PRC0, PRC1, PRC3, and PRC6 are not automatically cleared to 0 by writing to given SFR address. They can only be cleared in a program.

Protect Register (1)

b7	b6	b5	b4	b3	b2	b1	b0	Symbol	Address	After Reset
0		0	0					PRCR	000Ah	00h

Bit Symbol	Bit Name	Function	RW
PRC0	Protect bit 0	Enable write to registers CM0, CM1, CM2, PLC0 and PCLKR 0 : Write protected 1 : Write enabled	RW
PRC1	Protect bit 1	Enable write to registers PM0, PM1, PM2, TB2SC, INVC0, and INVC1 0 : Write protected 1 : Write enabled	RW
PRC2	Protect bit 2	Enable write to registers PD9, S3C, and S4C 0 : Write protected 1 : Write enabled	RW
PRC3	Protect bit 3	Enable write to registers VCR2, D4INT, and VW0C 0 : Write protected 1 : Write enabled	RW
— (b5-b4)	Reserved bits	Set to 0	RW
PRC6	Protect bit 6	Enable write to the PRG2C register 0 : Write protected 1 : Write enabled	RW
— (b7)	Reserved bit	Set to 0	RW

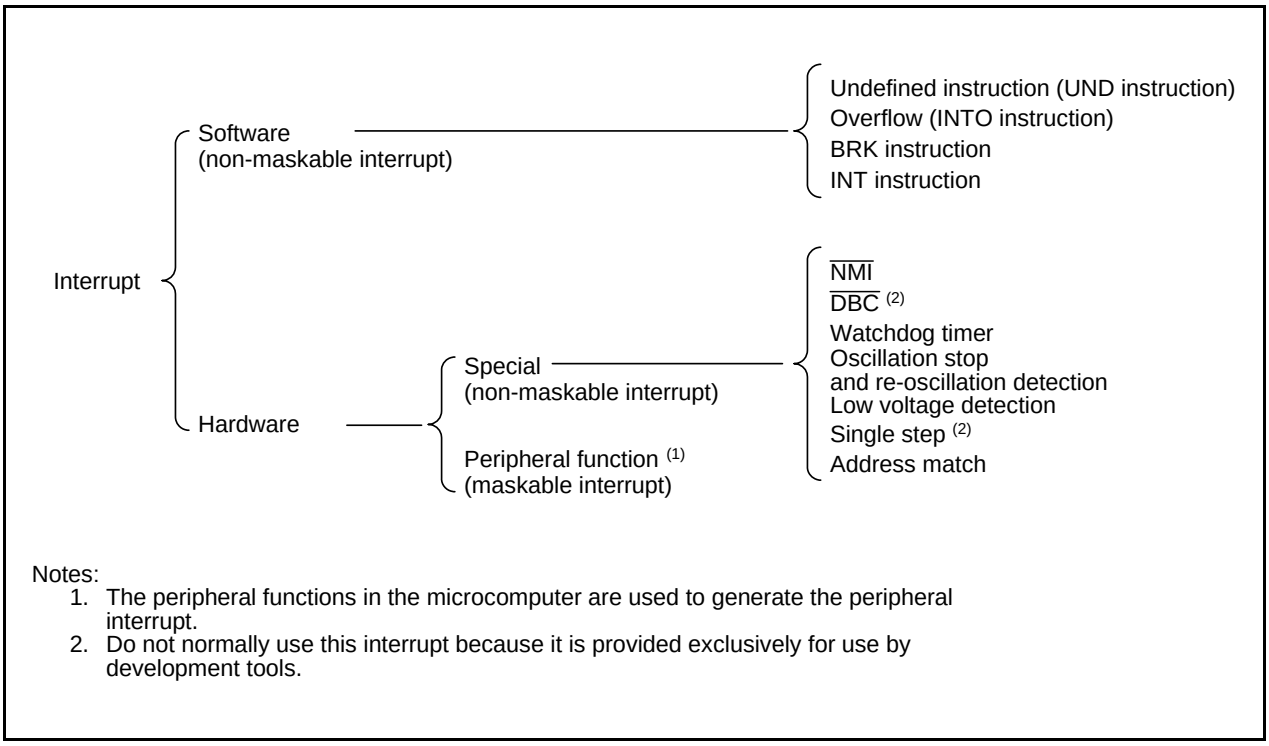
Note :
1. The PRC2 bit is set to 0 by writing to given SFR address after setting it to 1. Other bits are not set to 0 automatically by the same token. Therefore, set them to 0 in a program.

Figure 11.1 PRCR Register

12. Interrupt

12.1 Type of Interrupts

Figure 12.1 shows Type of Interrupts.



Notes:
1. The peripheral functions in the microcomputer are used to generate the peripheral interrupt.
2. Do not normally use this interrupt because it is provided exclusively for use by development tools.

Figure 12.1 Type of Interrupts

- Maskable Interrupt : The interrupt priority **can be changed** by enabling (disabling) an interrupt with the interrupt enable flag (I flag) or by using interrupt priority levels.
- Non-Maskable Interrupt :The interrupt priority **cannot be changed** by enabling (disabling) an interrupt with the interrupt enable flag (I flag) or by using interrupt priority levels.

12.2 Software Interrupts

A software interrupt occurs when executing certain instructions. Software interrupts are non-maskable interrupts.

12.2.1 Undefined Instruction Interrupt

An undefined instruction interrupt occurs when executing the UND instruction.

12.2.2 Overflow Interrupt

An overflow interrupt occurs when executing the INTO instruction with the O flag in the FLG register set to 1 (the operation resulted in an overflow). The followings are instructions whose O flag changes by arithmetic: ABS, ADC, ADCF, ADD, CMP, DIV, DIVU, DIVX, NEG, RMPA, SBB, SHA, SUB

12.2.3 BRK Interrupt

A BRK interrupt occurs when executing the BRK instruction.

12.2.4 INT Instruction Interrupt

An INT instruction interrupt occurs when executing the INT instruction. Software interrupt Nos. 0 to 63 can be specified for the INT instruction. Because software interrupt Nos. 2 to 31 and 41 to 51 are assigned to peripheral function interrupts, the same interrupt routine as for peripheral function interrupts can be executed by executing the INT instruction.

In software interrupt Nos. 0 to 31, the U flag is saved to the stack during instruction execution and is cleared to 0 (ISP selected) before executing an interrupt sequence. The U flag is restored from the stack when returning from the interrupt routine. In software interrupt Nos. 32 to 63, the U flag does not change state during instruction execution, and the SP selected at the time is used.

12.3 Hardware Interrupts

Hardware interrupts are classified into two types: special interrupts and peripheral function interrupts.

12.3.1 Special Interrupts

Special interrupts are non-maskable interrupts.

12.3.1.1 $\overline{\text{NMI}}$ Interrupt

An $\overline{\text{NMI}}$ interrupt is generated when input on the $\overline{\text{NMI}}$ pin changes state from high to low. For details about the $\overline{\text{NMI}}$ interrupt, refer to **12.7 “NMI Interrupt”**.

12.3.1.2 $\overline{\text{DBC}}$ Interrupt

Do not normally use this interrupt because it is provided exclusively for use by development tools.

12.3.1.3 Watchdog Timer Interrupt

Generated by the watchdog timer. Once a watchdog timer interrupt is generated, be sure to initialize the watchdog timer. For details about the watchdog timer, refer to **13. “Watchdog Timer”**.

12.3.1.4 Oscillation Stop and Re-Oscillation Detection Interrupt

Generated by the oscillation stop and re-oscillation detection function. For details about the oscillation stop and re-oscillation detection function, refer to **10. “Clock Generation Circuit”**.

12.3.1.5 Low Voltage Detection Interrupt

Generated by the voltage detection circuit. For details about the voltage detection circuit, refer to **6. “Voltage Detection Circuit”.**

12.3.1.6 Single-Step Interrupt

Do not normally use this interrupt because it is provided exclusively for use by development tools.

12.3.1.7 Address Match Interrupt

An address match interrupt is generated immediately before executing the instruction at the address indicated by registers RMAD0 to RMAD3 that correspond to one of the AIER0 or AIER1 bit in the AIER register or the AIER20 or AIER21 bit in the AIER2 register which is 1 (address match interrupt enabled). For details about the address match interrupt, refer to **12.9 “Address Match Interrupt”**.

12.3.2 Peripheral Function Interrupts

The peripheral function interrupt occurs when a request from the peripheral functions in the microcomputer is acknowledged. The peripheral function interrupt is a maskable interrupt. See Tables 12.2 and 12.3 Relocatable Vector Tables. Refer to the descriptions of each function for details about how the peripheral function interrupt occurs.

12.4 Interrupts and Interrupt Vector

One interrupt vector consists of 4 bytes. Set the start address of each interrupt routine in the respective interrupt vectors. When an interrupt request is accepted, the CPU branches to the address set in the corresponding interrupt vector. Figure 12.2 shows the Interrupt Vector.

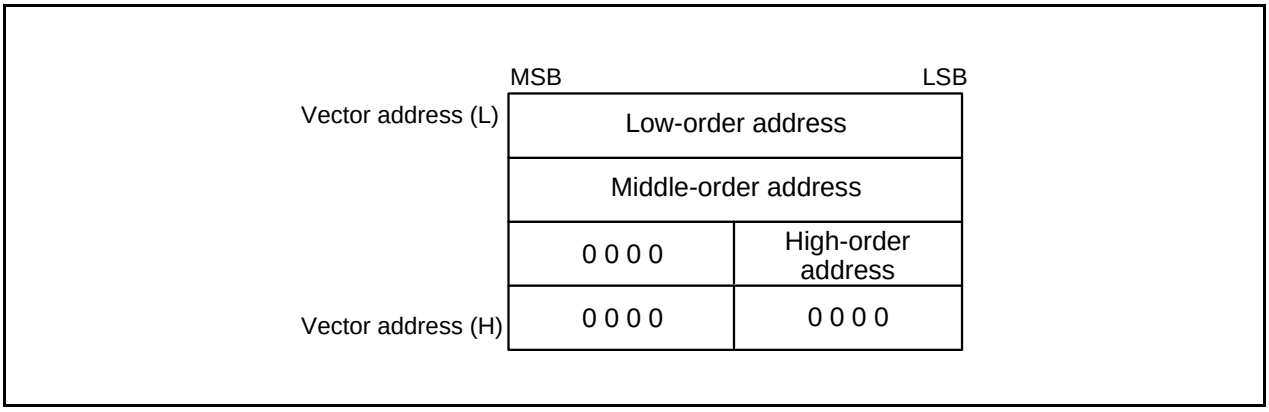


Figure 12.2 Interrupt Vector

12.4.1 Fixed Vector Tables

The fixed vector tables are allocated to the addresses from FFFDCh to FFFFFh. Table 12.1 lists the Fixed Vector Table. In the flash memory version of microcomputer, the vector addresses (H) of fixed vectors are used by the ID code check function. For details, refer to **22.2 "Functions to Prevent Flash Memory from Rewriting"**.

Table 12.1 Fixed Vector Table

Interrupt Source	Vector Table Addresses Address (L) to Address (H)	Reference
Undefined Instruction (UND instruction)	FFFDCh to FFFDFh	M16C/60, M16C/20, M16C/Tiny Series Software Manual
Overflow (INTO instruction)	FFFE0h to FFFE3h	
BRK Instruction (2)	FFFE4h to FFFE7h	
Address Match	FFFE8h to FFFEBh	**12.9 "Address Match Interrupt"**
Single Step (1)	FFFECh to FFFEFh	-
Watchdog Timer, Oscillation Stop and Re-Oscillation Detection, Low Voltage Detection	FFFF0h to FFFF3h	**13. "Watchdog Timer"** **10. "Clock Generation Circuit"** **6. "Voltage Detection Circuit"**
$\overline{\text{DBC}}$ (1)	FFFF4h to FFFF7h	-
$\overline{\text{NMI}}$	FFFF8h to FFFFBh	**12.7 "NMI Interrupt"**
Reset	FFFFCh to FFFFFh	**5. "Reset"**

Notes:
1. Do not normally use this interrupt because it is provided exclusively for use by development tools.
2. If the contents of address FFFE6h is FFh, program execution starts from the address shown by the vector in the relocatable vector table.

12.4.2 Relocatable Vector Tables

The 256 bytes beginning with the start address set in the INTB register comprise a relocatable vector table area. Tables 12.3 and 12.3 list the Relocatable Vector Tables. Setting an even address in the INTB register results in the interrupt sequence being executed faster than setting an odd address.

Table 12.2 Relocatable Vector Table (1)

Interrupt Source	Vector Address (1) Address (L) to Address (H)	Software Interrupt Number	Reference
BRK Instruction (5)	+0 to +3 (0000h to 0003h)	0	M16C/60, M16C/20, M16C/ Tiny Series Software Manual
– (Reserved)		1	
$\overline{\text{INT7}}$	+8 to +11 (0008h to 000Bh)	2	**12.6 “INT Interrupt”**
$\overline{\text{INT6}}$	+12 to +15 (000Ch to 000Fh)	3	
$\overline{\text{INT3}}$	+16 to +19 (0010h to 0013h)	4	
Timer B5	+20 to +23 (0014h to 0017h)	5	**15. “Timers”**
Timer B4, UART1 Bus Collision Detect (4, 6)	+24 to +27 (0018h to 001Bh)	6	**15. “Timers”** **17. “Serial Interface”**
Timer B3, UART0 Bus Collision Detect (4, 6)	+28 to +31 (001Ch to 001Fh)	7	
SI/O4, $\overline{\text{INT5}}$ (2)	+32 to +35 (0020h to 0023h)	8	**12.6 “INT Interrupt”** **17. “Serial Interface”**
SI/O3, $\overline{\text{INT4}}$ (2)	+36 to +39 (0024h to 0027h)	9	
UART2 Bus Collision Detection (6)	+40 to +43 (0028h to 002Bh)	10	**17. “Serial Interface”**
DMA0	+44 to +47 (002Ch to 002Fh)	11	**14. “DMAC”**
DMA1	+48 to +51 (0030h to 0033h)	12	
Key Input Interrupt	+52 to +55 (0034h to 0037h)	13	**12.8 “Key Input Interrupt”**
A/D Converter	+56 to +59 (0038h to 003Bh)	14	**18. “A/D Converter”**
UART2 Transmit, NACK2 (3)	+60 to +63 (003Ch to 003Fh)	15	**17. “Serial Interface”**
UART2 Receive, ACK2 (3)	+64 to +67 (0040h to 0043h)	16	
UART0 Transmit, NACK0 (3)	+68 to +71 (0044h to 0047h)	17	
UART0 Receive, ACK0 (3)	+72 to +75 (0048h to 004Bh)	18	
UART1 Transmit, NACK1 (3)	+76 to +79 (004Ch to 004Fh)	19	
UART1 Receive, ACK1 (3)	+80 to +83 (0050h to 0053h)	20	
Timer A0	+84 to +87 (0054h to 0057h)	21	**15. “Timers”**
Timer A1	+88 to +91 (0058h to 005Bh)	22	
Timer A2	+92 to +95 (005Ch to 005Fh)	23	
Timer A3	+96 to +99 (0060h to 0063h)	24	
Timer A4	+100 to +103 (0064h to 0067h)	25	
Timer B0	+104 to +107 (0068h to 006Bh)	26	
Timer B1	+108 to +111 (006Ch to 006Fh)	27	
Timer B2	+112 to +115 (0070h to 0073h)	28	

Notes:

1. Address relative to address in INTB.
2. Use bits IFSR6 and IFSR7 in the IFSR register to select.
3. During I^2C mode, interrupts NACK and ACK comprise the interrupt source.
4. Use bits IFSR26 and IFSR27 in the IFSR2A register to select.
5. These interrupts cannot be disabled using the I flag.
6. Bus collision detection: During IE mode, this bus collision detection constitutes the interrupt source. During I^2C mode, however, a start condition or a stop condition detection constitutes the interrupt source.

Table 12.3 Relocatable Vector Table (2)

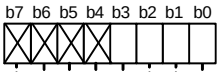
Interrupt Source	Vector Address (1) Address (L) to Address (H)	Software Interrupt Number	Reference
$\overline{\text{INT0}}$	+116 to +119 (0074h to 0077h)	29	**12.6 “INT Interrupt”**
$\overline{\text{INT1}}$	+120 to +123 (0078h to 007Bh)	30	
$\overline{\text{INT2}}$	+124 to +127 (007Ch to 007Fh)	31	
INT Instruction Interrupt (3)	+128 to +131 (0080h to 0083h) to +160 to +163 (00A0h to 00A3h)	32 to 40	M16C/60, M16C/20, M16C/Tiny Series Software Manual
DMA2	+164 to +167 (00A4h to 00A7h)	41	**14. “DMAC”**
DMA3	+168 to +171(00A8h to 00ABh)	42	
UART5 Bus Collision Detection(4)	+172 to +175(00ACh to 0AFh)	43	**17. “Serial Interface”**
UART5 Transmit, NACK5(2)	+176 to +179(00B0h to 00B3h)	44	
UART5 Receive, ACK5 (2)	+180 to +183(00B4h to 00B7h)	45	
UART6 Bus Collision Detection (4)	+184 to +187(00B8h to 00BBh)	46	
UART6 Transmit, NACK6 (2)	+188 to +191(00BCh to 00BFh)	47	
UART6 Receive, ACK6 (2)	+192 to +195(00C0h to 00C3h)	48	
UART7 Bus Collision Detection (4)	+196 to +199(00C4h to 00C7h)	49	
UART7 Transmit, NACK7 (2)	+200 to +203(00C8h to 00CBh)	50	
UART7 Receive, ACK7 (2)	+204 to +207(00CCh to 00CFh)	51	
INT Instruction Interrupt (3)	+208 to +211(00D0h to 00D3h) to +252 to +255(00FCh to 00FFh)	52 to 63	M16C/60, M16C/20, M16C/Tiny Series Software Manual

Notes:
1. Address relative to address in INTB.
2. During I^2C mode, interrupts NACK and ACK comprise the interrupt source.
3. These interrupts cannot be disabled using the I flag.
4. Bus collision detection: During IE mode, this bus collision detection constitutes the factor of an interrupt.
5. Bus collision detection: During IE mode, this bus collision detection constitutes the interrupt source. During I^2C mode, however, a start condition or a stop condition detection constitutes the interrupt source.

12.5 Interrupt Control

The following describes how to enable / disable the maskable interrupts, and how to set the priority in which order they are accepted. What is explained here does not apply to nonmaskable interrupts.
Use the I flag in the FLG register, IPL, and bits ILVL2 to ILVL0 in each interrupt control register to enable / disable the maskable interrupts. Whether an interrupt is requested or not is indicated by the IR bit in each interrupt control register.
Figures 12.3 and 12.4 show the Interrupt Control Registers.

Interrupt Control Register 1 (2)



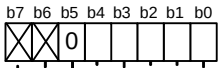
Symbol	Address	After Reset
TB5IC	0045h	XXXXX000b
TB4IC / U1BCNIC (3)	0046h	XXXXX000b
TB3IC / U0BCNIC (3)	0047h	XXXXX000b
BCNIC	004Ah	XXXXX000b
DM0IC to DM3IC	004Bh, 004Ch, 0069h, 006Ah	XXXXX000b
KUPIC (4)	004Dh	XXXXX000b
ADIC	004Eh	XXXXX000b
S0TIC to S2TIC	0051h, 0053h, 004Fh	XXXXX000b
S0RIC to S2RIC	0052h, 0054h, 0050h	XXXXX000b
TA0IC to TA4IC	0055h to 0059h	XXXXX000b
TB0IC to TB2IC	005Ah to 005Ch	XXXXX000b
U5BCNIC to U7BCNIC	006Bh, 006Eh, 0071h	XXXXX000b
S5TIC to S7TIC	006Ch, 006Fh, 0072h	XXXXX000b
S5RIC to S7RIC	006Dh, 0070h, 0073h	XXXXX000b

Bit Symbol	Bit Name	Function	RW
ILVL0	Interrupt priority level select bit	b2 b1 b0 0 0 0 : Level 0 (interrupt disabled) 0 0 1 : Level 1 0 1 0 : Level 2 0 1 1 : Level 3 1 0 0 : Level 4 1 0 1 : Level 5 1 1 0 : Level 6 1 1 1 : Level 7	RW
ILVL1			RW
ILVL2			RW
IR	Interrupt request bit	0: Interrupt not requested 1: Interrupt requested	RW (1)
— (b7-b4)	No register bits. If necessary, set to 0. Read as undefined value		—

Notes :
1. The IR bit can only be reset by writing a 0. (Do not write a 1).
2. To rewrite the interrupt control register, do so at a point that does not generate the interrupt request for that register.
3. Use the IFSR2A register to select.
4. To use the key input interrupts, set the PCR7 bit in the PCR register to 0 (key input enabled).

Figure 12.3 Interrupt Control Register (1)

Interrupt Control Register 2 (2)



Symbol	Address	After Reset
INT7IC (6,7)	0042h	XX00X000b
INT6IC (6,7)	0043h	XX00X000b
INT3IC (4)	0044h	XX00X000b
S4IC/INT5IC (4)	0048h	XX00X000b
S3IC/INT4IC (4)	0049h	XX00X000b
INT0IC to INT2IC	005Dh to 005Fh	XX00X000b

Bit Symbol	Bit Name	Function	RW
ILVL0	Interrupt priority level select bit	b2 b1 b0 0 0 0 : Level 0 (interrupt disabled) 0 0 1 : Level 1 0 1 0 : Level 2 0 1 1 : Level 3 1 0 0 : Level 4 1 0 1 : Level 5 1 1 0 : Level 6 1 1 1 : Level 7	RW
ILVL1			RW
ILVL2			RW
IR	Interrupt request bit	0: Interrupt not requested 1: Interrupt requested	RW (1)
POL	Polarity select bit (3, 5)	0 : Select falling edge 1 : Select rising edge	RW
— (b5)	Reserved bit	Set to 0	RW
— (b7-b6)	No register bits. If necessary, set to 0. Read as undefined value		—

Notes :
1. The IR bit can only be reset by writing a 0. (Do not write a 1).
2. To rewrite the interrupt control register, do so at a point that does not generate the interrupt request for that register.
3. If the IFSRi bit in the IFSR register are 1 (both edges), set the POL bit in the INTiIC register to 0 (falling edge) (i = 0 to 5). Similarly, if bits IFSR30 and IFSR31 in the IFSR3A register are 1 (both edges), set the POL bits in registers INT6IC and INT7IC to 0 (falling edge).
4. When the BYTE pin is low and the processor mode is memory expansion or microprocessor mode, set bits ILVL2 to ILVL0 in registers INT5IC to INT3IC to 000b (interrupts disabled).
5. Set the POL bit in the S3IC or S4IC register to 0 (falling edge) when the IFSR6 bit in the IFSR register = 0 (SI/O3 selected) or IFSR7 bit = 0 (SI/O4 selected), respectively.
6. When the processor mode is memory expansion or microprocessor mode, set bits ILVL2 to ILVL0 in registers INT6IC and INT7IC to 000b (interrupts disabled).
7. To use the $\overline{\text{INT6}}$ interrupts, set the PCR5 bit in the PCR register to 0 ($\overline{\text{INT6}}$ input enabled).
   To use the $\overline{\text{INT7}}$ interrupts, set the PCR6 bit in the PCR register to 0 ($\overline{\text{INT7}}$ input enabled).

Figure 12.4 Interrupt Control Register (2)

12.5.1 I Flag

The I flag enables or disables the maskable interrupt. Setting the I flag to 1 (enabled) enables the maskable interrupt. Setting the I flag to 0 (disabled) disables all maskable interrupts.

12.5.2 IR Bit

The IR bit is set to 1 (interrupt requested) when an interrupt request is generated. Then, when the interrupt request is accepted, the IR bit is cleared to 0 (interrupt not requested).
The IR bit can be cleared to 0 in a program. Do not write a 1 to this bit.

12.5.3 Bits ILVL2 to ILVL0 and IPL

Interrupt priority levels can be set using bits ILVL2 to ILVL0.
Table 12.4 shows the Settings of Interrupt Priority Levels and Table 12.5 shows the Interrupt Priority Levels Enabled by IPL.

The followings are conditions under which an interrupt is accepted:

- I flag = 1
- IR bit = 1
- Interrupt priority level > IPL

The I flag, IR bit, bits ILVL2 to ILVL0 and IPL are independent each other. In no case do they affect one another.

Table 12.4 Settings of Interrupt Priority Levels

Bits ILVL2 to ILVL0	Interrupt Priority Level	Priority Order
000b	Level 0 (interrupt disabled)	-
001b	Level 1	Low
010b	Level 2	
011b	Level 3	
100b	Level 4	
101b	Level 5	
110b	Level 6	
111b	Level 7	High

Table 12.5 Interrupt Priority Levels Enabled by IPL

IPL	Enabled Interrupt Priority Levels
000b	Interrupt levels 1 and above are enabled
001b	Interrupt levels 2 and above are enabled
010b	Interrupt levels 3 and above are enabled
011b	Interrupt levels 4 and above are enabled
100b	Interrupt levels 5 and above are enabled
101b	Interrupt levels 6 and above are enabled
110b	Interrupt levels 7 and above are enabled
111b	All maskable interrupts are disabled

12.5.4 Interrupt Sequence

An interrupt sequence – what are performed over a period from the instant an interrupt request is accepted to the instant the interrupt routine is executed – is described here.
If an interrupt request occurs during execution of an instruction, the processor determines its priority when the execution of the instruction is completed, and transfers control to the interrupt sequence from the next cycle. If an interrupt occurs during execution of either the SMOVB, SMOVF, SSTR or RMPA instruction, the processor temporarily suspends the instruction being executed, and transfers control to the interrupt sequence.
The CPU behavior during the interrupt sequence is described below. Figure 12.5 shows Time Required for Executing Interrupt Sequence.

(1) The CPU obtains interrupt information (interrupt number and interrupt request level) by reading address 00000h. Then, the IR bit applicable to the interrupt information is set to 0 (interrupt not requested).
(2) The FLG register, prior to an interrupt sequence, is saved to a temporary register (1) within the CPU.
(3) Flags I, D, and U in the FLG register become as follows:
- The I flag is set to 0 (interrupt disabled)
- The D flag is set to 0 (single-step interrupt disabled)
- The U flag is set to 0 (ISP selected)

  Note that the U flag does not change states if an INT instruction for software interrupt Nos. 32 to 63 is executed.

(4) The temporary register (1) within the CPU is saved to the stack.
(5) The PC is saved to the stack.
(6) The interrupt priority level of the acknowledged interrupt in IPL is set.
(7) The start address of the relevant interrupt routine set in the interrupt vector is stored in the PC.

After the interrupt sequence is completed, an instruction is executed from the starting address of the interrupt routine.

Note:
1. Temporary register cannot be modified by users.

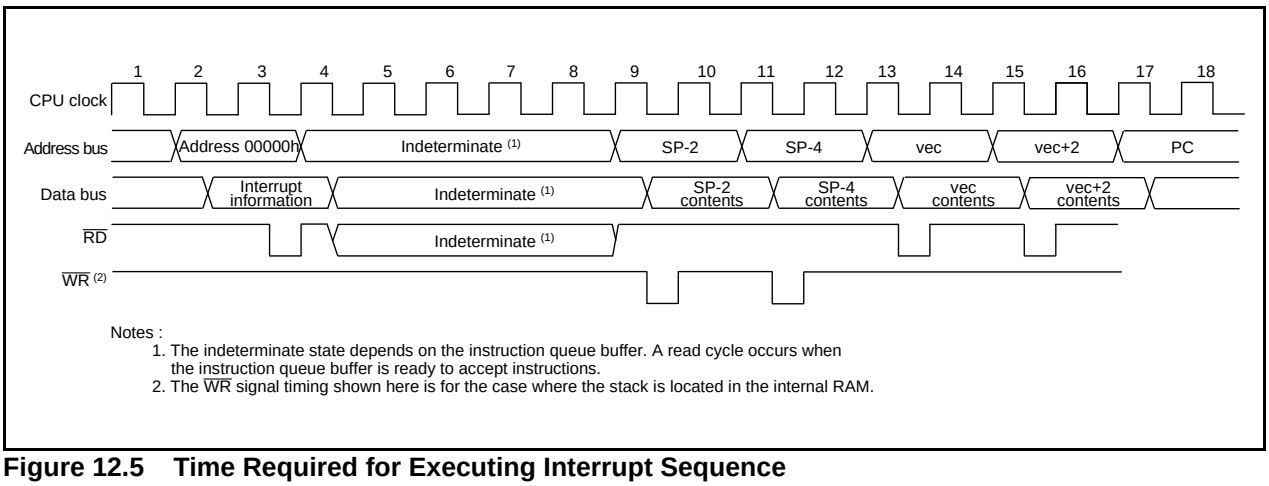
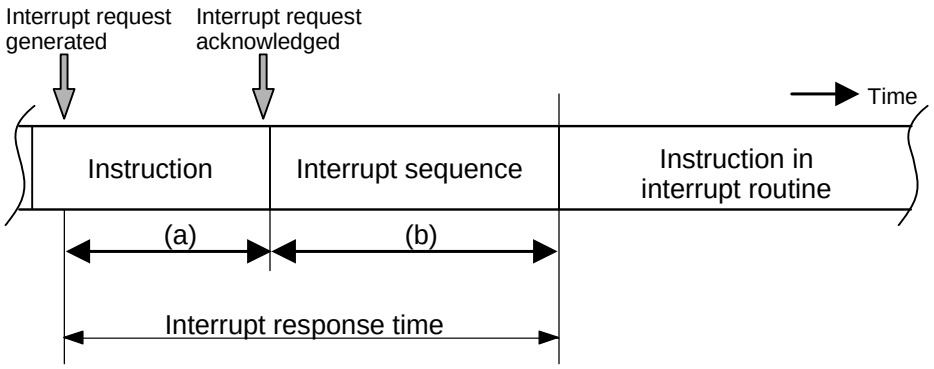


Figure 12.5 Time Required for Executing Interrupt Sequence

12.5.5 Interrupt Response Time

Figure 12.6 shows the Interrupt Response Time. The interrupt response or interrupt acknowledge time denotes a time from when an interrupt request is generated until when the first instruction in the interrupt routine is executed. Specifically, it consists of a time from when an interrupt request is generated until when the executing instruction is completed ((a) on Figure 12.6) and a time during which the interrupt sequence is executed ((b) on Figure 12.6).



(a) A time from when an interrupt request is generated till when the instruction at the time executing is completed. The length of this time varies with the instruction being executed. The DIVX instruction requires the longest time, which is equal to 30 cycles (without wait state, the divisor being a register).

(b) A time during which the interrupt sequence is executed. For details, see the table below. Note, however, that the values in this table must be increased 2 cycles for the $\overline{\text{DBC}}$ interrupt and 1 cycle for the address match and single-step interrupts.

Interrupt Vector Address	SP Value	16-Bit Bus, Without Wait	8-Bit Bus, Without Wait
Even	Even	18 cycles	20 cycles
Even	Odd	19 cycles	20 cycles
Odd	Even	19 cycles	20 cycles
Odd	Odd	20 cycles	20 cycles

Figure 12.6 Interrupt Response Time

12.5.6 Variation of IPL when Interrupt Request IS Accepted

When a maskable interrupt request is accepted, the interrupt priority level of the accepted interrupt is set in the IPL.

When a software interrupt or special interrupt request is accepted, one of the interrupt priority levels listed in Table 12.6 is set in the IPL. Table 12.6 lists the IPL Level That is Set to IPL When a Software or Special Interrupt is Accepted.

Table 12.6 IPL Level That is Set to IPL When a Software or Special Interrupt is Accepted

Interrupt Sources	Level Set to IPL
Watchdog Timer, $\overline{\text{NMI}}$, Oscillation Stop and Re-Oscillation Detection, Low Voltage Detection	7
Software, Address Match, $\overline{\text{DBC}}$, Single-Step	Not changed

12.5.7 Saving Registers

In the interrupt sequence, the FLG register and PC are saved to the stack.
At this time, the 4 high-order bits of the PC and the 4 high-order (IPL) and 8 low-order bits in the FLG register, 16 bits in total, are saved to the stack first. Next, the 16 low-order bits of the PC are saved.
Figure 12.7 shows the Stack Status Before and After Acceptance of Interrupt Request.
The other necessary registers must be saved in a program at the beginning of the interrupt routine. Use the PUSHM instruction, and all registers except SP can be saved with a single instruction.

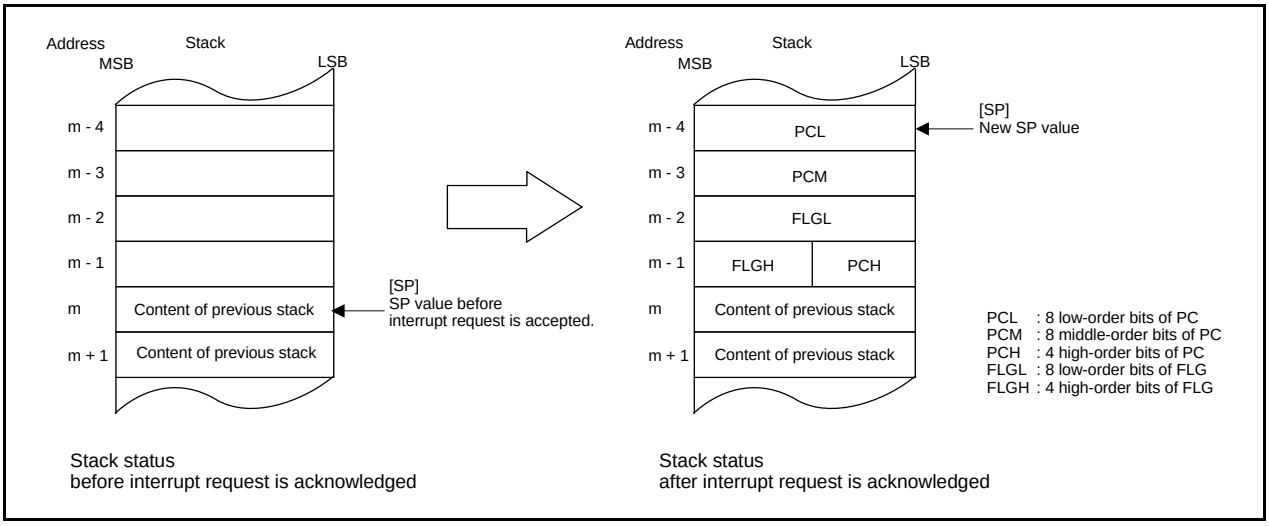


Figure 12.7 Stack Status Before and After Acceptance of Interrupt Request

The operation of saving registers carried out in the interrupt sequence is dependent on whether the SP (1), at the time of acceptance of an interrupt request, is even or odd. If the SP (1) is even, the FLG register and the PC are saved, 16 bits at a time. If odd, they are saved in two steps, 8 bits at a time. Figure 12.8 shows the Operation of Saving Register.

Note:
1. When any INT instruction in software numbers 32 to 63 has been executed, this is the SP indicated by the U flag. Otherwise, it is the ISP.

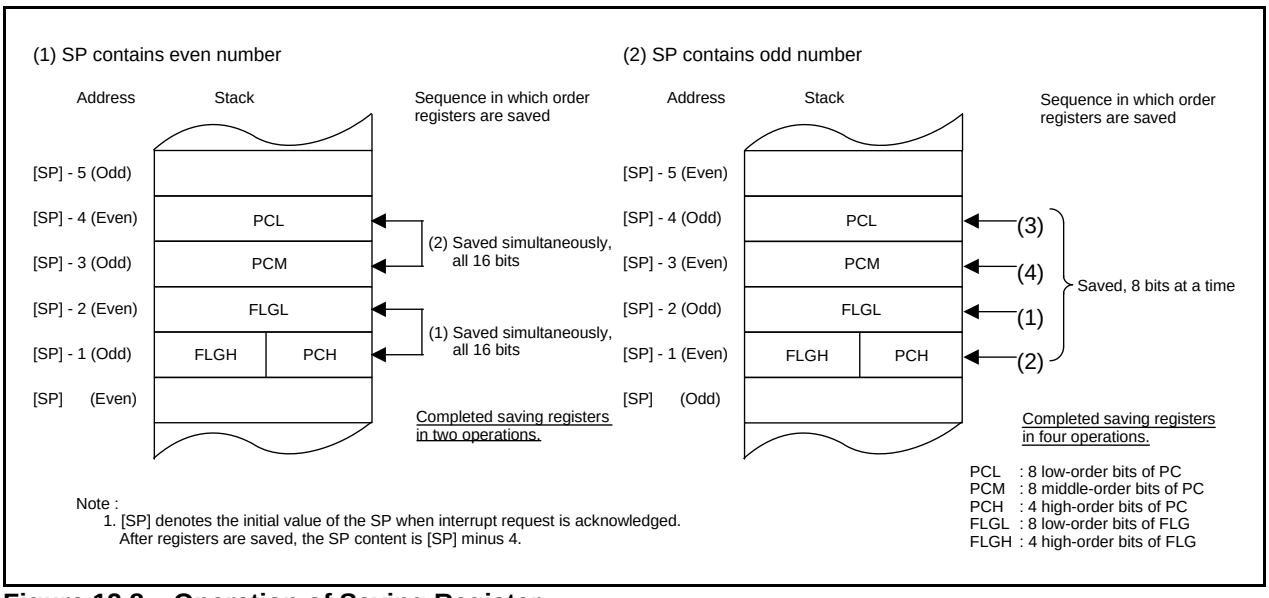


Figure 12.8 Operation of Saving Register

12.5.8 Returning from an Interrupt Routine

The FLG register and PC in the state in which they were immediately before entering the interrupt sequence are restored from the stack by executing the REIT instruction at the end of the interrupt routine.

Thereafter the CPU returns to the program which was being executed before accepting the interrupt request.

Return the other registers saved by a program within the interrupt routine using the POPM or similar instruction before executing the REIT instruction.

Register bank is switched back to the bank used prior to the interrupt sequence by the REIT instruction.

12.5.9 Interrupt Priority

If two or more interrupt requests are sampled at the same sampling points (a timing to detect whether an interrupt request is generated or not), the interrupt with the highest priority is acknowledged.

For maskable interrupts (peripheral functions interrupt), any desired priority level can be selected using bits ILVL2 to ILVL0. However, if two or more maskable interrupts have the same priority level, their interrupt priority is resolved by hardware, with the highest priority interrupt accepted.

The watchdog timer and other special interrupts have their priority levels set in hardware. Figure 12.9 shows the Hardware Interrupt Priority.

Software interrupts are not affected by the interrupt priority. If an instruction is executed, control branches invariably to the interrupt routine.

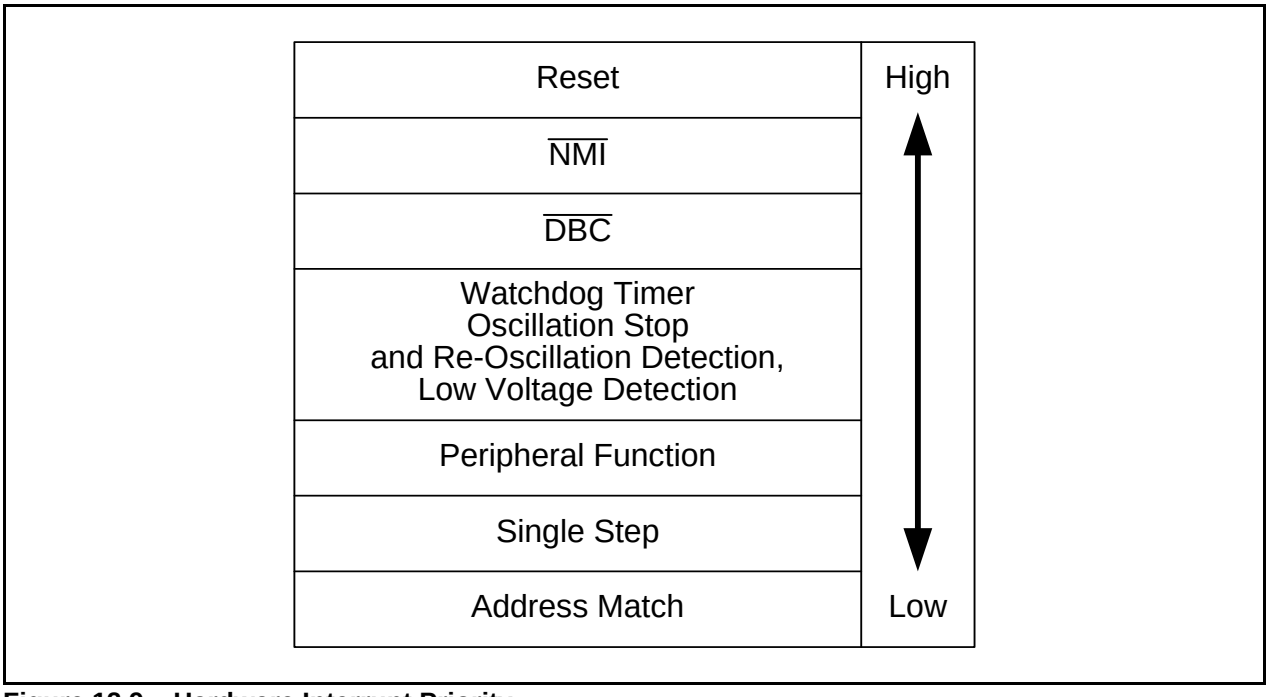


Figure 12.9 Hardware Interrupt Priority

12.5.10 Interrupt Priority Level Select Circuit

The interrupt priority level select circuit selects the highest priority interrupt in a sampled interrupt request(s) at the same sampling point.

Figure 12.10 shows the Interrupts Priority Select Circuit.

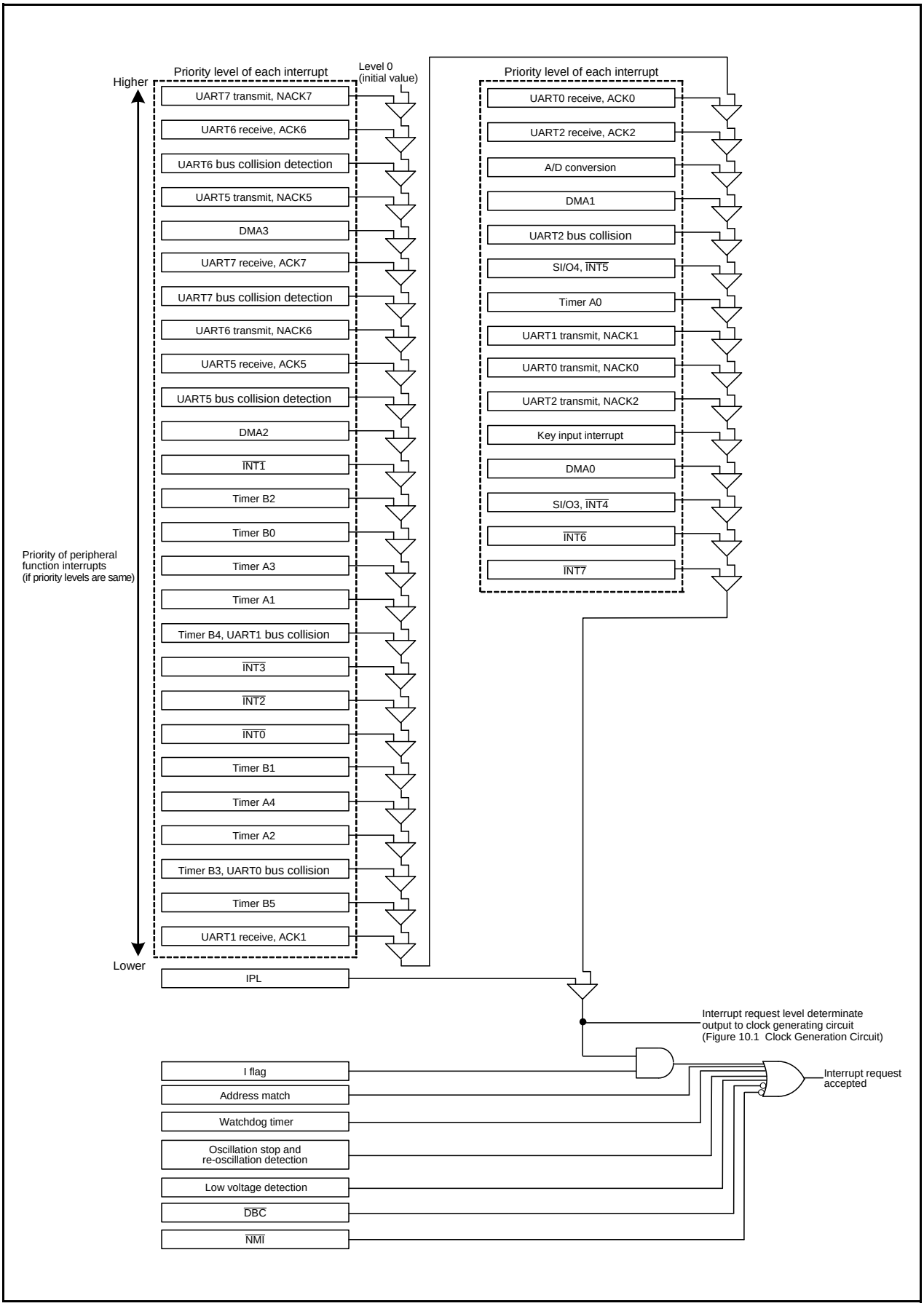


Figure 12.10 Interrupts Priority Select Circuit

12.6 $\overline{\text{INT}}$ Interrupt

$\overline{\text{INTi}}$ interrupt (i = 0 to 7) is triggered by the edges of external inputs. The edge polarity is selected using the IFSRi bit in the IFSR register, or the IFSR30 or IFSR31 bit in the IFSR3A register.

$\overline{\text{INT4}}$ and $\overline{\text{INT5}}$ share the interrupt vector and interrupt control register with SI/O3 and SI/O4, respectively. To use the $\overline{\text{INT4}}$ interrupt, set the IFSR6 bit in the IFSR register to 1 ($\overline{\text{INT4}}$). To use the $\overline{\text{INT5}}$ interrupt, set the IFSR7 bit in the IFSR register to 1 ($\overline{\text{INT5}}$).

After modifying the IFSR6 or IFSR7 bit, clear the corresponding IR bit to 0 (interrupt not requested) before enabling the interrupt.

To use the $\overline{\text{INT6}}$ interrupt, set the PCR5 bit in the PCR register to 0 ($\overline{\text{INT6}}$ input enabled). To use the $\overline{\text{INT7}}$ interrupt, set the PCR6 bit in the PCR register to 0 ($\overline{\text{INT7}}$ input enabled).

Figure 12.11 shows the IFSR Register, and Figure 12.12 shows Registers IFSR2A, IFSR3A, and PCR.

Interrupt Source Select Register

b7	b6	b5	b4	b3	b2	b1	b0	Symbol	Address	After Reset
								IFSR	0207h	00h

Bit Symbol	Bit Name	Function	RW
IFSR0	INT0 interrupt polarity switch bit	0 : One edge 1 : Both edges (1)	RW
IFSR1	INT1 interrupt polarity switch bit	0 : One edge 1 : Both edges (1)	RW
IFSR2	INT2 interrupt polarity switch bit	0 : One edge 1 : Both edges (1)	RW
IFSR3	INT3 interrupt polarity switch bit	0 : One edge 1 : Both edges (1)	RW
IFSR4	INT4 interrupt polarity switch bit	0 : One edge 1 : Both edges (1)	RW
IFSR5	INT5 interrupt polarity switch bit	0 : One edge 1 : Both edges (1)	RW
IFSR6	Interrupt request source select bit (2)	0 : SI/O3 (3) 1 : $\overline{\text{INT4}}$	RW
IFSR7	Interrupt request source select bit (2)	0 : SI/O4 (3) 1 : $\overline{\text{INT5}}$	RW

Notes :
1. When setting this bit to 1 (both edges), make sure the POL bit in registers INT0IC to INT5IC are set to 0 (falling edge).
2. During memory expansion and microprocessor modes, when the data bus is 16 bits wide (BYTE pin is “L”), set this bit to 0 (SI/O3, SI/O4).
3. When setting this bit to 0 (SI/O3, SI/O4), make sure the POL bit in registers S3IC and S4IC are set to 0 (falling edge).

Figure 12.11 IFSR Register

Interrupt Source Select Register 2

b7	b6	b5	b4	b3	b2	b1	b0
		0	0	0	0	0	0

Symbol	Address	After Reset
IFSR2A	0206h	00h

Bit Symbol	Bit Name	Function	RW
— (b5-b0)	Reserved bits	Set to 0	RW
IFSR26	Interrupt request source select bit (1)	0 : Timer B3 1 : UART0 bus collision detection	RW
IFSR27	Interrupt request source select bit (2)	0 : Timer B4 1 : UART1 bus collision detection	RW

Notes :
1. Timer B3 and UART0 bus collision detection share the vector and interrupt control register. When using Timer B3 interrupt, clear the IFSR26 bit to 0 (Timer B3). When using UART0 bus collision detection, set the IFSR26 bit to 1.
2. Timer B4 and UART1 bus collision detection share the vector and interrupt control register. When using Timer B4 interrupt, clear the IFSR27 bit to 0 (Timer B4). When using UART1 bus collision detection, set the IFSR27 bit to 1.

Interrupt Source Select Register 3

b7	b6	b5	b4	b3	b2	b1	b0
0	0	0	0	0	0		

Symbol	Address	After Reset
IFSR3A	0205h	00h

Bit Symbol	Bit Name	Function	RW
IFSR30	INT6 interrupt polarity switch bit	0 : One edge 1 : Both edges (1)	RW
IFSR31	INT7 interrupt polarity switch bit	0 : One edge 1 : Both edges (1)	RW
— (b7-b2)	Reserved bits	Set to 0	RW

Note :
1. When setting this bit to 1 (both edges), make sure the POL bit in registers INT6IC and INT7IC are set to 0 (falling edge).

Port Control Register

b7	b6	b5	b4	b3	b2	b1	b0
			0	0	X	X	

Symbol	Address	After Reset
PCR	0366h	00000XX0b

Bit Symbol	Bit Name	Function	RW
PCR0	Port P1 control bit	Operation performed when the P1 register is read 0 : When the port is set for input, the input levels of pins P1_0 to P1_7 are read. When set for output, the port latch is read. 1 : The port latch is read regardless of whether the port is set for input or output.	RW
— (b2-b1)	No register bits. If necessary, set to 0. Read as 0		—
— (b4-b3)	Reserved	Should be written with 0	RW
PCR5	$\overline{\text{INT6}}$ input enable bit (1)	0 : Enabled 1 : Disabled	RW
PCR6	$\overline{\text{INT7}}$ input enable bit (2)	0 : Enabled 1 : Disabled	RW
PCR7	Key input enable bit (3)	0 : Enabled 1 : Disabled	RW

Notes :
1. To use the AN2_4 pin as an analog input pin, set the PCR5 bit to 1 ($\overline{\text{INT6}}$ input disabled).
2. To use the AN2_5 pin as an analog input pin, set the PCR6 bit to 1 ($\overline{\text{INT7}}$ input disabled).
3. To use pins AN4 to AN7 as analog input pins, set the PCR7 bit to 1 (key input disabled).

Figure 12.12 Registers IFSR2A, IFSR3A, and PCR

12.7 $\overline{\text{NMI}}$ Interrupt

An $\overline{\text{NMI}}$ interrupt is generated when input on the $\overline{\text{NMI}}$ pin changes state from high to low. The $\overline{\text{NMI}}$ interrupt is a non-maskable interrupt. To use the $\overline{\text{NMI}}$ interrupt, set the PM24 bit in the PM2 register to 1 ($\overline{\text{NMI}}$ interrupt enabled).

12.8 Key Input Interrupt

Of P10_4 to P10_7, a key input interrupt is generated when input on any of pins P10_4 to P10_7 which has had bits PD10_4 to PD10_7 in the PD10 register set to 0 (input) goes low. Key input interrupts can be used as a key-on wake up function, the function which gets the microcomputer out of wait or stop mode. However, if using the key input interrupt, do not use P10_4 to P10_7 as analog input pins. Figure 12.13 shows the block diagram of the Key Input Interrupt. Note, however, that while input on any pin which has had bits PD10_4 to PD10_7 set to 0 (input mode) is pulled low, inputs on all other pins of the port are not detected as interrupts. Set the PCR7 bit in the PCR register to 0 (key input enabled) to use key input interrupts.

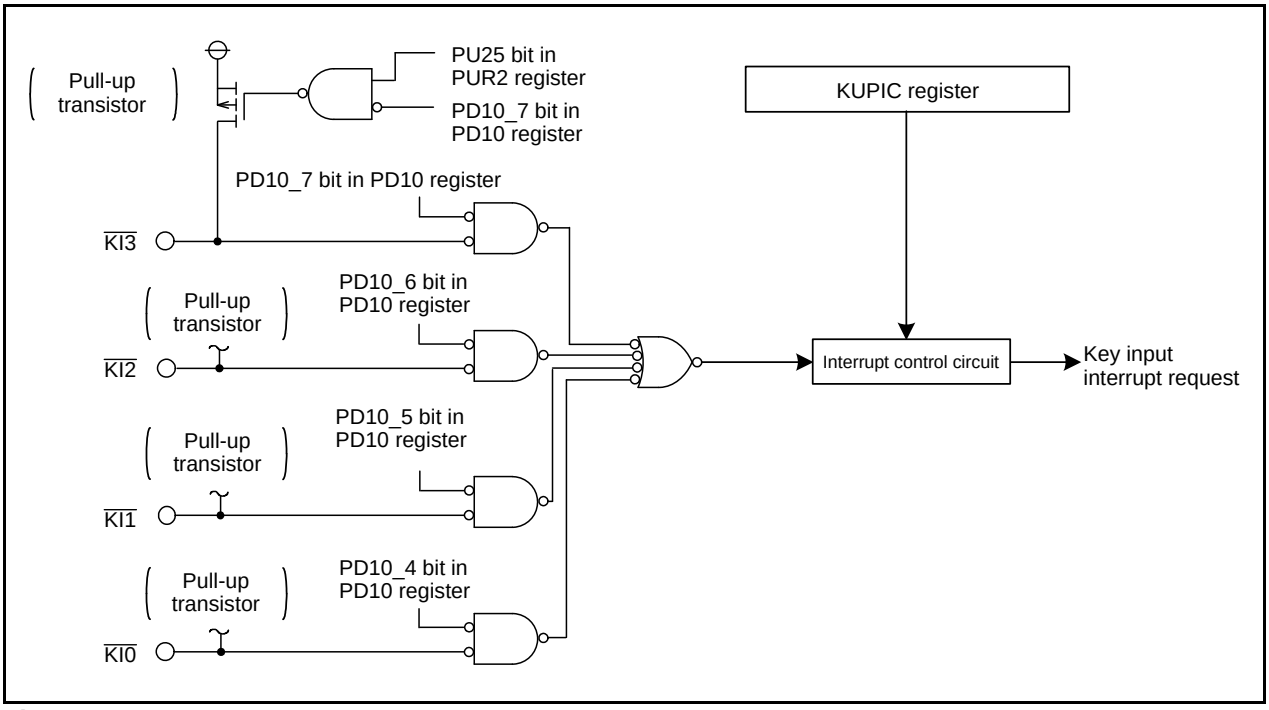


Figure 12.13 Key Input Interrupt

12.9 Address Match Interrupt

An address match interrupt is generated immediately before executing the instruction at the address indicated by the RMADi register (i = 0 to 3). Set the start address of any instruction in the RMADi register. Use bits AIER0 and AIER1 in the AIER register and bits AIER20 and AIER21 in the AIER2 register to enable or disable the interrupt. Note that the address match interrupt is unaffected by the I flag and IPL. When address match interrupt requests are acknowledged, the value of the PC that is saved to the stack area (refer to **12.5.7 "Saving Registers"**) varies depending on the instruction at the address indicated by the RMADi register (The value of the PC that is saved to the stack area is not the correct return address.) Therefore, follow one of the methods described below to return from the address match interrupt.

- Rewrite the content of the stack and then use the REIT instruction to return.
- Restore the stack to its previous state before the interrupt request was accepted by using the POP or similar other instruction and then use a jump instruction to return.

Table 12.7 shows the Value of the PC That Is Saved to the Stack Area When an Address Match Interrupt Request is Accepted. Table 12.8 shows the Relationship between Address Match Interrupt Sources and Associated Registers.

Figure 12.14 shows Registers AIER, AIER2, and RMAD0 to RMAD3.

Table 12.7 Value of the PC That Is Saved to the Stack Area When an Address Match Interrupt Request is Accepted

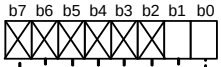
Instruction at the Address Indicated by the RMADi Register	Value of the PC that is saved to the stack area
16-bit op-code instruction Instruction shown below among 8-bit operation code instructions ADD.B:S #IMM8, dest SUB.B:S #IMM8, dest AND.B:S #IMM8, dest OR.B:S #IMM8, dest MOV.B:S #IMM8, dest STZ.B:S #IMM8, dest STNZ.B:S #IMM8, dest STZX.B:S #IMM81, #IMM82,dest CMP.B:S #IMM8, dest PUSHM src POPM dest JMPS #IMM8 JSRS #IMM8 MOV.B:S #IMM, dest (However, dest = A0 or A1)	The address indicated by the RMADi register +2
Instructions other than the above	The address indicated by the RMADi register +1

Note:
Value of the PC that is saved to the stack area: Refer to **12.5.7 "Saving Registers"**.

Table 12.8 Relationship between Address Match Interrupt Sources and Associated Registers

Address Match Interrupt Sources	Address Match Interrupt Enable Bit	Address Match Interrupt Register
Address Match Interrupt 0	AIER0	RMAD0
Address Match Interrupt 1	AIER1	RMAD1
Address Match Interrupt 2	AIER20	RMAD2
Address Match Interrupt 3	AIER21	RMAD3

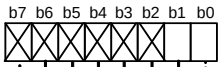
Address Match Interrupt Enable Register



Symbol	Address	After Reset
AIER	020Eh	XXXXXX00b

Bit Symbol	Bit Name	Function	RW
AIER0	Address match interrupt 0 enable bit	0 : Interrupt disabled 1 : Interrupt enabled	RW
AIER1	Address match interrupt 1 enable bit	0 : Interrupt disabled 1 : Interrupt enabled	RW
— (b7-b2)	No register bits. If necessary, set to 0. Read as undefined value		—

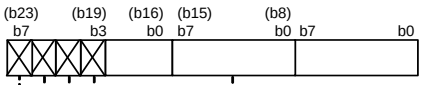
Address Match Interrupt Enable Register 2



Symbol	Address	After Reset
AIER2	020Fh	XXXXXX00b

Bit Symbol	Bit Name	Function	RW
AIER20	Address match interrupt 2 enable bit	0 : Interrupt disabled 1 : Interrupt enabled	RW
AIER21	Address match interrupt 3 enable bit	0 : Interrupt disabled 1 : Interrupt enabled	RW
— (b7-b2)	No register bits. If necessary, set to 0. Read as undefined value		—

Address Match Interrupt Register i (i = 0 to 3)



Symbol	Address	After Reset
RMAD0	0212h to 0210h	X00000h
RMAD1	0216h to 0214h	X00000h
RMAD2	021Ah to 0218h	X00000h
RMAD3	021Eh to 021Ch	X00000h

Function	Setting Range	RW
Address setting register for address match interrupt (b19 to b0)	00000h to FFFFFh	RW
No register bits. If necessary, set to 0. Read as undefined value		—

Figure 12.14 Registers AIER, AIER2, and RMAD0 to RMAD3

13. Watchdog Timer

The watchdog timer detects whether the program is out of control. Therefore, we recommend using the watchdog timer to improve reliability of a system. The watchdog timer contains a 15-bit counter, and count source protection mode (enabled / disabled) is set here.
Table 13.1 shows the Watchdog Timer Specification.
Refer to **5.4 "Watchdog Timer Reset"** for details of watchdog timer reset.
Figure 13.1 shows the Watchdog Timer Block Diagram. Figure 13.2 shows the Registers WDTR, WDTS, and WDC. Figure 13.3 shows the CSPR Register and OFS1 Address.

Table 13.1 Watchdog Timer Specification

Item	When count source protection mode is disabled	When count source protection mode is enabled
Count Source	CPU clock	125kHz on-chip oscillator clock
Count Operation	Decrement	
Count Start Condition	Either of the followings can be selected. Count automatically starts after reset. Count starts by writing to the WDTS register.	
Count Stop Condition	Stop mode, wait mode, hold state	None
Watchdog Timer Reset Condition	Reset Write 00h, and then FFh to the WDTR register. Underflow	
Operation When the Timer Underflows	Watchdog timer interrupt or watchdog timer reset	Watchdog timer reset
Select Function	Prescaler divide ratio Set the WDC7 bit in the WDC register to select this mode. Count source protection mode Set the CSPROINI bit (flash memory) in the OFS1 address to select whether this mode is enabled or disabled after reset. If this mode is set to disabled after reset, set the CSPRO bit (program) in the CSPR register. Start up or stop watchdog timer after reset Set the WDTON bit in the OFS1 address to select startup or stop.	

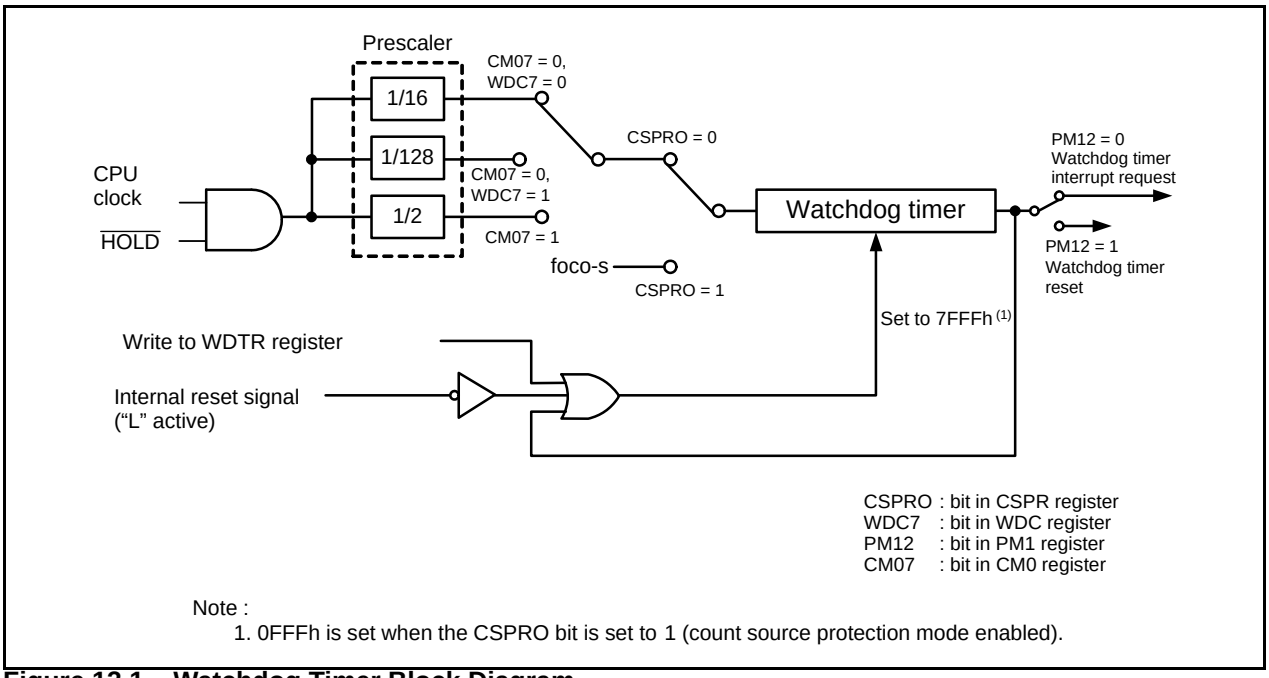


Figure 13.1 Watchdog Timer Block Diagram

Watchdog Timer Reset Register

b7	b0	Symbol	Address	After Reset
		WDTR	037Dh	Indeterminate

Function	RW
Setting 00h and then FFh initializes the watchdog timer. (2) The watchdog timer is initialized to 7FFFh when count source protection mode is disabled, and to 0FFFh when count source protection mode is enabled. (1)	WO

Notes :
1. The watchdog timer is set to 0FFFh when the CSPRO bit in the CSPR register is set to 1 (count source protection mode enabled).
2. After the watchdog timer interrupt occurs, reset the watchdog timer by setting the WDTR register.

Watchdog Timer Start Register

b7	b0	Symbol	Address	After Reset
		WDTS	037Eh	Indeterminate

Function	RW
The watchdog timer starts counting after a write instruction to this register	WO

Watchdog Timer Control Register

b7	b6	b5	b4	b3	b2	b1	b0	Symbol	Address	After Reset
	0	X						WDC	037Fh	00XXXXXXb

Bit Symbol	Bit Name	Function	RW
— (b4-b0)	Higher-order bits of watchdog timer		RO
— (b5)	No register bit. If necessary, set to 0. Read as 0		—
— (b6)	Reserved bit	Set to 0	RW
WDC7	Prescaler select bit	0 : Divided by 16 1 : Divided by 128	RW

Figure 13.2 Registers WDTR, WDTS, and WDC

Count Source Protection Mode Register

b7	b6	b5	b4	b3	b2	b1	b0	Symbol	Address	After Reset (1)
	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	CSPR	037Ch	00h

Bit Symbol	Bit Name	Function	RW
— (b6-b0)	Reserved bits	Set to 0	RW
CSPRO	Count source protection mode select bit (2)	0 : Count source protection mode disabled 1 : Count source protection mode enabled	RW

Notes :
1. When a 0 is written to the CSPROINI bit in the OFS1 address, 10000000b is set after reset.
2. Write a 0 and then a 1 to set the CSPRO bit to 1. 0 cannot be set in a program.

Optional Feature Select Address (1, 5)

b7	b6	b5	b4	b3	b2	b1	b0	Symbol	Address	After Reset
	1	1	1		1	1		OFS1	FFFFFh	FFh (2)

Bit Symbol	Bit Name	Function	RW
WDTON	Watchdog timer start select bit (3, 4)	0 : Watchdog timer starts automatically after reset 1 : Watchdog timer is in a stopped state after reset	RW
— (b2-b1)	Reserved bits	Set to 1	RW
ROMCP1	ROM code protection bit	0 : ROM code protection enabled 1 : ROM code protection disabled	RW
— (b6-b4)	Reserved bits	Set to 1	RW
CSPROINI	After-reset count source protection mode select bit (3)	0 : Count source protection mode enabled after reset 1 : Count source protection mode disabled after reset	RW

Notes :
1. The OFS1 address exists in flash memory. Set the values when writing a program.
2. The OFS1 address is set to FFh when a block including the OFS1 address is erased.
3. Set the WDTON bit to 0 (watchdog timer starts automatically after reset) when setting the CSPROINI bit to 0 (count source protection mode enabled after reset).
4. This function is also effective in user boot mode.
5. The OFS1 address can be set in single-chip and memory expansion mode. The OFS1 address cannot be used in micro microprocessor mode. Before using the OFS1 address, clear the internal ROM.

Figure 13.3 CSPR Register and OFS1 Address

13.1 Count Source Protection Mode Disabled

The CPU clock is used for the watchdog timer count source when count source protection mode is disabled.

Table 13.2 lists the Watchdog Timer Specifications (When Count Source Protection Mode is Disabled).

Table 13.2 Watchdog Timer Specifications (When Count Source Protection Mode is Disabled)

Item	Specification
Count Source	CPU Clock
Count Operation	Decrement
Period	When the CM07 bit in the CM0 register is 0 (main clock, PLL clock, 125-kHz on-chip oscillator clock): $\frac{\text{Prescaler value (n)} \times \text{watchdog timer count value (32768)}}{\text{CPU clock}}$ (1) When the CM07 bit is 1 (sub clock): $\frac{\text{Prescaler value (2)} \times \text{watchdog timer count value (32768)}}{\text{CPU clock}}$ (1) example: When CPU clock frequency = 16 MHz and prescaler divided by 16, period = approximately 32.8ms
Watchdog Timer Reset Condition	• Reset • Write 00h, and then FFh to the WDTR register. • Underflow
Count Start Condition	Set the WDTON bit (2) in the OFS1 address (FFFFFh) to select the watchdog timer operation after reset. • When the WDTON bit is set to 1 (watchdog timer is in stop state after reset) The watchdog timer and prescaler stop after reset and count starts by writing to the WDTS register. • When the WDTON bit is set to 0 (watchdog timer starts automatically after reset) The watchdog timer and prescaler start counting automatically after reset.
Count Stop Condition	Stop mode, wait mode, hold state (count resumes from the hold value after exiting.)
Operation when the Timer Underflows	• When the PM 12 bit in the PM1 register is set to 0 Watchdog timer interrupt • When the PM 12 bit in the PM1 register is set to 1 Watchdog timer reset (see **5.4 “Watchdog Timer Reset”**)

Notes:

1. Write 00h, and then FFh to the WDTR register to initialize the watchdog timer. The prescaler is initialized after reset. Some errors in the period of the watchdog timer may be caused by the prescaler.
2. The WDTON bit cannot be changed by a program. Write a 0 to bit 0 of address FFFFFh with a flash programmer to set the WDTON bit.

13.2 Count Source Protection Mode Enabled

The 125 kHz on-chip oscillator clock is used for the watchdog timer count source when count source protection mode is enabled. If the CPU clock stops when a program is out of control, the clock can still be supplied to the watchdog timer.

Table 13.3 lists the Watchdog Timer Specifications (When Count Source Protection Mode is Enabled).

Table 13.3 Watchdog Timer Specifications (When Count Source Protection Mode is Enabled)

Item	Specification
Count Source	125 kHz on-chip oscillator clock
Count Operation	Decrement
Period	Watchdog timer count value (4096) 125 kHz on-chip oscillator clock example: When 125 kHz on-chip oscillator clock = 125 kHz, period = approximately 32.8ms
Watchdog Timer Reset Condition	• Reset • Write 00h, and then FFh to the WDTR register. • Underflow
Count Start Condition	Set the WDTON bit (1) in the OFS1 address (FFFFFh) to select the watchdog timer operation after reset. • When the WDTON bit is set to 1 (watchdog timer is in stop state after reset) The watchdog timer and prescaler stop after reset and count starts by writing to the WDTS register. • When the WDTON bit is set to 0 (watchdog timer starts automatically after reset) The watchdog timer and prescaler start counting automatically after reset.
Count Stop Condition	None (Count does not stop in wait mode or in hold state once count starts. The MCU does not enter stop mode.)
Operation when the Timer Underflows	Watchdog timer reset (see **5.4 “Watchdog Timer Reset”**)
Registers, Bits	• When the CSPRO bit in the CSPR register is set to 1 (count source protection mode enabled) (2), the followings are set automatically. -Set 0FFFh to the watchdog timer. -Set the CM14 bit in the CM1 register to 0 (125 kHz on-chip oscillator on). -Set the PM12 bit in the PM1 register to 1 (The watchdog timer reset is generated when watchdog timer underflows.). • The following conditions apply in count source protection mode. -Writing to the CM10 bit in the CM1 register is disabled (It remains unchanged even if it is set to 1. The MCU does not enter stop mode.). -Writing to the CM14 bit in the CM1 register is disabled (It remains unchanged even if it is set to 1. The 125 kHz on-chip oscillator does not stop.).

Notes:

1. The WDTON bit cannot be changed by a program. Write 0 to bit 0 of address FFFFFh with a flash programmer to set the WDTON bit.
2. Even if 0 is written to the CSPROINI bit in the OFS1 address, the CSPRO is set to 1. The CSPROINI bit cannot be changed by a program. Write 0 to bit 7 of address FFFFFh with a flash programmer to set the CSPROINI bit.

14. DMAC

The DMAC (Direct Memory Access Controller) allows data to be transferred without the CPU intervention. Four DMAC channels are included. Each time a DMA request occurs, the DMAC transfers one (8 or 16-bit) data from the source address to the destination address. The DMAC uses the same data bus as used by the CPU. Because the DMAC has higher priority of bus control than the CPU and because it makes use of a cycle steal method, it can transfer one word (16 bits) or one byte (8 bits) of data within a very short time after a DMA request is generated. Figure 14.1 shows the DMAC Block Diagram. Table 14.1 lists the DMAC Specifications. Figures 14.2 to 14.4 show the DMAC-related registers.

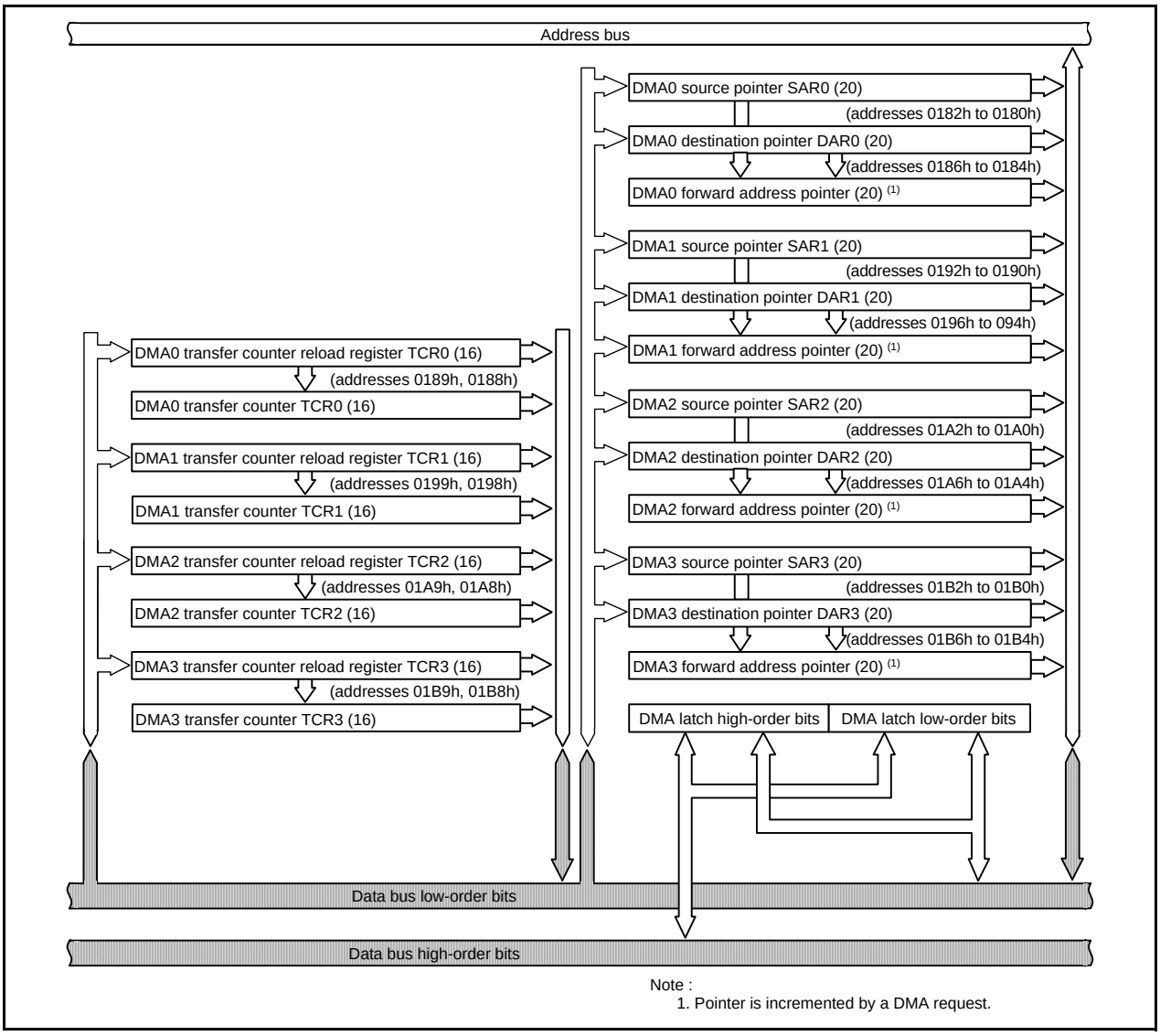


Figure 14.1 DMAC Block Diagram

A DMA request is generated by a write to the DSR bit in the DMiSL register (i = 0 to 3), as well as by an interrupt request which is generated by any function specified by bits DMS and DSEL4 to DSEL0 in the DMiSL register. However, unlike in the case of interrupt requests, DMA requests are not affected by the I flag and the interrupt control register, so that even when interrupt requests are disabled and no interrupt request can be accepted, DMA requests are always accepted. Furthermore, because the DMAC does not affect interrupts, the IR bit in the interrupt control register does not change state due to a DMA transfer.
A data transfer is initiated each time a DMA request is generated when the DMAE bit in the DMiCON register = 1 (DMA enabled). However, if the cycle in which a DMA request is generated is faster than the DMA transfer cycle, the number of transfer requests generated and the number of times data is transferred may not match. Refer to **14.4 "DMA Request"** for details.

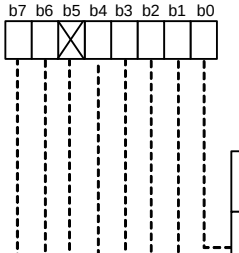
Table 14.1 DMAC Specifications (3)

Item		Specification
No. of Channels		4 (cycle steal method)
Transfer Memory Space		• From given address in the 1-Mbyte space to a fixed address • From a fixed address to given address in the 1-Mbyte space • From a fixed address to a fixed address
Maximum No. of Bytes Transferred		128 Kbytes (with 16-bit transfers) or 64 Kbytes (with 8-bit transfers)
DMA Request Factors (1, 2)		Falling edge of $\overline{\text{INT0}}$ to $\overline{\text{INT7}}$ Both edges of $\overline{\text{INT0}}$ to $\overline{\text{INT7}}$ Timer A0 to timer A4 interrupt requests Timer B0 to timer B5 interrupt requests UART0 to 2, UART5 to 7 transmission interrupt requests UART0 to 2, UART5 to 7 reception / ACK interrupt requests SI/O3, SI/O4 interrupt requests A/D conversion interrupt requests Software triggers
Channel Priority		DMA0 > DMA1 > DMA2 > DMA3 (DMA0 takes precedence)
Transfer Unit		8 bits or 16 bits
Transfer Address Direction		Forward or fixed (The source and destination addresses cannot both be in the forward direction.)
Transfer Mode	Single Transfer	Transfer is completed when the DMAi transfer counter underflows.
	Repeat Transfer	When the DMAi transfer counter underflows, it is reloaded with the value of the DMAi transfer counter reload register and a DMA transfer is continued with it.
DMA Interrupt Request Generation Timing		When the DMAi transfer counter underflowed
DMA Transfer Start		Data transfer is initiated each time a DMA request is generated when the DMAE bit in the DMAiCON register = 1 (enabled).
DMA Transfer Stop	Single Transfer	• When the DMAE bit is set to 0 (disabled) • After the DMAi transfer counter underflows
	Repeat Transfer	When the DMAE bit is set to 0 (disabled)
Reload Timing for Forward Address Pointer and DMAi Transfer Counter		When a data transfer is started after setting the DMAE bit to 1 (enabled), the forward address pointer is reloaded with the value of the SARi or DARi pointer whichever is specified to be in the forward direction and the DMAi transfer counter is reloaded with the value of the DMAi transfer counter reload register.
DMA Transfer Cycles		Minimum 3 cycles between SFR and internal RAM

Notes:
1. DMA transfer is not effective to any interrupt. DMA transfer is affected neither by the I flag nor by the interrupt control register.
2. The selectable factors of DMA requests differ with each channel.
3. Make sure that no DMAC-related registers (addresses 0180h to 01BFh) are accessed by the DMAC.

i = 0 to 3

DMAi Source Select Register (i = 0 to 3)



Symbol	Address	After Reset
DM0SL	0398h	00h
DM1SL	039Ah	00h
DM2SL	0390h	00h
DM3SL	0392h	00h

Bit Symbol	Bit Name	Function	RW
DSEL0	DMA request source select bit	(NOTE 1)	RW
DSEL1			RW
DSEL2			RW
DSEL3			RW
DSEL4			RW
— (b5)	No register bit. If necessary, set to 0. Read as 0		—
DMS	DMA request source expansion select bit	0: Basic request source 1: Extended request source	RW
DSR	Software DMA request bit	A DMA request is generated by setting this bit to 1 when the DMS bit is 0 (basic source) and bits DSEL4 to DSEL0 are 00001b (software trigger). Read as 0	RW

Note :
1. The sources of DMAi requests can be selected by a combination of the DMS bit and bits DSEL4 to DSEL0 in the manner described in Table 14.2 to Table 14.5.

Figure 14.2 Registers DM0SL, DM1SL, DM2SL, and DM3SL (1)

Table 14.2 DMA0 Register

DSEL4 to DSEL0	DMS = 0 (Basic Factor of Request)	DMS = 1 (Extended Factor of Request)
0 0 0 0 0 b	Falling edge of $\overline{\text{INT0}}$ pin	–
0 0 0 0 1 b	Software trigger	–
0 0 0 1 0 b	Timer A0	–
0 0 0 1 1 b	Timer A1	–
0 0 1 0 0 b	Timer A2	–
0 0 1 0 1 b	Timer A3	–
0 0 1 1 0 b	Timer A4	Both edges of $\overline{\text{INT0}}$ pin
0 0 1 1 1 b	Timer B0	Timer B3
0 1 0 0 0 b	Timer B1	Timer B4
0 1 0 0 1 b	Timer B2	Timer B5
0 1 0 1 0 b	UART0 transmission	–
0 1 0 1 1 b	UART0 reception	–
0 1 1 0 0 b	UART2 transmission	–
0 1 1 0 1 b	UART2 reception	–
0 1 1 1 0 b	A/D converter	–
0 1 1 1 1 b	UART1 transmission	–
1 0 0 0 0 b	UART1 reception	Falling edge of $\overline{\text{INT4}}$ pin
1 0 0 0 1 b	UART5 transmission	Both edges of $\overline{\text{INT4}}$ pin
1 0 0 1 0 b	UART5 reception	–
1 0 0 1 1 b	UART6 transmission	–
1 0 1 0 0 b	UART6 reception	–
1 0 1 0 1 b	UART7 transmission	–
1 0 1 1 0 b	UART7 reception	–
1 0 1 1 1 b	–	–
1 1 X X X b	–	–

X indicates 0 or 1. - indicates no setting.

Table 14.3 DMA1 Register

DSEL4 to DSEL0	DMS = 0 (Basic Factor of Request)	DMS = 1 (Extended Factor of Request)
0 0 0 0 0 b	Falling edge of $\overline{\text{INT1}}$ pin	–
0 0 0 0 1 b	Software trigger	–
0 0 0 1 0 b	Timer A0	–
0 0 0 1 1 b	Timer A1	–
0 0 1 0 0 b	Timer A2	–
0 0 1 0 1 b	Timer A3	SI/O3
0 0 1 1 0 b	Timer A4	SI/O4
0 0 1 1 1 b	Timer B0	Both edges of $\overline{\text{INT1}}$ pin
0 1 0 0 0 b	Timer B1	–
0 1 0 0 1 b	Timer B2	–
0 1 0 1 0 b	UART0 transmission	–
0 1 0 1 1 b	UART0 reception / ACK0	–
0 1 1 0 0 b	UART2 transmission	–
0 1 1 0 1 b	UART2 reception / ACK2	–
0 1 1 1 0 b	A/D converter	–
0 1 1 1 1 b	UART1 reception / ACK1	–
1 0 0 0 0 b	UART1 transmission	Falling edge of $\overline{\text{INT5}}$ pin
1 0 0 0 1 b	UART5 transmission	Both edges of $\overline{\text{INT5}}$ pin
1 0 0 1 0 b	UART5 reception / ACK5	–
1 0 0 1 1 b	UART6 transmission	–
1 0 1 0 0 b	UART6 reception / ACK6	–
1 0 1 0 1 b	UART7 transmission	–
1 0 1 1 0 b	UART7 reception / ACK7	–
1 0 1 1 1 b	–	–
1 1 X X X b	–	–

X indicates 0 or 1. - indicates no setting.

Table 14.4 DMA2 Register

DSEL4 to DSEL0	DMS = 0 (Basic Factor of Request)	DMS = 1 (Extended Factor of Request)
0 0 0 0 0 b	Falling edge of $\overline{\text{INT2}}$ pin	–
0 0 0 0 1 b	Software trigger	–
0 0 0 1 0 b	Timer A0	–
0 0 0 1 1 b	Timer A1	–
0 0 1 0 0 b	Timer A2	–
0 0 1 0 1 b	Timer A3	–
0 0 1 1 0 b	Timer A4	Both edges of $\overline{\text{INT2}}$ pin
0 0 1 1 1 b	Timer B0	Timer B3
0 1 0 0 0 b	Timer B1	Timer B4
0 1 0 0 1 b	Timer B2	Timer B5
0 1 0 1 0 b	UART0 transmission	–
0 1 0 1 1 b	UART0 reception	–
0 1 1 0 0 b	UART2 transmission	–
0 1 1 0 1b	UART2 reception	–
0 1 1 1 0 b	A/D converter	–
0 1 1 1 1 b	UART1 transmission	–
1 0 0 0 0 b	UART1 reception	Falling edge of $\overline{\text{INT6}}$ pin
1 0 0 0 1 b	UART5 transmission	Both edges of $\overline{\text{INT6}}$ pin
1 0 0 1 0 b	UART5 reception	–
1 0 0 1 1 b	UART6 transmission	–
1 0 1 0 0 b	UART6 reception	–
1 0 1 0 1 b	UART7 transmission	–
1 0 1 1 0 b	UART7 reception	–
1 0 1 1 1 b	–	–
1 1 X X X b	–	–

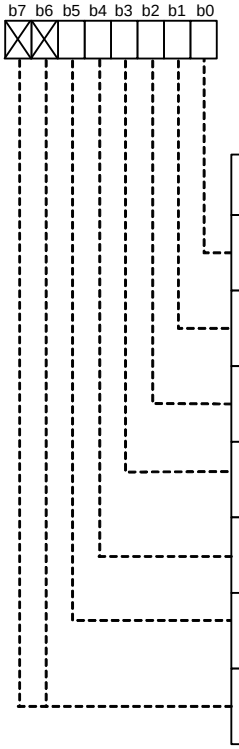
X indicates 0 or 1. - indicates no setting.

Table 14.5 DMA3 Register

DSEL4 to DSEL0	DMS = 0 (Basic Factor of Request)	DMS = 1 (Extended Factor of Request)
0 0 0 0 0 b	Falling edge of $\overline{\text{INT3}}$ pin	–
0 0 0 0 1 b	Software trigger	–
0 0 0 1 0 b	Timer A0	–
0 0 0 1 1 b	Timer A1	–
0 0 1 0 0 b	Timer A2	–
0 0 1 0 1 b	Timer A3	SI / O3
0 0 1 1 0 b	Timer A4	SI / O4
0 0 1 1 1 b	Timer B0	Both edges of $\overline{\text{INT3}}$ pin
0 1 0 0 0 b	Timer B1	–
0 1 0 0 1 b	Timer B2	–
0 1 0 1 0 b	UART0 transmission	–
0 1 0 1 1 b	UART0 reception / ACK0	–
0 1 1 0 0 b	UART2 transmission	–
0 1 1 0 1b	UART2 reception / ACK2	–
0 1 1 1 0 b	A/D converter	–
0 1 1 1 1 b	UART1 reception / ACK1	–
1 0 0 0 0 b	UART1 transmission	Falling edge of $\overline{\text{INT7}}$ pin
1 0 0 0 1 b	UART5 transmission	Both edges of $\overline{\text{INT7}}$ pin
1 0 0 1 0 b	UART5 reception / ACK5	–
1 0 0 1 1 b	UART6 transmission	–
1 0 1 0 0 b	UART6 reception / ACK6	–
1 0 1 0 1 b	UART7 transmission	–
1 0 1 1 0 b	UART7 reception / ACK7	–
1 0 1 1 1 b	–	–
1 1 X X X b	–	–

X indicates 0 or 1. - indicates no setting.

DMAi Control Register (i = 0 to 3)



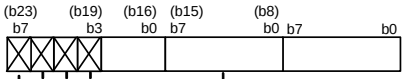
Symbol	Address	After Reset
DM0CON	018Ch	00000X00b
DM1CON	019Ch	00000X00b
DM2CON	01ACh	00000X00b
DM3CON	01BCh	00000X00b

Bit Symbol	Bit Name	Function	RW
DMBIT	Transfer unit bit select bit	0 : 16 bits 1 : 8 bits	RW
DMASL	Repeat transfer mode select bit	0 : Single transfer 1 : Repeat transfer	RW
DMAS	DMA request bit	0 : DMA not requested 1 : DMA requested	RW (1)
DMAE	DMA enable bit	0 : Disabled 1 : Enabled	RW
DSD	Source address direction select bit (2)	0 : Fixed 1 : Forward	RW
DAD	Destination address direction select bit (2)	0 : Fixed 1 : Forward	RW
— (b7-b6)	No register bits. If necessary, set to 0. Read as 0		—

Notes :
1. The DMAS bit can be set to 0 by writing a 0 in a program (This bit remains unchanged even if 1 is written).
2. Set at least either the DAD bit or DSD bit to 0 (address direction fixed).

Figure 14.3 Registers DM0CON, DM1CON, DM2CON, and DM3CON

DMAi Source Pointer (i = 0 to 3) (1)

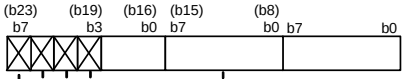


Symbol	Address	After Reset
SAR0	0182h to 0180h	0XXXXXh
SAR1	0192h to 0190h	0XXXXXh
SAR2	01A2h to 01A0h	0XXXXXh
SAR3	01B2h to 01B0h	0XXXXXh

Function	Setting Range	RW
Set the source address of transfer	00000h to FFFFFh	RW
No register bits. If necessary, set to 0. Read as 0		—

Note :
1. If the DSD bit in the DMiCON register is 0 (fixed), write to this register when the DMAE bit in the DMiCON register is 0 (DMA disabled).
If the DSD bit is 1 (forward direction), this register can be written to at any time.
If the DSD bit is 1 and the DMAE bit is 1 (DMA enabled), the DMAi forward address pointer can be read from this register. Otherwise, the value written to it can be read.

DMAi Destination Pointer (i = 0 to 3) (1)

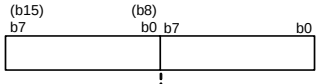


Symbol	Address	After Reset
DAR0	0186h to 0184h	0XXXXXh
DAR1	0196h to 0194h	0XXXXXh
DAR2	01A6h to 01A4h	0XXXXXh
DAR3	01B6h to 01B4h	0XXXXXh

Function	Setting Range	RW
Set the destination address of transfer	00000h to FFFFFh	RW
No register bits. If necessary, set to 0. Read as 0		—

Note :
1. If the DAD bit in the DMiCON register is 0 (fixed), write to this register when the DMAE bit in the DMiCON register is 0 (DMA disabled).
If the DAD bit is 1 (forward direction), this register can be written to at any time.
If the DAD bit is 1 and the DMAE bit is 1 (DMA enabled), the DMAi forward address pointer can be read from this register. Otherwise, the value written to it can be read.

DMAi Transfer Counter (i = 0 to 3)



Symbol	Address	After Reset
TCR0	0189h to 0188h	Indeterminate
TCR1	0199h to 0198h	Indeterminate
TCR2	01A9h to 01A8h	Indeterminate
TCR3	01B9h to 01B8h	Indeterminate

Function	Setting Range	RW
Set the transfer count minus 1. The written value is stored in the DMAi transfer counter reload register, and when the DMAE bit in the DMiCON register is set to 1 (DMA enabled) or the DMAi transfer counter underflows when the DMASL bit in the DMiCON register is 1 (repeat transfer), the value of the DMAi transfer counter reload register is transferred to the DMAi transfer counter. When read, the DMAi transfer counter is read.	0000h to FFFFh	RW

Figure 14.4 Registers SAR0, SAR1, SAR2, SAR3, DAR0, DAR1, DAR2, DAR3, TCR0, TCR1, TCR2, and TCR3

14.1 Transfer Cycles

Transfer cycle is composed of a bus cycle to read data from source address (source read) and a bus cycle to write data to destination address (destination write). The number of read and write bus cycles depends on source and destination addresses. During memory extension and microprocessor modes, it is also affected by the BYTE pin level. Furthermore, the bus cycle itself is extended by a software wait or $\overline{\text{RDY}}$ signal.

14.1.1 Effect of Source and Destination Addresses

When a 16-bit data is transferred with a 16-bit data bus and a source address starts with an odd address, source-read cycle is incremented by one bus cycle, compared to a source address starting with an even address.

When a 16-bit data is transferred with a 16-bit data bus and a destination address starts with an odd address, destination-write cycle is incremented by one bus cycle, compared to a destination address starting with an even address.

14.1.2 Effect of BYTE Pin Level

During memory extension and microprocessor modes, if 16 bits of data are to be transferred on an 8-bit data bus (input on the BYTE pin = high), the operation is accomplished by transferring 8 bits of data twice. Therefore, this operation requires two bus cycles to read data and two bus cycles to write data. Furthermore, if the DMAC is to access the internal area (internal ROM, internal RAM, or SFR), unlike in the case of the CPU, the DMAC does it through the data bus width selected by the BYTE pin.

14.1.3 Effect of Software Wait

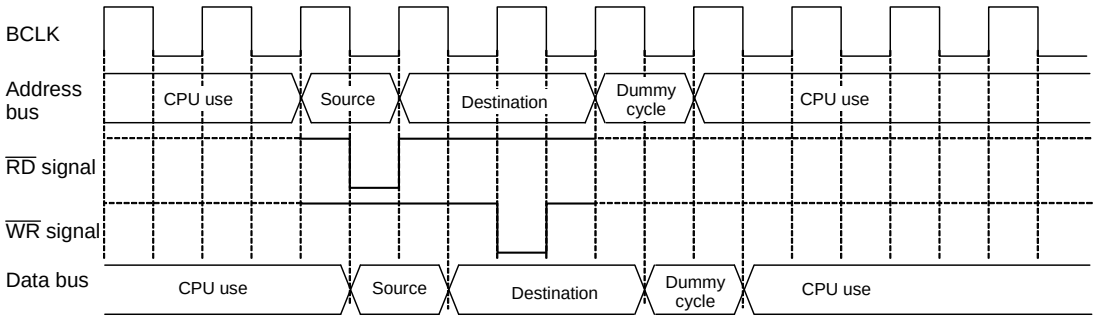
For memory or SFR accesses in which one or more software wait states are inserted, the number of bus cycles required for that access increases by an amount equal to software wait states.

14.1.4 Effect of $\overline{\text{RDY}}$ Signal

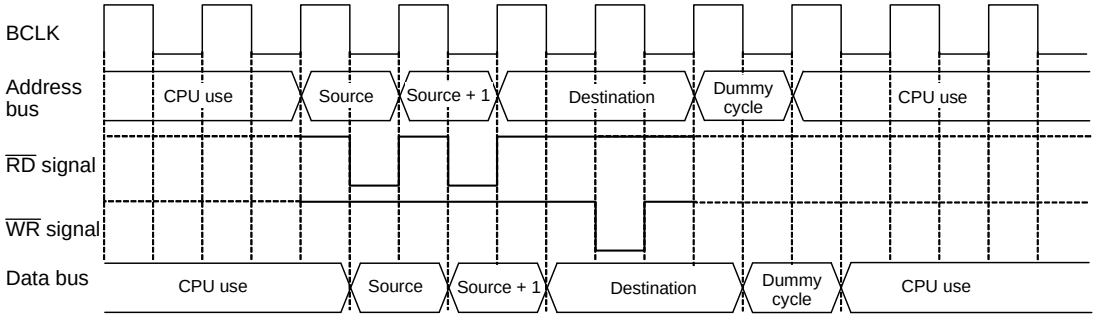
During memory extension and microprocessor modes, DMA transfers to and from an external area are affected by the $\overline{\text{RDY}}$ signal. Refer to **8.2.6 “RDY Signal”**.

Figure 14.5 shows the example of the Transfer Cycles for Source Read. For convenience, the destination write cycle is shown as one cycle and the source read cycles for the different conditions are shown. In reality, the destination write cycle is subject to the same conditions as the source read cycle, with the transfer cycle changing accordingly. When calculating transfer cycles, take into consideration each condition for the source read and the destination write cycle, respectively. For example, when data is transferred in 16 bit units using an 8-bit bus ((2) on Figure 14.5), two source read bus cycles and two destination write bus cycles are required.

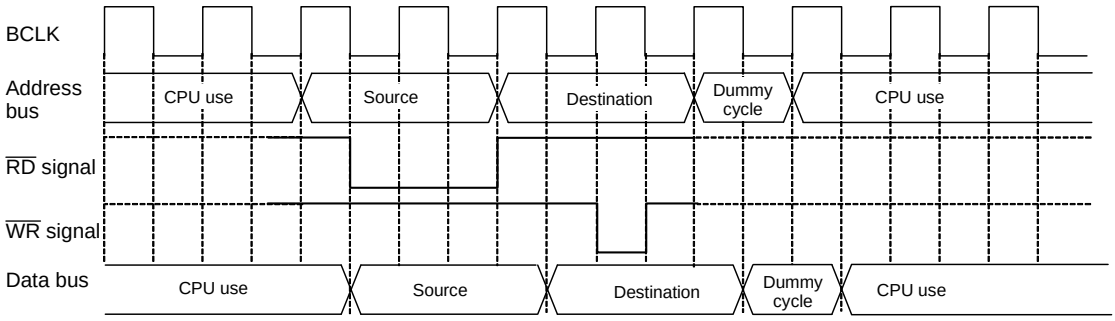
(1) When the transfer unit is 8 or 16 bits and the source of transfer is an even address



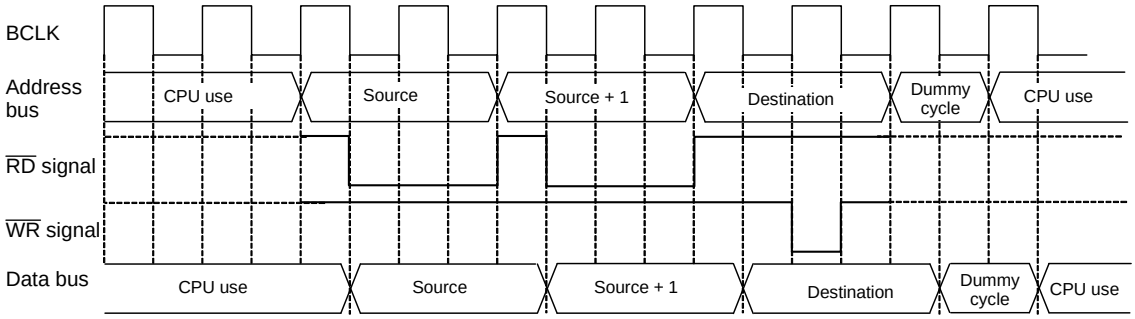
(2) When the transfer unit is 16 bits and the source address of transfer is an odd address, or when the transfer unit is 16 bits and an 8-bit bus is used



(3) When the source read cycle under condition (1) has one wait state inserted



(4) When the source read cycle under condition (2) has one wait state inserted



Note :
1. The same timing changes occur with the respective conditions at the destination as at the source.

Figure 14.5 Transfer Cycles for Source Read

14.2 DMA Transfer Cycles

The number of DMA transfer cycles can be calculated as follows.
Table 14.6 lists the DMAC Transfer Cycles. Table 14.7 lists the Coefficients j and k.

Number of transfer cycles per transfer unit = Number of read cycles × j + Number of write cycles × k

Table 14.6 DMAC Transfer Cycles

Transfer Unit	Bus Width	Access Address	Single-Chip Mode		Memory Expansion Mode Microprocessor Mode	
			No. of Read Cycles	No. of Write Cycles	No. of Read Cycles	No. of Write Cycles
8-bit Transfers (DMBIT= 1)	16-bit (BYTE = “L”)	Even	1	1	1	1
		Odd	1	1	1	1
	8-bit (BYTE = “H”)	Even	-	-	1	1
		Odd	-	-	1	1
16-bit Transfers (DMBIT= 0)	16-bit (BYTE = “L”)	Even	1	1	1	1
		Odd	2	2	2	2
	8-bit (BYTE = “H”)	Even	-	-	2	2
		Odd	-	-	2	2

- indicates that no condition exists.

Table 14.7 Coefficients j and k

	Internal Area				External Area						
	Internal ROM, RAM		SFR		Separate Bus				Multiplex Bus		
	No Wait	With Wait	1-Wait (2)	2-Wait (2)	No Wait	With Wait (1)			With Wait (1)		
						1-Wait	2-Wait	3-Wait	1-Wait	2-Wait	3-Wait
j	1	2	2	3	1	2	3	4	3	3	4
k	1	2	2	3	2	2	3	4	3	3	4

Notes:
1. It depends on the set value of the CSE register.
2. It depends on the set value of the PM20 bit in the PM2 register.

14.3 DMA Enabled

When a data transfer starts after setting the DMAE bit in the DMiCON register (i = 0 to 3) to 1 (enabled), the DMAC operates as follows:

(1) Reload the forward address pointer with the SARi register value when the DSD bit in the DMiCON register is 1 (forward) or the DARi register value when the DAD bit in the DMiCON register is 1 (forward).

(2) Reload the DMAi transfer counter with the DMAi transfer counter reload register value.

If the DMAE bit is set to 1 again while it remains set, the DMAC performs the above operation. However, if a DMA request may occur simultaneously when the DMAE bit is being written, follow the steps below.

Step 1: Write 1 to the DMAE bit and DMAS bit in the DMiCON register simultaneously.

Step 2: Make sure that the DMAi is in an initial state as described above (1) and (2) in a program.

If the DMAi is not in an initial state, the above steps should be repeated.

14.4 DMA Request

The DMAC can generate a DMA request as triggered by the factor of request that is selected with the DMS bit and bits DSEL4 to DSEL0 in the DMiSL register (i = 0 to 3) on either channel. Table 14.1 lists the Timing at Which the DMAS Bit Changes State.

Whenever a DMA request is generated, the DMAS bit is set to 1 (DMA requested) regardless of whether or not the DMAE bit is set. If the DMAE bit is set to 1 (enabled) when this occurs, the DMAS bit is set to 0 (DMA not requested) immediately before a data transfer starts. This bit cannot be set to 1 in a program (it can only be set to 0).

The DMAS bit may be set to 1 when the DMS bit or bits DSEL4 to DSEL0 change state. Therefore, always be sure to set the DMAS bit to 0 after changing the DMS bit or bits DSEL4 to DSEL0.

Because if the DMAE bit is 1, a data transfer starts immediately after a DMA request is generated, the DMAS bit in almost all cases is 0 when read in a program. Read the DMAE bit to determine whether the DMAC is enabled.

Table 14.8 Timing at Which the DMAS Bit Changes State

DMA Factor	DMAS Bit in the DMiCON Register	
	Timing at which the bit is set to 1	Timing at which the bit is set to 0
Software Trigger	When the DSR bit in the DMiSL register is set to 1	• Immediately before a data transfer starts • When set by writing a 0 in a program
Peripheral Function	When the interrupt control register for the peripheral function that is selected by bits DSEL4 to DSEL0 and DMS in the DMiSL register has its IR bit set to 1	

i = 0 to 3

14.5 Channel Priority and DMA Transfer Timing

If several channels of DMA0 to DMA3 are enabled and DMA transfer request signals are detected active in the same sampling period (one period from a falling edge to the next falling edge of BCLK), the DMAS bit on each channel is set to 1 (DMA requested) at the same time. In this case, the DMA requests are arbitrated according to the channel priority: DMA0 > DMA1 > DMA2 > DMA3. The following describes DMAC operation when DMA0 and DMA1 requests are detected active in the same sampling period. Figure 14.6 shows an example of DMA Transfer by External Factors.

In Figure 14.6, DMA0 request having priority is received first to start a transfer when DMA0 and DMA1 requests are generated simultaneously. After one DMA0 transfer is completed, a bus access privilege is returned to the CPU. When the CPU has completed one bus access, a DMA1 transfer starts. After one DMA1 transfer is completed, the bus access privilege is again returned to the CPU.

In addition, DMA requests cannot be incremented since each channel has one DMAS bit. Therefore, when DMA requests, as DMA1 in Figure 14.6, occurs more than one time, the DMAS bit is set to 0 after getting the bus access privilege. The bus access privilege is returned to the CPU when one transfer is completed.

Refer to **8.2.7 "HOLD Signal"** for details about bus access privilege.

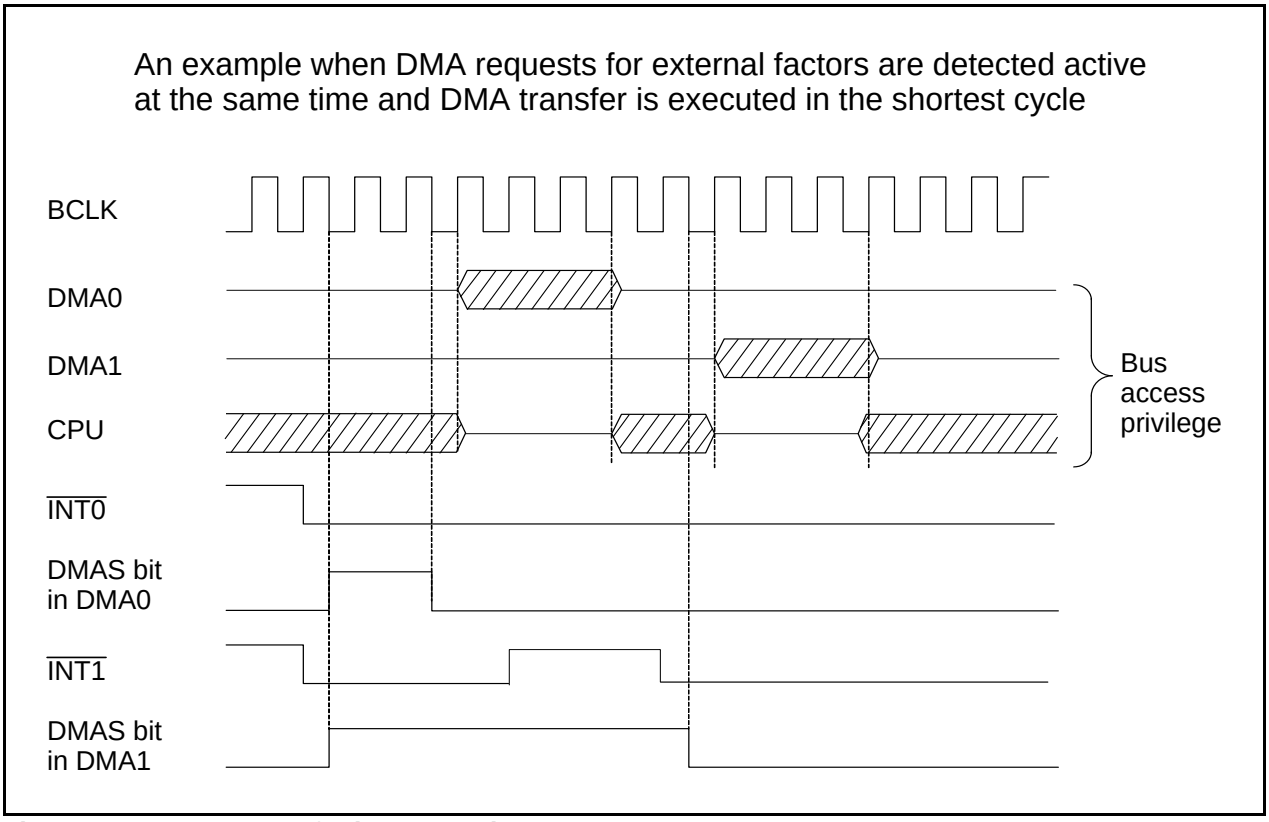


Figure 14.6 DMA Transfer by External Factors

15. Timers

Eleven 16-bit timers, each capable of operating independently of the others, can be classified by function as either Timer A (five) and Timer B (six). The count source for each timer acts as a clock, to control such timer operations as counting, reloading, etc. Figure 15.1 shows Timers A and B count source, and Figures 15.2 and 15.3 show block diagrams of Timer A and Timer B configuration, respectively.

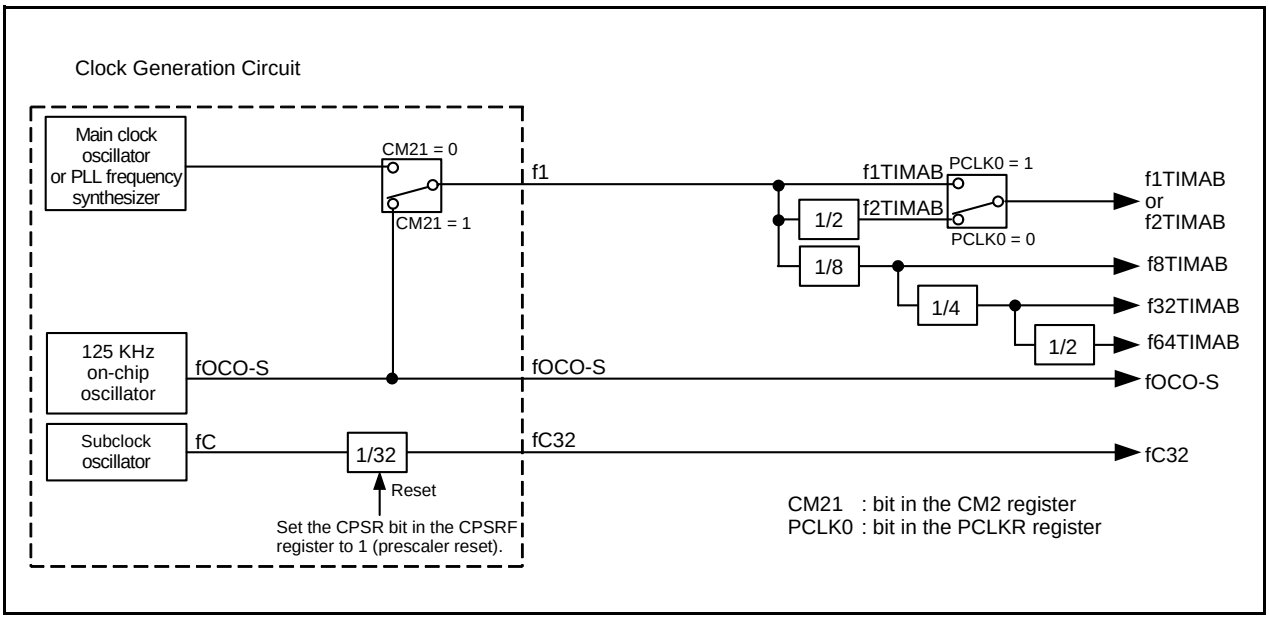
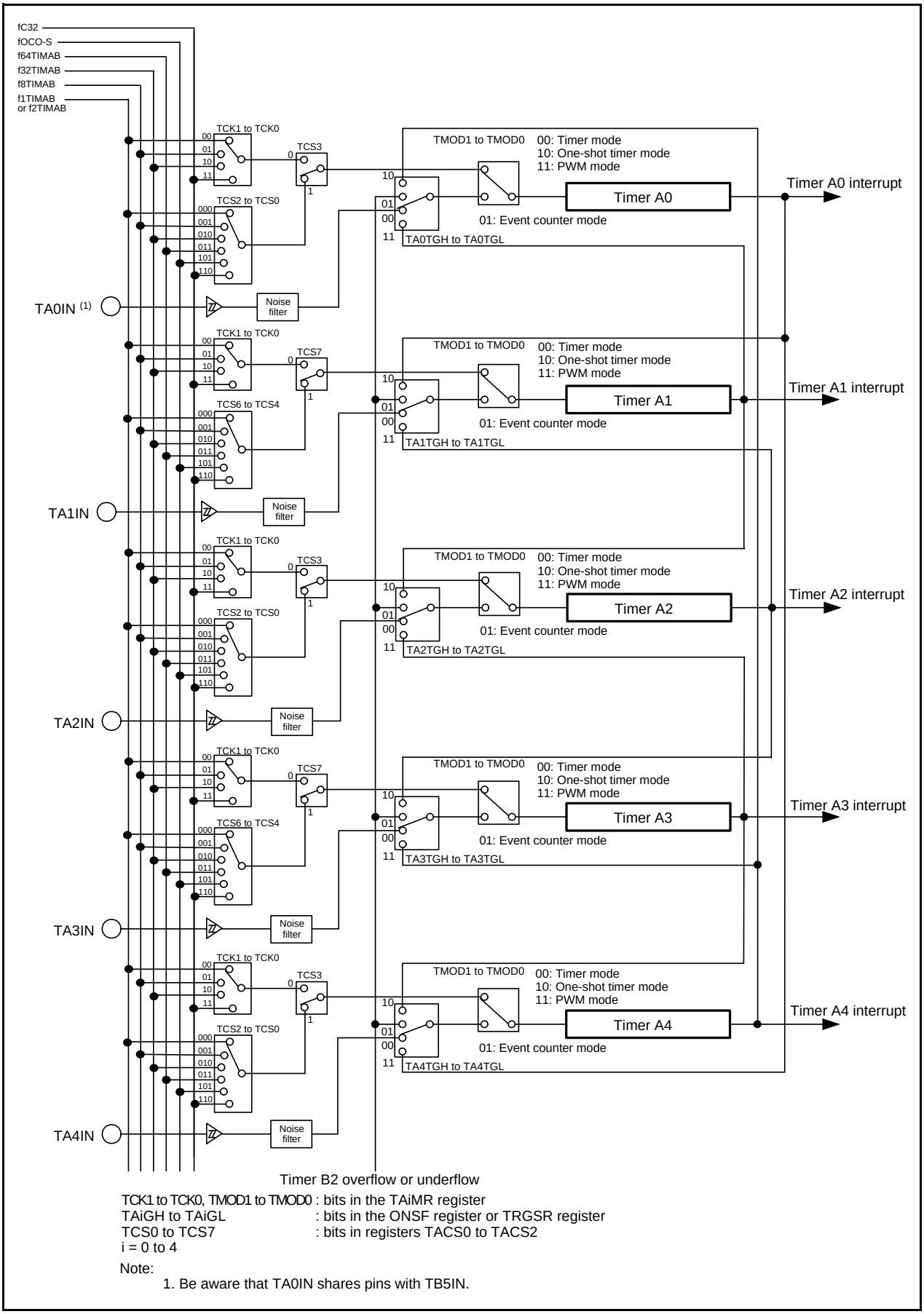


Figure 15.1 Timers A and B Count Source



TCK1 to TCK0, TMOD1 to TMOD0 : bits in the TAiMR register
TAiGH to TAiGL : bits in the ONSF register or TRGSR register
TCS0 to TCS7 : bits in registers TACS0 to TACS2
i = 0 to 4

Note:
1. Be aware that TA0IN shares pins with TB5IN.

Figure 15.2 Timer A Configuration

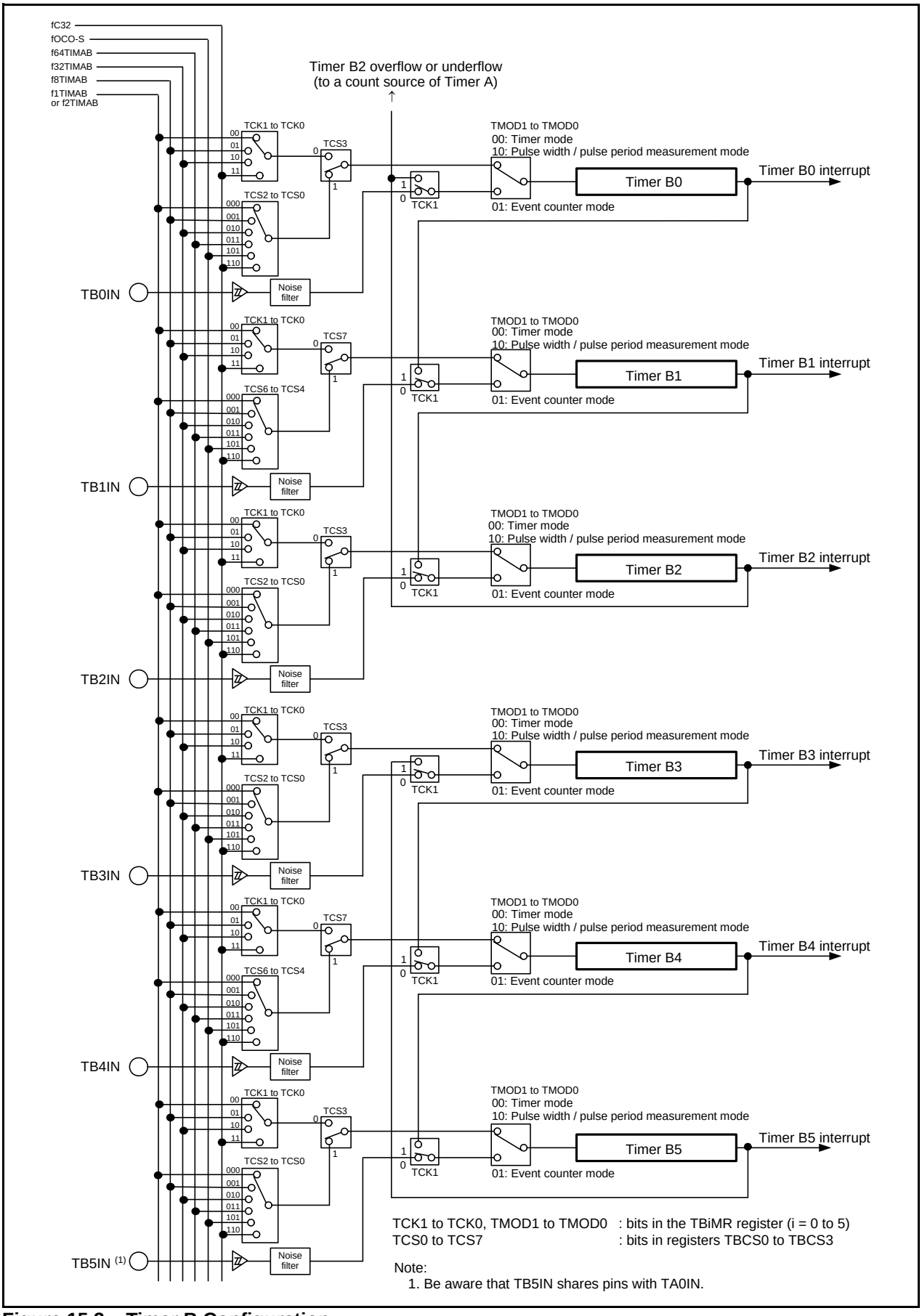
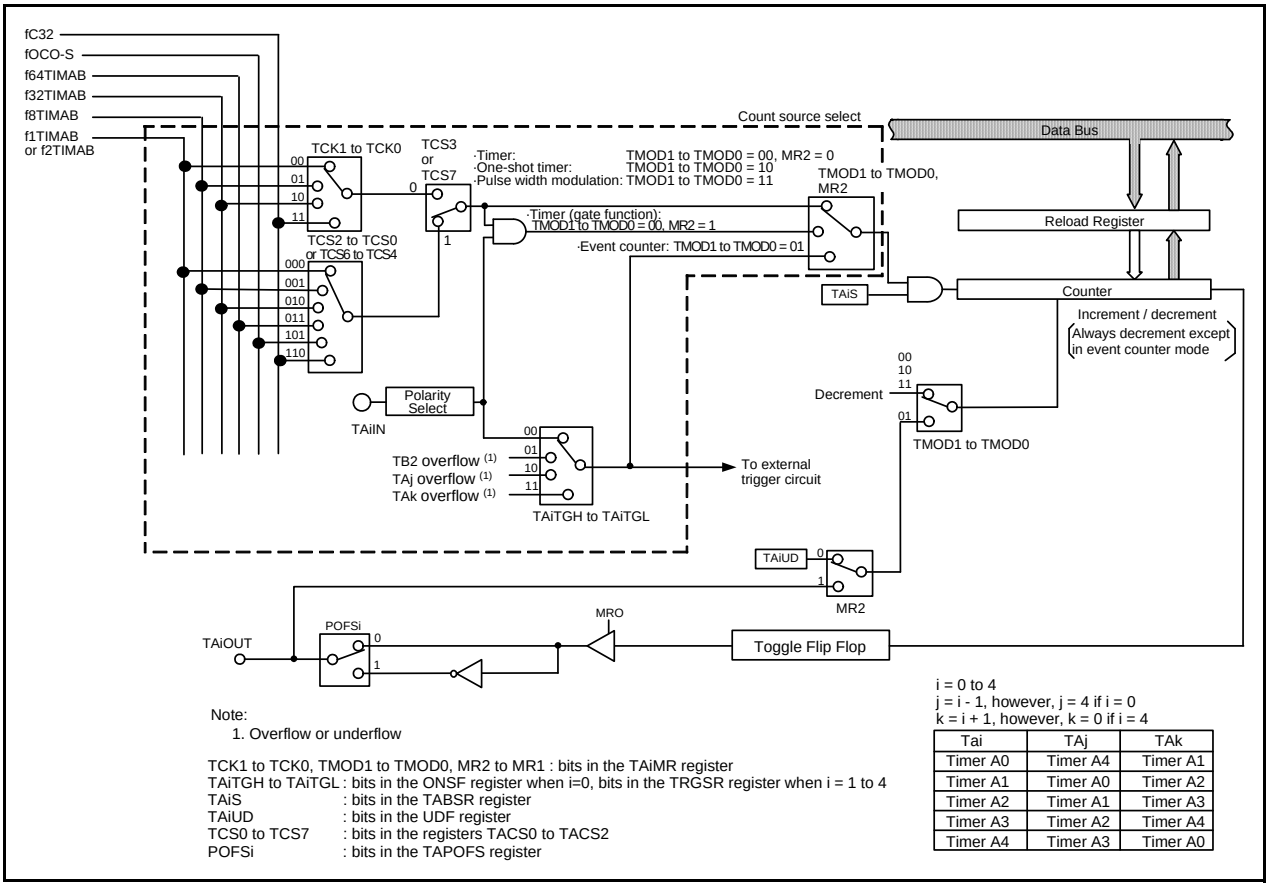


Figure 15.3 Timer B Configuration

15.1 Timer A

Figure 15.4 shows a Timer A Block Diagram. Figures 15.5 to 15.9 show registers related to Timer A. Timer A supports the following four modes. Except in event counter mode, Timers A0 to A4 all have the same function. Use bits TMOD1 to TMOD0 in the TAiMR register (i = 0 to 4) to select the desired mode.

- Timer Mode — The timer counts an internal count source.
- Event Counter Mode — The timer counts pulses from an external device or overflows and underflows of other timers.
- One-shot Timer Mode — The timer outputs a pulse only once before it reaches the minimum count 0000h.
- Pulse Width Modulation (PWM) Mode — The timer outputs pulses in a given width successively.



Note:
1. Overflow or underflow

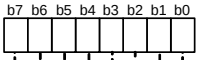
TCK1 to TCK0, TMOD1 to TMOD0, MR2 to MR1 : bits in the TAiMR register
TAiTGH to TAiTGL : bits in the ONSF register when i=0, bits in the TRGSR register when i = 1 to 4
TAiS : bits in the TABSR register
TAiUD : bits in the UDF register
TCS0 to TCS7 : bits in the registers TACS0 to TACS2
POFSi : bits in the TAPOFS register

i = 0 to 4
j = i - 1, however, j = 4 if i = 0
k = i + 1, however, k = 0 if i = 4

Tai	TAj	TAk
Timer A0	Timer A4	Timer A1
Timer A1	Timer A0	Timer A2
Timer A2	Timer A1	Timer A3
Timer A3	Timer A2	Timer A4
Timer A4	Timer A3	Timer A0

Figure 15.4 Timer A Block Diagram

Timer Ai Mode Register (i= 0 to 4)

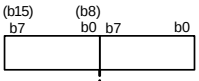


Symbol	Address	After Reset
TA0MR to TA4MR	0336h to 033Ah	00h

Bit Symbol	Bit Name	Function	RW
TMOD0	Operation mode select bit	b1 b0 0 0 : Timer mode 0 1 : Event counter mode 1 0 : One-shot timer mode 1 1 : Pulse width modulation (PWM) mode	RW
TMOD1			RW
MR0	Function varies with each operation mode		RW
MR1			RW
MR2			RW
MR3			RW
TCK0	Count source select bit (1) (Function varies with each operation mode)		RW
TCK1			RW

Note :
1. Valid when the bit3 or the bit 7 in registers TACS0 to TACS2 is set to 0 (TCK0, TCK1 enabled).

Timer Ai Register (i= 0 to 4) (1)



Symbol	Address	After Reset
TA0	0327h to 0326h	Indeterminate
TA1	0329h to 0328h	Indeterminate
TA2	032Bh to 032Ah	Indeterminate
TA3	032Dh to 032Ch	Indeterminate
TA4	032Fh to 032Eh	Indeterminate

Mode	Function	Setting Range	RW
Timer mode	Divide the count source by n + 1 where n = set value	0000h to FFFFh	RW
Event counter mode	Divide the count source by FFFFh – n + 1 where n = set value when counting up or by n + 1 when counting down (5)	0000h to FFFFh	RW
One-shot timer mode	Divide the count source by n where n = set value, and the counter stops	0000h to FFFFh (2, 4)	WO
PWM mode (16-bit pulse width modulation)	Modify the pulse width as follows: PWM period: $(2^{16} – 1) / fj$ PWM pulse width: n / fj where n = set value, fj = count source frequency	0000h to FFFEh (3, 4)	WO
PWM mode (8-bit pulse width modulation)	Modify the pulse width as follows: PWM period: $(2^{8} – 1) \times (m + 1) / fj$ PWM pulse width: $(m + 1) \times n / fj$ where n = high-order address set value, m = low-order address set value, fj = count source frequency	00h to FEh (High-order address) 00h to FFh (Low-order address) (3, 4)	WO

Notes :
1. Access to the register in 16-bit units.
2. If the TAi register is set to 0000h, the counter does not work and timer Ai interrupt requests are not generated either. Furthermore, if pulse output is selected, no pulses are output from the TAiOUT pin.
3. If the TAi register is set to 0000h, the pulse width modulator does not work, the output level on the TAiOUT pin remains low, and timer Ai interrupt requests are not generated either. The same applies when the 8 high-order bits of the timer TAi register are set to 00h while operating as an 8-bit pulse width modulator.
4. Use the MOV instruction to write to the TAi register.
5. The timer counts pulses from an external device or overflows or underflows in other timers.

Figure 15.5 Registers TA0MR to TA4MR and TA0 to TA4

Count Start Flag

b7 b6 b5 b4 b3 b2 b1 b0

Symbol	Address	After Reset
TABSR	0320h	00h

Bit Symbol	Bit Name	Function	RW
TA0S	Timer A0 count start flag	0 : Stop counting 1 : Start counting	RW
TA1S	Timer A1 count start flag		RW
TA2S	Timer A2 count start flag		RW
TA3S	Timer A3 count start flag		RW
TA4S	Timer A4 count start flag		RW
TB0S	Timer B0 count start flag		RW
TB1S	Timer B1 count start flag		RW
TB2S	Timer B2 count start flag		RW

Up / Down Flag

b7 b6 b5 b4 b3 b2 b1 b0

Symbol	Address	After Reset
UDF	0324h	00h

Bit Symbol	Bit Name	Function	RW
TA0UD	Timer A0 up / down flag	0 : Decrement 1 : Increment	RW
TA1UD	Timer A1 up / down flag	Enabled during event counter mode (when not using two-phase pulse signal)	RW
TA2UD	Timer A2 up / down flag		RW
TA3UD	Timer A3 up / down flag		RW
TA4UD	Timer A4 up / down flag		RW
TA2P	Timer A2 two-phase pulse signal processing select bit	0 : Two-phase pulse signal processing disabled 1 : Two-phase pulse signal processing enabled (1, 2)	RW
TA3P	Timer A3 two-phase pulse signal processing select bit		RW
TA4P	Timer A4 two-phase pulse signal processing select bit		RW

Notes :
1. Set the port direction bits for pins TA2IN to TA4IN and pins TA2OUT to TA4OUT to 0 (input mode).
2. When not using the two-phase pulse signal processing function, set the bit corresponding to Timer A2 to Timer A4 to 0.

Figure 15.6 Registers TABSR and UDF

One-Shot Start Flag

b7 b6 b5 b4 b3 b2 b1 b0

Symbol	Address	After Reset
ONSF	0322h	00h

Bit Symbol	Bit Name	Function	RW
TA0OS	Timer A0 one-shot start flag	The timer starts counting by setting this bit to 1 while bits TMOD1 and TMOD0 in the TAiMR register (i = 0 to 4) = 10b (one-shot timer mode) and the MR2 bit in the TAiMR register = 0 (TAiOS bit enabled). Read as 0	RW
TA1OS	Timer A1 one-shot start flag		RW
TA2OS	Timer A2 one-shot start flag		RW
TA3OS	Timer A3 one-shot start flag		RW
TA4OS	Timer A4 one-shot start flag		RW
TAZIE	Z-phase input enable bit	0 : Z-phase input disabled 1 : Z-phase input enabled	RW
TA0TGL	Timer A0 event / trigger select bit	b7 b6 0 0 : Input on TA0IN pin is selected (1) 0 1 : TB2 is selected (2) 1 0 : TA4 is selected (2) 1 1 : TA1 is selected (2)	RW
TA0TGH			RW

Notes :
1. Make sure the PD7_1 bit in the PD7 register is set to 0 (input mode).
2. Overflow or underflow.

Trigger Select Register

b7 b6 b5 b4 b3 b2 b1 b0

Symbol	Address	After Reset
TRGSR	0323h	00h

Bit Symbol	Bit Name	Function	RW
TA1TGL	Timer A1 event / trigger select bit	b1 b0 0 0 : Input on TA1IN is selected (1) 0 1 : TB2 is selected (2) 1 0 : TA0 is selected (2) 1 1 : TA2 is selected (2)	RW
TA1TGH			RW
TA2TGL	Timer A2 event / trigger select bit	b3 b2 0 0 : Input on TA2IN is selected (1) 0 1 : TB2 is selected (2) 1 0 : TA1 is selected (2) 1 1 : TA3 is selected (2)	RW
TA2TGH			RW
TA3TGL	Timer A3 event / trigger select bit	b5 b4 0 0 : Input on TA3IN is selected (1) 0 1 : TB2 is selected (2) 1 0 : TA2 is selected (2) 1 1 : TA4 is selected (2)	RW
TA3TGH			RW
TA4TGL	Timer A4 event / trigger select bit	b7 b6 0 0 : Input on TA4IN is selected (1) 0 1 : TB2 is selected (2) 1 0 : TA3 is selected (2) 1 1 : TA0 is selected (2)	RW
TA4TGH			RW

Notes :
1. Set the port direction bits for the pins TA1IN to TA4IN to 0 (input mode).
2. Overflow or underflow

Figure 15.7 Registers ONSF and TRGSR

Clock Prescaler Reset Flag

Symbol	Address	After Reset
CPSRF	0015h	0XXXXXXXb

Bit Symbol	Bit Name	Function	RW
— (b6-b0)	No register bits. If necessary, set to 0. Read as undefined value		—
CPSR	Clock prescaler reset flag	Initializing the clock prescaler. (Read as 0)	RW

Timer A Count Source Select Register 0, Timer A Count Source Select Register 1

Symbol	Address	After Reset
TACS0 to TACS1	01D0h to 01D1h	00h

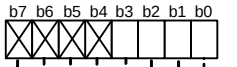
Bit Symbol	Bit Name	Function	RW
TCS0	TAi count source select bit	b2 b1 b0 0 0 0 : f1TIMAB or f2TIMAB (1) 0 0 1 : f8TIMAB 0 1 0 : f32TIMAB 0 1 1 : f64TIMAB 1 0 0 : Do not set 1 0 1 : fOCO-S 1 1 0 : f C32 1 1 1 : Do not set	RW
TCS1			RW
TCS2			RW
TCS3	TAi count source option specified bit	0 : TCK0, TCK1 enabled, TCS0 to TCS2 disabled 1 : TCK0, TCK1 disabled, TCS0 to TCS2 enabled	RW
TCS4	TAj count source select bit	b6 b5 b4 0 0 0 : f1TIMAB or f2TIMAB (1) 0 0 1 : f8TIMAB 0 1 0 : f32TIMAB 0 1 1 : f64TIMAB 1 0 0 : Do not set 1 0 1 : fOCO-S 1 1 0 : fC32 1 1 1 : Do not set	RW
TCS5			RW
TCS6			RW
TCS7	TAj count source option specified bit	0 : TCK0, TCK1 enabled, TCS4 to TCS6 disabled 1 : TCK0, TCK1 disabled, TCS4 to TCS6 enabled	RW

TACS0 register: i = 0, j = 1 TACS1 register: i = 2, j = 3

Note :
1. Set this value at the PCLK0 bit in the PCLKR register.

Figure 15.8 Registers CPSRF, TACS0, and TACS1

Timer A Count Source Select Register 2

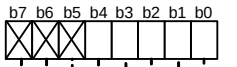


Symbol	Address	After Reset
TACS2	01D2h	X0h

Bit Symbol	Bit Name	Function	RW
TCS0	TA4 count source select bit	b2 b1 b0 0 0 0 : f1TIMAB or f2TIMAB (1) 0 0 1 : f8TIMAB 0 1 0 : f32TIMAB 0 1 1 : f64TIMAB 1 0 0 : Do not set 1 0 1 : fOCO-S 1 1 0 : fC32 1 1 1 : Do not set	RW
TCS1			RW
TCS2			RW
TCS3	TA4 count source option specified bit	1 : TCK0, TCK1 enabled, TCS0 to TCS2 disabled 0 : TCK0, TCK1 disabled, TCS0 to TCS2 enabled	RW
— (b7-b4)	No register bits. If necessary, set to 0. Read as undefined value.		—

Note :
1. Set this value at the PCLK0 bit in the PCLKR register.

Timer A Waveform Output Function Select Register



Symbol	Address	After Reset
TAPOFS	01D5h	XXX00000b

Bit Symbol	Bit Name	Function	RW
POFS0	TA0OUT output polar control bit	0 : Output waveform "H" active 1 : Output waveform "L" active (output reversed)	RW
POFS1	TA1OUT output polar control bit		RW
POFS2	TA2OUT output polar control bit		RW
POFS3	TA3OUT output polar control bit		RW
POFS4	TA4OUT output polar control bit		RW
— (b7-b5)	No register bits. If necessary, set to 0. Read as undefined value		—

Figure 15.9 Registers TACS2 and TAPOFS

15.1.1 Timer Mode

In timer mode, the timer counts a count source generated internally. Table 15.1 lists the Specifications in Timer Mode. Figure 15.10 shows TAiMR Register in Timer Mode.

Table 15.1 Specifications in Timer Mode

Item	Specification
Count Source	f1TIMAB, f2TIMAB, f8TIMAB, f32TIMAB, f64TIMAB, fOCO-S, fC32
Count Operation	• Decrement • When the timer underflows, it reloads the reload register contents and continues counting
Divide Ratio	1 / (n+1) n: set value of TAi register 0000h to FFFFh
Count Start Condition	Set the TAiS bit in the TABSR register to 1 (start counting)
Count Stop Condition	Set the TAiS bit to 0 (stop counting)
Interrupt Request Generation Timing	Timer underflow
TAiIN Pin Function	I/O port or gate input
TAiOUT Pin Function	I/O port or pulse output
Read from Timer	Count value can be read by reading the TAi register
Write to Timer	• When not counting Value written to the TAi register is written to both reload register and counter • When counting Value written to the TAi register is written to only reload register (Transferred to counter when reloaded next)
Select Function	• Gate function Counting can be started and stopped by an input signal to the TAiIN pin • Pulse output function Whenever the timer underflows, the output polarity of TAiOUT pin is inverted. When the TAiS bit is set to 0 (stop counting), the pin outputs low.(when the POFS1 bit in the TAPOFS register is set to 1, the timer outputs high.) • Waveform output select function The output polarity of the TAiOUT pin is selected.

i = 0 to 4

Timer Ai Mode Register (i = 0 to 4)

b7	b6	b5	b4	b3	b2	b1	b0
		0				0	0

Symbol	Address	After Reset
TA0MR to TA4MR	0336h to 033Ah	00h

Bit Symbol	Bit Name	Function	RW
TMOD0	Operation mode select bit	b1 b0 0 0 : Timer mode	RW
TMOD1			RW
MR0	Pulse output function select bit	0 : No pulse output (TAiOUT pin functions as I/O port) 1 : Pulse output (1) (TAiOUT pin functions as a pulse output pin)	RW
MR1	Gate function select bit	b4 b3 0 0 : Gate function not available 0 1 : (TAiIN pin functions as I/O port) 1 0 : Counts while input on the TAiIN pin is low (2) 1 1 : Counts while input on the TAiIN pin is high (2)	RW
MR2			RW
MR3	Set to 0 in timer mode		RW
TCK0	Count source select bit (4)	b1 b0 0 0 : f1TIMAB or f2TIMAB (3) 0 1 : f8TIMAB 1 0 : f32TIMAB 1 1 : fC32	RW
TCK1			

Notes :
1. The TA0OUT pin is N-channel open drain output.
2. Set the port direction bit for the TAiIN pin to 0 (input mode).
3. Selected by the PCLK0 bit in the PCLKR register.
4. Valid when the TCS3 bit or TCS7 bit in registers TACS0 to TACS2 is set to 0 (TCK0, TCK1 enabled).

Figure 15.10 TAiMR Register in Timer Mode

15.1.2 Event Counter Mode

In event counter mode, the timer counts pulses from an external device or overflows and underflows of other timers. Timers A2, A3, and A4 can count two-phase external signals. Table 15.2 lists the Specifications in Event Counter Mode (When Not Processing Two-Phase Pulse Signal). Figure 15.11 shows the TAiMR Register in Event Counter Mode (when not using two-phase pulse signal processing).

Table 15.2 Specifications in Event Counter Mode (When Not Processing Two-Phase Pulse Signal)

Item	Specification
Count Source	• External signals input to the TAiIN pin (effective edge can be selected) • Timer B2 overflows or underflows, Timer Aj (j = i - 1, except j = 4 if i = 0) overflows or underflows, Timer Ak (k = i + 1, except k=0 if i = 4) overflows or underflows
Count Operation	• Increment or decrement can be selected by program. • When the timer overflows or underflows, it reloads the reload register contents and continues counting. When operating in free-running mode, the timer continues counting without reloading.
Divide Ratio	• 1/ (FFFFh - n + 1) for increment • 1/ (n + 1) for decrement n: set value of the TAi register 0000h to FFFFh
Count Start Condition	Set the TAiS bit in the TABSR register to 1 (start counting)
Count Stop Condition	Set the TAiS bit to 0 (stop counting)
Interrupt Request Generation Timing	Timer overflow or underflow
TAiIN Pin Function	I/O port or count source input
TAiOUT Pin Function	I/O port, pulse output
Read from Timer	Count value can be read by reading the TAi register
Write to Timer	• When not counting Value written to the TAi register is written to both reload register and counter • When counting Value written to the TAi register is written to only reload register (Transferred to counter when reloaded next)
Select Function	• Free-run count function Even when the timer overflows or underflows, the reload register content is not reloaded to it • Pulse output function Whenever the timer underflows or underflows, the output polarity of the TAiOUT pin is inverted. When the TAiS bit is set to 0 (stop counting), the pin outputs low. (when the POFS1 bit in the TAPOFS register is set to 1, the timer outputs high.) • Waveform output select function The output polarity of the TAiOUT pin is selected.

i = 0 to 4

Timer Ai Mode Register (i = 0 to 4)
(When Not Using Two-Phase Pulse Signal Processing)

b7	b6	b5	b4	b3	b2	b1	b0
		0	0			0	1

Symbol	Address	After Reset
TA0MR to TA4MR	0336h to 033Ah	00h

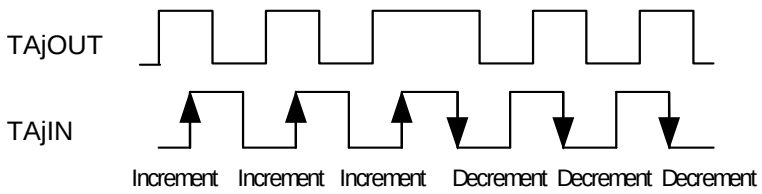
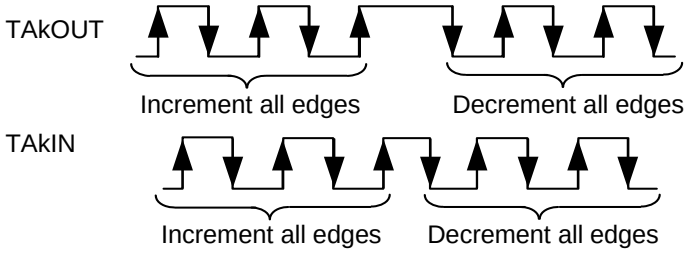
Bit Symbol	Bit Name	Function	RW
TMOD0	Operation mode select bit	b1 b0 0 1 : Event counter mode (1)	RW
TMOD1			RW
MR0	Pulse output function select bit	0 : Pulse is not output (TAiOUT pin functions as I/O port) 1 : Pulse is output (3) (TAiOUT pin functions as pulse output pin)	RW
MR1	Count polarity select bit (2)	0 : Counts falling edge of external signal 1 : Counts rising edge of external signal	RW
MR2	Write 0 in event counter mode		RW
MR3	Write 0 in event counter mode		RW
TCK0	Count operation type select bit	0 : Reload type 1 : Free-run type	RW
TCK1	Can be 0 or 1 when not using two-phase pulse signal processing		RW

Notes :
1. During event counter mode, the count source can be selected using registers ONSF and TRGSR.
2. Valid when bits TAiTGH and TAiTGL in the ONSF or TRGSR register are 00b (TAiIN pin input).
3. The TA0OUT pin is N-channel open drain output.

Figure 15.11 TAiMR Register in Event Counter Mode (when not using two-phase pulse signal processing)

Table 15.3 lists Specifications in Event Counter Mode (when processing two-phase pulse signal with Timers A2, A3, and A4). Figure 15.12 shows Registers TA2MR to TA4MR in Event Counter Mode (when using two-phase pulse signal processing with Timers A2, A3, and A4).

Table 15.3 Specifications in Event Counter Mode (when processing two-phase pulse signal with Timers A2, A3, and A4)

Item	Specification
Count Source	Two-phase pulse signals input to TAiIN or TAiOUT pin
Count Operation	• Increment or decrement can be selected by two-phase pulse signal • When the timer overflows or underflows, it reloads the reload register contents and continues counting. When operating in free-running mode, the timer continues counting without reloading.
Divide Ratio	• 1/ (FFFFh - n + 1) for increment • 1/ (n + 1) for decrement n: set value of the TAi register 0000h to FFFFh
Count Start Condition	Set the TAiS bit in the TABSR register to 1 (start counting)
Count Stop Condition	Set the TAiS bit to 0 (stop counting)
Interrupt Request Generation Timing	Timer overflow or underflow
TAiIN Pin Function	Two-phase pulse input
TAiOUT Pin Function	Two-phase pulse input
Read from Timer	Count value can be read by reading Timer A2, A3, or A4 register
Write to Timer	When not counting Value written to the TAi register is written to both reload register and counter When counting Value written to the TAi register is written to only reload register (Transferred to counter when reloaded next)
Select Function (1)	Normal processing operation (Timer A2 and Timer A3) The timer increments rising edges or decrements falling edges on the TAjIN pin when input signals on the TAjOUT pin is “H”.  Multiply-by-4 processing operation (Timer A3 and Timer A4) If the phase relationship is such that TAkIN pin goes “H” when the input signal on the TAkOUT pin is “H,” the timer increments rising and falling edges on pins TAkOUT and TAkIN. If the phase relationship is such that the TAkIN pin goes “L” when the input signal on the TAkOUT pin is “H,” the timer counts down rising and falling edges on pins TAkOUT and TAkIN.  Counter initialization by Z-phase input (Timer A3) The timer count value is initialized to 0 by Z-phase input.

i = 2 to 4, j = 2, 3, k = 3, 4

Note:

1. Only Timer A3 is selectable. Timer A2 is fixed to normal processing operation, and Timer A4 is fixed to multiply-by-4 processing operation.

Timer Ai Mode Register (i = 2 to 4)
(When Using Two-Phase Pulse Signal Processing)

b7	b6	b5	b4	b3	b2	b1	b0
		0	1	0	0	0	1

Symbol	Address	After Reset
TA2MR to TA4MR	0338h to 033Ah	00h

Bit Symbol	Bit Name	Function	RW
TMOD0	Operation mode select bit	b1 b0 0 1 : Event counter mode	RW
TMOD1			RW
MR0	Set to 0 to use two-phase pulse signal processing		RW
MR1	Set to 0 to use two-phase pulse signal processing		RW
MR2	Set to 1 to use two-phase pulse signal processing		RW
MR3	Set to 0 to use two-phase pulse signal processing		RW
TCK0	Count operation type select bit	0 : Reload type 1 : Free-run type	RW
TCK1	Two-phase pulse signal processing operation type select bit (1, 2)	0 : Normal processing operation 1 : Multiply-by-4 processing operation	RW

Notes :
1. The TCK1 bit can be set only for Timer A3 mode register. No matter how this bit is set, Timers A2 and A4 always operate in normal processing mode and x4 processing mode, respectively.
2. To use two-phase pulse signal processing, following the register setting below:
   • Set the TAiP bit in the UDF register to 1 (two-phase pulse signal processing function enabled).
   • Set bits TAiTGH and TAiTGL in the TRGSR register to 00b (TAiIN pin input).
   • Set the port direction bits for TAiIN and TAiOUT to 0 (input mode).

Figure 15.12 Registers TA2MR to TA4MR in Event Counter Mode (when using two-phase pulse signal processing with Timers A2, A3, and A4)

15.1.2.1 Counter Initialization by Two-Phase Pulse Signal Processing

This function initializes the timer count value to 0 by Z-phase (counter initialization) input during two-phase pulse signal processing.

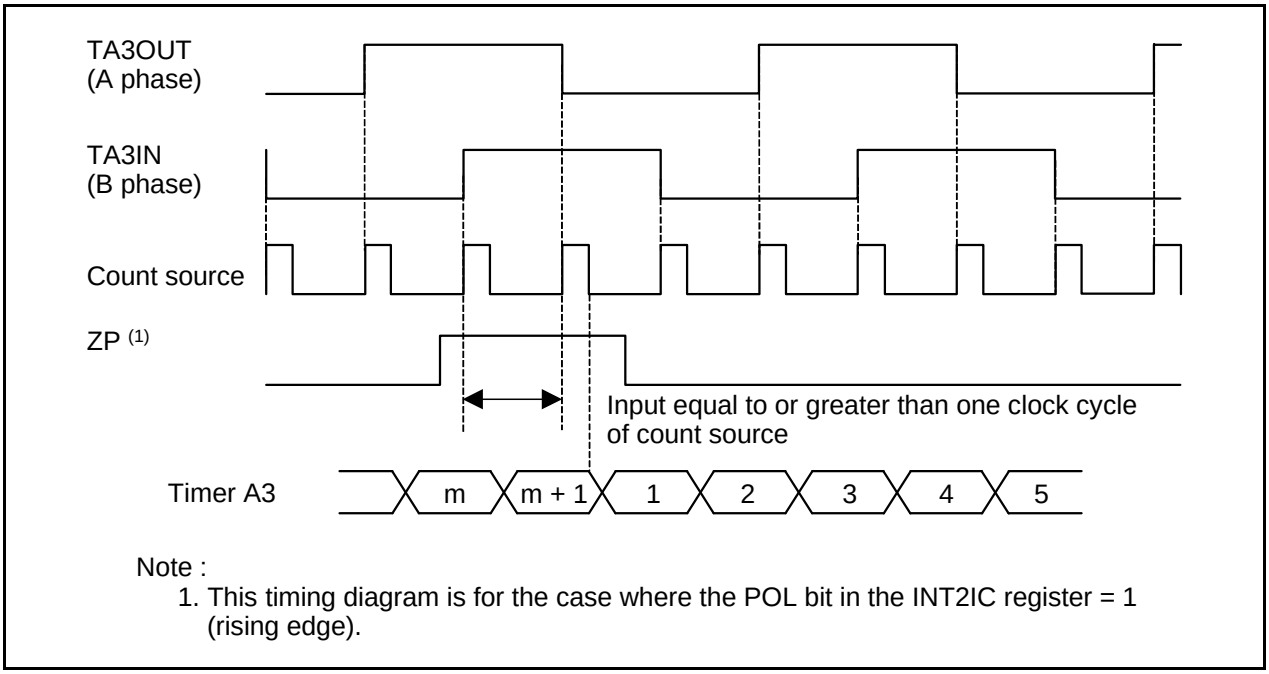
This function can only be used in Timer A3 event counter mode during two-phase pulse signal processing, free-running type, multiply-by-4 processing, with Z phase entered from the ZP pin.

Counter initialization by Z-phase input is enabled by writing 0000h to the TA3 register and setting the TAZIE bit in the ONSF register to 1 (Z-phase input enabled).

Counter initialization is accomplished by detecting Z-phase input edge. The active edge can be chosen to be the rising or falling edge by using the POL bit in the INT2IC register. The Z-phase pulse width applied to the $\overline{ZP}$ pin must be equal to or greater than one clock cycle of Timer A3 count source.

The counter is initialized at the next count timing after recognizing Z-phase input. Figure 15.13 shows the Relationship between the Two-Phase Pulse (A Phase and B Phase) and the Z Phase.

If Timer A3 overflow or underflow coincides with the counter initialization by Z phase input, a Timer A3 interrupt request is generated twice in succession. Do not use Timer A3 interrupt when using this function.



Note :
1. This timing diagram is for the case where the POL bit in the INT2IC register = 1 (rising edge).

Figure 15.13 Relationship between the Two-Phase Pulse (A Phase and B Phase) and the Z Phase

15.1.3 One-Shot Timer Mode

In one-shot timer mode, the timer is activated only once by one trigger. When the trigger occurs, the timer starts up and continues operating for a given period. Table 15.4 lists the Specifications in One-shot Timer Mode Figure 15.14 shows the TAiMR Register in One-Shot Timer Mode.

Table 15.4 Specifications in One-shot Timer Mode

Item	Specification
Count Source	f1TIMAB, f2TIMAB, f8TIMAB, f32TIMAB, f64TIMAB, fOCO-S, fC32
Count Operation	• Decrement • When the counter reaches 0000h, it stops counting after reloading a new value. • If a trigger occurs when counting, the timer reloads a new count and restarts counting.
Divide Ratio	1/n n: set value of the TAi register 0000h to FFFFh However, the counter does not work if the divide-by-n value is set to 0000h.
Count Start Condition	The TAiS bit in the TABSR register = 1 (start counting) and one of the following triggers occurs. • External trigger input from the TAiIN pin • Timer B2 overflow or underflow, Timer Aj (j = i - 1, except j = 4 if i = 0) overflow or underflow, Timer Ak (k = i + 1, except k = 0 if i = 4) overflow or underflow • The TAiOS bit in the ONSF register is set to 1 (timer starts)
Count Stop Condition	• When the counter is reloaded after reaching 0000h • The TAiS bit is set to 0 (stop counting)
Interrupt Request Generation Timing	When the counter reaches 0000h
TAiIN Pin Function	I/O port or trigger input
TAiOUT Pin Function	I/O port or pulse output
Read from Timer	An indeterminate value is read by reading the TAi register
Write to Timer	• When not counting and until the 1st count source is input after counting starts Value written to the TAi register is written to both reload register and counter • When counting (after 1st count source input) Value written to the TAi register is written to only reload register (Transferred to counter when reloaded next)
Select Function	• Pulse output function The timer outputs low when not counting and high when counting. (when the POFS1 bit in the TAPOFS register and is set to 1 the timer does not count, the timer outputs high. When the timer counts, the timer outputs low.) • Waveform output select function The output polarity of the TAiOUT pin is selected.

i = 0 to 4

Timer Ai Mode Register (i = 0 to 4)

b7	b6	b5	b4	b3	b2	b1	b0
		0				1	0

Symbol	Address	After Reset
TA0MR to TA4MR	0336h to 033Ah	00h

Bit Symbol	Bit Name	Function	RW
TMOD0	Operation mode select bit	b1 b0 1 0 : One-shot timer mode	RW
TMOD1			RW
MR0	Pulse output function select bit	0 : No pulse output (TAiOUT pin functions as I/O port) 1 : Pulse output (1) (TAiOUT pin functions as a pulse output pin)	RW
MR1	External trigger select bit (2)	0 : Falling edge of input signal to TAiIN pin (3) 1 : Rising edge of input signal to TAiIN pin (3)	RW
MR2	Trigger select bit	0 : TAiOS bit enabled 1 : Selected by bits TAiTGH and TAiTGL	RW
MR3	Set to 0 in one-shot timer mode		RW
TCK0	Count source select bit (5)	b7 b6 0 0 : f1TIMAB or f2TIMAB (4) 0 1 : f8TIMAB 1 0 : f32TIMAB 1 1 : fC32	RW
TCK1			

Notes :
1. The TA0OUT pin is N-channel open drain output.
2. Valid when bits TAiTGH and TAiTGL in the ONSF register or TRGSR register are set to 00b (TAiIN pin input).
3. Set the port direction bit for the TAiIN pin to 0 (input mode).
4. Selected by the PCLK0 bit in the PCLKR register.
5. Valid when the TCS3 bit or TCS7 bit in registers TACS0 to TACS2 is set to 0 (TCK0, TCK1 enabled).

Figure 15.14 TAiMR Register in One-Shot Timer Mode

15.1.4 PWM Mode (Pulse Width Modulation Mode)

In PWM mode, the timer outputs pulses of a given width in succession. The counter functions as either 16-bit pulse width modulator or 8-bit pulse width modulator. Table 15.5 lists the Specifications in PWM Mode. Figure 15.15 shows TAiMR Register in PWM Mode. Figures 15.16 and 15.17 show an Example of 16-Bit Pulse Width Modulator Operation and 8-bit Pulse Width Modulator Operation, respectively.

Table 15.5 Specifications in PWM Mode

Item	Specification
Count Source	f1TIMAB, f2TIMAB, f8TIMAB, f32TIMAB, f64TIMAB, fOCO-S, fC32
Count Operation	• Decrement (operating as an 8-bit or a 16-bit pulse width modulator) • The timer reloads a new value on a rising edge of PWM pulse and continues counting. (when output waveform low active is selected, the timer reloads on a falling edge and continues counting. (i = 1 to 4)) • The timer is not affected by a trigger that occurs during counting.
16-bit PWM	• Pulse width n / fj n: set value of the TAi register • Cycle time $(2^{16} - 1)$ / fj fixed fj: count source frequency (1TIMAB, f2TIMAB, f8TIMAB, f32TIMAB, f64TIMAB, fOCO-S, fC32)
8-bit PWM	• Pulse width n × (m+1) / fj n: set value of the TAi register high-order address • Cycle time $(2^8-1) \times (m+1)$ / fj m: set value of the TAi register low-order address
Count Start Condition	• The TAiS bit of the TABSR register is set to 1 (start counting) • The TAiS bit = 1 and external trigger input from the TAiIN pin • The TAiS bit = 1 and one of the following external triggers occurs Timer B2 overflow or underflow, Timer Aj (j = i - 1, except j = 4 if i = 0) overflow or underflow, Timer Ak (k = i + 1, except k = 0 if i = 4) overflow or underflow
Count Stop Condition	The TAiS bit is set to 0 (stop counting)
Interrupt Request Generation Timing	On the falling edge of PWM pulse (when the POFSI bit is set to “1”, on a rising edge)
TAiIN Pin Function	I/O port or trigger input
TAiOUT Pin Function	Pulse output
Read from Timer	An indeterminate value is read by reading the TAi register
Write to Timer	• When not counting Value written to the TAi register is written to both reload register and counter • When counting Value written to the TAi register is written to only reload register (Transferred to counter when reloaded next)
Select Function	• Pulse output function The timer outputs low when not counting and the timer outputs a PWM pulse when counting. (when the POFS1 bit is set to 1 and the timer does not count, the timer outputs high.) • Waveform output select function The output polarity of the TAiOUT pin is selected.

i = 0 to 4

Timer Ai Mode Register (i = 0 to 4)

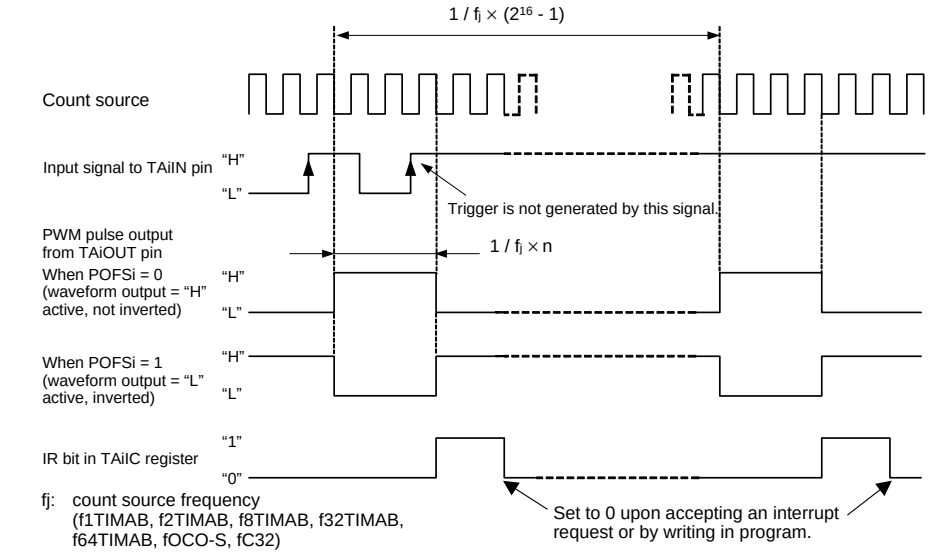
b7	b6	b5	b4	b3	b2	b1	b0
						1	1

Symbol	Address	After Reset
TA0MR to TA4MR	0336h to 033Ah	00h

Bit Symbol	Bit Name	Function	RW
TMOD0	Operation mode select bit	b1 b0 1 1 : PWM mode	RW
TMOD1			RW
MR0	Pulse output function select bit (4)	0 : No pulse output (TAiOUT pin functions as I/O port) 1 : Pulse output (1) (TAiOUT pin functions as a pulse output pin)	RW
MR1	External trigger select bit (2)	0 : Falling edge of input signal to TAiIN pin (3) 1 : Rising edge of input signal to TAiIN pin (3)	RW
MR2	Trigger select bit	0 : Write 1 to the TAiS bit in the TABSR register 1 : Selected by bits TAiTGH and TAiTGL	RW
MR3	16 / 8-bit PWM mode select bit	0 : Functions as a 16-bit pulse width modulator 1 : Functions as an 8-bit pulse width modulator	RW
TCK0	Count source select bit (6)	b7 b6 0 0 : f1TIMAB or f2TIMAB (5) 0 1 : f8TIMAB 1 0 : f32TIMAB 1 1 : fC32	RW
TCK1			

Notes :
1. The TA0OUT pin is N-channel open drain output.
2. Valid when bits TAiTGH and TAiTGL bit in the ONSF register or TRGSR register are set to 00b (TAiIN pin input).
3. Set the port direction bit for the TAiIN pin to 0 (input mode).
4. Set this bit to 1 (pulse output) to output PWM pulse.
5. Selected by the PCLK0 bit in the PCLKR register.
6. Valid when the TCS3 bit or TCS7 bit in registers TACS0 to TACS2 is set to 0 (TCK0, TCK1 enabled).

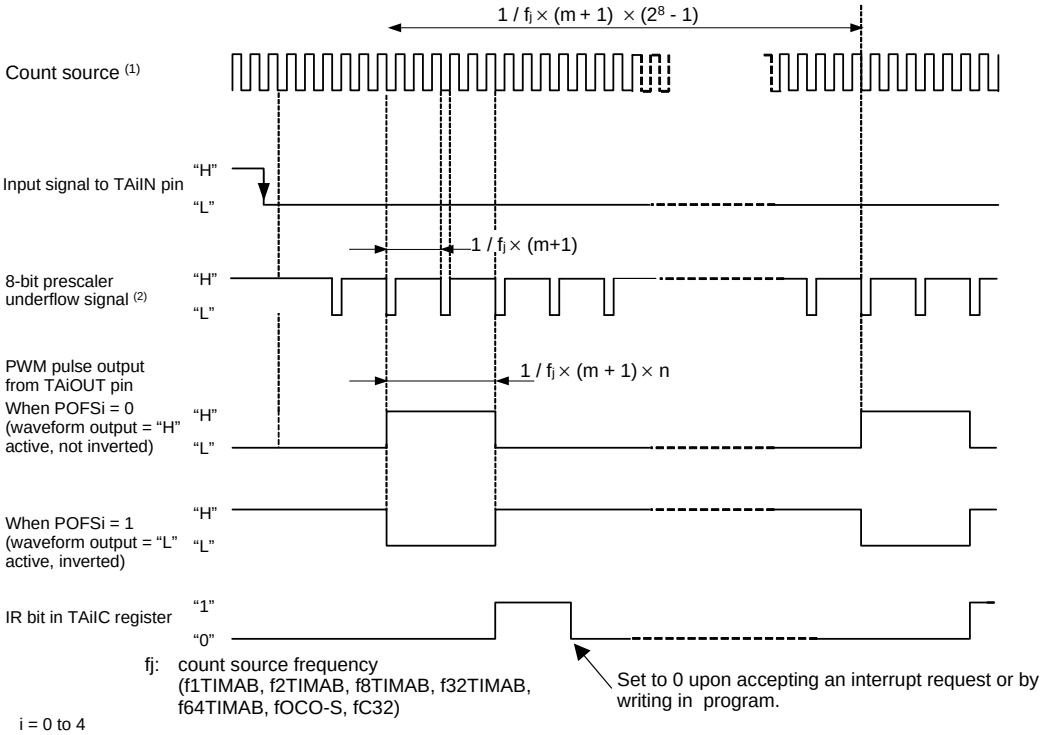
Figure 15.15 TAiMR Register in PWM Mode



i = 0 to 4
POFSi: bit in the TAPOFS register

Notes :
1. n = 0000h to FFFEh
2. This timing diagram is for the case where the TAi register is 0003h, bits TAiTGH and TAiTGL in the ONSF register or TRGSR register are 00b (input to the TAiIN pin), the MR1 bit in the TAiMR register is 1 (rising edge), and the MR2 bit in the TAiMR register is 1 (trigger selected by bits TAiTGH and TAiTGL).

Figure 15.16 Example of 16-Bit Pulse Width Modulator Operation



i = 0 to 4
POFSi: bit in TAPOFS register

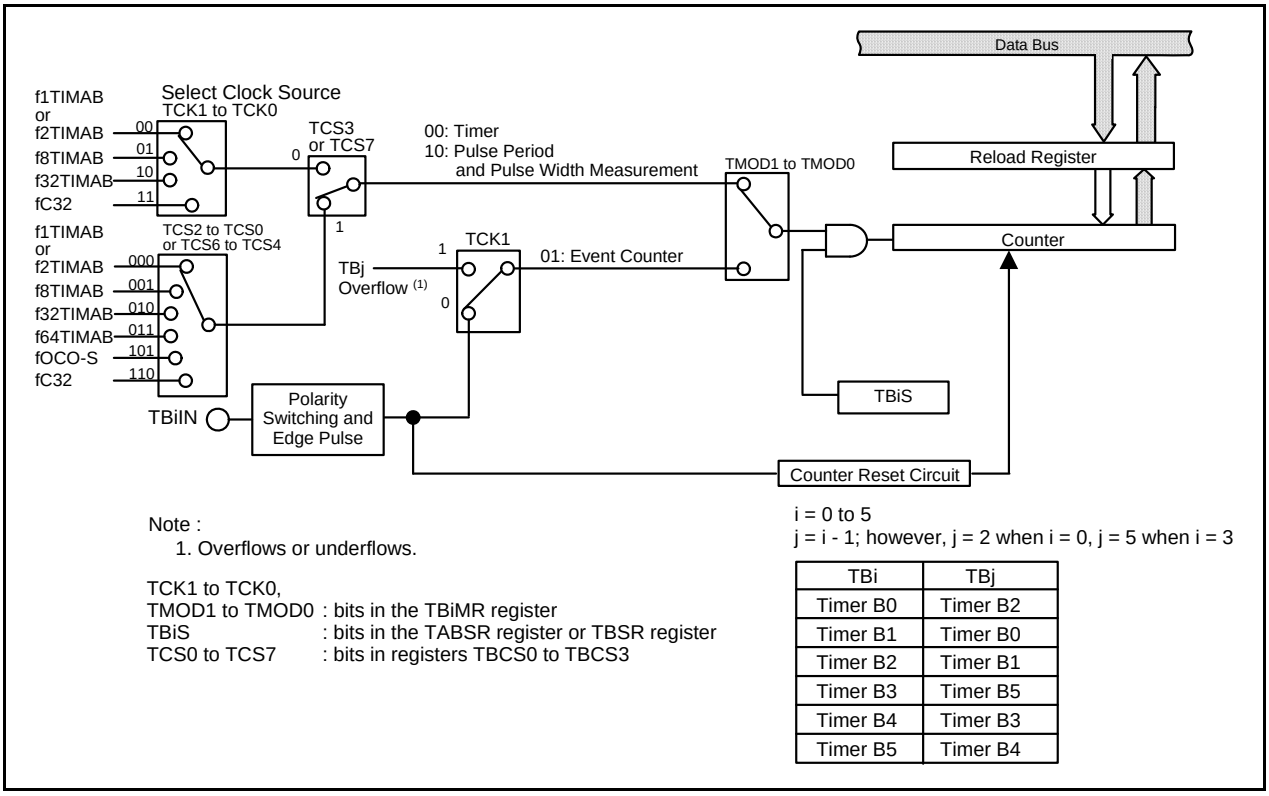
Notes :
1. The 8-bit prescaler counts the count source.
2. The 8-bit pulse width modulator counts underflow signals of the 8-bit prescaler.
3. m = 00h to FFh, n=00h to FEh
4. This timing diagram is for the case where the TAi register is 0202h, bits TAiTGH and TAiTGL in the ONSF register or TRGSR register are 00b (input to the TAiIN pin), the MR1 bit in the TAiMR register is 0 (falling edge), and the MR2 bit in the TAiMR register is 1 (trigger selected by bits TAiTGH and TAiTGL).

Figure 15.17 Example of 8-Bit Pulse Width Modulator Operation

15.2 Timer B

Figure 15.18 shows Timer B Block Diagram. Figures 15.19 to 15.21 show registers related to Timer B. Timer B supports the following three modes. Use bits TMOD1 and TMOD0 in the TBiMR register (i = 0 to 5) to select the desired mode.

- Timer Mode : The timer counts an internal count source.
- Event Counter Mode :The timer counts pulses from an external device or overflows or underflows of other timers.
- Pulse Period, Pulse Width Measurement Mode
  :The timer measures pulse period or pulse width of an external signal.



TBi	TBj
Timer B0	Timer B2
Timer B1	Timer B0
Timer B2	Timer B1
Timer B3	Timer B5
Timer B4	Timer B3
Timer B5	Timer B4

Figure 15.18 Timer B Block Diagram

Timer Bi Mode Register (i = 0 to 5)

b7 b6 b5 b4 b3 b2 b1 b0

Symbol	Address	After Reset
TB0MR to TB2MR	033Bh to 033Dh	00XX0000b
TB3MR to TB5MR	031Bh to 031Dh	00XX0000b

Bit Symbol	Bit Name	Function	RW
TMOD0	Operation mode select bit	b1 b0 0 0 : Timer mode 0 1 : Event counter mode 1 0 : Pulse period measurement mode Pulse width measurement mode 1 1 : Do not set	RW
TMOD1			RW
MR0	Function varies with each operation mode		RW
MR1			RW
— (b4)	No register bit. If necessary, set to 0. Read as undefined value		—
MR3	Function varies with each operation mode		RO
TCK0	Count source select bit (1) (Function varies with each operation mode)		RW
TCK1			RW

Note :
1. Valid when the TCS3 bit or TCS7 bit in registers TACS0 to TACS2 is set to 0 (TCK0, TCK1 enabled).

Timer Bi Register (i = 0 to 5) (1)

(b15) (b8) b7 b0 b7 b0

Symbol	Address	After Reset
TB0	0331h to 0330h	Indeterminate
TB1	0333h to 0332h	Indeterminate
TB2	0335h to 0334h	Indeterminate
TB3	0311h to 0310h	Indeterminate
TB4	0313h to 0312h	Indeterminate
TB5	0315h to 0314h	Indeterminate

Mode	Function	Setting Range	RW
Timer mode	Divide the count source by n + 1 where n = set value	0000h to FFFFh	RW
Event counter mode	Divide the count source by n + 1 where n = set value (2)	0000h to FFFFh	RW
Pulse period measurement mode Pulse width measurement mode	Measures a pulse period or width	0000h to FFFFh (3)	RW (4)

Notes :
1. Access to the register in 16-bit units.
2. The timer counts pulses from an external device or overflows or underflows of other timers.
3. Set it when the TBiS bit in the TABSR or TBSR register is set to 0 (count stops).
4. Read only (RO) when the TBiS bit in the TABSR or TBSR register is set to 1 (count starts).

Figure 15.19 Register TB0MR to TB5MR and TB0 to TB5

Count Start Flag

b7 b6 b5 b4 b3 b2 b1 b0

Symbol	Address	After Reset
TABSR	0320h	00h

Bit Symbol	Bit Name	Function	RW
TA0S	Timer A0 count start flag	0 : Stop counting 1 : Start counting	RW
TA1S	Timer A1 count start flag		RW
TA2S	Timer A2 count start flag		RW
TA3S	Timer A3 count start flag		RW
TA4S	Timer A4 count start flag		RW
TB0S	Timer B0 count start flag		RW
TB1S	Timer B1 count start flag		RW
TB2S	Timer B2 count start flag		RW

Timer B3, B4, B5 Count Start Flag

b7 b6 b5 b4 b3 b2 b1 b0

Symbol	Address	After Reset
TBSR	0300h	000XXXXXb

Bit Symbol	Bit Name	Function	RW
— (b4-b0)	No register bits. If necessary, set to 0. Read as undefined value		—
TB3S	Timer B3 count start flag	0 : Stop counting 1 : Start counting	RW
TB4S	Timer B4 count start flag		RW
TB5S	Timer B5 count start flag		RW

Clock Prescaler Reset Flag

b7 b6 b5 b4 b3 b2 b1 b0

Symbol	Address	After Reset
CPSRF	0015h	0XXXXXXXb

Bit Symbol	Bit Name	Function	RW
— (b6-b0)	No register bits. If necessary, set to 0. Read as undefined value		—
CPSR	Clock prescaler reset flag	Initializing the clock prescaler. (Read as 0)	RW

Figure 15.20 Register TABSR, TBSR, and CPSRF

Timer B Count Source Select Register 0, Timer B Count Source Select Register 2

b7 b6 b5 b4 b3 b2 b1 b0

Symbol	Address	After Reset
TBCS0	01C8h	00h
TBCS2	01E8h	00h

Bit Symbol	Bit Name	Function	RW
TCS0	TBi count source select bit	b2 b1 b0 0 0 0 : f1TIMAB or f2TIMAB (1) 0 0 1 : f8TIMAB 0 1 0 : f32TIMAB 0 1 1 : f64TIMAB 1 0 0 : Do not set 1 0 1 : fOCO-S 1 1 0 : f C32 1 1 1 : Do not set	RW
TCS1			RW
TCS2			RW
TCS3	TBi count source option specified bit	1 : TCK0, TCK1 enabled, TCS0 to TCS2 disabled 0 : TCK0, TCK1 disabled, TCS0 to TCS2 enabled	RW
TCS4	TBj count source select bit	b6 b5 b4 0 0 0 : f1TIMAB or f2TIMAB (1) 0 0 1 : f8TIMAB 0 1 0 : f32TIMAB 0 1 1 : f64TIMAB 1 0 0 : Do not set 1 0 1 : fOCO-S 1 1 0 : f C32 1 1 1 : Do not set	RW
TCS5			RW
TCS6			RW
TCS7	TBj count source option specified bit	1 : TCK0, TCK1 enabled, TCS4 to TCS6 disabled 0 : TCK0, TCK1 disabled, TCS4 to TCS6 enabled	RW

TBCS0 register: i = 0, j = 1 TBCS2 register: i = 3, j = 4

Note :
1. Set this value at the PCLK0 bit in the PCLKR register.

Timer B Count Source Select Register 1, Timer B Count Source Select Register 3

b7 b6 b5 b4 b3 b2 b1 b0

Symbol	Address	After Reset
TBCS1	01C9h	X0h
TBCS3	01E9h	X0h

Bit Symbol	Bit Name	Function	RW
TCS0	TBi count source select bit	b2 b1 b0 0 0 0 : f1TIMAB or f2TIMAB (1) 0 0 1 : f8TIMAB 0 1 0 : f32TIMAB 0 1 1 : f64TIMAB 1 0 0 : Do not set 1 0 1 : fOCO-S 1 1 0 : fC32 1 1 1 : Do not set	RW
TCS1			RW
TCS2			RW
TCS3	TBi count source option specified bit	1 : TCK0, TCK1 enabled, TCS0 to TCS2 disabled 0 : TCK0, TCK1 disabled, TCS0 to TCS2 enabled	RW
— (b7-b4)	No register bits. If necessary, set to 0. Read as undefined value		—

TBCS1 register: i = 2 TBCS3 register: i = 5

Note :
1. Set this value at the PCLK0 bit in the PCLKR register.

Figure 15.21 Registers TBCS0, TBCS1, TBCS2, and TBCS3

15.2.1 Timer Mode

In timer mode, the timer counts a count source generated internally. Table 15.6 lists the Specifications in Timer Mode. Figure 15.22 shows the TBiMR Register in Timer Mode.

Table 15.6 Specifications in Timer Mode

Item	Specification
Count Source	f1TIMAB, f2TIMAB, f8TIMAB, f32TIMAB, f64TIMAB, fOCO-S, fC32
Count Operation	• Decrement • When the timer underflows, it reloads the reload register contents and continues counting
Divide Ratio	1 / (n + 1) n: set value of the TBi register 0000h to FFFFh
Count Start Condition	Set the TBiS bit (1) to 1 (start counting)
Count Stop Condition	Set the TBiS bit to 0 (stop counting)
Interrupt Request Generation Timing	Timer underflow
TBiIN Pin Function	I/O port
Read from Timer	Count value can be read by reading the TBi register
Write to Timer	• When not counting Value written to the TBi register is written to both reload register and counter • When counting Value written to the TBi register is written to only reload register (Transferred to counter when reloaded next)

i = 0 to 5

Note:

1. Bits TB0S to TB2S are assigned to bits 5 to 7 in the TABSR register, and bits TB3S to TB5S are assigned to bits 5 to 7 in the TBSR register.

Timer Bi Mode Register (i = 0 to 5)

b7	b6	b5	b4	b3	b2	b1	b0
			X	0	0	0	0

Symbol	Address	After Reset
TB0MR to TB2MR	033Bh to 033Dh	00XX0000b
TB3MR to TB5MR	031Bh to 031Dh	00XX0000b

Bit Symbol	Bit Name	Function	RW
TMOD0	Operation mode select bit	b1 b0 0 0 : Timer mode	RW
TMOD1			RW
MR0	Set to 0 in timer mode		RW
MR1			RW
—	No register bit. If necessary, set to 0. Read as undefined value		—
MR3	Write 0 in timer mode. Read as undefined value in timer mode		RO
TCK0	Count source select bit (2)	b7 b6 0 0 : f1TIMAB or f2TIMAB (1) 0 1 : f8TIMAB 1 0 : f32TIMAB 1 1 : fC32	RW
TCK1			RW

Notes :
1. Selected by the PCLK0 bit in the PCLKR register.
2. Valid when the TCS3 bit or TCS7 bit in registers TACS0 to TACS2 is set to 0 (TCK0, TCK1 enabled).

Figure 15.22 TBiMR Register in Timer Mode

15.2.2 Event Counter Mode

In event counter mode, the timer counts pulses from an external device or overflows and underflows of other timers. Table 15.7 lists the Specifications in Event Counter Mode. Figure 15.23 shows the TBiMR Register in Event Counter Mode.

Table 15.7 Specifications in Event Counter Mode

Item	Specification
Count Source	• External signals input to TBiIN pin (effective edge rising edge, falling edge, or both rising and falling edges) can be selected in a program) • Timer Bj overflow or underflow (j = i - 1, except j = 2 if i = 0, j = 5 if i = 3)
Count Operation	• Decrement • When the timer underflows, it reloads the reload register contents and continues counting.
Divide Ratio	1 / (n + 1) n: set value of the TBi register 0000h to FFFFh
Count Start Condition	Set the TBiS bit (1) to 1 (start counting)
Count Stop Condition	Set the TBiS bit to 0 (stop counting)
Interrupt Request Generation Timing	Timer underflow
TBiIN Pin Function	Count source input
Read from Timer	Count value can be read by reading the TBi register.
Write to Timer	• When not counting Value written to the TBi register is written to both reload register and counter • When counting Value written to the TBi register is written to only reload register (Transferred to counter when reloaded next)

i = 0 to 5

Note:

1. Bits TB0S to TB2S are assigned to bits 5 to 7 in the TABSR register, and bits TB3S to TB5S are assigned to bits 5 to 7 in the TBSR register.

Timer Bi Mode Register (i = 0 to 5)

b7 b6 b5 b4 b3 b2 b1 b0 — 0 1

Symbol	Address	After Reset
TB0MR to TB2MR	033Bh to 033Dh	00XX0000b
TB3MR to TB5MR	031Bh to 031Dh	00XX0000b

Bit Symbol	Bit Name	Function	RW
TMOD0	Operation mode select bit	b1 b0 0 1 : Event counter mode	RW
TMOD1			RW
MR0	Count polarity select bit (1)	b3 b2 0 0 : Counts falling edges of external signal 0 1 : Counts rising edges of external signal 1 0 : Counts falling and rising edges external signal 1 1 : Do not set to this value	RW
MR1			RW
—	No register bit. If necessary, set to 0. Read as undefined value		—
MR3	Write 0 in event counter mode. Read as undefined value in event counter mode		RO
TCK0	Invalid in event counter mode. Set 0 or 1		RW
TCK1	Event clock select	0 : Input from TBiIN pin (2) 1 : TBj overflow or underflow (j = i – 1; however, j = 2 if i = 0, j = 5 if i = 3)	RW

Notes :
1. Valid when the TCK1 bit = 0 (input from TBiIN pin). If the TCK1 bit = 1 (TBj overflow or underflow), these bits can be set to 0 or 1.
2. Set the port direction bit for the TBiIN pin to 0 (input mode).

Figure 15.23 TBiMR Register in Event Counter Mode

15.2.3 Pulse Period and Pulse Width Measurement Modes

In pulse period and pulse width measurement mode, the timer measures pulse period or pulse width of an external signal (see **Table 15.8**). Figure 15.24 shows the TBiMR Register in Pulse Period and Pulse Width Measurement Mode. Figure 15.25 shows the Operation Timing when Measuring a Pulse Period. Figure 15.26 shows the Operation Timing when Measuring a Pulse Width.

Table 15.8 Specifications in Pulse Period and Pulse Width Measurement Mode

Item	Specification
Count Source	f1TIMAB, f2TIMAB, f8TIMAB, f32TIMAB, f64TIMAB, fOCO-S, fC32
Count Operation	• Increment • Counter value is transferred to reload register at an effective edge of measurement pulse. The counter value is set to 0000h to continue counting.
Count Start Condition	Set the TBiS bit (3) to 1 (start counting)
Count Stop Condition	Set the TBiS bit to 0 (stop counting)
Interrupt Request Generation Timing	• When an effective edge of measurement pulse is input (1) Timer overflow. When an overflow occurs, the MR3 bit in the TBiMR register is set to 1 (overflowed) simultaneously.
TBiIN Pin Function	Measurement pulse input
Read from Timer	Contents of the reload register (measurement result) can be read by reading the TBi register (2)
Write to Timer	Value written to the TBi register is written to neither reload register nor counter

i = 0 to 5

Notes:

1. Interrupt request is not generated when the first effective edge is input after the timer started counting.
2. Value read from the TBi register is indeterminate until the second valid edge is input after the timer starts counting.
3. Bits TB0S to TB2S are assigned to bits 5 to 7 in the TABSR register, and bits TB3S to TB5S are assigned to bits 5 to 7 in the TBSR register.

Timer Bi Mode Register (i = 0 to 5)

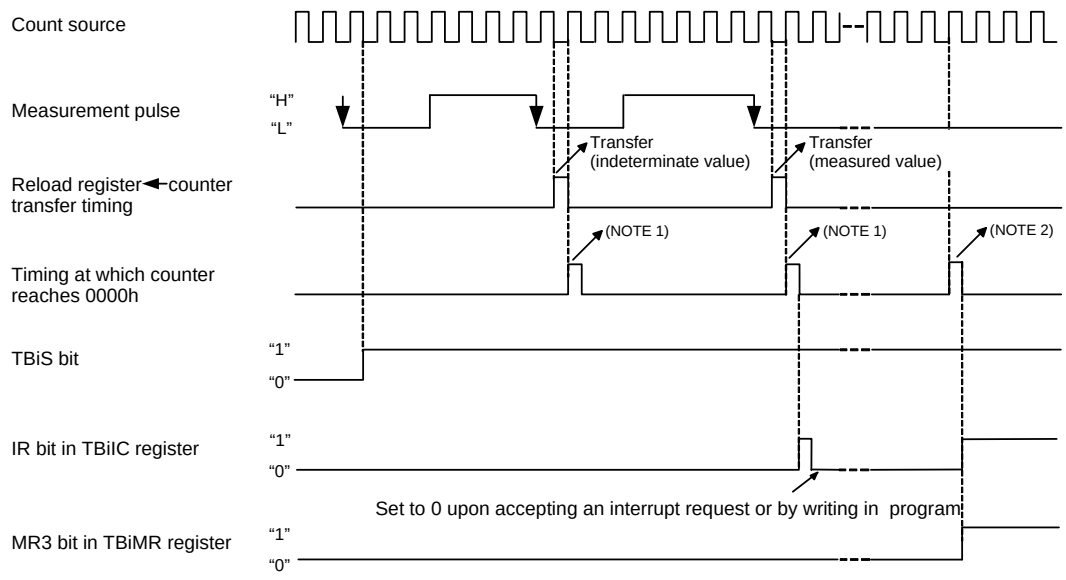
b7	b6	b5	b4	b3	b2	b1	b0
			X			1	0

Symbol	Address	After Reset
TB0MR to TB2MR	033Bh to 033Dh	00XX0000b
TB3MR to TB5MR	031Bh to 031Dh	00XX0000b

Bit Symbol	Bit Name	Function	RW
TMOD0	Operation mode select bit	b1 b0 1 0 : Pulse period, pulse width measurement mode	RW
TMOD1			RW
MR0	Measurement mode select bit	b3 b2 0 0 : Pulse period measurement (Measurement between a falling edge and the next falling edge of measured pulse) 0 1 : Pulse period measurement (Measurement between a rising edge and the next rising edge of measured pulse) 1 0 : Pulse width measurement (Measurement between a falling edge and the next rising edge of measured pulse and between a rising edge and the next falling edge) 1 1 : Do not set to this value	RW
MR1			RW
—	No register bit. If necessary, set to 0. Read as undefined value		—
MR3	Timer Bi overflow flag (1)	0 : No overflow 1 : Overflow	RO
TCK0	Count source select bit (3)	b7 b6 0 0 : f1TIMAB or f2TIMAB (2) 0 1 : f8TIMAB 1 0 : f32TIMAB 1 1 : fC32	RW
TCK1			RW

Notes :
1. This flag is undefined after reset. The MR3 bit is cleared to 0 (no overflow) by writing to the TBiMR register. The MR3 bit cannot be set to 1 in a program.
2. Selected by the PCLK0 bit in the PCLKR register.
3. Valid when the TCS3 bit or TCS7 bit in registers TACS0 to TACS3 is set to 0 (TCK0, TCK1 enabled).

Figure 15.24 TBiMR Register in Pulse Period and Pulse Width Measurement Mode

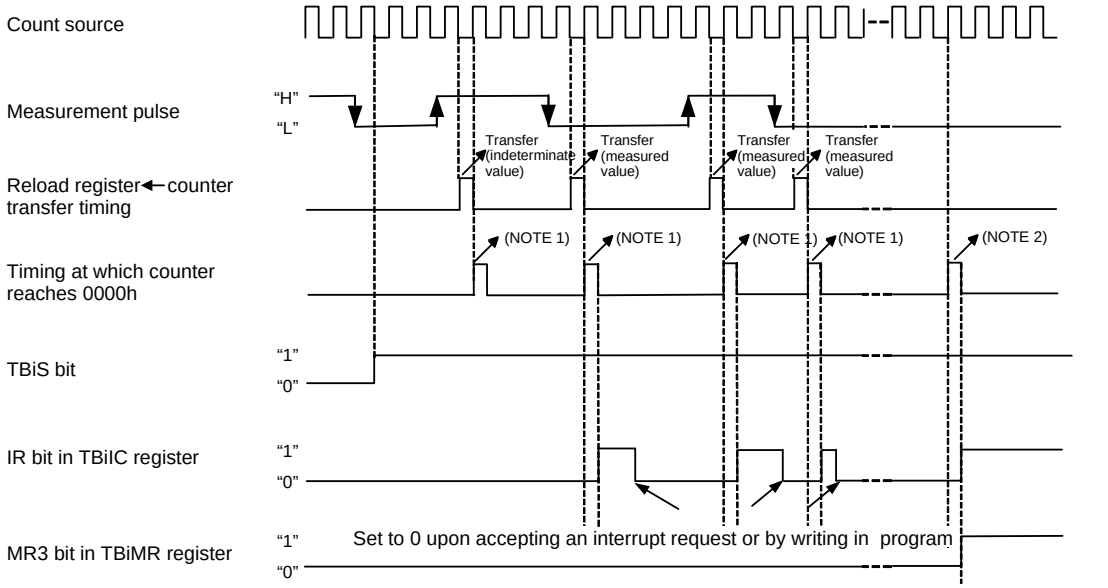


Bits TB0S to TB2S are assigned to bits 5 to 7 in the TABSR register, and bits TB3S to TB5S are assigned to bits 5 to 7 in the TABSR register.

i = 0 to 5

Notes :
1. Counter is initialized at completion of measurement.
2. Timer has overflowed.
3. This timing diagram is for the case where bits MR1 and MR0 in the TBiMR register are 00b (measure the interval from falling edge to falling edge of the measurement pulse).

Figure 15.25 Operation Timing when Measuring a Pulse Period



Bits TB0S to TB2S are assigned to bits 5 to 7 in the TABSR register, and bits TB3S to TB5S are assigned to bits 5 to 7 in the TABSR register.

i = 0 to 5

Notes :
1. Counter is initialized at completion of measurement.
2. Timer has overflowed.
3. This timing diagram is for the case where bits MR1 and MR0 in the TBiMR register are 10b (measure the interval from a falling edge to the next rising edge and the interval from a rising edge to the next falling edge of the measurement pulse).

Figure 15.26 Operation Timing when Measuring a Pulse Width

16. Three-Phase Motor Control Timer Function

Timers A1, A2, A4, and B2 can be used to output three-phase motor drive waveforms. Table 16.1 lists the Three-phase Motor Control Timer Functions Specifications. Figure 16.1 shows the Three-phase Motor Control Timer Functions Block Diagram. Also, the related registers are shown on Figures 16.2 to 16.7.

Table 16.1 Three-phase Motor Control Timer Functions Specifications

Item	Specification
Three-Phase Waveform Output Pin	Six pins (U, $\overline{U}$, V, $\overline{V}$, W, $\overline{W}$)
Forced Cutoff Input (1)	Input “L” to the $\overline{SD}$ pin
Used Timers	Timer A4, A1, A2 (used in one-shot timer mode) Timer A4: U- and $\overline{U}$-phase waveform control Timer A1: V- and $\overline{V}$-phase waveform control Timer A2: W- and $\overline{W}$-phase waveform control Timer B2 (used in timer mode) Carrier wave cycle control Dead time timer (3 eight-bit timers and shared reload register) Dead time control
Output Waveform	Triangular wave modulation, sawtooth wave modulation • Enable to output “H” or “L” for one cycle • Enable to set positive-phase level and negative-phase level independently
Carrier Wave Cycle	Triangular wave modulation : count source x (m + 1) x 2 Sawtooth wave modulation : count source x (m + 1) m: setting value of the TB2 register, 0000h to FFFFh Count source: f1TIMAB, f2TIMAB, f8TIMAB, f32TIMAB, f64TIMAB, fOCO-S, fC32
Three-Phase PWM Output Width	Triangular wave modulation: count source x n x 2 Sawtooth wave modulation: count source x n n: setting value of registers TA4, TA1, and TA2 (of registers TA4, TA41, TA1, TA11, TA2, and TA21 when setting the INV11 bit to 1), 0001h to FFFFh Count source: f1TIMAB, f2TIMAB, f8TIMAB, f32TIMAB, f64TIMAB, fOCO-S, fC32
Dead Time	Count source x p, or no dead time p: setting value of the DTT register, 01h to FFh Count source: f1TIMAB, f2TIMAB, f1TIMAB divided by 2, f2TIMAB divided by 2
Active Level	Enable to select “H” or “L”
Positive and Negative-Phase Concurrent Active Disable Function	Positive-and negative-phases concurrent active disable function Positive-and negative-phases concurrent active detect function
Interrupt Frequency	Timer B2 interrupt is generated every q times q: carrier wave cycle-to-cycle basis, 1 to 15

Notes:

1. Forced cutoff with $\overline{SD}$ input is effective when the IVPCR1 bit in the TB2SC register is set to 1 (three-phase output forcible cutoff by $\overline{SD}$ input enabled). If an “L” signal is applied to the $\overline{SD}$ pin when the IVPCR1 bit is 1, the related pins go to a high-impedance state regardless of which functions of those pins are being used.
2. Related pins: P7_2/CLK2/TA1OUT/V, P7_3/$\overline{CTS2}$/$\overline{RTS2}$/TA1IN/$\overline{V}$, P7_4/TA2OUT/W, P7_5/TA2IN/$\overline{W}$, P8_0/TA4OUT/RXD5/SCL5/U, P8_1/TA4IN/$\overline{CTS5}$/$\overline{RTS5}$/$\overline{U}$

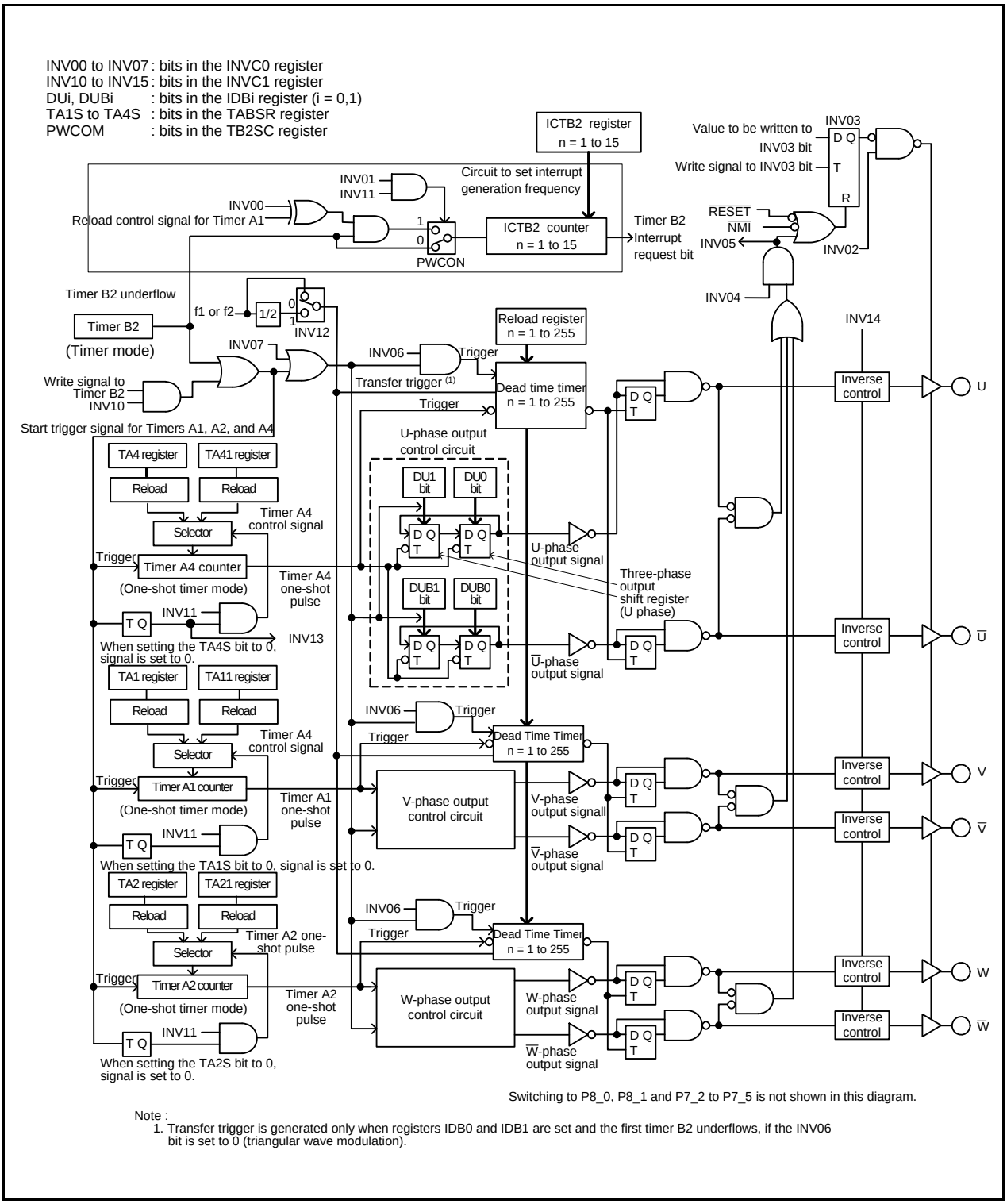
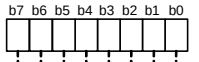


Figure 16.1 Three-phase Motor Control Timer Functions Block Diagram

Three-Phase PWM Control Register 0 (1)



Symbol	Address	After Reset
INVC0	0308h	00h

Bit Symbol	Bit Name	Function	RW
INV00	Interrupt enable output polarity select bit	0 : The ICTB2 counter is decremented by one on the rising edge of Timer A1 reload control signal 1 : The ICTB2 counter is decremented by one on the falling edge of Timer A1 reload control signal (3)	RW
INV01	Interrupt enable output specification bit (2)	0 : ICTB2 counter is decremented by one when Timer B2 underflows 1 : Selected by the INV00 bit (3)	RW
INV02	Mode select bit (4)	0 : No three-phase control timer functions 1 : Three-phase control timer function (5)	RW
INV03	Output control bit (6)	0 : Disables three-phase control timer output (5) 1 : Enables three-phase control timer output	RW
INV04	Positive-and negative-phases concurrent active disable function bit	0 : Enables concurrent active output 1 : Disables concurrent active output	RW
INV05	Positive-and negative-phases concurrent active output detect flag	0 : Not detected 1 : Detected (7)	RW
INV06	Modulation mode select bit (8)	0 : Triangular wave modulation mode 1 : Sawtooth wave modulation mode (9)	RW
INV07	Software trigger select bit	Transfer trigger is generated when the INV07 bit is set to 1. Trigger to the dead time timer is also generated when setting the INV06 bit to 1. Read as 0.	RW

Notes :

1. Set the INVC0 register after the PRC1 bit in the PRCR register is set to 1 (write enabled). Rewrite bits INV00 to INV02 and INV06 when Timers A1, A2, A4 and B2 stop.
2. Set the INV01 bit to 1 after setting the ICTB2 register
3. Bits INV00 and INV01 are enabled only when the INV11 bit is set to 1 (three-phase mode 1). The ICTB2 counter is decremented by one every time Timer B2 underflows, regardless of INV00 and INV01 bit settings, when the INV11 bit is set to 0 (three-phase mode). When setting the INV01 bit to 1, set Timer A1 count start flag to 1 before the first Timer B2 underflow. When the INV00 bit is set to 1, the first interrupt is generated when Timer B2 underflows n-1 times, if n is the value set in the ICTB2 counter. Subsequent interrupts are generated every n times Timer B2 underflows.
4. Set the INV02 bit to 1 to operate the dead time timer, U-, V-and W-phase output control circuits and ICTB2 counter.
5. When the INVC03 bit is set to 1, the pins applied to U/V/W output three-phase PWM. Pins U, $\overline{U}$, V, $\overline{V}$, W and $\overline{W}$, including pins shared with other output functions, are all placed in high-impedance states when the following conditions are all met.
   - The INV02 bit is set to 1 (three-phase motor control timer function)
   - The INV03 bit is set to 0 (three-phase motor control timer output disabled)
   - Direction registers of each port are set to 0 (input mode)
6. The INV03 bit is set to 0 when the followings conditions are all met.
   - Reset
   - A concurrent active state occurs while the INV04 bit is set to 1
   - The INV03 bit is set to 0 by program
   - A signal applied to the $\overline{SD}$ pin changes “H” to “L”

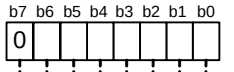
   When both bits INVC04 and INVC05 are set to 1, the INVC03 bit is set to 0.
7. The INV05 bit can not be set to 1 by program. Set the INV04 bit to 0 as well when setting the INV05 bit to 0.
8. The following table describes how the INV06 bit works.

Item	INV06 = 0	INV06 = 1
Mode	Triangular wave modulation mode	Sawtooth wave modulation mode
Timing to transfer from registers IDB0 and IDB1 to three-phase output shift register	Transferred once by generating a transfer trigger after setting registers IDB0 and IDB1	Transferred every time a transfer trigger is generated
Timing to trigger the dead time timer when the INV16 bit = 0	On the falling edge of a one-shot pulse of the timer A1, A2, or A4	On the falling edge of a one-shot pulse of the timer A1, A2, or A4, and transfer a trigger
INV13 bit	Enabled when the INV11 bit = 1 and the INV06 bit = 0	Disabled

   Transfer trigger : Timer B2 underflows and write to the INV07 bit, or write to the TB2 register during timer B2 stop when INV10 = 1
9. When the INV06 bit is set to 1, set the INV11 bit to 0 (three-phase mode 0) and the PWCON bit in the TB2SC register to 0 (reload Timer B2 with Timer B2 underflow).

Figure 16.2 INVC0 Register

Three-Phase PWM Control Register 1 (1)



Symbol	Address	After Reset
INVC1	0309h	00h

Bit Symbol	Bit Name	Function	RW
INV10	Timer A1, A2, and A4 start trigger select bit	0 : Timer B2 underflow 1 : Timer B2 underflow and write to Timer B2 during timer B2 stop	RW
INV11	Timer A1-1, A2-1 and A4-1 control bit (2)	0 : Three-phase mode 0 (3) 1 : Three-phase mode 1	RW
INV12	Dead time timer count source select bit	0 : f1TIMAB or f2TIMAB 1 : f1TIMAB divided by 2 or f2TIMAB divided by 2	RW
INV13	Carrier wave detect bit (4)	0 : Timer A1 reload control signal is 0 1 : Timer A1 reload control signal is 1	RO
INV14	Output polarity control bit	0 : Active “L” of an output waveform 1 : Active “H” of an output waveform	RW
INV15	Dead time disable bit	0 : Dead time enabled 1 : Dead time disabled	RW
INV16	Dead time timer trigger select bit (5)	0 : Falling edge of a one-shot pulse of Timer A1, A2, and A4 1 : Rising edge of the three-phase output shift register (U-, V-, W-phase)	RW
— (b7)	Reserved bit	Set to 0	RW

Notes :

1. Rewrite the INVC1 register after the PRC1 bit in the PRCR register is set to 1 (write enabled). Rewrite while the timers A1, A2, A4, and B2 stop.
2. The following table lists how the INV11 bit works.

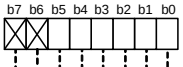
Item	INV11 = 0	INV11 = 1
Mode	Three-phase mode 0	Three-phase mode 1
Registers TA11, TA21, and TA41	Not used	Used
Bits INV00 and INV01 in the INVC0 register	Disabled. The ICTB2 counter is decremented whenever Timer B2 underflows	Enabled
INV13 bit	Disabled	Enabled when INV11 = 1 and INV06 = 0

3. When the INV06 bit is set to 1 (sawtooth wave modulation mode), set the INV11 bit to 0 (three-phase mode 0). Also, when the INV11 bit is set to 0, set the PWCON bit in the TB2SC register to 0 (timer B2 is reloaded when Timer B2 underflows).
4. The INV13 bit is enabled only when the INV06 bit is set to 0 (triangular wave modulation mode) and the INV11 bit to 1 (three-phase mode 1).
5. If the following conditions are all met, set the INV16 bit to 1 (rising edge of the three-phase output shift register).
   - The INV15 bit is set to 0 (dead time timer enabled)
   - The Dij bit and DiBj bit always have different values when the INV03 bit is set to 1 (the positive-phase and negative-phase always output opposite level signals) (i = U, V or W, j = 0, 1).

   If above conditions are not met, set the INV16 bit to 0 (dead time timer is triggered on the falling edge of a one-shot pulse of timers).

Figure 16.3 INVC1 Register

Three-Phase Output Buffer Register i (1) (i = 0, 1)

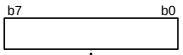


Symbol	Address	After Reset
IDB0	030Ah	XX111111b
IDB1	030Bh	XX111111b

Bit Symbol	Bit Name	Function	RW
DUi	U-phase output buffer i	Write output level 0 : Active level 1 : Inactive level When read, the value of the three-phase shift register is read.	RW
DUBi	$\overline{U}$-phase output buffer i		RW
DVi	V-phase output buffer i		RW
DVBi	$\overline{V}$-phase output buffer i		RW
DWi	W-phase output buffer i		RW
DWBi	$\overline{W}$-phase output buffer i		RW
— (b7-b6)	No register bits. If necessary, set to 0. Read as undefined value		—

Note :
1. Values of registers IDB0 and IDB1 are transferred to the three-phase output shift register by a transfer trigger. After the transfer trigger occurs, the values written in the IDB0 register determine each phase output signal first. Then the value written in the IDB1 register on the falling edge of Timers A1, A2, and A4 one-shot pulse determines each phase output signal.

Dead Time Timer (1, 2)



Symbol	Address	After Reset
DTT	030Ch	Indeterminate

Function	Setting Range	RW
If setting value is n, the timer stops when counting n times a count source selected by the INV12 after start trigger occurs. Positive or negative phase, which changes from inactive level to active level, shifts when the dead time timer stops.	1 to 255	WO

Notes :
1. Use the MOV instruction to set the DTT register.
2. The DTT register is enabled when the INV15 bit in the INVC1 register is set to 0 (dead time enabled). No dead time can be set when the INV15 bit is set to 1 (dead time disabled). The INV06 bit in the INVC0 register determines start trigger of the DTT register.

Timer B2 Interrupt Generation Frequency Set Counter (1, 2, 3)

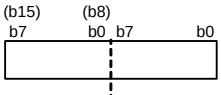
Symbol	Address	After Reset
ICTB2	030Dh	Indeterminate

Function	Setting Range	RW
When the INV01 bit is set to 0 (the ICTB2 counter increments whenever Timer B2 underflows) and the setting value is n, Timer B2 interrupt is generated every nth time Timer B2 underflow occurs. When the INV01 bit is set to 1 (the INV00 bit selects count timing of the ICTB2 counter) and setting value is n, Timer B2 interrupt is generated every nth time Timer B2 underflow meeting the condition selected in the INV00 bit occurs.	1 to 15	WO
No register bits. If necessary, set to 0		—

Notes :
1. Use the MOV instruction to set the ICTB2 register.
2. If the INV01 bit in the INVCO register is set to 1, set the ICTB2 register when the TB2S bit in the TABSR register is set to 0 (Timer B2 counter stopped).
   If the INV01 bit is set to 0 and the TB2S bit to 1 (Timer B2 counter start), do not set the ICTB2 register when Timer B2 underflows.
3. If the INV00 bit is set to 1, the first interrupt is generated when Timer B2 underflows n-1 times, n being the value set in the ICTB2 counter. Subsequent interrupts are generated every n times Timer B2 underflows.

Figure 16.4 Registers IDB0, IDB1, DTT, and ICTB2

Timer Ai, Ai-1 Register (i = 1, 2, 4) (1, 2, 3, 4, 5)

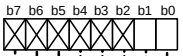


Symbol	Address	After Reset
TA1, TA2, TA4	0329h to 0328h, 032Bh to 032Ah, 032Fh to 032Eh	Indeterminate
TA11, TA21, TA41	0303h to 0302h, 0305h to 0304h, 0307h to 0306h	Indeterminate

Function	Setting Range	RW
If setting value is n, the timer stops when the nth count source is counted after a start trigger is generated. Positive and negative phases change when Timers A1, A2, and A4 stop.	0000h to FFFFh	WO

Notes :
1. Write to the register in 16-bit units.
2. If the TAi or Tai-1 register is set to 0000h, no counters start and no Timer Ai interrupt is generated.
3. Use the MOV instruction to set registers TAi and Tai-1.
4. When the INV15 bit in the INVC1 register is set to 0 (dead timer enabled), phase switches from an inactive level to an active level when the dead time timer stops.
5. When the INV11 bit is set to 1 (three-phase mode 1), the value of the TAi1 register is first counted. The values of registers TAi and TAi1 are counted alternately.

Timer B2 Special Mode Register (1)



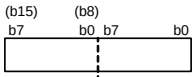
Symbol	Address	After Reset
TB2SC	033Eh	XXXXXX00b

Bit Symbol	Bit Name	Function	RW
PWCON	Timer B2 reload timing switch bit	0 : Timer B2 underflow 1 : Timer A output at odd-numbered occurrences (2)	RW
IVPCR1	Three-phase output port $\overline{SD}$ control bit 1 (4)	0 : Three-phase output forcible cutoff by $\overline{SD}$ input (high-impedance) disabled 1 : Three-phase output forcible cutoff by $\overline{SD}$ input (high-impedance) enabled (3)	RW
— (b7-b2)	No register bits. If necessary, set to 0. Read as 0		—

Notes :
1. Write to this register after setting the PRC1 bit in the PRCR register to 1 (write enabled).
2. If the INV11 bit is 0 (three-phase mode 0) or the INV06 bit is 1 (sawtooth wave modulation mode), set the PWCON bit to 0 (Timer B2 underflow).
3. Make sure to set the PD8_5 bit to 0 (input) when setting the IVPCR1 bit to 1 (three-phase output forcible cutoff by $\overline{SD}$ input enabled).
4. Related pins are U(P8_0), $\overline{U}$(P8_1), V(P7_2), $\overline{V}$(P7_3), W(P7_4), and $\overline{W}$(P7_5). If a low-level signal is applied to the P8_5/$\overline{NMI}$/$\overline{SD}$ pin, three-phase motor control timer output is disabled (INV03 = 0). Then, the target pins go to a high-impedance state regardless of which functions of those pins are being used. After forced interrupt (cutoff), input “H” to the P8_5/$\overline{NMI}$/$\overline{SD}$ pin and set the IVPCR1 bit to 0 to cancel the forced cutoff.

Figure 16.5 Registers TA1, TA2, TA4, TA11, TA21, TA41, and TB2SC

Timer B2 Register (1)

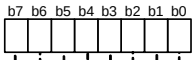


Symbol	Address	After Reset
TB2	0335h to 0334h	Indeterminate

Function	Setting Range	RW
If setting value is n, count source is divided by n+1. Timers A1, A2 and A4 start every time an underflow occurs.	0000h to FFFFh	RW

Note :
1. Read and write in 16-bit units.

Trigger Select Register

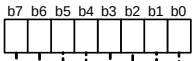


Symbol	Address	After Reset
TRGSR	0323h	00h

Bit Symbol	Bit Name	Function	RW
TA1TGL	Timer A1 event / trigger select bit	b1 b0 0 0 : Input on TA1IN is selected (1) 0 1 : TB2 is selected (2) 1 0 : TA0 is selected (2) 1 1 : TA2 is selected (2)	RW
TA1TGH			RW
TA2TGL	Timer A2 event / trigger select bit	b3 b2 0 0 : Input on TA2IN is selected (1) 0 1 : TB2 is selected (2) 1 0 : TA1 is selected (2) 1 1 : TA3 is selected (2)	RW
TA2TGH			RW
TA3TGL	Timer A3 event / trigger select bit	b5 b4 0 0 : Input on TA3IN is selected (1) 0 1 : TB2 is selected (2) 1 0 : TA2 is selected (2) 1 1 : TA4 is selected (2)	RW
TA3TGH			RW
TA4TGL	Timer A4 event / trigger select bit	b7 b6 0 0 : Input on TA4IN is selected (1) 0 1 : TB2 is selected (2) 1 0 : TA3 is selected (2) 1 1 : TA0 is selected (2)	RW
TA4TGH			RW

Notes :
1. Set the port direction bits for the pins TA1IN to TA4IN to 0 (input mode).
2. Overflow or underflow

Count Start Flag



Symbol	Address	After Reset
TABSR	0320h	00h

Bit Symbol	Bit Name	Function	RW
TA0S	Timer A0 count start flag	0 : Stop counting 1 : Start counting	RW
TA1S	Timer A1 count start flag		RW
TA2S	Timer A2 count start flag		RW
TA3S	Timer A3 count start flag		RW
TA4S	Timer A4 count start flag		RW
TB0S	Timer B0 count start flag		RW
TB1S	Timer B1 count start flag		RW
TB2S	Timer B2 count start flag		RW

Figure 16.6 Registers TB2, TRGSR, and TABSR

Timer Ai Mode Register (i = 1, 2, 4)

b7	b6	b5	b4	b3	b2	b1	b0
		0	1	0	0	1	0

Symbol	Address	After Reset
TA1MR	0337h	00h
TA2MR	0338h	00h
TA4MR	033Ah	00h

Bit symbol	Bit Name	Function	RW
TMOD0	Operation mode select bit	Set to 10b (one-shot timer mode) with the three-phase motor control timer function	RW
TMOD1			RW
MR0	Pulse output function select bit	Set to 0 with the three-phase motor control timer function	RW
MR1	External trigger select bit	Set to 0 with the three-phase motor control timer function	RW
MR2	Trigger select bit	Set to 1 (selected by the TRGSR register) with the three-phase motor control timer function	RW
MR3	Set to 0 with the three-phase motor control timer function		RW
TCK0	Count source select bit (2)	b7 b6 0 0 : f1TIMAB or f2TIMAB (1) 0 1 : f8TIMAB 1 0 : f32TIMAB 1 1 : fC32	RW
TCK1			RW

Notes :
1. Selected by the PCLK0 bit in the PCLKR register.
2. Valid when bits TCS3 and TCS7 in registers TACS0 to TACS2 are set to 0. Selected by bits TCS2 to TCS0 or TCS6 to TCS4 in registers TACS0 to TACS2 when bits TCS3 and TCS7 are set to 1. (Refer to **Figure 15.8 Registers TACS0 and TACS** and **Figure 15.9 TACS2 Register**).

Timer B2 Mode Register

b7	b6	b5	b4	b3	b2	b1	b0
			X			0	0

Symbol	Address	After Reset
TB2MR	033Dh	00XX0000b

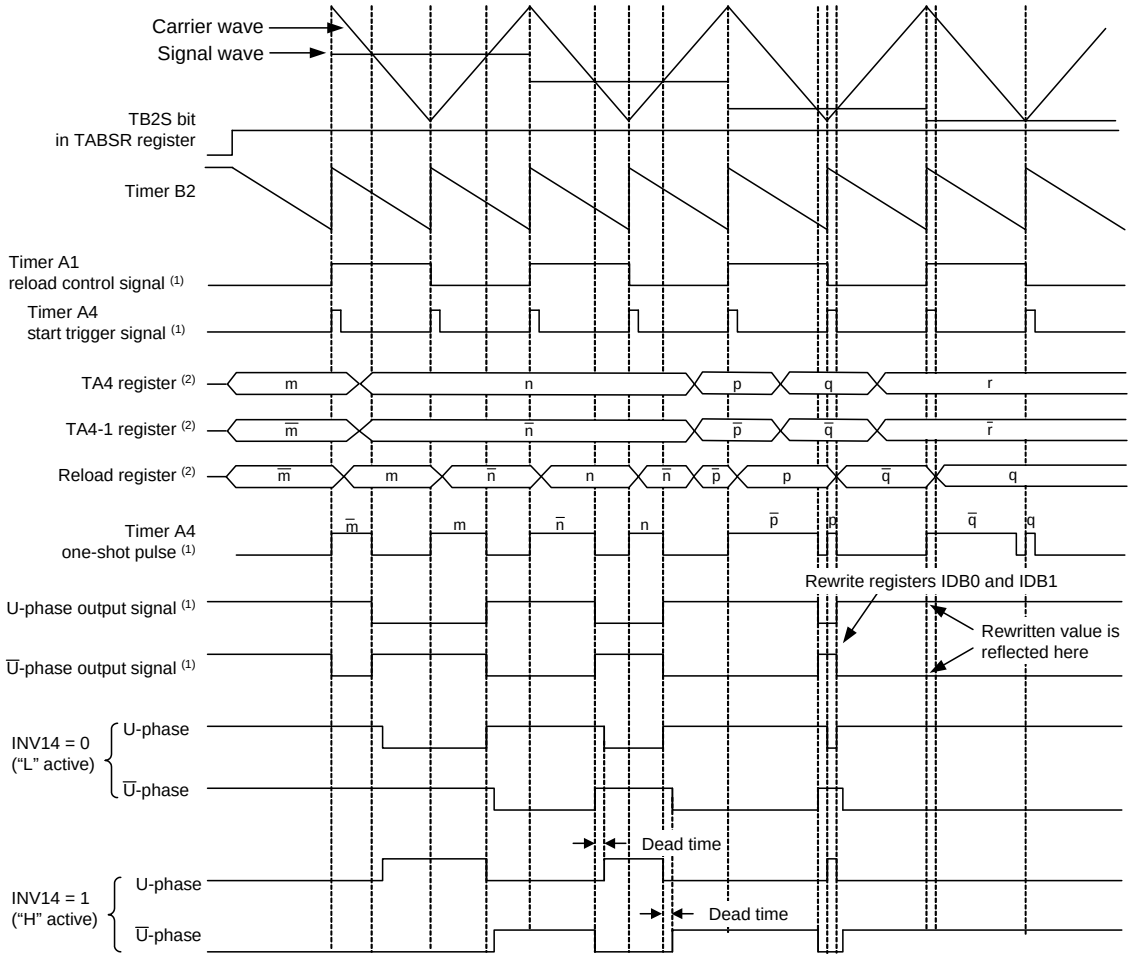
Bit Symbol	Bit Name	Function	RW
TMOD0	Operation mode select bit	Set to 00b (timer mode) when using the three-phase motor control timer function	RW
TMOD1			RW
MR0	Disabled when using the three-phase motor control timer function. If necessary, set to 0. Read as undefined value		RW
MR1			RW
— (b4)	No register bit. If necessary, set to 0. Read as undefined value		—
MR3	When write in three-phase motor control timer function, set to 0. Read as undefined value in three-phase motor control timer function		RO
TCK0	Count source select bit (2)	b7 b6 0 0 : f1TIMAB or f2TIMAB (1) 0 1 : f8TIMAB 1 0 : f32TIMAB 1 1 : fC32	RW
TCK1			RW

Notes :
1. Selected by the PCLK0 bit in the PCLKR register.
2. Valid when the TCS3 bit in the TBCS1 register is set to 0. Selected by bits TCS2 to TCS0 in the TBCS1 register when the TCS3 bit in the TBCS1 register is set to 1 (Refer to **Figure 15.21 TBCS1 Register**).

Figure 16.7 Registers TA1MR, TA2MR, TA4MR, and TB2MR

The three-phase motor control timer function is enabled by setting the INV02 bit in the INVC0 register to 1. When this function is on, timer B2 is used to control the carrier wave, and timers A4, A1, and A2 are used to control three-phase PWM outputs (U, $\overline{U}$, V, $\overline{V}$, W, and $\overline{W}$). The dead time is controlled by a dedicated dead time timer. Figure 16.8 shows an Example of Triangular Wave Modulation Operation and Figure 16.9 shows an Example of Sawtooth Wave Modulation Operation.

Triangular Waveform as a Carrier Wave



INV00,INV01 : bits in the INVC0 register
INV11, INV14: bits in the INVC1 register

Notes :
1. Internal signals. See **Figure 16.1 Three-phase Motor Control Timer Functions Block Diagram**.
2. Applies only when the INV11 bit is set to 1 (three-phase mode).

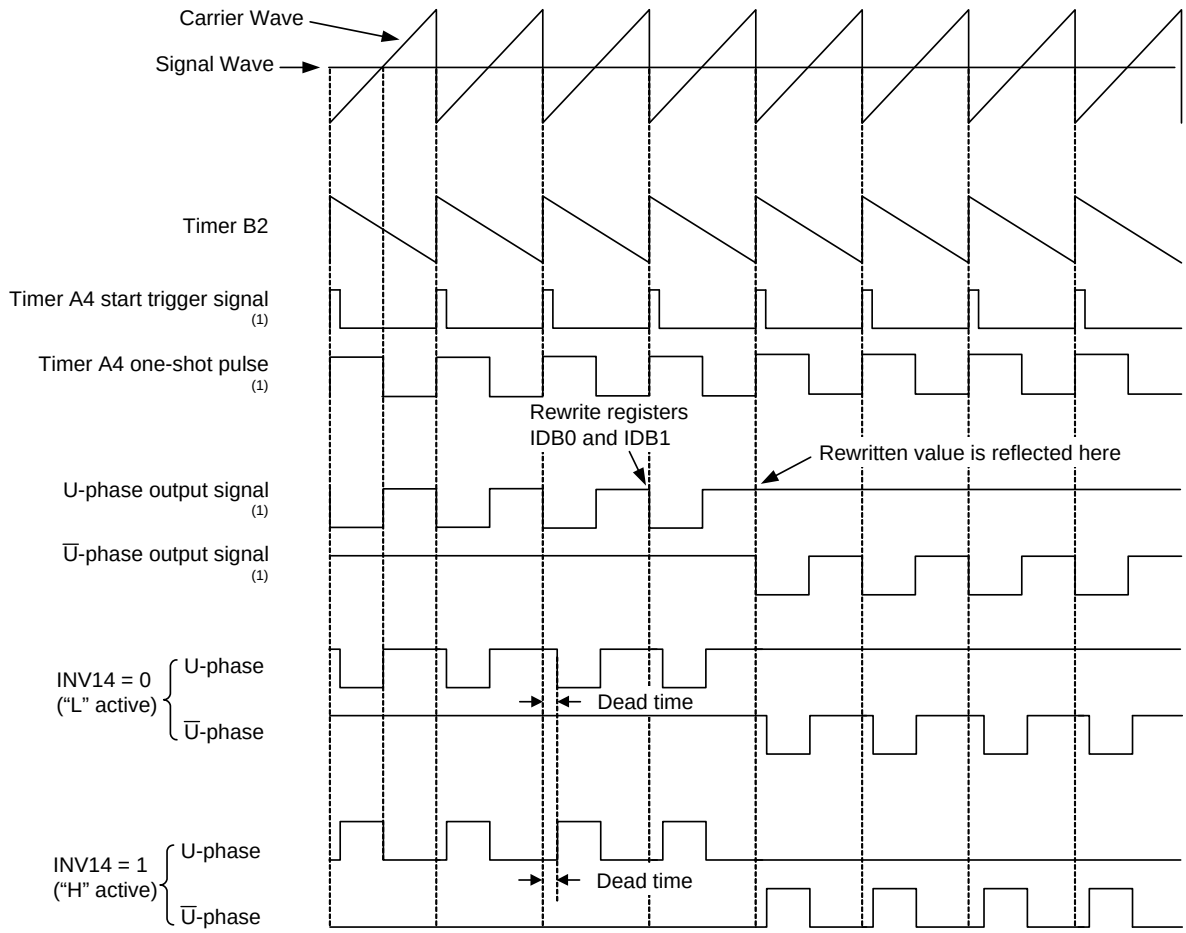
The above applies when INVC0 = 00XX11XXb (X varies depending on each system) and INVC1 = 010XXXXb.
The followings are examples of PWM output change.

(a) When INV11 = 1 (three-phase mode 1)
- INV01 = 0 and ICTB2 = 2h (Timer B2 interrupt is generated with every second Timer B2 underflow) or INV01 = 1, INV00 = 1, and ICTB2 = 1h (Timer B2 interrupt is generated on the falling edge of Timer A reload control signal)
- Default value of the timer: TA41 = $\overline{m}$, TA4 = m
  Registers TA4 and TA41 are changed whenever Timer B2 interrupt is generated.
  First time: TA41 = n, TA4 = n.
  Second time: TA41 = $\overline{p}$, TA4 = p.
- Default value of registers IDB0 and IDB1
  DU0 = 1, DUB0 = 0, DU1 = 0, DUB1 = 1
  They are changed to DU0 = 1, DUB0 = 0, DU1 = 1, DUB1 = 0 by the third Timer B2 interrupt.

(b) When INV11 = 0 (three-phase mode 0)
- INV01 = 0, ICTB2 = 1h (Timer B2 interrupt is generated whenever Timer B2 underflows)
- Default value of the timer: TA4 = $\overline{m}$
  The TA4 register is changed whenever Timer B2 interrupt is generated.
  First time: TA4 = m Second time: TA4 = $\overline{n}$.
  Third time: TA4 = n Fourth time: TA = $\overline{p}$.
  Fifth time: TA4=p.
- Default value of registers IDB0 and IDB1:
  DU0 = 1, DUB0 = 0, DU1 = 0, DUB1 = 1
  They are changed to DU0 = 1, DUB0 = 0, DU1 = 1, DUB1 = 0 by the sixth Timer B2 interrupt.

Figure 16.8 Example of Triangular Wave Modulation Operation

Sawtooth Waveform as a Carrier Wave



INV14: bit in the INVC1 register

Note:
1. See **Figure 16.1 Three-Phase Motor Control Timer Functions Block Diagram**.

The above applies when INVC0 = 01XX110Xb (X varies depending on each system) and INVC1 = 010XXX00b
The following is an example of PWM output change.
- Default value of registers IDB0 and IDB1: DU0 = 0, DUB0 = 1, DU1 = 1, DUB1 = 1
  They are changed to DU0 = 1, DUB0 = 0, DU1 = 1, DUB1 = 1 by the timer B2 interrupt.

Figure 16.9 Example of Sawtooth Wave Modulation Operation

17. Serial Interface

Serial interfaces consist of eight channels: UART0 to UART2, UART5 to UART7, SI/O3, and SI/O4.

17.1 UARTi (i = 0 to 2, 5 to 7)

Each UARTi has an exclusive timer to generate a transfer clock, so it operates independently of each other.
Figures 17.1 to 17.3 show the block diagrams of UARTi. Figure 17.4 shows the UARTi Transmit / Receive Unit.

UARTi has the following modes:

- Clock synchronous serial I/O mode
- Clock asynchronous serial I/O mode (UART mode)
- Special mode 1 (I^2C mode)
- Special mode 2
- Special mode 3 (Bus collision detection function, IE mode)
- Special mode 4 (SIM mode) : UART2

Figures 17.5 to 17.11 show the UARTi-related registers.
Refer to tables for each mode for register setting.

UART6 and UART7 cannot be used in memory expansion mode or microprocessor mode.

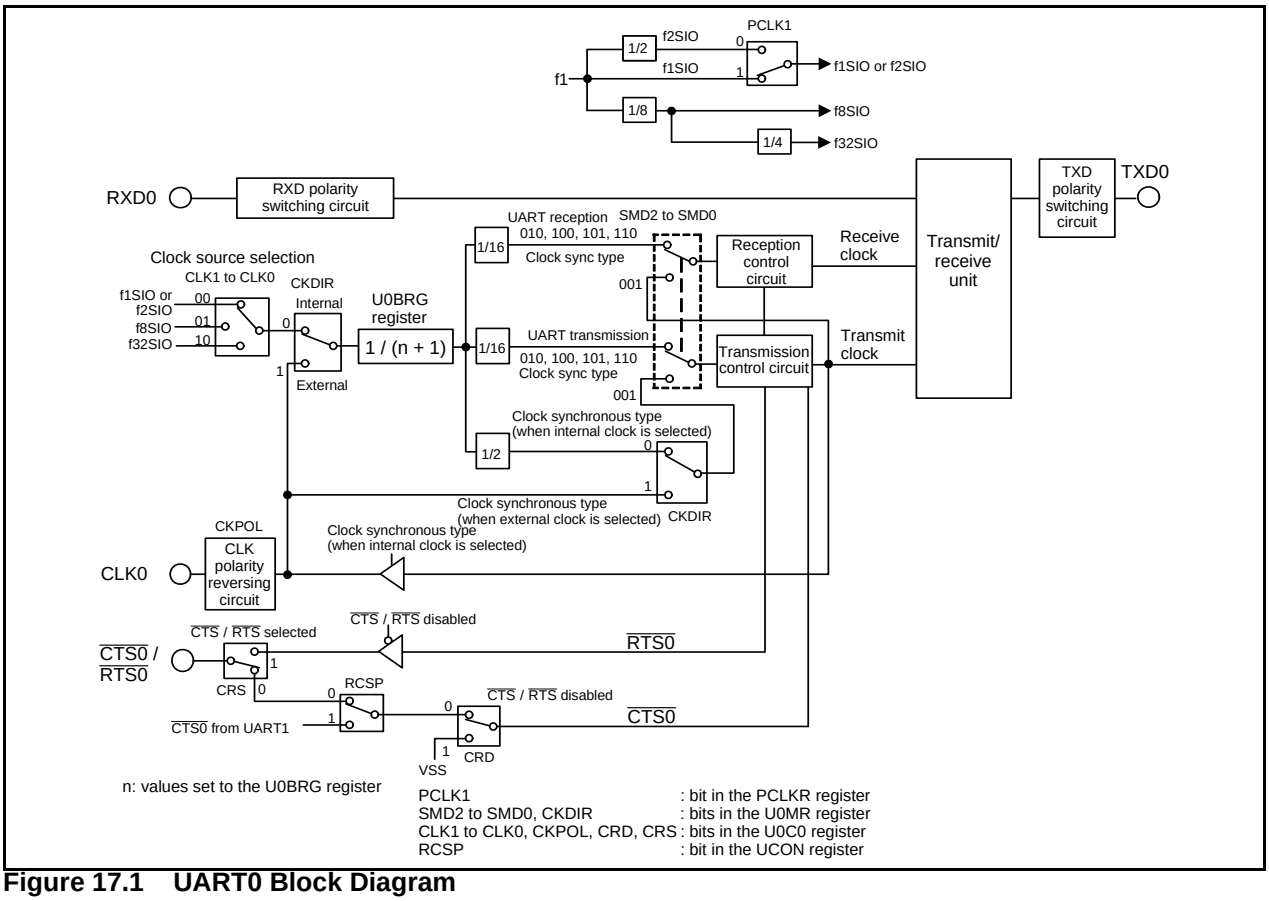


Figure 17.1 UART0 Block Diagram

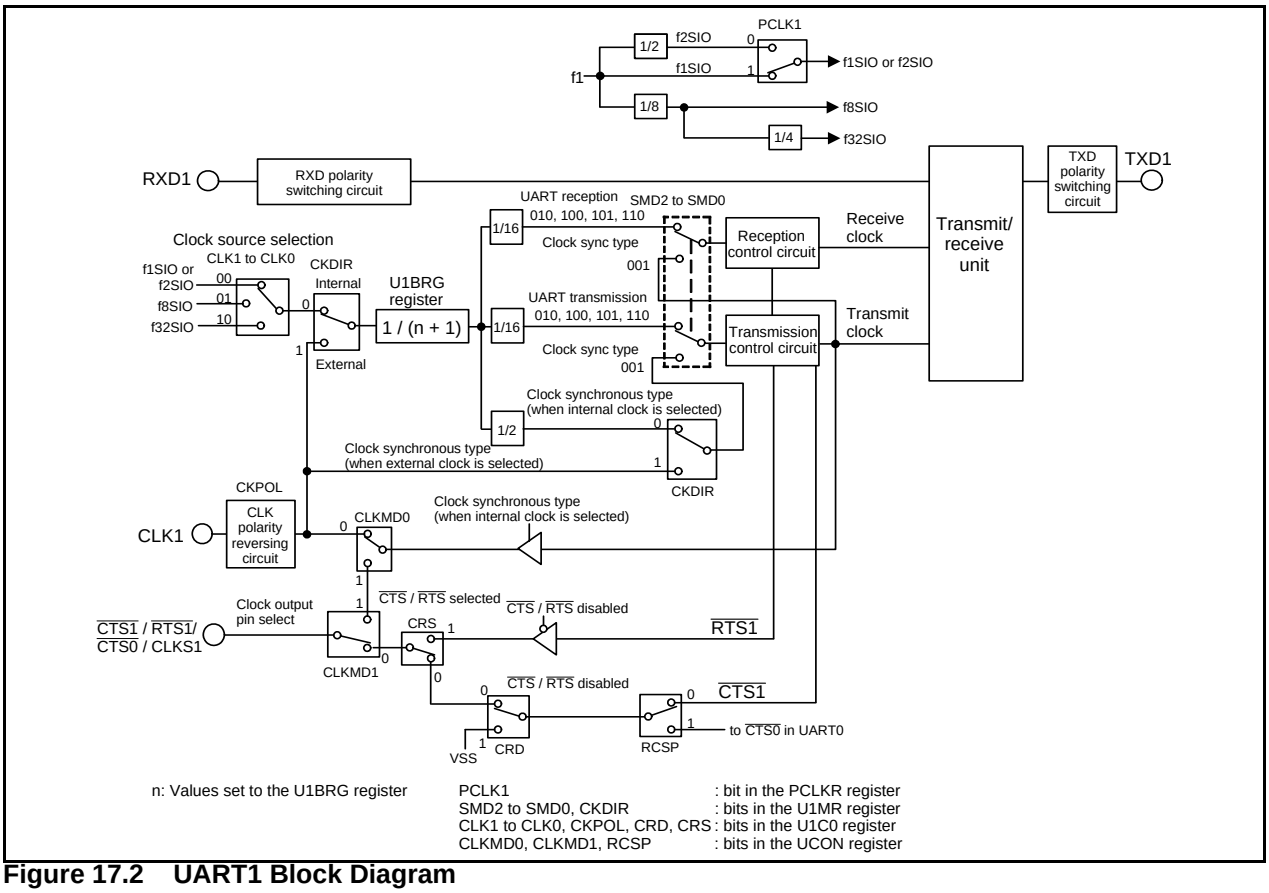
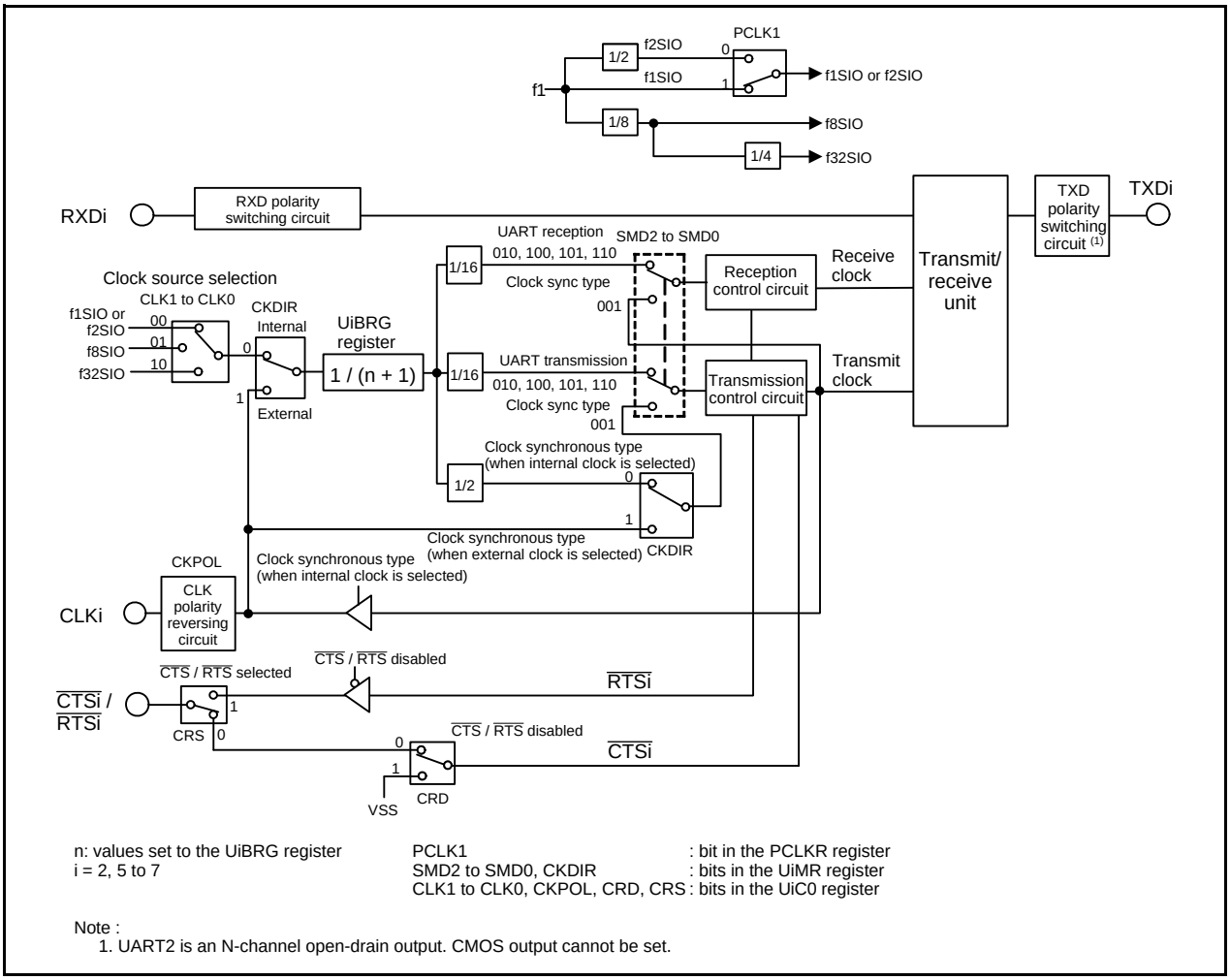


Figure 17.2 UART1 Block Diagram



n: values set to the UiBRG register
i = 2, 5 to 7

PCLK1 : bit in the PCLKR register
SMD2 to SMD0, CKDIR : bits in the UiMR register
CLK1 to CLK0, CKPOL, CRD, CRS : bits in the UiC0 register

Note :
1. UART2 is an N-channel open-drain output. CMOS output cannot be set.

Figure 17.3 UART2, and UART5 to UART7 Block Diagram

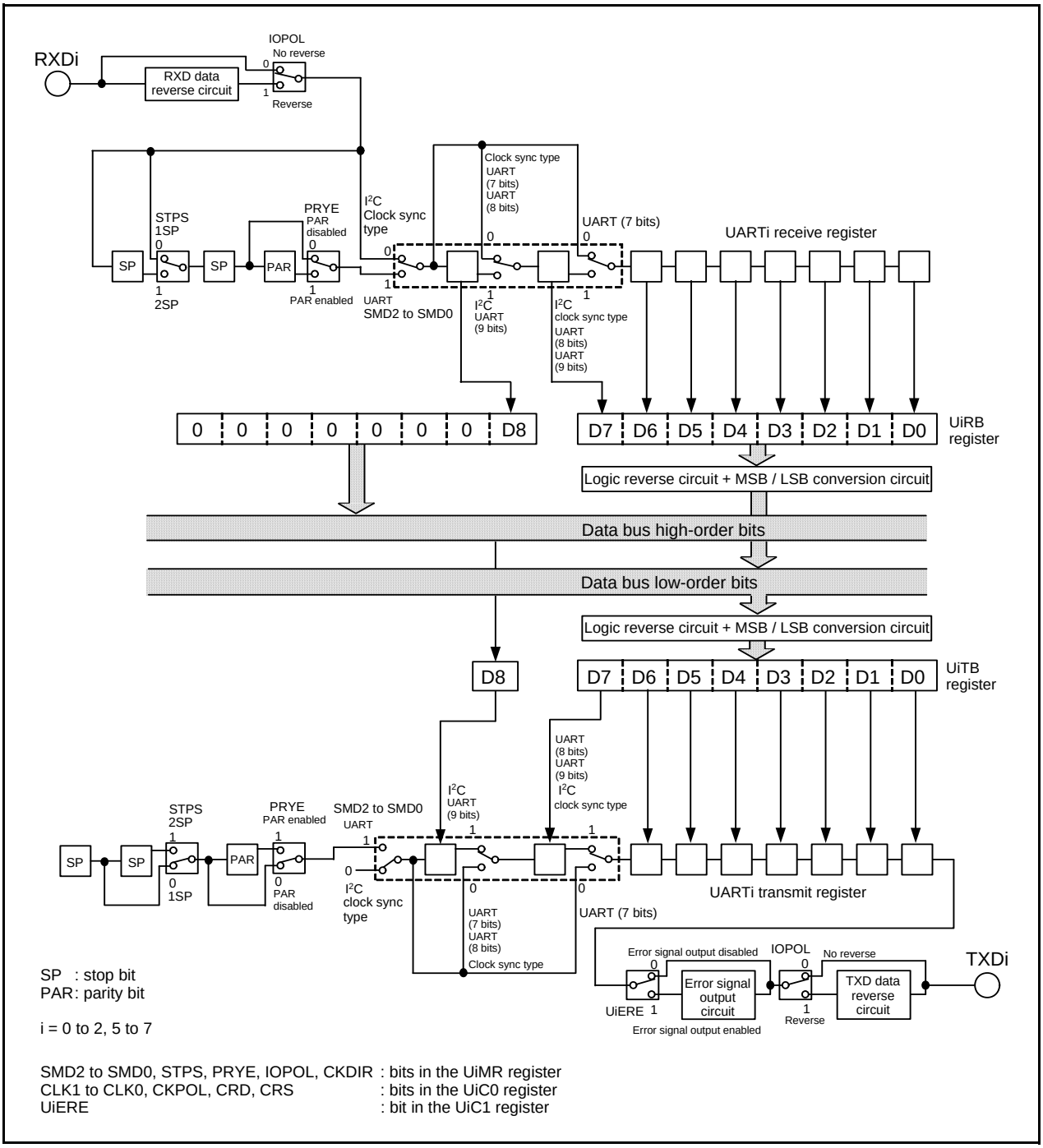
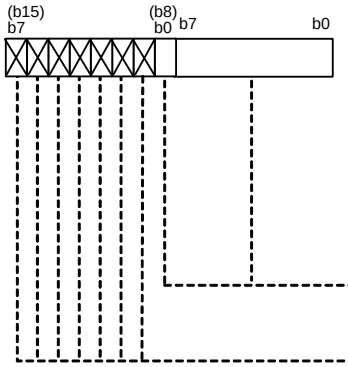


Figure 17.4 UARTi Transmit / Receive Unit

UARTi Transmit Buffer Register (i = 0 to 2, 5 to 7) (1, 2)

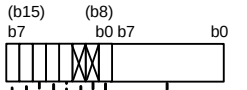


Symbol	Address	After Reset
U0TB	024Bh to 024Ah	Indeterminate
U1TB	025Bh to 025Ah	Indeterminate
U2TB	026Bh to 026Ah	Indeterminate
U5TB	028Bh to 028Ah	Indeterminate
U6TB	029Bh to 029Ah	Indeterminate
U7TB	02ABh to 02AAh	Indeterminate

Function	RW
Transmit data	WO
No register bits. If necessary, set to 0. Read as undefined value	—

Notes :
1. Use MOV instruction to write to this register.
2. When the transfer data is 9 bits long, write in 16-bit unit or write high byte then low byte in 8-bit unit.

UARTi Receive Buffer Register (i = 0 to 2, 5 to 7)



Symbol	Address	After Reset
U0RB	024Fh to 024Eh	Indeterminate
U1RB	025Fh to 025Eh	Indeterminate
U2RB	026Fh to 026Eh	Indeterminate
U5RB	028Fh to 028Eh	Indeterminate
U6RB	029Fh to 029Eh	Indeterminate
U7RB	02AFh to 02AEh	Indeterminate

Bit Symbol	Bit Name	Function	RW
— (b7-b0)	——	Receive data (D7 to D0)	RO
— (b8)	——	Receive data (D8)	RO
— (b10-b9)	No register bits. If necessary, set to 0. Read as undefined value		—
ABT	Arbitration lost detect flag (2)	0 : Not detected 1 : Detected	RW
OER	Overrun error flag (1)	0 : No overrun error 1 : Overrun error found	RO
FER	Framing error flag (1, 3)	0 : No framing error 1 : Framing error found	RO
PER	Parity error flag (1,3)	0 : No parity error 1 : Parity error found	RO
SUM	Error sum flag (1, 3)	0 : No error 1 : Error found	RO

Notes :
1. When bits SMD2 to SMD0 in the UiMR register = 000b (serial interface disabled) or the RE bit in the UiC1 register = 0 (reception disabled), all of bits SUM, PER, FER, and OER are set to 0 (no error). The SUM bit is set to 0 (no error) when all of bits PER, FER, and OER = 0 (no error). Bits PER and FER are set to 0 by reading the lower byte of the UiRB register.
2. The ABT bit is set to 0 by writing 0 in a program. (Writing a 1 has no effect.)
3. These error flags are disabled when bits SMD2 to SMD0 are set to 001b (clock synchronous serial I/O mode) or to 010b (I^2C mode). Read as undefined values.

Figure 17.5 Registers U0TB to U2TB, U5TB to U7TB, U0RB to U2RB, and U5RB to U7RB

UARTi Bit Rate Register (i = 0 to 2, 5 to 7) (1, 2, 3)

b7 b0

Symbol	Address	After Reset
U0BRG, U1BRG, U2BRG	0249h, 0259h, 0269h	Indeterminate
U5BRG, U6BRG, U7BRG	0289h, 0299h, 02A9h	Indeterminate

Function	Setting Range	RW
If set value = n, UiBRG divides the count source by n + 1	00h to FFh	WO

Notes :
1. Write to this register while serial interface is neither transmitting nor receiving.
2. Use MOV instruction to write to this register.
3. Write to this register after setting bits CLK1 to CLK0 in the UiC0 register.

UARTi Transmit / Receive Mode Register (i = 0 to 2, 5 to 7)

b7 b6 b5 b4 b3 b2 b1 b0

Symbol	Address	After Reset
U0MR, U1MR, U2MR	0248h, 0258h, 0268h	00h
U5MR, U6MR, U7MR	0288h, 0298h, 02A8h	00h

Bit Symbol	Bit Name	Function	RW
SMD0	Serial I/O mode select bit	b2 b1 b0 0 0 0 : Serial interface disabled 0 0 1 : Clock synchronous serial I/O mode 0 1 0 : I²C mode (3) 1 0 0 : UART mode transfer data 7 bits long 1 0 1 : UART mode transfer data 8 bits long 1 1 0 : UART mode transfer data 9 bits long Do not set except above	RW
SMD1			RW
SMD2			RW
CKDIR	Internal / external clock select bit	0 : Internal clock 1 : External clock (1)	RW
STPS	Stop bit length select bit	0 : 1 stop bit 1 : 2 stop bits	RW
PRY	Odd / even parity select bit	Valid when PRYE = 1 0 : Odd parity 1 : Even parity	RW
PRYE	Parity enable bit	0 : Parity disabled 1 : Parity enabled	RW
IOPOL	TXD, RXD I/O polarity reverse bit	0 : No reverse 1 : Reverse	RW

Note :
1. Set the corresponding port direction bit for each CLKi pin to 0 (input mode).
2. To receive data, set the corresponding port direction bit for each RXDi pin to 0 (input mode).
3. Set the corresponding port direction bit for pins SCLi and SDAi to 0 (input mode).

Figure 17.6 Registers U0BRG to U2BRG, U5BRG to U7BRG, U0MR to U2MR, and U5MR to U7MR

UARTi Transmit / Receive Control Register 0 (i = 0 to 2, 5 to 7)

b7 b6 b5 b4 b3 b2 b1 b0

Symbol	Address	After Reset
U0C0, U1C0, U2C0	024Ch, 025Ch, 026Ch	00001000b
U5C0, U6C0, U7C0	028Ch, 029Ch, 02ACh	00001000b

Bit Symbol	Bit Name	Function	RW
CLK0	UiBRG count source select bit (6)	b1 b0 0 0 : f1SIO or f2SIO is selected (5) 0 1 : f8SIO is selected 1 0 : f32SIO is selected 1 1 : Do not set to this value	RW
CLK1			RW
CRS	$\overline{CTS}$ / $\overline{RTS}$ function select bit (4)	Valid when CRD = 0 0 : $\overline{CTS}$ function selected (1) 1 : $\overline{RTS}$ function selected	RW
TXEPT	Transmit register empty flag	0 : Data present in transmit register (during transmission) 1 : No data present in transmit register (transmission completed)	RO
CRD	$\overline{CTS}$ / $\overline{RTS}$ disable bit	0 : $\overline{CTS}$ / $\overline{RTS}$ function enabled 1 : $\overline{CTS}$ / $\overline{RTS}$ function disabled (P6_0, P6_4, P7_3, P8_1, P1_0, and P4_4 can be used as I/O ports)	RW
NCH	Data output select bit (2)	0 : Pins TXDi / SDAi and SCLi are CMOS output 1 : Pins TXDi / SDAi and SCLi are N-channel open-drain output	RW
CKPOL	CLK polarity select bit	0 : Transmit data is output at the falling edge of transfer clock and receive data is input at the rising edge 1 : Transmit data is output at the rising edge of transfer clock and receive data is input at the falling edge	RW
UFORM	Transfer format select bit (3)	0 : LSB first 1 : MSB first	RW

Notes :
1. Set the corresponding port direction bit for each $\overline{CTSi}$ pin to 0 (input mode).
2. TXD2 / SDA2 and SCL2 are N-channel open-drain output. Cannot be set to the CMOS output. No NCH bit in the U2C0 register is assigned. If necessary, set to 0.
3. The UFORM bit is enabled when bits SMD2 to SMD0 in the UiMR register are set to 001b (clock synchronous serial I/O mode), or 101b (UART mode, 8-bit transfer data).
   Set this bit to 1 when bits SMD2 to SMD0 are set to 010b (I^2C mode), and to 0 when bits SMD2 to SMD0 are set to 100b (UART mode, 7-bit transfer data) or 110b (UART mode, 9-bit transfer data).
4. $\overline{CTS1}$ / $\overline{RTS1}$ can be used when the CLKMD1 bit in the UCON register = 0 (only CLK1 output) and the RCSP bit in the UCON register = 0 ($\overline{CTS0}$ / $\overline{RTS0}$ not separated).
5. Selected by the PCLK1 bit in the PCLKR register.
6. When changing bits CLK1 and CLK0, set the UiBRG register.

Figure 17.7 Registers U0C0 to U2C0 and U5C0 to U7C0

UARTi Transmit / Receive Control Register 1 (i = 0, 1)

b7 b6 b5 b4 b3 b2 b1 b0

Symbol	Address	After Reset
U0C1, U1C1	024Dh, 025Dh	00XX0010b

Bit Symbol	Bit Name	Function	RW
TE	Transmit enable bit	0 : Transmission disabled 1 : Transmission enabled	RW
TI	Transmit buffer empty flag	0 : Data present in UiTB register 1 : No data present in UiTB register	RO
RE	Receive enable bit	0 : Reception disabled 1 : Reception enabled	RW
RI	Receive complete flag	0 : Data present in UiRB register 1 : No data present in UiRB register	RO
— (b5-b4)	No register bits. If necessary, set to 0. Read as undefined value		—
UiLCH	Data logic select bit (1)	0 : No reverse 1 : Reverse	RW
UiERE	Error signal output enable bit	0 : Output disabled 1 : Output enabled	RW

Note :
1. The UiLCH bit enabled when bits SMD2 to SMD0 in the UiMR register are set to 001b (clock sychronous serial I/O mode), 100b (UART mode, 7-bit transfer data), or 101b (UART mode, 8-bit transfer data). Set this bit to 0 when bits SMD2 to SMD0 are set to 010b (I^2C mode) or 110b (UART mode, 9-bit transfer data).

UARTi Transmit / Receive Control Register 1 (i = 2, 5 to 7)

b7 b6 b5 b4 b3 b2 b1 b0

Symbol	Address	After Reset
U2C1	026Dh	00000010b
U5C1, U6C1, U7C1	028Dh, 029Dh, 02ADh	00000010b

Bit symbol	Bit Name	Function	RW
TE	Transmit enable bit	0 : Transmission disabled 1 : Transmission enabled	RW
TI	Transmit buffer empty flag	0 : Data present in UiTB register 1 : No data present in UiTB register	RO
RE	Receive enable bit	0 : Reception disabled 1 : Reception enabled	RW
RI	Receive complete flag	0 : No data present in UiRB register 1 : Data present in UiRB register	RO
UiIRS	UARTi transmit interrupt source select bit	0 : UiTB register empty (TI = 1) 1 : Transmit completed (TXEPT = 1)	RW
UiRRM	UARTi continuous receive mode enable bit	0 : Continuous receive mode disabled 1 : Continuous receive mode enabled	RW
UiLCH	Data logic select bit (1)	0 : No reverse 1 : Reverse	RW
UiERE	Error signal output enable bit	0 : Output disabled 1 : Output enabled	RW

Note :
1. The UiLCH bit is enabled when bits SMD2 to SMD0 in the UiMR register are set to 001b (clock synchronous serial I/O mode), 100b (UART mode, 7-bit transfer data), or 101b (UART mode, 8-bit transfer data). Set this bit to 0 when bits SMD2 to SMD0 are set to 010b (I^2C mode) or 110b (UART mode, 9-bit transfer data).

Figure 17.8 Registers U0C1 to U2C1 and U5C1 to U7C1

UART Transmit / Receive Control Register 2

b7	b6	b5	b4	b3	b2	b1	b0
X							

Symbol	Address	After Reset
UCON	0250h	X0000000b

Bit symbol	Bit Name	Function	RW
U0IRS	UART0 transmit interrupt source select bit	0 : Transmit buffer empty (TI = 1) 1 : Transmission completed (TXEPT = 1)	RW
U1IRS	UART1 transmit interrupt source select bit	0 : Transmit buffer empty (TI = 1) 1 : Transmission completed (TXEPT = 1)	RW
U0RRM	UART0 continuous receive mode enable bit	0 : Continuous receive mode disabled 1 : Continuous receive mode enabled	RW
U1RRM	UART1 continuous receive mode enable bit	0 : Continuous receive mode disabled 1 : Continuous receive mode enabled	RW
CLKMD0	UART1CLK, CLKS select bit 0	Valid when CLKMD1 = 1 0 : Clock output from CLK1 1 : Clock output from CLKS1	RW
CLKMD1	UART1CLK, CLKS select bit 1 (1)	0 : CLK output is only from CLK1 1 : Transfer clock output from multiple-pin output function selected	RW
RCSP	Separate UART0 $\overline{CTS}$ / $\overline{RTS}$ bit	0 : $\overline{CTS}$ / $\overline{RTS}$ shared pin 1 : $\overline{CTS}$ / $\overline{RTS}$ separated ($\overline{CTS0}$ supplied from the P6_4 pin)	RW
— (b7)	No register bit. If necessary, set to 0. Read as undefined value		—

Note :
1. To use the multiple transfer clock output pin function, set the CKDIR bit in the U1MR register to 0 (internal clock).

UARTi Special Mode Register (i = 0 to 2, 5 to 7)

b7	b6	b5	b4	b3	b2	b1	b0
X				0			

Symbol	Address	After Reset
U0SMR, U1SMR, U2SMR	0247h, 0257h, 0267h	X0000000b
U5SMR, U6SMR, U7SMR	0287h, 0297h, 02A7h	X0000000b

Bit Symbol	Bit Name	Function	RW
IICM	I^2C mode select bit	0 : Other than I^2C mode 1 : I^2C mode	RW
ABC	Arbitration lost detect flag control bit	0 : Update per bit 1 : Update per byte	RW
BBS	Bus busy flag (1)	0 : Stop-condition detected 1 : Start-condition detected (busy)	RW
— (b3)	Reserved bit	Set to 0	RW
ABSCS	Bus collision detect sampling clock select bit	0 : Rising edge of transfer clock 1 : Underflow signal of Timer Aj (2)	RW
ACSE	Auto clear function select bit of transmit enable bit	0 : No auto clear function 1 : Auto clear at occurrence of bus collision	RW
SSS	Transmit start condition select bit	0 : Not synchronized to RXDi 1 : Synchronized to RXDi (3)	RW
— (b7)	No register bit. If necessary, set to 0. Read as undefined value		—

Notes :
1. The BBS bit is set to 0 by writing a 0 in a program (Writing a 1 has no effect).
2. Underflow signal of Timer A3 in UART0 and UART6, underflow signal of Timer A4 in UART1 and UART7, and underflow signal of Timer A0 in UART2 and UART5
3. When a transfer begins, the SSS bit is set to 0 (not synchronized to RXDi).

Figure 17.9 Registers UCON, U0SMR to U2SMR, and U5SMR to U7SMR

UARTi Special Mode Register 2 (i = 0 to 2, 5 to 7)

b7 b6 b5 b4 b3 b2 b1 b0	Symbol	Address	After Reset
	U0SMR2, U1SMR2, U2SMR2 U5SMR2, U6SMR2, U7SMR2	0246h, 0256h, 0266h 0286h,0296h,02A6h	X0000000b X0000000b

Bit Symbol	Bit Name	Function	RW
IICM2	I^2C mode select bit 2	See **Table 17.13 I^2C Mode Functions**	RW
CSC	Clock synchronization bit	0 : Disabled 1 : Enabled	RW
SWC	SCL wait output bit	0 : Disabled 1 : Enabled	RW
ALS	SDA output stop bit	0 : Disabled 1 : Enabled	RW
STAC	UARTi initialization bit	0 : Disabled 1 : Enabled	RW
SWC2	SCL wait output bit 2	0: Transfer clock 1: "L" output	RW
SDHI	SDA output disable bit	0: Enabled 1: Disabled (high-impedance)	RW
— (b7)	No register bit. If necessary, set to 0. Read as undefined value		—

UARTi Special Mode Register 3 (i = 0 to 2, 5 to 7)

b7 b6 b5 b4 b3 b2 b1 b0	Symbol	Address	After Reset
	U0SMR3, U1SMR3, U2SMR3 U5SMR3, U6SMR3, U7SMR3	0245h, 0255h, 0265h 0285h, 0295h, 02A5h	000X0X0Xb 000X0X0Xb

Bit Symbol	Bit Name	Function	RW
— (b0)	No register bit. If necessary, set to 0. Read as undefined value		—
CKPH	Clock phase set bit	0 : Without clock delay 1 : With clock delay	RW
— (b2)	No register bit. If necessary, set to 0. Read as undefined value		—
NODC	Clock output select bit	0 : CLKi is CMOS output 1 : CLKi is N-channel open drain output	RW
— (b4)	No register bit. If necessary, set to 0. Read as undefined value		—
DL0	SDAi digital delay setup bit (1, 2)	b7 b6 b5 0 0 0 : Without delay 0 0 1 : 1 to 2 cycle(s) of UiBRG count source 0 1 0 : 2 to 3 cycles of UiBRG count source 0 1 1 : 3 to 4 cycles of UiBRG count source 1 0 0 : 4 to 5 cycles of UiBRG count source 1 0 1 : 5 to 6 cycles of UiBRG count source 1 1 0 : 6 to 7 cycles of UiBRG count source 1 1 1 : 7 to 8 cycles of UiBRG count source	RW
DL1			RW
DL2			RW

Notes :
1. Bits DL2 to DL0 are used to generate a delay in SDAi output by digital means during I^2C mode. In other than I^2C mode, set these bits to 000b (no delay).
2. The amount of delay varies with the load on pins SCLi and SDAi. Also, when using an external clock, the amount of delay increases by about 100 ns.

Figure 17.10 Registers U0SMR2 to U2SMR2, U5SMR2 to U7SMR2, U0SMR3 to U2SMR3, and U5SMR3 to U7SMR3

UARTi Special Mode Register 4 (i = 0 to 2, 5 to 7)

b7 b6 b5 b4 b3 b2 b1 b0

Symbol	Address	After Reset
U0SMR4, U1SMR4, U2SMR4	0244h, 0254h, 0264h	00h
U5SMR4, U6SMR4, U7SMR4	0284h, 0294h, 02A4h	00h

Bit Symbol	Bit Name	Function	RW
STAREQ	Start condition generate bit (1)	0 : Clear 1 : Start	RW
RSTAREQ	Restart condition generate bit (1)	0 : Clear 1 : Start	RW
STPREQ	Stop condition generate bit (1)	0 : Clear 1 : Start	RW
STSPSEL	SCL, SDA output select bit	0 : Start and stop conditions not output 1 : Start and stop conditions output	RW
ACKD	ACK data bit	0 : ACK 1 : NACK	RW
ACKC	ACK data output enable bit	0 : Serial interface data output 1 : ACK data output	RW
SCLHI	SCL output stop enable bit	0 : Disabled 1 : Enabled	RW
SWC9	SCL wait bit 3	0 : SCL “L” hold disabled 1 : SCL “L” hold enabled	RW

Note :
1. Set to 0 when each condition is generated.

Figure 17.11 Registers U0SMR4 to U2SMR4 and U5SMR4 to U7SMR4

17.1.1 Clock Synchronous Serial I/O Mode

The clock synchronous serial I/O mode uses a transfer clock to transmit and receive data. Table 17.1 lists the Clock Synchronous Serial I/O Mode Specifications. Table 17.2 lists Registers to Be Used and Settings in Clock Synchronous Serial I/O Mode.

Table 17.1 Clock Synchronous Serial I/O Mode Specifications

Item	Specification
Transfer Data Format	Transfer data length: 8 bits
Transfer Clock	• CKDIR bit in the UiMR register = 0 (internal clock): fj / (2(n+1)) fj = f1SIO, f2SIO, f8SIO, f32SIO n = setting value of UiBRG register 00h to FFh • CKDIR bit = 1 (external clock) : input from CLKi pin
Transmission, Reception Control	Selectable from $\overline{CTS}$ function, $\overline{RTS}$ function or $\overline{CTS}$ / $\overline{RTS}$ function disable
Transmission Start Condition	Before transmission starts, satisfy the following requirements (1) • The TE bit in the UiC1 register = 1 (transmission enabled) • The TI bit in the UiC1 register = 0 (data present in UiTB register) • If $\overline{CTS}$ function is selected, input on the $\overline{CTSi}$ pin = “L”
Reception Start Condition	Before reception starts, satisfy the following requirements (1) • The RE bit in the UiC1 register = 1 (reception enabled) • The TE bit in the UiC1 register = 1 (transmission enabled) • The TI bit in the UiC1 register = 0 (data present and dummy written in the UiTB register)
Interrupt Request Generation Timing	For transmission, one of the following conditions can be selected • The UiIRS bit (3) = 0 (transmit buffer empty): when transferring data from the UiTB register to the UARTi transmit register (at start of transmission) • The UiIRS bit =1 (transfer completed): when the serial interface finished sending data from the UARTi transmit register For reception • When transferring data from the UARTi receive register to the UiRB register (at completion of reception)
Error Detection	Overrun error (2) This error occurs if the serial interface started receiving the next data before reading the UiRB register and received the 7th bit of the next data
Select Function	• CLK polarity selection Transfer data input / output can be chosen to occur synchronously with the rising or the falling edge of the transfer clock • LSB first, MSB first selection Whether to start sending / receiving data beginning with bit 0 or beginning with bit 7 can be selected • Continuous receive mode selection Reception is enabled immediately by reading the UiRB register • Switching serial data logic This function reverses the logic value of the transmit / receive data • Transfer clock output from multiple pins selection (UART1) The output pin can be selected in a program from two UART1 transfer clock pins that have been set • Separate $\overline{CTS}$ / $\overline{RTS}$ pins (UART0) $\overline{CTS0}$ and $\overline{RTS0}$ are input / output from separate pins

i = 0 to 2, 5 to 7

Notes:

1. When an external clock is selected, the conditions must be met while if the CKPOL bit in the UiC0 register = 0 (transmit data output at the falling edge and the receive data taken in at the rising edge of the transfer clock), the external clock is in the high state; if the CKPOL bit in the UiC0 register = 1 (transmit data output at the rising edge and the receive data taken in at the falling edge of the transfer clock), the external clock is in the low state.
2. If an overrun error occurs, the receive data of the UiRB register will be indeterminate. The IR bit in the SiRIC register does not change to 1 (interrupt requested).
3. Bits U0IRS and U1IRS correspond to bits 0 and 1 in the UCON register respectively. Bits U2IRS, U5IRS, U6IRS, and U7IRS are in registers U2C1, U5C1, U6C1, and U7C1 respectively.

Table 17.2 Registers to Be Used and Settings in Clock Synchronous Serial I/O Mode

Register	Bit	Function
UiTB (3)	0 to 7	Set transmission data
UiRB (3)	0 to 7	Reception data can be read
	OER	Overrun error flag
UiBRG	0 to 7	Set a bit rate
UiMR (3)	SMD2 to SMD0	Set to 001b
	CKDIR	Select the internal clock or external clock
	IOPOL	Set to 0
UiC0	CLK1 to CLK0	Select the count source for the UiBRG register
	CRS	Select either $\overline{CTS}$ or $\overline{RTS}$ to use functions
	TXEPT	Transmit register empty flag
	CRD	Enable or disable the $\overline{CTS}$ or $\overline{RTS}$ function
	NCH	Select TXDi pin output mode (2)
	CKPOL	Select the transfer clock polarity
	UFORM	Select the LSB first or MSB first
UiC1	TE	Set this bit to 1 to enable transmission / reception
	TI	Transmit buffer empty flag
	RE	Set this bit to 1 to enable reception
	RI	Reception complete flag
	UjIRS (1)	Select the source of UARTj transmit interrupt
	UjRRM (1)	Set this bit to 1 to use continuous reception mode
	UiLCH	Set this bit to 1 to use inverted data logic
	UiERE	Set to 0
UiSMR	0 to 7	Set to 0
UiSMR2	0 to 7	Set to 0
UiSMR3	0 to 2	Set to 0
	NODC	Select clock output mode
	4 to 7	Set to 0
UiSMR4	0 to 7	Set to 0
UCON	U0IRS	Select the source of UART0 transmit interrupt
	U1IRS	Select the source of UART1 transmit interrupt
	U0RRM	To use UART0, set this bit to 1 to use continuous reception mode
	U1RRM	To use UART1, set this bit to 1 to use continuous reception mode
	CLKMD0	Select the transfer clock output pin when CLKMD1 = 1
	CLKMD1	Set this bit to 1 to output UART1 transfer clock from two pins
	RCSP	Set this bit to 1 to accept as input the $\overline{CTS0}$ signal of UART0 from the P6_4 pin
	7	Set to 0

i = 0 to 2, 5 to 7
j = 2, 5 to 7
Notes:
1. Set bits 4 and 5 in registers U0C1 and U1C1 to 0. Bits U0IRS, U1IRS, U0RRM, and U1RRM are in the UCON register.
2. The TXD2 pin is N channel open-drain output. Set the NCH bit in the U2C0 register to 0.
3. Set bits not listed above to 0 when writing to the registers in clock synchronous serial I/O mode.

Table 17.3 lists the functions of the input / output pins during clock synchronous serial I/O mode. Table 17.3 shows pin functions for the case where the multiple transfer clock output pin select function is not selected. Table 17.4 lists the P6_4 Pin Functions during clock synchronous serial I/O mode.
Note that for a period from when UARTi operating mode is selected to when transfer starts, the TXDi pin outputs “H” (If the N-channel open-drain output is selected, this pin is in high-impedance state).

Table 17.3 Pin Functions during Clock Synchronous Serial I/O Mode (Multiple Transfer Clock Output Pin Function Not Selected)

Pin Name	Function	Method of Selection
TXDi	Serial data output	(Outputs dummy data when performing reception only)
RXDi	Serial data input	Set the port direction bit corresponding to the RXDi pin = 0 (can be used as an input port when performing transmission only)
CLKi	Transfer clock output	The CKDIR bit in the UiMR register = 0
	Transfer clock input	The CKDIR bit in the UiMR register = 1 Set the port direction bit corresponding to the CLKi pin = 0
$\overline{\text{CTSi}}$ / $\overline{\text{RTSi}}$	$\overline{\text{CTS}}$ input	The CRD bit in the UiC0 register = 0 The CRS bit in the UiC0 register = 0 Set the port direction bit corresponding to the $\overline{\text{CTSi}}$ pin = 0
	$\overline{\text{RTS}}$ output	The CRD bit in the UiC0 register = 0 The CRS bit in the UiC0 register = 1
	I/O port	The CRD bit in the UiC0 register = 1

i = 0 to 2, 5 to 7

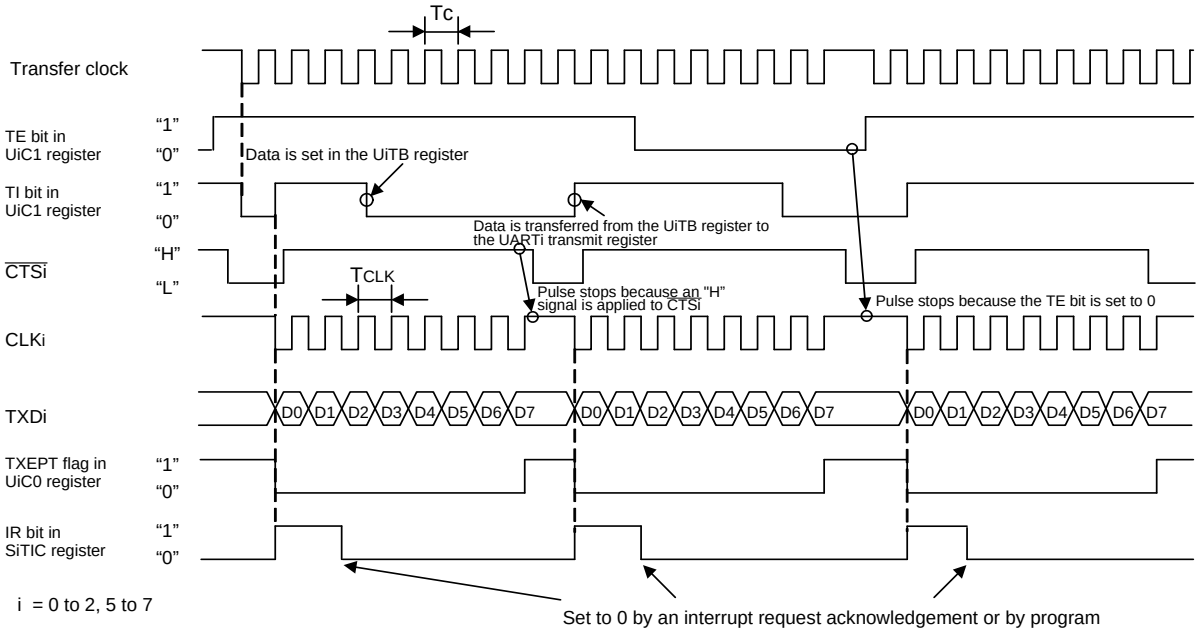
Table 17.4 P6_4 Pin Functions during Clock Synchronous Serial I/O Mode

Pin Function	Bit Set Value					
	U1C0 Register		UCON Register			PD6 Register
	CRD	CRS	RCSP	CLKMD1	CLKMD0	PD6_4
P6_4	1	-	0	0	-	Input: 0, Output: 1
$\overline{\text{CTS1}}$	0	0	0	0	-	0
$\overline{\text{RTS1}}$	0	1	0	0	-	-
$\overline{\text{CTS0}}$ (1)	0	0	1	0	-	0
CLKS1	-	-	-	1 (2)	1	-

- indicates either 0 or 1

Notes:
1. In addition to this, set the CRD bit in the U0C0 register to 0 ($\overline{\text{CTS0}}$ / $\overline{\text{RTS0}}$ enabled) and the CRS bit in the U0C0 register to 1 ($\overline{\text{RTS0}}$ selected).
2. When the CLKMD1 bit = 1 and the CLKMD0 bit = 0, the following logic levels are output:
   • High if the CLKPOL bit in the U1C0 register = 0
   • Low if the CLKPOL bit in the U1C0 register = 1

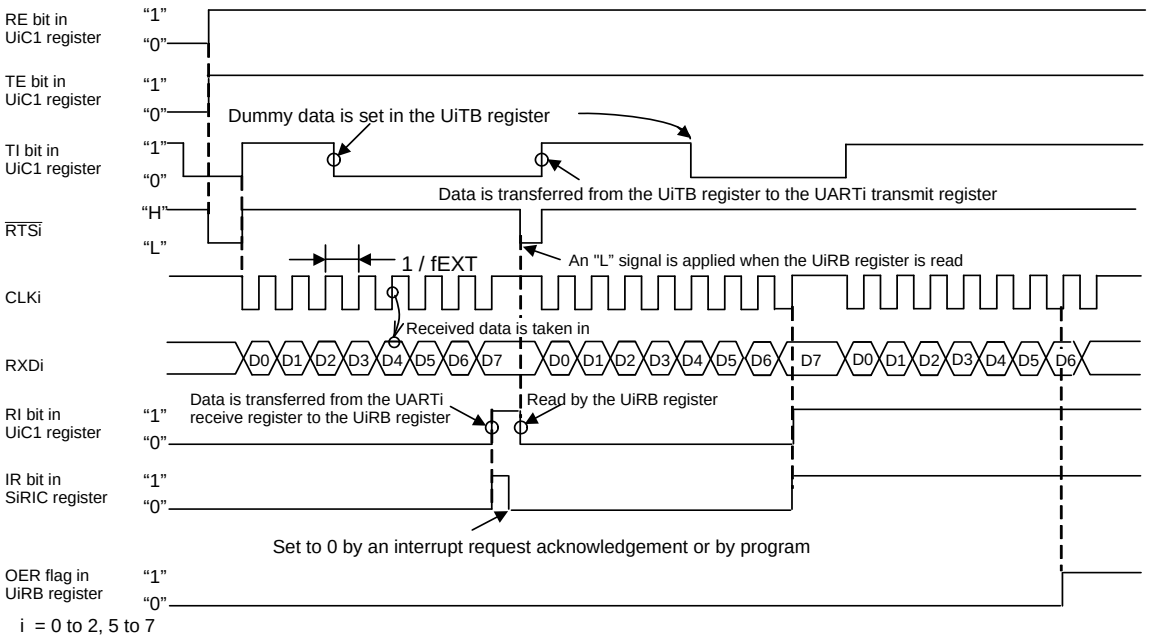
(1) Example of Transmit Timing (when internal clock is selected)



The above timing diagram applies to the case where the register bits are set as follows:
- The CKDIR bit in the UiMR register = 0 (internal clock)
- The CRD bit in the UiC0 register = 0 (CTS / RTS enabled), the CRS bit = 0 (CTS selected)
- The CKPOL bit in the UiC0 register = 0 (transmit data output at the falling edge and receive data taken in at the rising edge of the transfer clock)
- The UiIRS bit in the UiC1 register = 0 (an interrupt request occurs when the UiTB register becomes empty)

$T_C = T_{CLK} = 2(n + 1) / fj$
fj: frequency of UiBRG count source (f1SIO, f2SIO, f8SIO, f32SIO)
n: value set to the UiBRG register

(2) Example of Receive Timing (when external clock is selected)



The above timing diagram applies to the case where the register bits are set as follows:
- The CKDIR bit in the UiMR register = 1 (external clock)
- The CRD bit in the UiC0 register = 0 (CTS / RTS enabled), the CRS bit = 1 (RTS selected)
- The CKPOL bit in the UiC0 register = 0 (transmit data output at the falling edge and receive data taken in at the rising edge of the transfer clock)

Make sure the following conditions are met when input to the CLKi pin before receiving data is high:
- The TE bit in the UiC0 register = 1 (transmit enabled)
- The RE bit in the UiC1 register = 1 (receive enabled)
- Write dummy data to the UiTB register

fEXT: frequency of the external clock

Figure 17.12 Transmit and Receive Operation during Clock Synchronous Serial I/O Mode

17.1.1.1 Counter Measure for Communication Error

If a communication error occurs while transmitting or receiving in clock synchronous serial I/O mode, follow the procedures below.

• Resetting the UiRB register (i = 0 to 2, 5 to 7)

(1) Set the RE bit in the UiC1 register to 0 (reception disabled)
(2) Set bits SMD2 to SMD0 in the UiMR register to 000b (serial interface disabled)
(3) Set bits SMD2 to SMD0 in the UiMR register to 001b (clock synchronous serial I/O mode)
(4) Set the RE bit in the UiC1 register to 1 (reception enabled)

• Resetting the UiTB register (i = 0 to 2, 5 to 7)

(1) Set bits SMD2 to SMD0 in the UiMR register to 000b (serial interface disabled)
(2) Set bits SMD2 to SMD0 in the UiMR register to 001b (clock synchronous serial I/O mode)
(3) A 1 is written to the RE bit in the UiC1 register (transmission enabled), regardless of the value of the TE bit in the UiCi register

17.1.1.2 CLK Polarity Select Function

Use the CKPOL bit in the UiC0 register (i = 0 to 2, 5 to 7) to select the transfer clock polarity. Figure 17.13 shows the Transfer Clock Polarity.

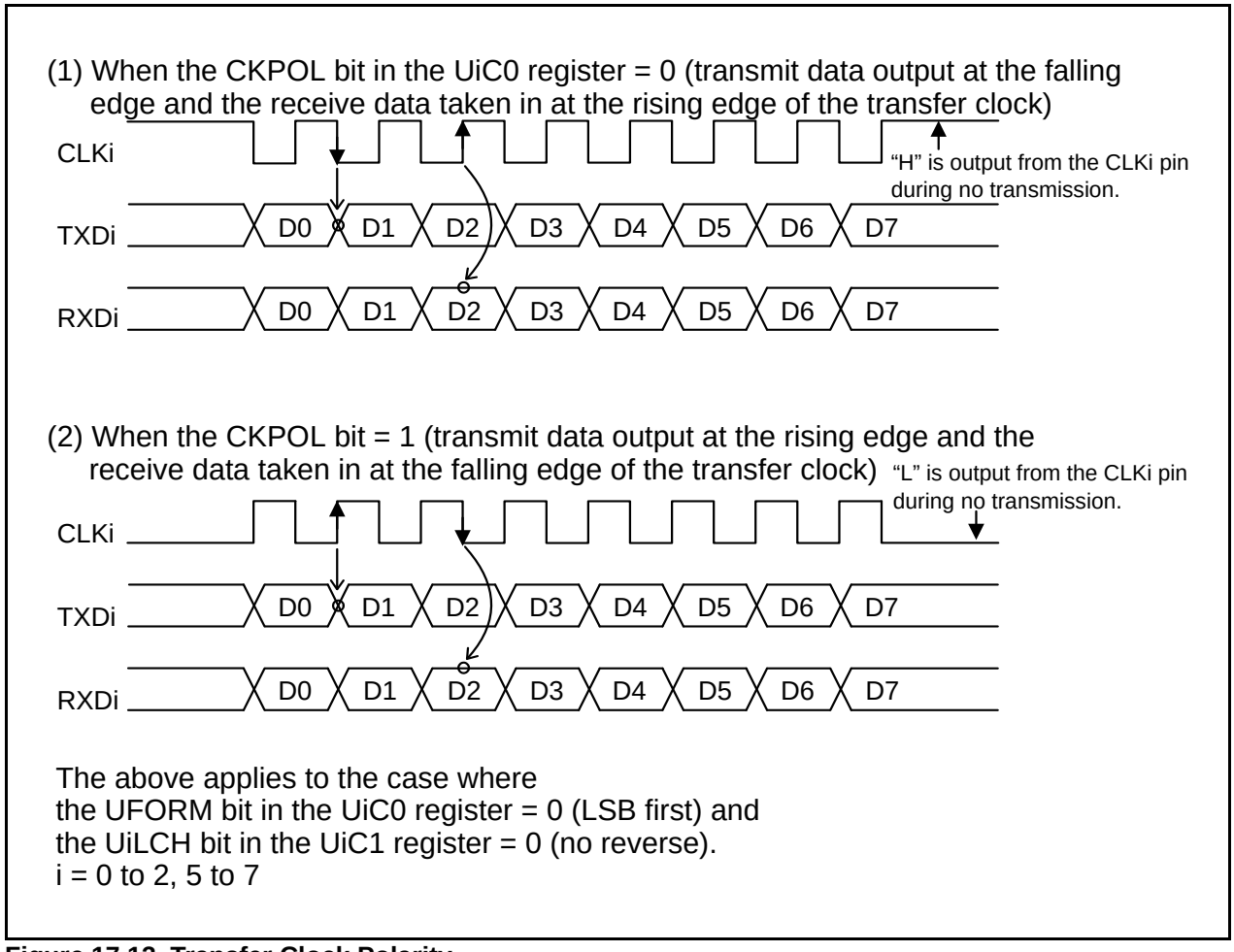
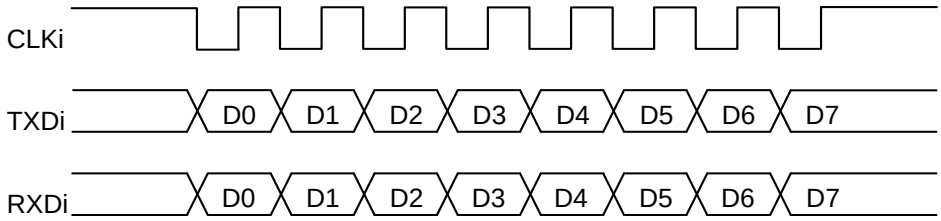


Figure 17.13 Transfer Clock Polarity

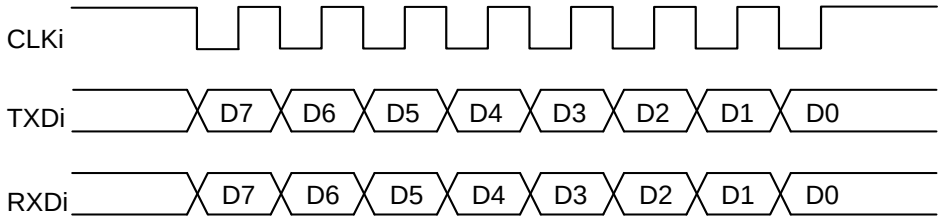
17.1.1.3 LSB First / MSB First Select Function

Use the UFORM bit in the UiC0 register (i = 0 to 2, 5 to 7) to select the transfer format. Figure 17.14 shows the Transfer Format.

(1) When the UFORM Bit in the UiC0 Register = 0 (LSB First)



(2) When the UFORM Bit in the UiC0 Register = 1 (MSB First)



The above applies to the case where
the CKPOL bit in the UiC0 register = 0 (transmit data output at the falling edge and the receive data taken in at the rising edge of the transfer clock), and
the UiLCH bit in the UiC1 register = 0 (no reverse).

i = 0 to 2, 5 to 7

Figure 17.14 Transfer Format

17.1.1.4 Continuous Reception Mode

In continuous reception mode, receive operation becomes enabled when the receive buffer register is read. It is not necessary to write dummy data into the transmit buffer register to enable receive operation in this mode. However, a dummy read of the receive buffer register is required when starting the operating mode.

When the UiRRM bit (i = 0 to 2, 5 to 7) = 1 (continuous reception mode), the TI bit in the UiC1 register is set to 0 (data present in the UiTB register) by reading the UiRB register. In this case, i.e., UiRRM bit = 1, do not write dummy data to the UiTB register in a program. Bits U0RRM and U1RRM correspond to bits 2 and 3 in the UCON register, respectively. Bits U2RRM, U5RRM, U6RRM, and U7RRM are in registers U2C1, U5C1, U6C1, and U7C1.

17.1.1.5 Serial Data Logic Switching Function

When the UiLCH bit in the UiC1 register (i = 0 to 2, 5 to 7) = 1 (reverse), the data written to the UiTB register has its logic reversed before being transmitted. Similarly, the received data has its logic reversed when read from the UiRB register. Figure 17.15 shows Serial Data Logic Switching.

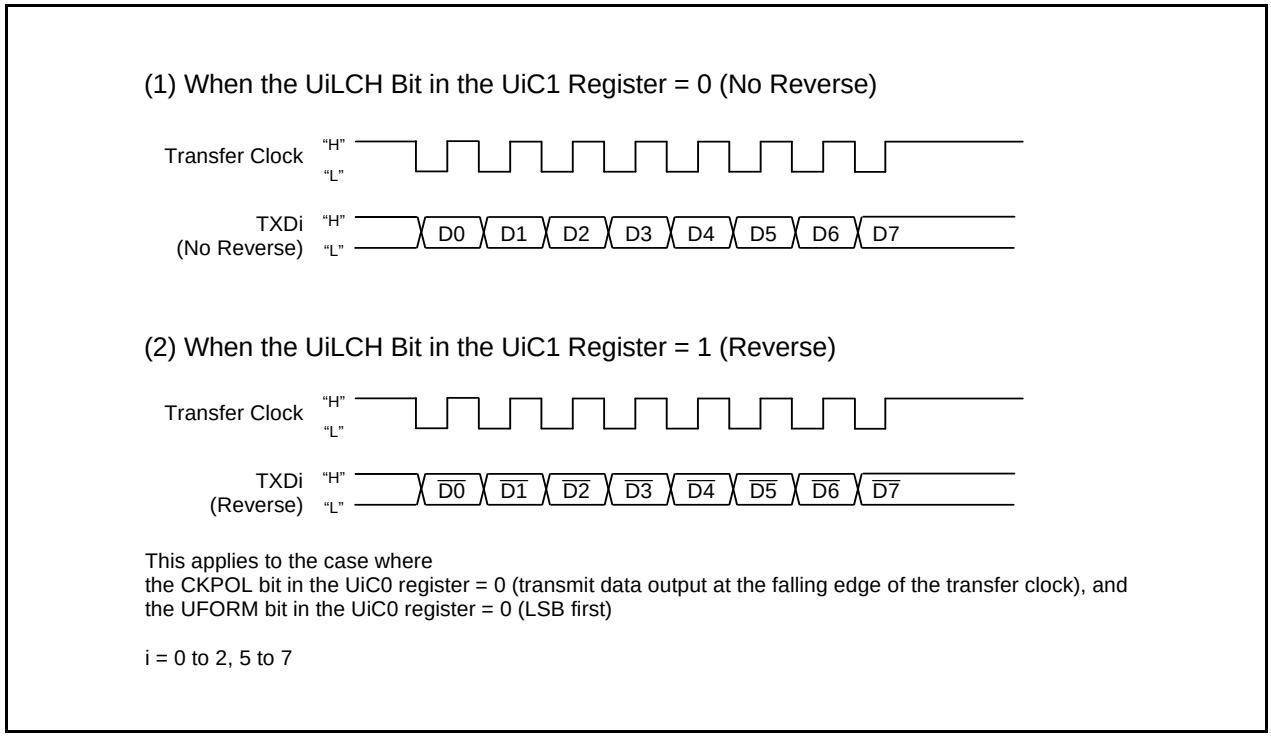


Figure 17.15 Serial Data Logic Switching

17.1.1.6 Transfer Clock Output from Multiple Pins (UART1)

Use bits CLKMD1 to CLKMD0 in the UCON register to select one of the two transfer clock output pins (see **Figure 17.16**). This function can be used when the selected transfer clock for UART1 is an internal clock.

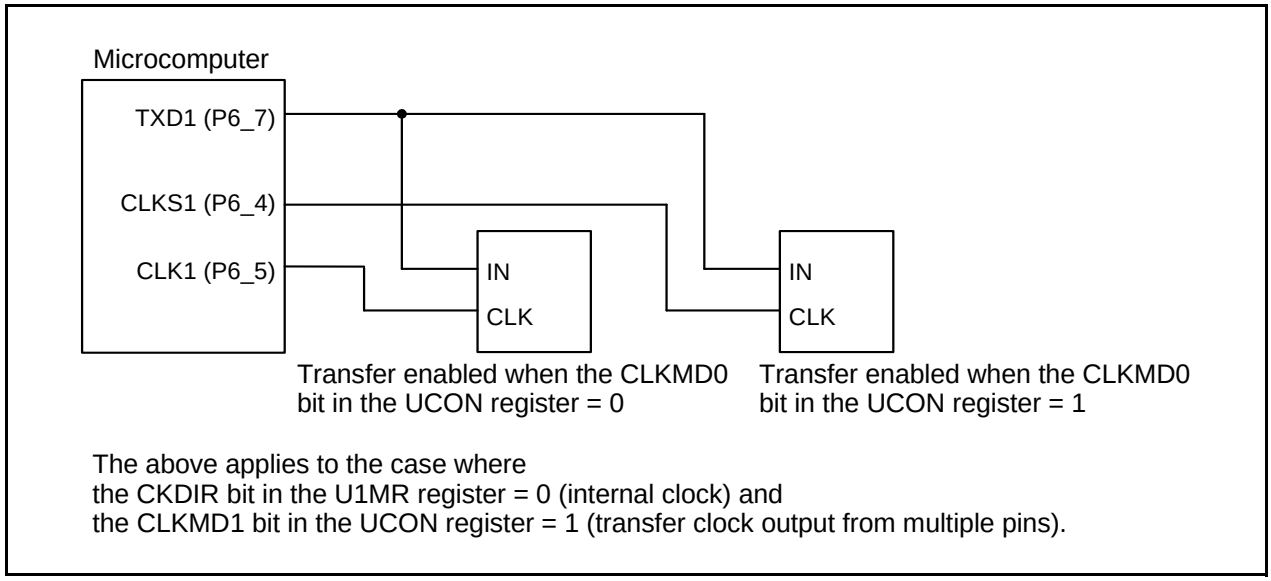


Figure 17.16 Transfer Clock Output from Multiple Pins

17.1.1.7 $\overline{\text{CTS}}$ / $\overline{\text{RTS}}$ Function

The $\overline{\text{CTS}}$ function is used to start transmit and receive operation when “L” is applied to the $\overline{\text{CTSi}}$ / $\overline{\text{RTSi}}$ (i = 0 to 2, 5 to 7) pin. Transmit and receive operation begins when the $\overline{\text{CTSi}}$ / $\overline{\text{RTSi}}$ pin is held “L”. If the “L” signal is switched to “H” during a transmit or receive operation, the operation stops before the next data.

For the $\overline{\text{RTS}}$ function, the $\overline{\text{CTSi}}$ / $\overline{\text{RTSi}}$ pin outputs “L” when the microcomputer is ready to receive. The output level becomes “H” on the first falling edge of the CLKi pin.

- The CRD bit in the UiC0 register = 1 (disable $\overline{\text{CTS}}$ / $\overline{\text{RTS}}$ function) $\overline{\text{CTSi}}$ / $\overline{\text{RTSi}}$ pin is programmable I/O function
- The CRD bit = 0, CRS bit = 0 ($\overline{\text{CTS}}$ function selected) $\overline{\text{CTSi}}$ / $\overline{\text{RTSi}}$ pin is $\overline{\text{CTS}}$ function
- The CRD bit = 0, CRS bit = 1 ($\overline{\text{RTS}}$ function selected) $\overline{\text{CTSi}}$ / $\overline{\text{RTSi}}$ pin is $\overline{\text{RTS}}$ function

17.1.1.8 $\overline{\text{CTS}}$ / $\overline{\text{RTS}}$ Separate Function (UART0)

This function separates $\overline{\text{CTS0}}$ / $\overline{\text{RTS0}}$, outputs $\overline{\text{RTS0}}$ from the P6_0 pin, and inputs $\overline{\text{CTS0}}$ from the P6_4 pin. To use this function, set the register bits as shown below.

- The CRD bit in the U0C0 register = 0 (enable $\overline{\text{CTS}}$ / $\overline{\text{RTS}}$ of UART0)
- The CRS bit in the U0C0 register = 1 (output $\overline{\text{RTS}}$ of UART0)
- The CRD bit in the U1C0 register = 0 (enable $\overline{\text{CTS}}$ / $\overline{\text{RTS}}$ of UART1)
- The CRS bit in the U1C0 register = 0 (input $\overline{\text{CTS}}$ of UART1)
- The RCSP bit in the UCON register = 1 (inputs $\overline{\text{CTS0}}$ from the P6_4 pin)
- The CLKMD1 bit in the UCON register = 0 (CLKS1 not used)

Note that when using the $\overline{\text{CTS}}$ / $\overline{\text{RTS}}$ separate function, $\overline{\text{CTS}}$ / $\overline{\text{RTS}}$ of UART1 function cannot be used.

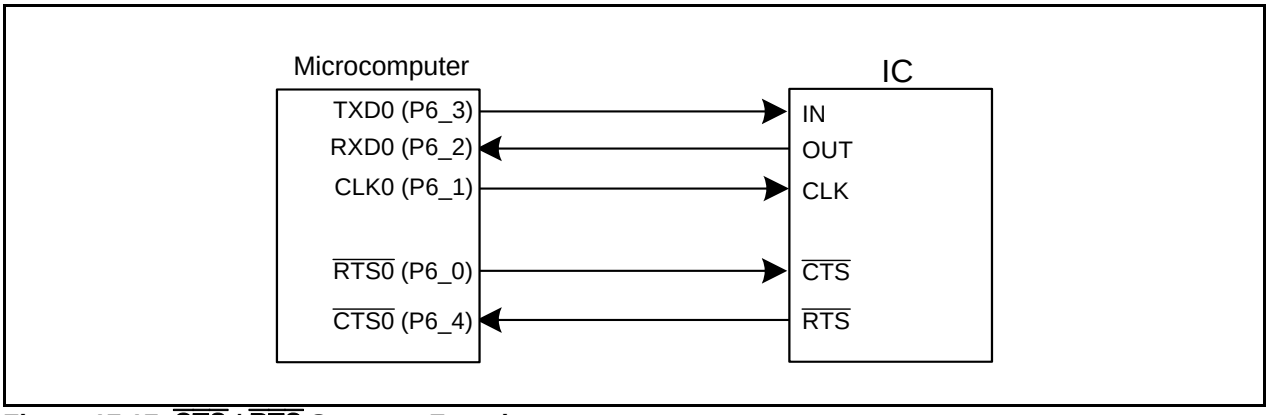


Figure 17.17 $\overline{\text{CTS}}$ / $\overline{\text{RTS}}$ Separate Function

17.1.2 Clock Asynchronous Serial I/O (UART) Mode

The UART mode allows transmitting and receiving data after setting the desired bit rate and transfer data format. Table 17.5 lists the UART Mode Specifications.

Table 17.5 UART Mode Specifications

Item	Specification
Transfer Data Format	• Character bit (transfer data): selectable from 7, 8, or 9 bits • Start bit : 1 bit • Parity bit : selectable from odd, even, or none • Stop bit : selectable from 1 bit or 2 bits
Transfer Clock	• The CKDIR bit in the UiMR register = 0 (internal clock): fj / (16(n + 1)) fj = f1SIO, f2SIO, f8SIO, f32SIO n: setting value of UiBRG register 00h to FFh • CKDIR bit = 1 (external clock): fEXT / (16(n + 1)) fEXT: input from CLKi pin n: setting value of UiBRG register 00h to FFh
Transmission, Reception Control	Selectable from $\overline{\text{CTS}}$ function, $\overline{\text{RTS}}$ function or $\overline{\text{CTS}}$ / $\overline{\text{RTS}}$ function disabled
Transmission Start Condition	Before transmission starts, satisfy the following requirements • The TE bit in the UiC1 register = 1 (transmission enabled) • The TI bit in the UiC1 register = 0 (data present in the UiTB register) • If $\overline{\text{CTS}}$ function is selected, input on the $\overline{\text{CTS}}$i pin = “L”
Reception Start Condition	Before reception starts, satisfy the following requirements • The RE bit in the UiC1 register = 1 (reception enabled) • Start bit detection
Interrupt Request Generation Timing	For transmission, one of the following conditions can be selected • The UiIRS bit (2) = 0 (transmit buffer empty): when transferring data from the UiTB register to the UARTi transmit register (at start of transmission) • The UiIRS bit =1 (transfer completed): when the serial interface completes sending data from the UARTi transmit register For reception • When transferring data from the UARTi receive register to the UiRB register (at completion of reception)
Error Detection	• Overrun error (1) This error occurs if the serial interface started receiving the next data before reading the UiRB register and received the bit one before the last stop bit of the next data • Framing error (3) This error occurs when the number of stop bits set is not detected • Parity error (3) This error occurs when if parity is enabled, the number of 1 in parity and character bits does not match the number of 1 set • Error sum flag This flag is set to 1 when any of the overrun, framing, or parity errors occur
Select Function	• LSB first, MSB first selection Whether to start sending / receiving data beginning with bit 0 or beginning with bit 7 can be selected • Serial data logic switch This function reverses the logic of the transmit / receive data. The start and stop bits are not reversed. • TXD, RXD I/O polarity switch This function reverses the polarities of the TXD pin output and RXD pin input. The logic levels of all I/O data are reversed. • Separate $\overline{\text{CTS}}$ / $\overline{\text{RTS}}$ pins (UART0) $\overline{\text{CTS0}}$ and $\overline{\text{RTS0}}$ are input / output from separate pins.

i = 0 to 2, 5 to 7

Notes:

1. If an overrun error occurs, the receive data of the UiRB register will be indeterminate. The IR bit in the SiRIC register does not change.
2. Bits U0IRS and U1IRS are bits 0 and 1 in the UCON register. Bits U2IRS, U5IRS, U6IRS, and U7IRS are in registers U2C1, U5C1, U6C1, and U7C1.
3. The timing at which the framing error flag and the parity error flag are set is detected when data is transferred from the UARTi receive register to the UiRB register.

Table 17.6 Registers to Be Used and Settings in UART Mode

Register	Bit	Function
UiTB	0 to 8	Set transmission data (1)
UiRB	0 to 8	Reception data can be read (1, 4)
	OER, FER, PER, SUM	Error flag
UiBRG	0 to 7	Set a bit rate
UiMR	SMD2 to SMD0	Set these bits to 100b when transfer data is 7 bits long
		Set these bits to 101b when transfer data is 8 bits long
		Set these bits to 110b when transfer data is 9 bits long
	CKDIR	Select the internal clock or external clock
	STPS	Select the stop bit
	PRY, PRYE	Select whether parity is included and whether odd or even
	IOPOL	Select the TXD / RXD input / output polarity
UiC0	CLK0, CLK1	Select the count source for the UiBRG register
	CRS	Select $\overline{CTS}$ or $\overline{RTS}$ to use functions
	TXEPT	Transmit register empty flag
	CRD	Enable or disable the $\overline{CTS}$ or $\overline{RTS}$ function
	NCH	Select TXDi pin output mode (3)
	CKPOL	Set to 0
	UFORM	LSB first or MSB first can be selected when transfer data is 8 bits long. Set this bit to 0 when transfer data is 7 or 9 bits long.
UiC1	TE	Set this bit to 1 to enable transmission
	TI	Transmit buffer empty flag
	RE	Set this bit to 1 to enable reception
	RI	Reception complete flag
	UjIRS (2)	Select the source of UARTj transmit interrupt
	UjRRM (2)	Set to 0
	UiLCH	Set this bit to 1 to use reversed data logic
	UiERE	Set to 0
UiSMR	0 to 7	Set to 0
UiSMR2	0 to 7	Set to 0
UiSMR3	0 to 7	Set to 0
UiSMR4	0 to 7	Set to 0
UCON	U0IRS	Select the source of UART0 transmit interrupt
	U1IRS	Select the source of UART1 transmit interrupt
	U0RRM	Set to 0
	U1RRM	Set to 0
	CLKMD0	Invalid because CLKMD1 = 0
	CLKMD1	Set to 0
	RCSP	Set this bit to 1 to accept as input $\overline{CTS0}$ signal of UART0 from the P6_4 pin
	7	Set to 0

i = 0 to 2, 5 to 7
j = 2, 5 to 7
Notes:
1. The bits used for transmit / receive data are as follows: bit 0 to bit 6 when transfer data is 7 bits long; bit 0 to bit 7 when transfer data is 8 bits long; bit 0 to bit 8 when transfer data is 9 bits long.
2. Set the bit 4 and bit 5 in registers U0C1 and U1C1 to 0. Bits U0IRS, U1IRS, U0RRM, and U1RRM are included in the UCON register.
3. TXD2 pin is N channel open-drain output. Set the NCH bit in the U2C0 register to 0.
4. When the transfer data is 7 bits long, the contents of the bits 7 and 8 are undefined.
When the transfer data is 8 bits long, the content of the bit 8 is undefined.

Table 17.7 lists the functions of the input / output pins during UART mode. Table 17.8 lists the P6_4 Pin Functions in UART Mode. Note that for a period from when the UARTi operating mode is selected to when transfer starts, the TXDi pin outputs “H” (If the N-channel open-drain output is selected, this pin is in high-impedance state).

Table 17.7 I/O Pin Functions in UART Mode

Pin Name	Function	Method of Selection
TXDi	Serial data output	(high output when performing reception only)
RXDi	Serial data input	Set the port direction bit corresponding to the RXDi pin to 0 (can be used as an input port when performing transmission only)
CLKi	Input / output port	The CKDIR bit in the UiMR register = 0
	Transfer clock input	The CKDIR bit in the UiMR register = 1 Set the port direction bit corresponding to the CLKi pin to 0
$\overline{\text{CTSi}}$ / $\overline{\text{RTSi}}$	$\overline{\text{CTS}}$ input	The CRD bit in the UiC0 register = 0 The CRS bit in the UiC0 register = 0 Set the port direction bit corresponding to the $\overline{\text{CTSi}}$ pin to 0
	$\overline{\text{RTS}}$ input	The CRD bit in the UiC0 register = 0 The CRS bit in the UiC0 register = 1
	Input / output port	The CRD bit in the UiC0 register = 1

i = 0 to 2 , 5 to 7

Table 17.8 P6_4 Pin Functions in UART Mode

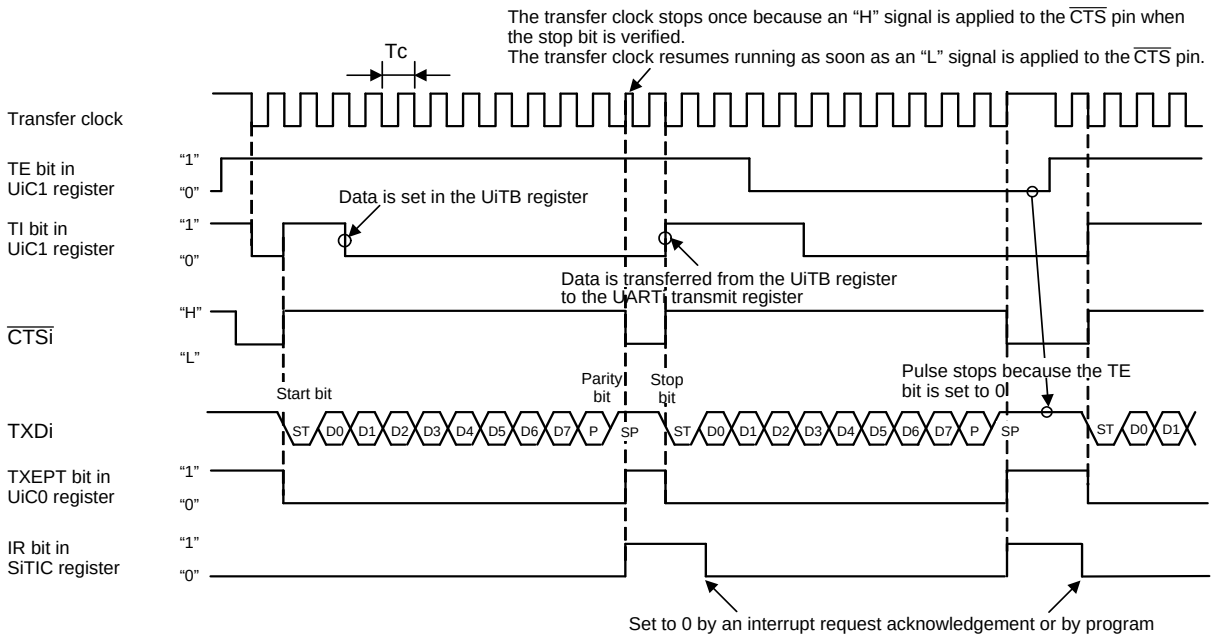
Pin Function	Bit Set Value				
	U1C0 Register		UCON Register		PD6 Register
	CRD	CRS	RCSP	CLKMD1	PD6_4
P6_4	1	-	0	0	Input: 0, Output: 1
$\overline{\text{CTS1}}$	0	0	0	0	0
$\overline{\text{RTS1}}$	0	1	0	0	-
$\overline{\text{CTS0}}$ (1)	0	0	1	0	0

– indicates either 0 or1.

Note:

1. In addition to this, set the CRD bit in the U0C0 register to 0 ($\overline{\text{CTS0}}$ / $\overline{\text{RTS0}}$ enabled) and the CRS bit in the U0C0 register to 1 ($\overline{\text{RTS0}}$ selected).

(1) 8-bit Data Transmit Timing (with a Parity and 1 Stop Bit)

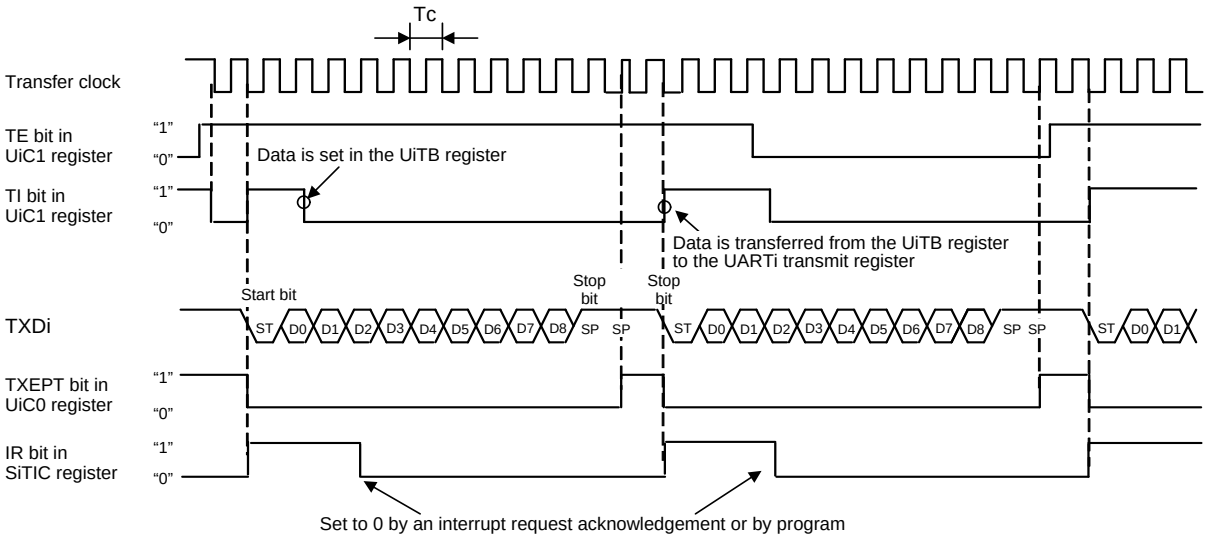


i = 0 to 2, 5 to 7

The above timing diagram applies to the case where the register bits are set as follows:
- The PRYE bit in the UiMR register = 1 (parity enabled)
- The STPS bit in the UiMR register = 0 (1 stop bit)
- The CRD bit in the UiC0 register = 0 (CTS / RTS enabled) and the CRS bit = 0 (CTS selected)
- The UiIRS bit in the UiC1 register = 1 (an interrupt request occurs when transmit completed)

Tc = 16 (n + 1) / fj or 16 (n + 1) / fEXT
- fj : frequency of UiBRG count source (f1SIO, f2SIO, f8SIO, f32SIO)
- fEXT : frequency of UiBRG count source (external clock)
- n : value set to UiBRG

(2) 9-bit Data Transmit Timing (with No Parity and 2 Stop Bits)



i = 0 to 2, 5 to 7

The above timing diagram applies to the case where the register bits are set as follows:
- The PRYE bit in the UiMR register = 0 (parity disabled)
- The STPS bit in the UiMR register = 1 (2 stop bits)
- The CRD bit in the UiC0 register = 1 (CTS / RTS disabled)
- The UiIRS bit in the UiC1 register = 0 (an interrupt request occurs when transmit buffer becomes empty)

TC = 16 (n + 1) / fj or 16 (n + 1) / fEXT
- fj : frequency of UiBRG count source (f1SIO, f2SIO, f8SIO, f32SIO)
- fEXT: frequency of UiBRG count source (external clock)
- n : value set to UiBRG

Figure 17.18 Transmit Timing in UART Mode

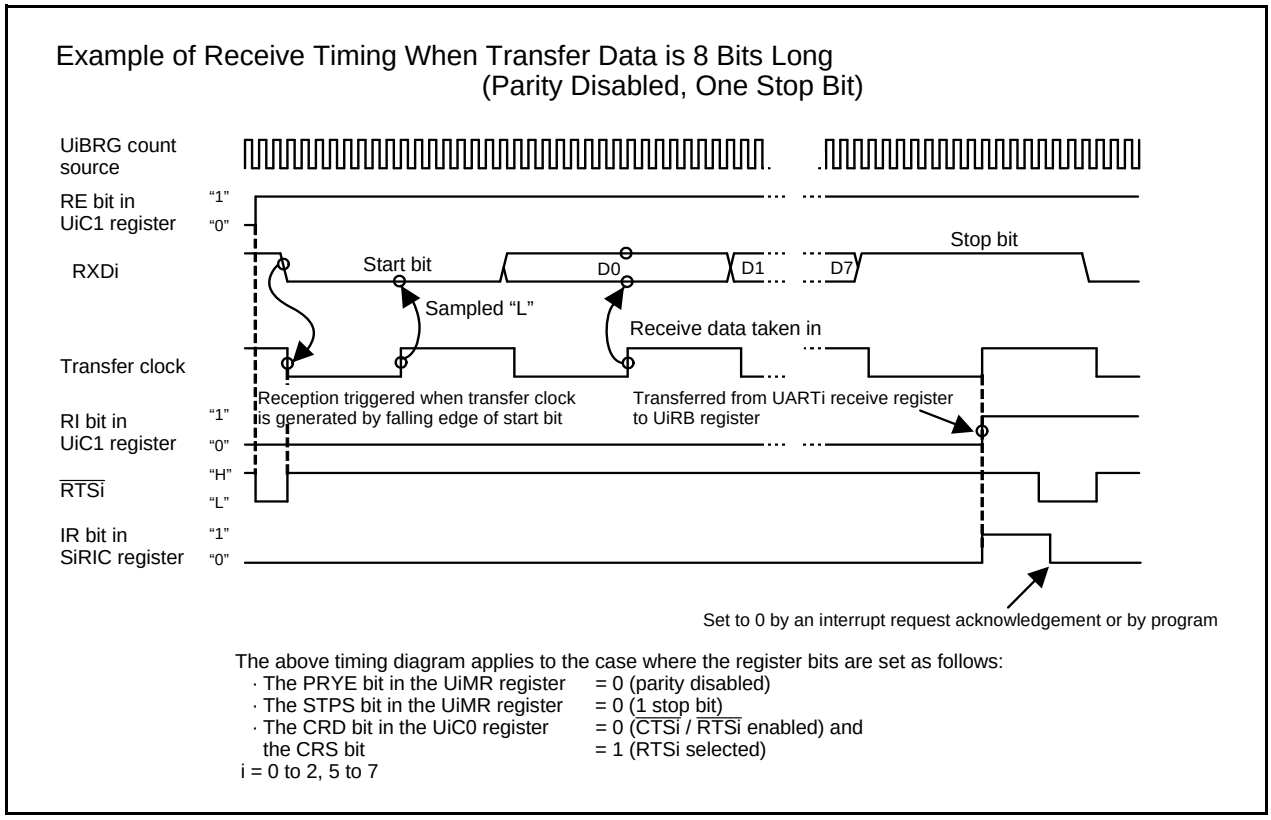


Figure 17.19 Receive Timing in UART Mod

17.1.2.1 Bit Rate

In UART mode, the frequency set by the UiBRG register (i = 0 to 2, 5 to 7) divided by 16 become bit rates. Table 17.9 lists an Example of Bit Rates and Settings.

Table 17.9 Example of Bit Rates and Settings

Bit Rate (bps)	Count Source of UiBRG	Peripheral Function Clock f1: 16 MHz		Peripheral Function Clock f1: 24 MHz	
		Set Value of UiBRG: n	Bit Rate (bps)	Set value of UiBRG: n	Bit Rate (bps)
1200	f8SIO	103 (67h)	1202	155 (9Bh)	1202
2400	f8SIO	51 (33h)	2404	77 (4Dh)	2404
4800	f8SIO	25 (19h)	4808	38 (26h)	4808
9600	f1SIO	103 (67h)	9615	155 (9Bh)	9615
14400	f1SIO	68 (44h)	14493	103 (67h)	14423
19200	f1SIO	51 (33h)	19231	77 (4Dh)	19231
28800	f1SIO	34 (22h)	28571	51 (33h)	28846
31250	f1SIO	31 (1Fh)	31250	47 (2Fh)	31250
38400	f1SIO	25 (19h)	38462	38 (26h)	38462
51200	f1SIO	19 (13h)	50000	28 (1Ch)	51724

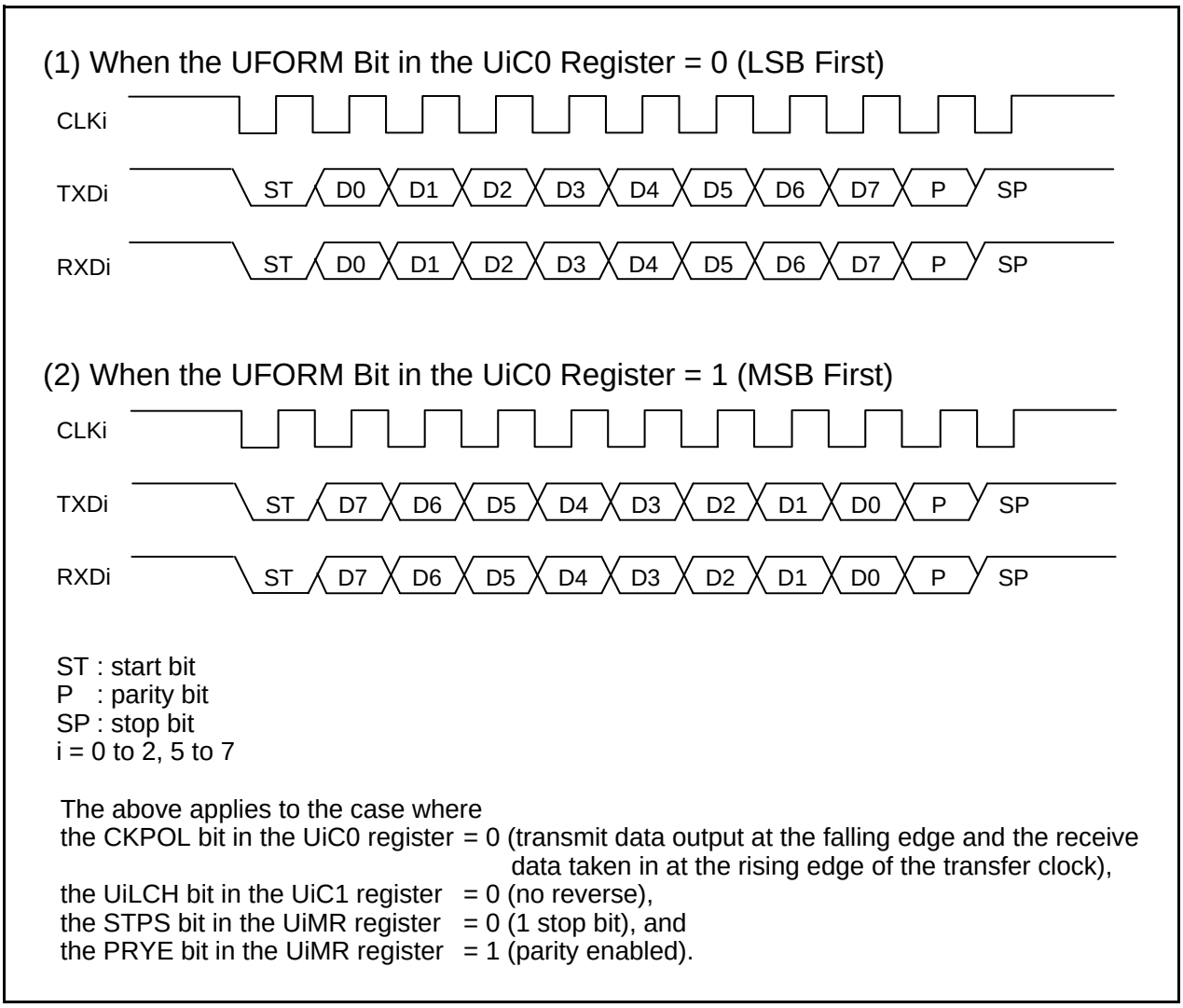
17.1.2.2 Counter Measure for Communication Error

If a communication error occurs while transmitting or receiving in UART mode, follow the procedures below.

- Resetting the UiRB register (i = 0 to 2, 5 to 7)
  (1) Set the RE bit in the UiC1 register to 0 (reception disabled)
  (2) Set the RE bit in the UiC1 register to 1 (reception enabled)
- Resetting the UiTB register
  (1) Set bits SMD2 to SMD0 in the UiMR register to 000b (serial interface disabled)
  (2) Reset bits SMD2 to SMD0 in the UiMR register to 001b, 101b, and 110b.
  (3) 1 is written to the RE bit in the UiC1 register (transmission enabled), regardless of the TE bit in the UiC1 register

17.1.2.3 LSB First / MSB First Select Function

Use the UFORM bit in the UiC0 register to select the transfer format. This function is valid when transfer data is 8 bits long. Figure 17.20 shows the Transfer Format.



ST : start bit
P : parity bit
SP : stop bit
i = 0 to 2, 5 to 7

The above applies to the case where
the CKPOL bit in the UiC0 register = 0 (transmit data output at the falling edge and the receive data taken in at the rising edge of the transfer clock),
the UiLCH bit in the UiC1 register = 0 (no reverse),
the STPS bit in the UiMR register = 0 (1 stop bit), and
the PRYE bit in the UiMR register = 1 (parity enabled).

Figure 17.20 Transfer Format

17.1.2.4 Serial Data Logic Switching Function

The data written to the UiTB register has its logic reversed before being transmitted. Similarly, the received data has its logic reversed when read from the UiRB register. Figure 17.21 shows Serial Data Logic Switching.

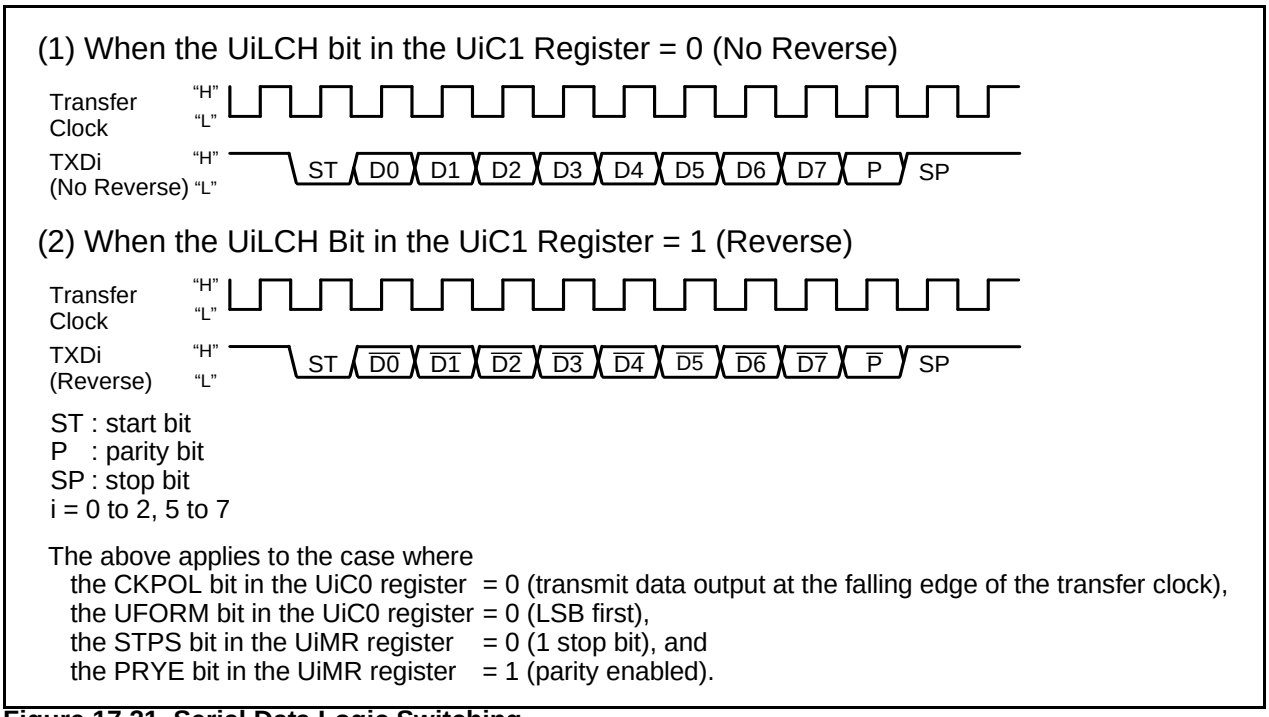


Figure 17.21 Serial Data Logic Switching

17.1.2.5 TXD and RXD I/O Polarity Reverse Function

This function reverses the polarities of the TXDi pin output and RXDi pin input. The logic levels of all input / output data (including bits for start, stop, and parity) are reversed. Figure 17.22 shows the TXD and RXD I/O Polarity Reverse.

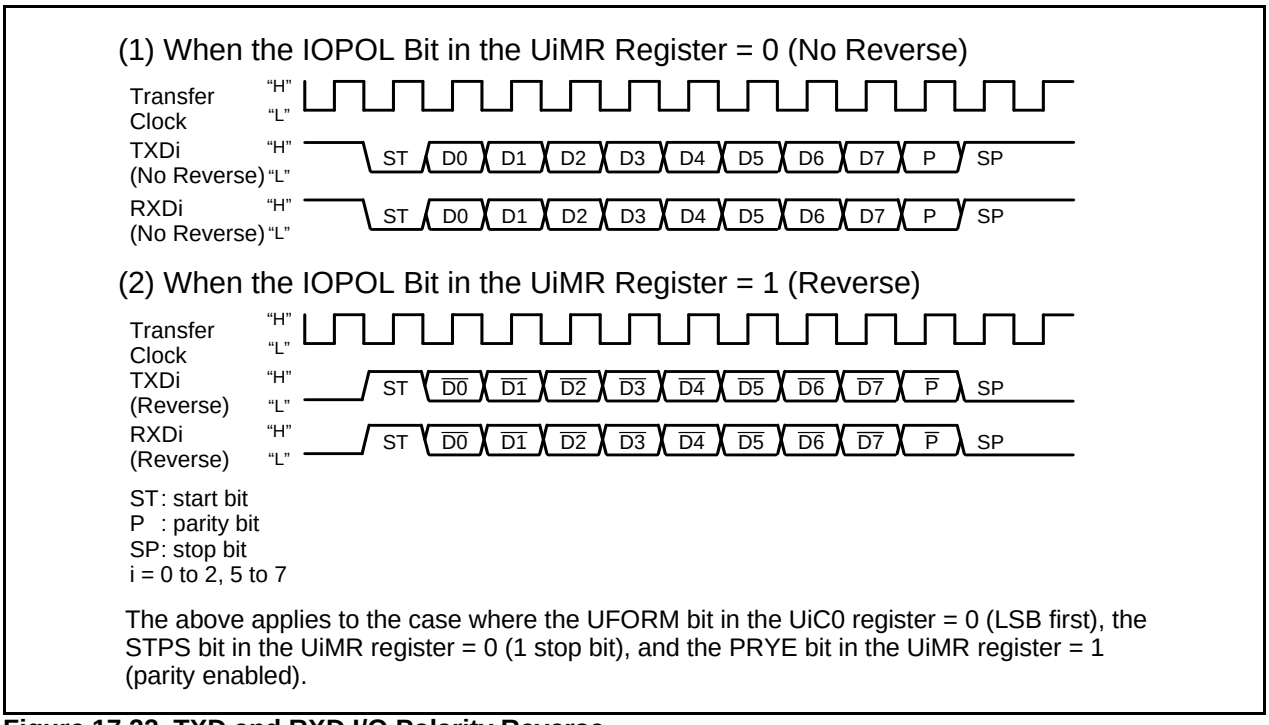


Figure 17.22 TXD and RXD I/O Polarity Reverse

17.1.2.6 $\overline{\text{CTS}}$ / $\overline{\text{RTS}}$ Function

The $\overline{\text{CTS}}$ function is used to start transmit operation when “L” is applied to the $\overline{\text{CTSi}}$ / $\overline{\text{RTSi}}$ (i = 0 to 2, 5 to 7) pin. Transmit operation begins when the $\overline{\text{CTSi}}$ / $\overline{\text{RTSi}}$ pin is held “L”. If the “L” signal is switched to “H” during a transmit operation, the operation stops after the ongoing transmit / receive operation is completed.

When the $\overline{\text{RTS}}$ function is used, the $\overline{\text{CTSi}}$ / $\overline{\text{RTSi}}$ pin outputs “L” when the microcomputer is ready to receive. The output level becomes “H” when a start bit is detected.

- The CRD bit in the UiC0 register = 1 (disable $\overline{\text{CTS}}$ / $\overline{\text{RTS}}$ function) $\overline{\text{CTSi}}$ / $\overline{\text{RTSi}}$ pin is programmable I/O function
- The CRD bit = 0, the CRS bit = 0 ($\overline{\text{CTS}}$ function is selected) $\overline{\text{CTSi}}$ / $\overline{\text{RTSi}}$ pin is $\overline{\text{CTS}}$ function
- The CRD bit = 0, the CRS bit = 1 ($\overline{\text{RTS}}$ function is selected) $\overline{\text{CTSi}}$ / $\overline{\text{RTSi}}$ pin is $\overline{\text{RTS}}$ function

17.1.2.7 $\overline{\text{CTS}}$ / $\overline{\text{RTS}}$ Separate Function (UART0)

This function separates $\overline{\text{CTS0}}$ / $\overline{\text{RTS0}}$, outputs $\overline{\text{RTS0}}$ from the P6_0 pin, and inputs $\overline{\text{CTS0}}$ from the P6_4 pin. To use this function, set the register bits as shown below.

- The CRD bit in the U0C0 register = 0 (enable $\overline{\text{CTS}}$ / $\overline{\text{RTS}}$ of UART0)
- The CRS bit in the U0C0 register = 1 (output $\overline{\text{RTS}}$ of UART0)
- The CRD bit in the U1C0 register = 0 (enable $\overline{\text{CTS}}$ / $\overline{\text{RTS}}$ of UART1)
- The CRS bit in the U1C0 register = 0 (input $\overline{\text{CTS}}$ of UART1)
- The RCSP bit in the UCON register = 1 (inputs $\overline{\text{CTS0}}$ from the P6_4 pin)
- The CLKMD1 bit in the UCON register = 0 (CLKS1 not used)

Note that when using the $\overline{\text{CTS}}$ / $\overline{\text{RTS}}$ separate function, $\overline{\text{CTS}}$ / $\overline{\text{RTS}}$ of UART1 function cannot be used.

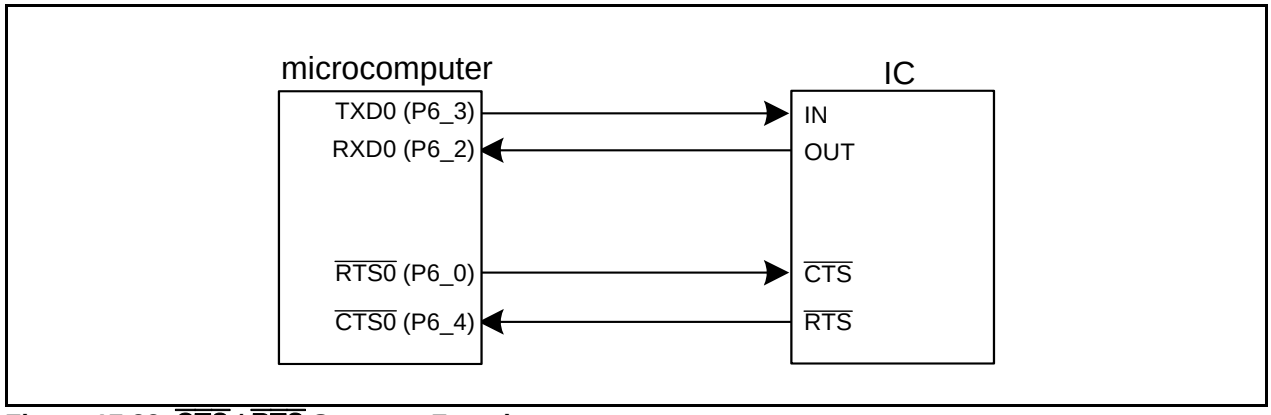


Figure 17.23 $\overline{\text{CTS}}$ / $\overline{\text{RTS}}$ Separate Function

17.1.3 Special Mode 1 (I^2C mode)

I^2C mode is provided for use as a simplified I^2C interface compatible mode. Table 17.10 lists the specifications of I^2C mode. Tables 17.11 and 17.12 list the registers used in I^2C mode and the register values set. Table 17.13 lists the I^2C Mode Functions. Figure 17.24 shows the block diagram for I^2C mode. Figure 17.25 shows Transfer to UiRB Register and Interrupt Timing.

As shown in Table 17.13, the microcomputer is placed in I^2C mode by setting bits SMD2 to SMD0 to 010b and the IICM bit to 1. Because SDAi transmit output has a delay circuit attached, SDAi output does not change state until SCLi goes low and remains stably low.

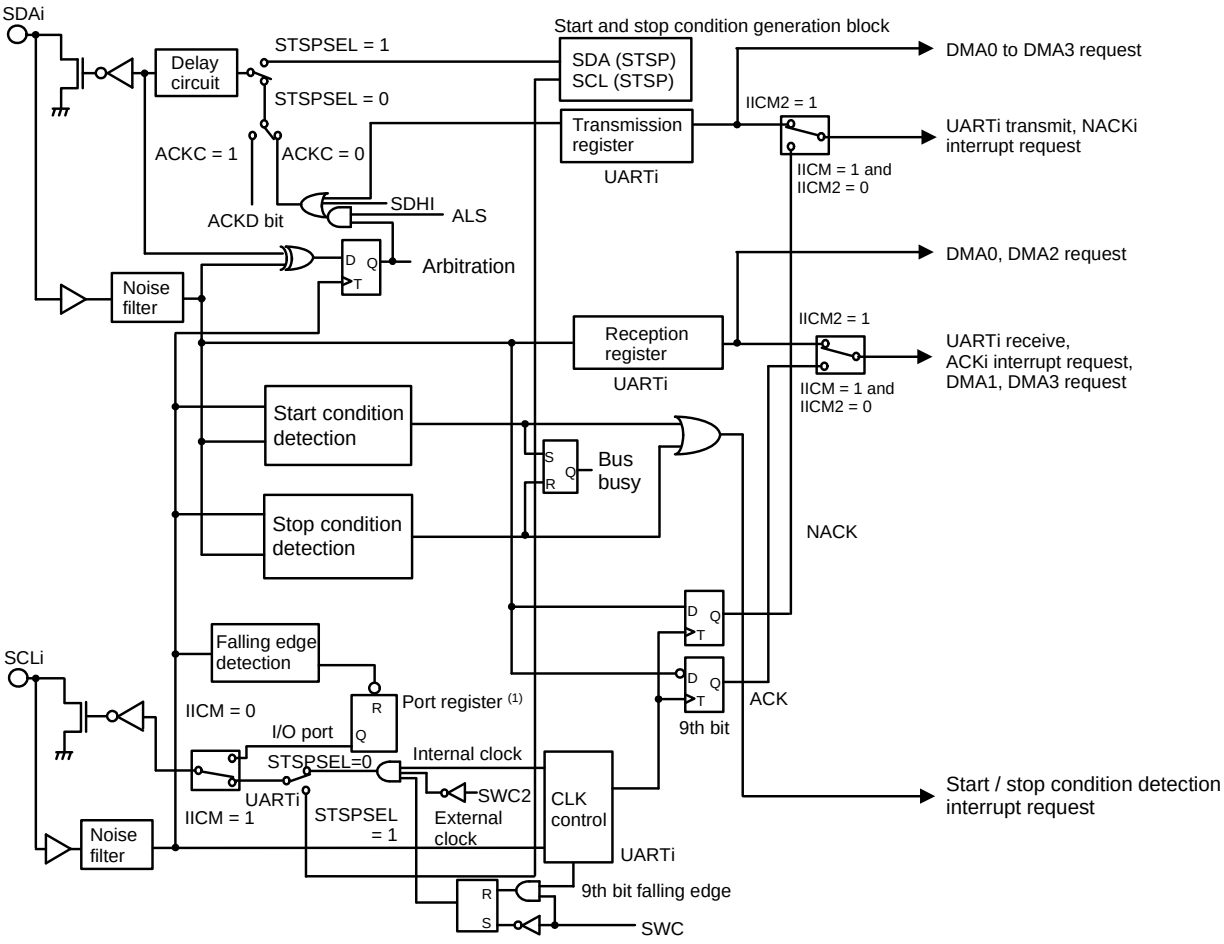
Table 17.10 I^2C Mode Specifications

Item	Specification
Transfer Data Format	Transfer data length: 8 bits
Transfer Clock	• During master CKDIR bit in the UiMR register = 0 (internal clock): fj / (2(n+1)) fj = f1SIO, f2SIO, f8SIO, f32SIO n = setting value of the UiBRG register 00h to FFh • During slave CKDIR bit = 1 (external clock): input from the SCLi pin
Transmission Start Condition	Before transmission starts, satisfy the following requirements (1) • The TE bit in the UiC1 register = 1 (transmission enabled) • The TI bit in the UiC1 register = 0 (data present in UiTB register)
Reception Start Condition	Before reception starts, satisfy the following requirements (1) • The RE bit in the UiC1 register = 1 (reception enabled) • The TE bit in the UiC1 register = 1 (transmission enabled) • The TI bit in the UiC1 register = 0 (data present in the UiTB register)
Interrupt Request Generation Timing	When start or stop condition is detected, acknowledge undetected, or acknowledge detected
Error Detection	Overrun error (2) This error occurs if the serial interface started receiving the next data before reading the UiRB register and received the 8th bit of the next data
Select Function	• Arbitration lost Timing at which the ABT bit in the UiRB register is updated can be selected • SDAi digital delay No digital delay or a delay of 2 to 8 UiBRG count source clock cycles selectable • Clock phase setting With or without clock delay selectable

i = 0 to 2, 5 to 7

Notes:

1. When an external clock is selected, the conditions must be met while the external clock is in high state.
2. If an overrun error occurs, the received data of the UiRB register will be indeterminate. The IR bit in the SiRIC register does not change.



This diagram applies to the case where bits SMD2 to SMD0 in the UiMR register = 010b and the IICM bit in the UiSMR register = 1.

IICM : bit in the UiSMR register
IICM2, SWC, ALS, SWC2, SDHI : bits in the UiSMR2 register
STSPSEL, ACKD, ACKC : bits in the UiSMR4 register

i = 0 to 2, 5 to 7

If the IICM bit = 1, the pin can be read even when the port direction bit corresponding to the SCLi pin = 1 (output mode).

Figure 17.24 I²C Mode Block Diagram

Table 17.11 Registers to Be Used and Settings in I²C Mode (1)

Register	Bit	Function	
		Master	Slave
UiTB	0 to 7	Set transmission data	Set transmission data
UiRB (3)	0 to 7	Reception data can be read	Reception data can be read
	8	ACK or NACK is set in this bit	ACK or NACK is set in this bit
	ABT	Arbitration lost detection flag	Invalid
	OER	Overrun error flag	Overrun error flag
UiBRG	0 to 7	Set a bit rate	Invalid
UiMR (3)	SMD2 to SMD0	Set to 010b	Set to 010b
	CKDIR	Set to 0	Set to 1
	IOPOL	Set to 0	Set to 0
UiC0	CLK1, CLK0	Select the count source for the UiBRG register	Invalid
	CRS	Invalid because CRD = 1	Invalid because CRD = 1
	TXEPT	Transmit register empty flag	Transmit register empty flag
	CRD (4)	Set to 1	Set to 1
	NCH	Set to 1 (2)	Set to 1 (2)
	CKPOL	Set to 0	Set to 0
	UFORM	Set to 1	Set to 1
UiC1	TE	Set this bit to 1 to enable transmission	Set this bit to 1 to enable transmission
	TI	Transmit buffer empty flag	Transmit buffer empty flag
	RE	Set this bit to 1 to enable reception	Set this bit to 1 to enable reception
	RI	Reception complete flag	Reception complete flag
	UjIRS (1)	Set to 1	Set to 1
	UjRRM (1)	Set to 0	Set to 0
	UiLCH	Set to 0	Set to 0
	UiERE	Set to 0	Set to 0
UiSMR	IICM	Set to 1	Set to 1
	ABC	Select the timing at which arbitration lost is detected	Invalid
	BBS	Bus busy flag	Bus busy flag
	3 to 7	Set to 0	Set to 0
UiSMR2	IICM2	See **Table 17.13 “I2C Mode Functions”**	See **Table 17.13 “I2C Mode Functions”**
	CSC	Set this bit to 1 to enable clock synchronization	Set to 0
	SWC	Set this bit to 1 to have SCLi output fixed to “L” at the falling edge of the 9th bit of clock	Set this bit to 1 to have SCLi output fixed to “L” at the falling edge of the 9th bit of clock
	ALS	Set this bit to 1 to have SDAi output stopped when arbitration lost is detected	Set to 0
	STAC	Set to 0	Set this bit to 1 to initialize UARTi at start condition detection
	SWC2	Set this bit to 1 to have SCLi output forcibly pulled low	Set this bit to 1 to have SCLi output forcibly pulled low
	SDHI	Set this bit to 1 to disable SDAi output	Set this bit to 1 to disable SDAi output
	7	Set to 0	Set to 0

i = 0 to 2, 5 to 7
j = 2, 5 to 7
Notes:
1. Set the bit 4 and bit 5 in registers U0C1 and U1C1 to 0. Bits U0IRS, U1IRS, U0RRM, and U1RRM are in the UCON register.
2. The TXD2 pin is N channel open-drain output. No NCH bit in the U2C0 register is assigned. When write, set to 0.
3. Set the bits not listed above to 0 when writing to the registers in I²C mode.
4. When using UART1 in I²C mode and enabling the $\overline{CTS}$ / $\overline{RTS}$ separate function of UART0, set the CRD bit in the U1C0 register to 0 ($\overline{CTS}$ / $\overline{RTS}$ enabled) and the CRS bit to 0 ($\overline{CTS}$ input).

Table 17.12 Registers to Be Used and Settings in I²C Mode (2)

Register	Bit	Function	
		Master	Slave
UiSMR3	0, 2, 4, and NODC	Set to 0	Set to 0
	CKPH	See **Table 17.13 "I²C Mode Functions"**	See **Table 17.13 "I2C Mode Functions"**
	DL2 to DL0	Set the amount of SDAi digital delay	Set the amount of SDAi digital delay
UiSMR4	STAREQ	Set this bit to 1 to generate start condition	Set to 0
	RSTAREQ	Set this bit to 1 to generate restart condition	Set to 0
	STPREQ	Set this bit to 1 to generate stop condition	Set to 0
	STSPSEL	Set this bit to 1 to output each condition	Set to 0
	ACKD	Select ACK or NACK	Select ACK or NACK
	ACKC	Set this bit to 1 to output ACK data	Set this bit to 1 to output ACK data
	SCLHI	Set this bit to 1 to have SCLi output stopped when stop condition is detected	Set to 0
	SWC9	Set to 0	Set this bit to 1 to set the SCLi to "L" hold at the falling edge of the 9th bit of clock
IFSR2A	IFSR26, ISFR27	Set to 1	Set to 1
UCON	U0IRS,	Set to 1	Set to 1
	U1IRS	Set to 1	Set to 1
	U0RRM	Set to 0	Set to 0
	U1RRM	Set to 0	Set to 0
	CLKMD0	Set to 0	Set to 0
	CLKMD1	Set to 0	Set to 0
	RCSP	Set to 0	Set to 0
	7	Set to 0	Set to 0

i = 0 to 2, 5 to 7

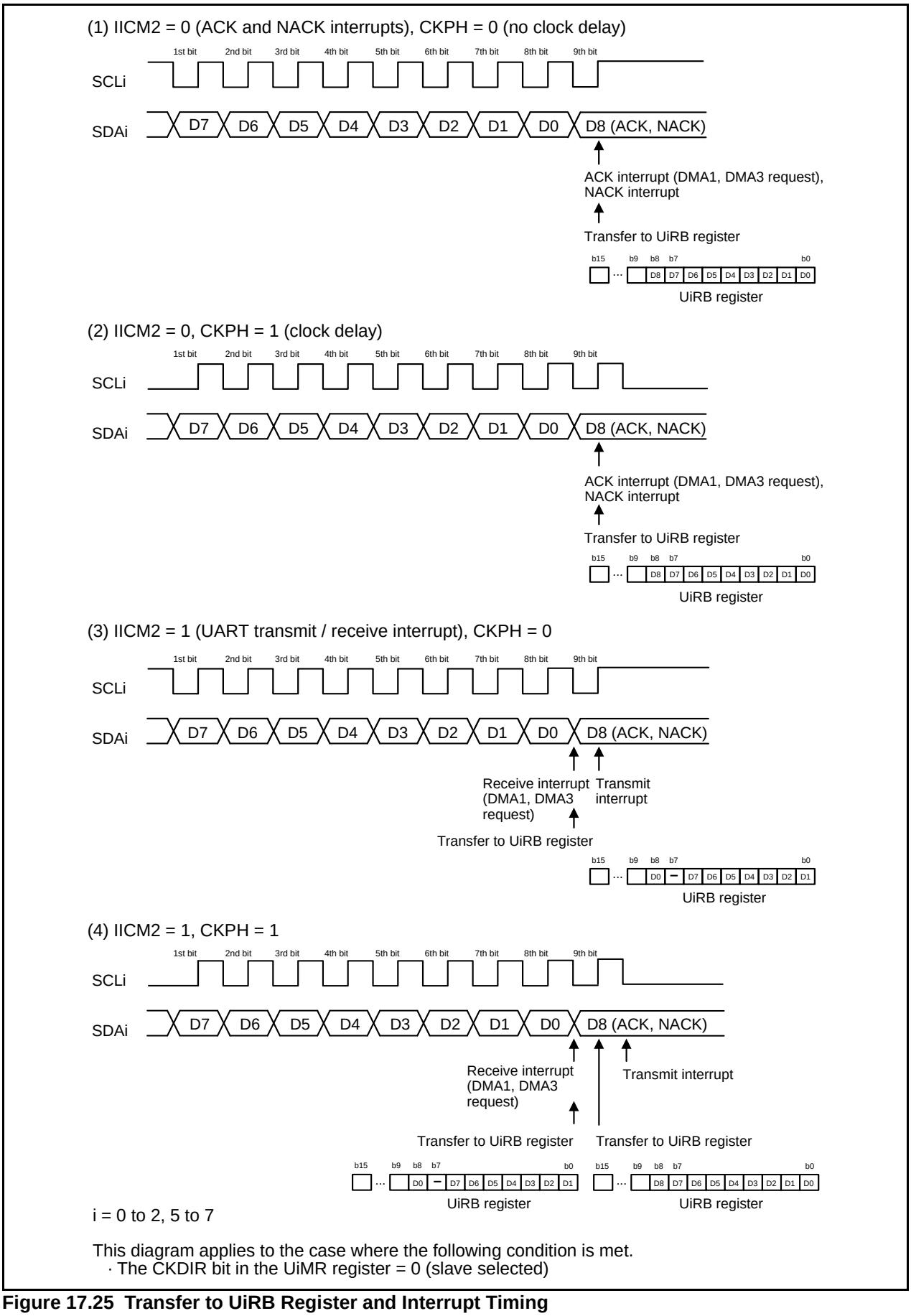
Table 17.13 I²C Mode Functions

Function	Clock Synchronous Serial I/O Mode (SMD2 to SMD0 = 001b, IICM = 0)	I2C Mode (SMD2 to SMD0 = 010b, IICM = 1)			
		IICM2 = 0 (NACK/ACK interrupt)		IICM2 = 1 (UART transmit / receive interrupt)	
		CKPH = 0 (No clock delay)	CKPH = 1 (Clock delay)	CKPH = 0 (No clock delay)	CKPH = 1 (Clock delay)
Factor of Interrupt Number 6, 7, 10, 43, 46, and 49 (1, 5, 7)	-	Start condition detection or stop condition detection (See **Table 17.14 "STSPSEL Bit Functions"**)			
Factor of Interrupt Number 15, 17, 19, 44, 47, and 50 (1, , 6)	UARTi transmission Transmission started or completed (selected by UiIRS)	No acknowledgment detection (NACK) Rising edge of SCLi 9th bit		UARTi transmission Rising edge of SCLi 9th bit	UARTi transmission Falling edge of SCLi next to the 9th bit
Factor of Interrupt Number 16, 18, 20, 45, 48, and 51 (1, 6))	UARTi reception When 8th bit received CKPOL = 0 (rising edge) CKPOL = 1 (falling edge)	Acknowledgment detection (ACK) Rising edge of SCLi 9th bit		UARTi reception Falling edge of SCLi 9th bit	
Timing for Transferring Data from the UART Reception Shift Register to the UiRB Register	CKPOL = 0 (rising edge) CKPOL = 1 (falling edge)	Rising edge of SCLi 9th bit		Falling edge of SCLi 9th bit	Falling and rising edges of SCLi 9th bit
UARTi Transmission Output Delay	Not delayed	Delayed			
Functions of TXDi / SDAi	TXDi output	SDAi input / output			
Functions of RXDi / SCLi	RXDi input	SCLi input / output			
Functions of CLKi	CLKi input or output port selected	– (Cannot be used in I2C mode)			
Noise Filter Width	15ns	200ns			
Read RXDi and SCLi Pin Levels	Possible when the corresponding port direction bit = 0	Always possible no matter how the corresponding port direction bit is set			
Initial Value of TXDi and SDAi Outputs	CKPOL = 0 ("H") CKPOL = 1 ("L")	The value set in the port register before setting I2C mode (2)			
Initial and End Values of SCLi	-	"H"	"L"	"H"	"L"
DMA1 and DMA3 Factor (6)	UARTi reception	Acknowledgment detection (ACK)		UARTi reception Falling edge of SCLi 9th bit	
Store Received Data	1st to 8th bits of the received data are stored into bits 0 to 7 in the UiRB register	1st to 8th bits of the received data are stored into bits 7 to 0 in the UiRB register		1st to 7th bits of the received data are stored into bits 6 to 0 in the UiRB register. 8th bit is stored into bit 8 in the UiRB register	
					1st to 8th bits are stored into bits 7 to 0 in the UiRB register (3)
Read Received Data	The UiRB register status is read				Bits 6 to 0 in the UiRB register are read as bits 7 to 1. Bit 8 in the UiRB register is read as bit 0 (4)

i = 0 to 2, 5 to 7

Notes:

1. If the source or factor of any interrupt is changed, the IR bit in the interrupt control register for the changed interrupt may inadvertently be set to 1 (interrupt requested). (Refer to **24.7 "Interrupt"**)
   If one of the bits shown below is changed, the interrupt source, the interrupt timing, etc. change. Therefore, always be sure to clear the IR bit to 0 (interrupt not requested) after changing those bits.
   Bits SMD2 to SMD0 in the UiMR register, the IICM bit in the UiSMR register, the IICM2 bit in the UiSMR register, and the CKPH bit in the UiSMR3 register
2. Set the initial value of SDAi output while bits SMD2 to SMD0 in the UiMR register = 000b (serial interface disabled).
3. Second data transfer to the UiRB register (rising edge of SCLi 9th bit)
4. First data transfer to the UiRB register (falling edge of SCLi 9th bit)
5. See **Figure 17.27 "STSPSEL Bit Functions"**.
6. See **Figure 17.25 "Transfer to UiRB Register and Interrupt Timing"**.
7. When using UART0, be sure to set the IFSR26 bit in the IFSR2A register to 1 (factor of interrupt: UART0 bus collision).
   When using UART1, be sure to set the IFSR27 bit in the IFSR2A register to 1 (factor of interrupt: UART1 bus collision).



i = 0 to 2, 5 to 7

This diagram applies to the case where the following condition is met.
· The CKDIR bit in the UiMR register = 0 (slave selected)

Figure 17.25 Transfer to UiRB Register and Interrupt Timing

17.1.3.1 Detection of Start and Stop Condition

Whether a start or a stop condition has been detected is determined.

A start condition detect interrupt request is generated when the SDAi pin changes state from high to low while the SCLi pin is in the high state. A stop condition detect interrupt request is generated when the SDAi pin changes state from low to high while the SCLi pin is in the high state.

Because the start and stop condition detect interrupts share the interrupt control register and vector, check the BBS bit in the UiSMR register to determine which interrupt source is requesting the interrupt.

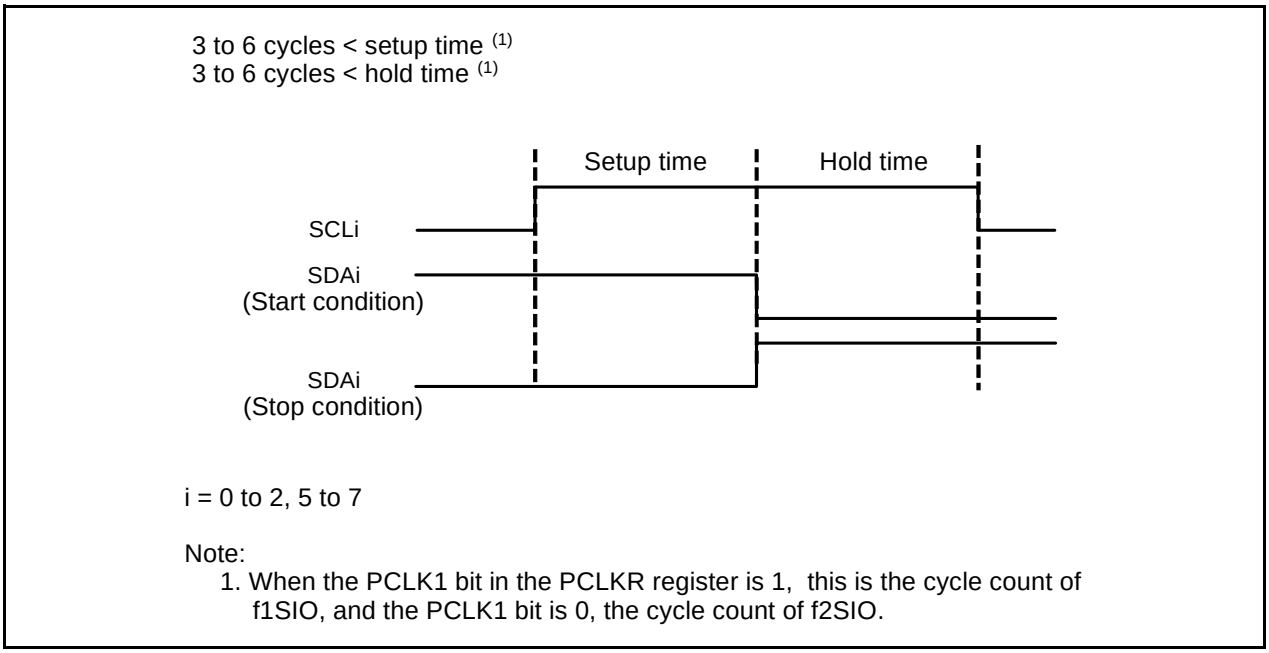


Figure 17.26 Detection of Start and Stop Condition

17.1.3.2 Output of Start and Stop Condition

A start condition is generated by setting the STAREQ bit in the UiSMR4 register (i = 0 to 2, 5 to 7) to 1 (start).

A restart condition is generated by setting the RSTAREQ bit in the UiSMR4 register to 1 (start).

A stop condition is generated by setting the STPREQ bit in the UiSMR4 register to 1 (start).

The output procedure is described below.

(1) Set the STAREQ bit, RSTAREQ bit or STPREQ bit to 1 (start).

(2) Set the STSPSEL bit in the UiSMR4 register to 1 (output).

The function of the STSPSEL bit is shown in Tables 17.14 and 17.27.

Table 17.14 STSPSEL Bit Functions

Function	STSPSEL = 0	STSPSEL = 1
Output of Pins SCLi and SDAi	Output of transfer clock and data Output of start / stop condition is accomplished by a program using ports (not automatically generated in hardware)	Output of a start / stop condition according to bits STAREQ, RSTAREQ, and STPREQ
Start / Stop Condition Interrupt Request Generation Timing	Detect start / stop condition	Complete generating start / stop condition

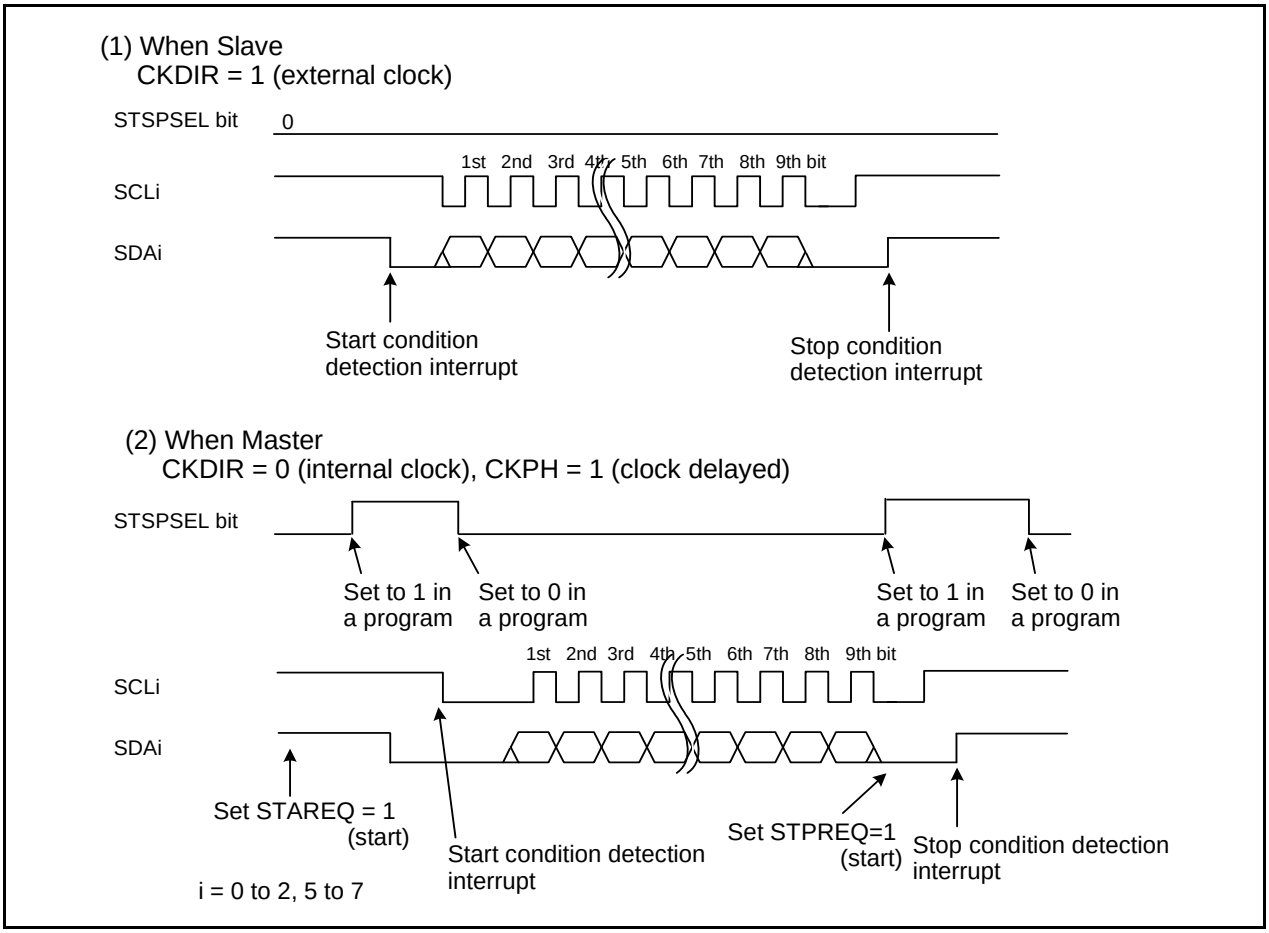


Figure 17.27 STSPSEL Bit Functions

17.1.3.3 Arbitration

Unmatching of the transmit data and SDAi pin input data is checked synchronously with the rising edge of SCLi. Use the ABC bit in the UiSMR register to select the timing at which the ABT bit in the UiRB register is updated. If the ABC bit = 0 (update per bit), the ABT bit is set to 1 at the same time unmatching is detected during check, and is cleared to 0 when not detected. In cases when the ABC bit is set to 1, if unmatching is ever detected, the ABT bit is set to 1 (unmatching detected) at the falling edge of the clock pulse of 9th bit. If the ABT bit needs to be updated per byte, clear the ABT bit to 0 (undetected) after detecting acknowledge in the first byte, before transferring the next byte.

Setting the ALS bit in the UiSMR2 register to 1 (SDA output stop enabled) factors arbitration-lost to occur, in which case the SDAi pin is placed in the high-impedance state at the same time the ABT bit is set to 1 (unmatching detected).

17.1.3.4 Transfer Clock

The transfer clock is used to transmit and receive data as is shown in Figure 17.25 Transfer to UiRB Register and Interrupt Timing.

The CSC bit in the UiSMR2 register is used to synchronize the internally generated clock (internal SCLi) and an external clock supplied to the SCLi pin. In cases when the CSC bit is set to 1 (clock synchronization enabled), if a falling edge on the SCLi pin is detected while the internal SCLi is high, the internal SCLi goes low, at which time the value of the UiBRG register is reloaded with and starts counting in the low-level interval. If the internal SCLi changes state from low to high while the SCLi pin is low, counting stops, and when the SCLi pin goes high, counting restarts.

In this way, the UARTi transfer clock is equivalent to AND of the internal SCLi and the clock signal applied to the SCLi pin. The transfer clock works between a half cycle before the falling edge of the internal SCLi 1st bit and the rising edge of the 9th bit. To use this function, select an internal clock for the transfer clock.

The SWC bit in the UiSMR2 register determines whether the SCLi pin is fixed to be or freed from low-level output at the falling edge of the 9th clock pulse.

If the SCLHI bit in the UiSMR4 register is set to 1 (enabled), SCLi output is turned off (placed in the high-impedance state) when a stop condition is detected.

Setting the SWC2 bit in the UiSMR2 register = 1 (0 output) makes it possible to forcibly output a low-level signal from the SCLi pin even while sending or receiving data. Clearing the SWC2 bit to 0 (transfer clock) allows the transfer clock to be output from or supplied to the SCLi pin, instead of outputting a low-level signal.

If the SWC9 bit in the UiSMR4 register is set to 1 (SCL hold low enabled) when the CKPH bit in the UiSMR3 register = 1, the SCLi pin is fixed to low-level output at the falling edge of the clock pulse next to the 9th. Setting the SWC9 bit = 0 (SCL hold low disabled) frees the SCLi pin from low-level output.

17.1.3.5 SDA Output

The data written to bits 7 to 0 (D7 to D0) in the UiTB register is output in descending order from D7. The 9th bit (D8) is ACK or NACK.

Set the initial value of SDAi transmit output when IICM = 1 (I^2C mode) and bits SMD2 to SMD0 in the UiMR register = 000b (serial interface disabled).

Bits DL2 to DL0 in the UiSMR3 register allow to add no delays or a delay of 2 to 8 UiBRG count source clock cycles to SDAi output.

Setting the SDHI bit in the UiSMR2 register = 1 (SDA output disabled) forcibly places the SDAi pin in the high-impedance state. Do not write to the SDHI bit at the rising edge of the UARTi transfer clock. This is because the ABT bit may inadvertently be set to 1 (detected).

17.1.3.6 SDA Input

When the IICM2 bit = 0, the 1st to 8th bits (D7 to D0) of received data are stored in bits 7 to 0 in the UiRB register. The 9th bit (D8) is ACK or NACK.

When the IICM2 bit = 1, the 1st to 7th bits (D7 to D1) of received data are stored in bits 6 to 0 in the UiRB register and the 8th bit (D0) is stored in bit 8 in the UiRB register. Even when the IICM2 bit = 1, providing the CKPH bit = 1, the same data as when the IICM2 bit = 0 can be read. To read the data, read the UiRB register after the rising edge of 9th bit of the corresponding clock pulse.

17.1.3.7 ACK and NACK

If the STSPSEL bit in the UiSMR4 register is set to 0 (start and stop conditions not generated) and the ACKC bit in the UiSMR4 register is set to 1 (ACK data output), the value of the ACKD bit in the UiSMR4 register is output from the SDAi pin.

If the IICM2 bit = 0, the NACK interrupt request is generated if the SDAi pin remains high at the rising edge of the 9th bit of transmit clock pulse. The ACK interrupt request is generated if the SDAi pin is low at the rising edge of the 9th bit of transmit clock pulse.

If ACKi is selected to generate a DMA1 or DMA3 request source, a DMA transfer can be activated by detection of an acknowledge.

17.1.3.8 Initialization of Transmission / Reception

If a start condition is detected while the STAC bit = 1 (UARTi initialization enabled), the serial interface operates as described below.

- The transmit shift register is initialized, and the content of the UiTB register is transferred to the transmit shift register. In this way, the serial interface starts sending data synchronously with the next clock pulse applied. However, the UARTi output value does not change state and remains the same as when a start condition was detected until the first bit of data is output synchronously with the input clock.
- The receive shift register is initialized, and the serial interface starts receiving data synchronously with the next clock pulse applied.
- The SWC bit is set to 1 (SCL wait output enabled). Consequently, the SCLi pin is pulled low at the falling edge of the 9th clock pulse.

Note that when UARTi transmission / reception is started using this function, the TI bit does not change state. Select the external clock as the transfer clock to start UARTi transmission / reception with this setting.

17.1.4 Special Mode 2

In special mode 2, serial communication between one or multiple masters and multiple slaves is available. Transfer clock polarity and phase are selectable. Table 17.15 lists the Special Mode 2 Specifications. Table 17.16 lists the Registers to Be Used and Settings in Special Mode 2. Figure 17.28 shows Special Mode 2 Communication Control Example (UART2).

Table 17.15 Special Mode 2 Specifications

Item	Specification
Transfer Data Format	Transfer data length: 8 bits
Transfer Clock	• Master mode The CKDIR bit in the UiMR register = 0 (internal clock): fj / (2(n + 1)) fj = f1SIO, f2SIO, f8SIO, f32SIO n: setting value of UiBRG register 00h to FFh • Slave mode • The CKDIR bit = 1 (external clock selected): input from the CLKi pin
Transmit / Receive Control	Controlled by input / output ports
Transmission Start Condition	Before transmission starts, satisfy the following requirements (1) • The TE bit in the UiC1 register = 1 (transmission enabled) • The TI bit in the UiC1 register = 0 (data present in UiTB register)
Reception Start Condition	Before reception starts, satisfy the following requirements (1) • The RE bit in the UiC1 register = 1 (reception enabled) • The TE bit = 1 (transmission enabled) • The TI bit = 0 (data present in the UiTB register)
Interrupt Request Generation Timing	While transmitting, one of the following conditions can be selected • The UiIRS bit in the UiC1 register= 0 (transmit buffer empty): when transferring data from the UiTB register to the UARTi transmit register (at start of transmission) • The UiIRS bit =1 (transfer completed): when the serial interface completed sending data from the UARTi transmit register While receiving • When transferring data from the UARTi receive register to the UiRB register (at completion of reception)
Error Detection	Overrun error (2) This error occurs if the serial interface starts receiving the next data before reading the UiRB register and receives the 7th bit of the next data
Select Function	• CLK polarity selection Transfer data input / output can be chosen to occur synchronously with the rising or the falling edge of the transfer clock • LSB first, MSB first selection Whether to start sending / receiving data beginning with bit 0 or beginning with bit 7 can be selected • Continuous receive mode selection Reception is enabled immediately by reading the UiRB register • Switching serial data logic This function reverses the logic value of the transmit / receive data • Clock phase setting Selectable from four combinations of transfer clock polarities and phases

i = 0 to 2, 5 to 7

Notes:

1. When an external clock is selected, the conditions must be met while if the CKPOL bit in the UiC0 register = 0 (transmit data output at the falling edge and the receive data taken in at the rising edge of the transfer clock), the external clock is in high state; if the CKPOL bit = 1 (transmit data output at the rising edge and the receive data taken in at the falling edge of the transfer clock), the external clock is in low state.
2. If an overrun error occurs, the received data of the UiRB register will be indeterminate. The IR bit in the SiRIC register does not change.

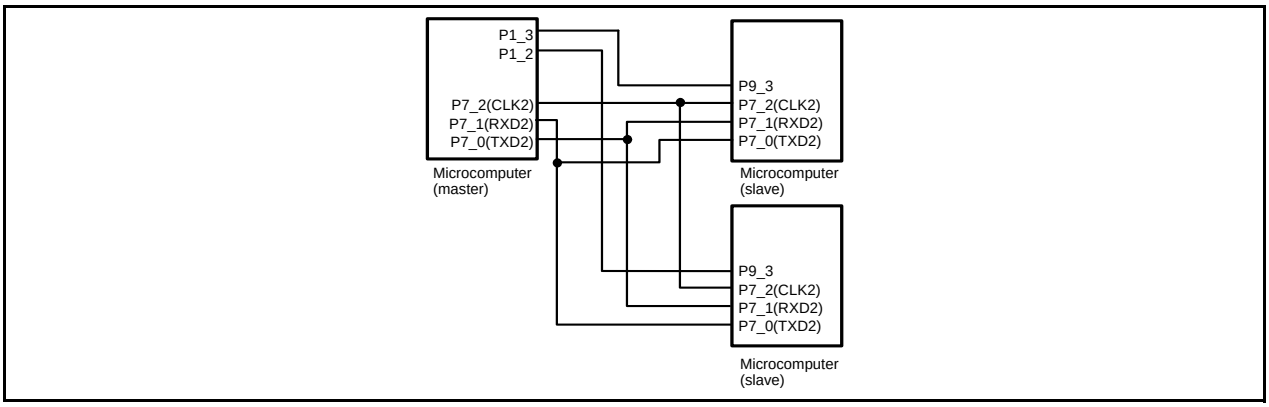


Figure 17.28 Special Mode 2 Communication Control Example (UART2)

Table 17.16 Registers to Be Used and Settings in Special Mode 2

Register	Bit	Function
UiTB (3)	0 to 7	Set transmission data
UiRB (3)	0 to 7	Reception data can be read
	OER	Overrun error flag
UiBRG	0 to 7	Set a bit rate
UiMR (3)	SMD2 to SMD0	Set to 001b
	CKDIR	Set to 0 in master mode or 1 in slave mode
	IOPOL	Set to 0
UiC0	CLK0, CLK1	Select the count source for the UiBRG register
	CRS	Invalid because CRD = 1
	TXEPT	Transmit register empty flag
	CRD	Set to 1
	NCH	Select TXDi pin output format (2)
	CKPOL	Clock phases can be set in combination with the CKPH bit in the UiSMR3 register
	UFORM	Select LSB first or MSB first.
UiC1	TE	Set to 1 to enable transmission / reception
	TI	Transmit buffer empty flag
	RE	Set to 1 to enable reception
	RI	Reception complete flag
	UjIRS (1)	Select UARTj transmit interrupt source
	UjRRM (1)	Set this bit to 1 to use continuous receive mode
	UiLCH	Set this bit to 1 to use inverted data logic
	UiERE	Set to 0
UiSMR	0 to 7	Set to 0
UiSMR2	0 to 7	Set to 0
UiSMR3	CKPH	Clock phases can be set in combination with the CKPOL bit in the UiC0 register
	NODC	Set to 0
	0, 2, 4 to 7	Set to 0
UiSMR4	0 to 7	Set to 0
UCON	U0IRS	Select UART0 transmit interrupt source
	U1IRS	Select UART1 transmit interrupt source
	U0RRM	Set to 0
	U1RRM	Set to 0
	CLKMD0	Invalid because CLKMD1 = 0
	CLKMD1, RCSP, 7	Set to 0

i = 0 to 2, 5 to 7
j = 2, 5 to 7
Notes:
1. Set bits 4 and 5 in registers U0C0 and U1C1 to 0. Bits U0IRS, U1IRS, U0RRM, and U1RRM are in the UCON register.
2. The TXD2 pin is N channel open-drain output. No NCH bit in the U2C0 register is assigned. When write, set to 0.
3. Set the bits not listed above to 0 when writing to the registers in special mode 2.

17.1.4.1 Clock Phase Setting Function

One of four combinations of transfer clock phases and polarities can be selected using the CKPH bit in the UiSMR3 register and the CKPOL bit in the UiC0 register.

Make sure the transfer clock polarity and phase are the same for the master and salves to be communicated.

Figure 17.29 shows the Transmission and Reception Timing in Master Mode (Internal Clock).

Figure 17.30 shows the Transmission and Reception Timing (CKPH = 0) in Slave Mode (External Clock) while Figure 17.31 shows the Transmission and Reception Timing (CKPH = 1) in Slave Mode (External Clock).

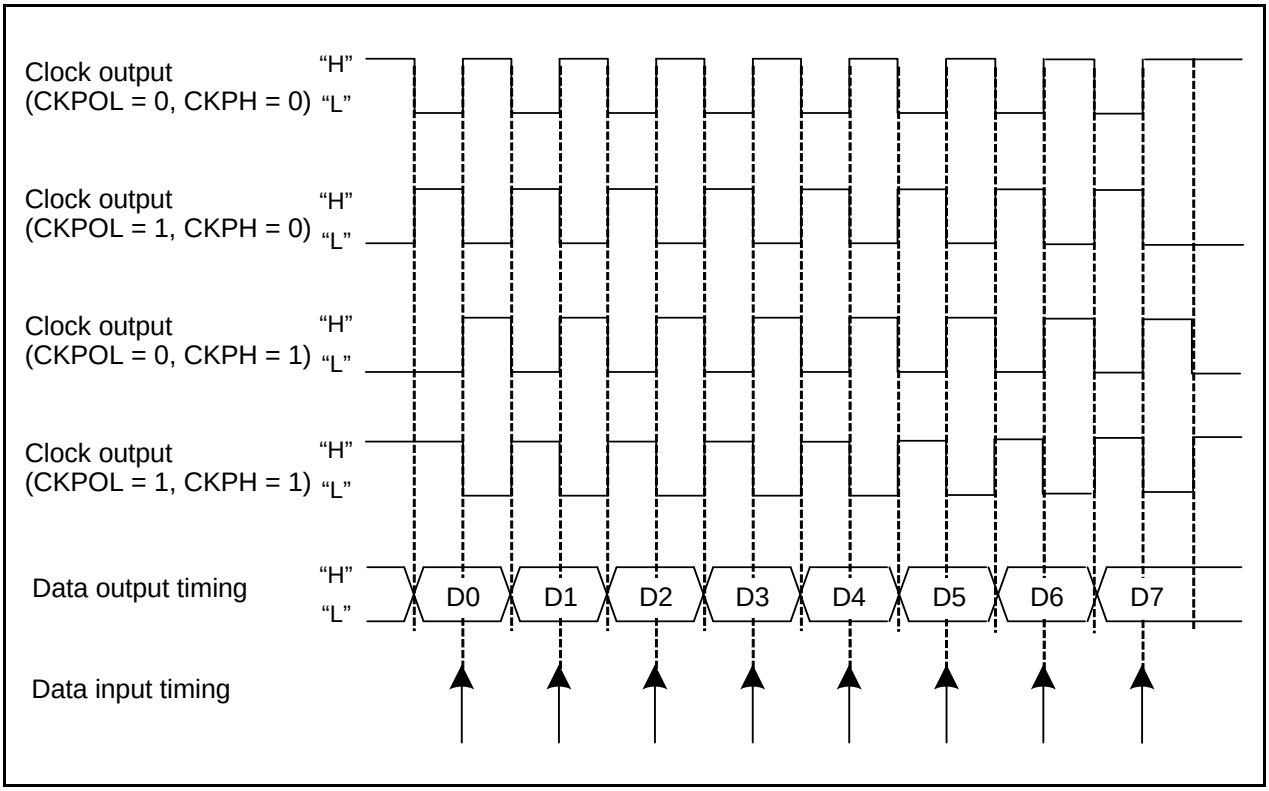
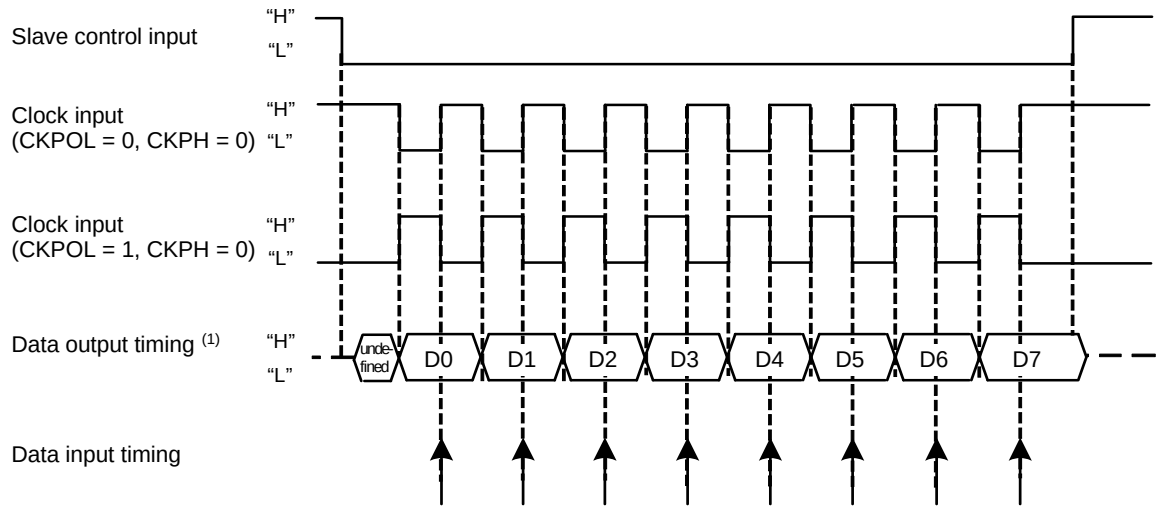
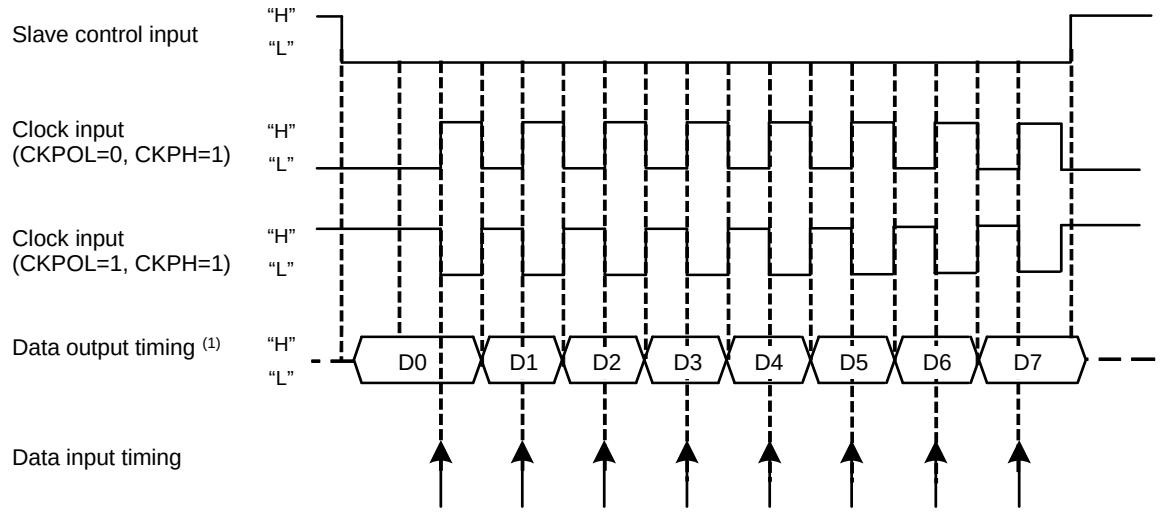


Figure 17.29 Transmission and Reception Timing in Master Mode (Internal Clock)



Note:
1. UART2 output is an N-channel open drain and must be pulled-up externally.

Figure 17.30 Transmission and Reception Timing (CKPH = 0) in Slave Mode (External Clock)



Note:
1. UART2 output is an N-channel open drain and must be pulled-up externally.

Figure 17.31 Transmission and Reception Timing (CKPH = 1) in Slave Mode (External Clock)

17.1.5 Special Mode 3 (IE mode)

In this mode, one bit of IEBus is approximated with one byte of UART mode waveform.

Table 17.17 lists the Registers to Be Used and Settings in IE Mode. Figure 17.32 shows the Bus Collision Detect Function-Related Bits.

If the TXDi pin (i = 0 to 2, 5 to 7) output level and RXDi pin input level do not match, a UARTi bus collision detect interrupt request is generated.

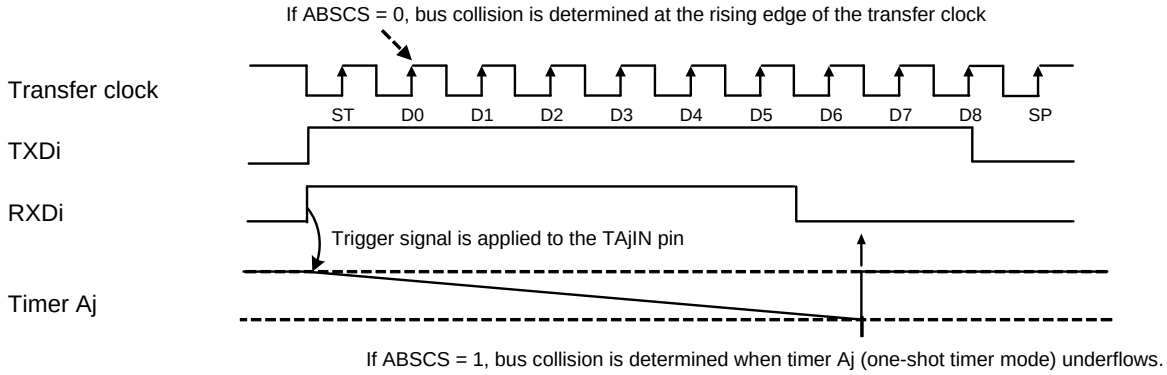
Use bits IFSR26 and IFSR27 in the IFSR2A register to enable the UART0 / UART1 bus collision detect function.

Table 17.17 Registers to Be Used and Settings in IE Mode

Register	Bit	Function
UiTB	0 to 8	Set transmission data
UiRB (3)	0 to 8	Reception data can be read
	OER, FER, PER, SUM	Error flag
UiBRG	0 to 7	Set a bit rate
UiMR	SMD2 to SMD0	Set to 110b
	CKDIR	Select the internal clock or external clock
	STPS	Set to 0
	PRY	Invalid because PRYE = 0
	PRYE	Set to 0
	IOPOL	Select the TXD and RXD input / output polarity
UiC0	CLK1, CLK0	Select the count source for the UiBRG register
	CRS	Invalid because CRD = 1
	TXEPT	Transmit register empty flag
	CRD	Set to 1
	NCH	Select TXDi pin output format (2)
	CKPOL	Set to 0
	UFORM	Set to 0
UiC1	TE	Set to 1 to enable transmission
	TI	Transmit buffer empty flag
	RE	Set to 1 to enable reception
	RI	Reception complete flag
	UjIRS (1)	Select the source of UARTj transmit interrupt
	UjRRM (1)	Set to 0
	UiLCH	Set to 0
	UiERE	Set to 0
UiSMR	0 to 3, 7	Set to 0
	ABSCS	Select the sampling timing at which to detect a bus collision
	ACSE	Set this bit to 1 to use the auto clear function of transmit enable bit
	SSS	Select the transmit start condition
UiSMR2	0 to 7	Set to 0
UiSMR3	0 to 7	Set to 0
UiSMR4	0 to 7	Set to 0
IFSR2A	IFSR26, IFSR27	Set to 1
UCON	U0IRS	Select the source of UART0 transmit interrupt
	U1IRS	Select the source of UART1 transmit interrupt
	U0RRM	Set to 0
	U1RRM	Set to 0
	CLKMD0	Invalid because CLKMD1 = 0
	CLKMD1, RCSP, 7	Set to 0

i = 0 to 2, 5 to 7
j = 2, 5 to 7
Notes:
1. Set bits 4 and 5 in registers U0C0 and U1C1 to 0. Bits U0IRS, U1IRS, U0RRM, and U1RRM are in the UCON register.
2. The TXD2 pin is N channel open-drain output. No NCH bit in the U2C0 register is assigned. When write, set to 0.
3. Set the bits not listed above to 0 when writing to the registers in IE mode.

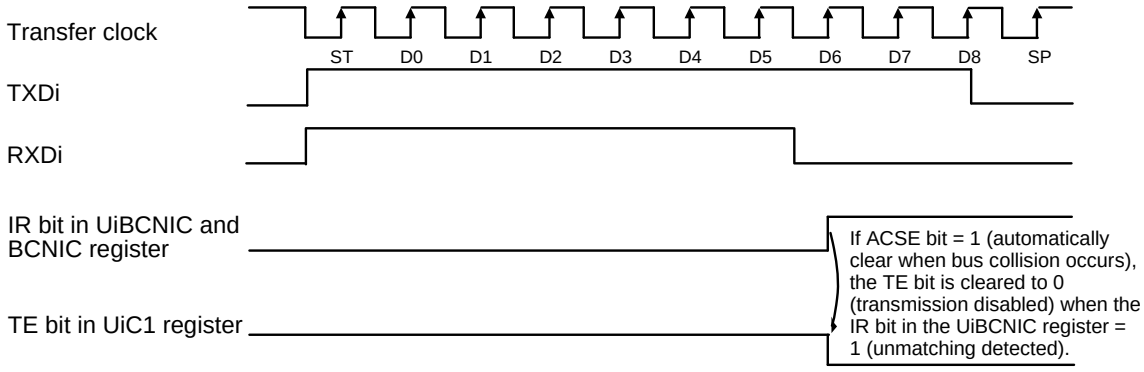
(1) The ABSCS Bit in the UiSMR Register (Bus collision detect sampling clock select) (i = 0 to 2, 5 to 7)



If ABSCS = 1, bus collision is determined when timer Aj (one-shot timer mode) underflows.

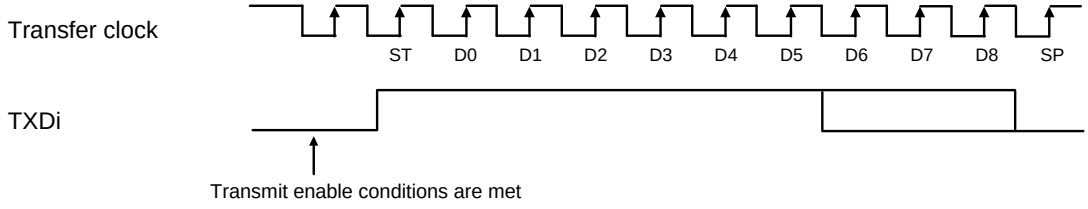
Timer Aj: Timer A3 in UART0; Timer A4 in UART1; Timer A0 in UART2
Timer A0 in UART5; Timer A3 in UART6; Timer A4 in UART7

(2) The ACSE Bit in the UiSMR Register (Auto clear of transmit enable bit)

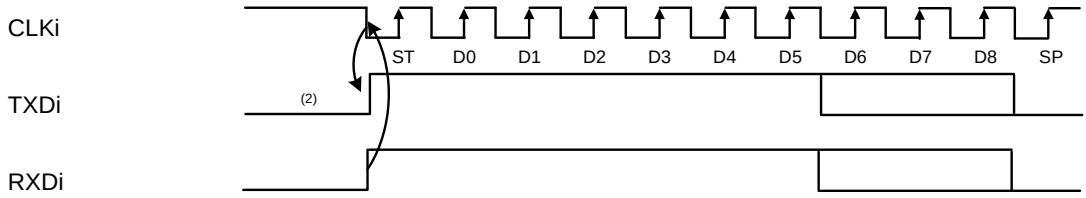


(3) The SSS Bit in the UiSMR Register (Transmit start condition select)

If SSS bit = 0, the serial interface starts sending data one transfer clock cycle after the transmission enable condition is met.



If SSS bit = 1, the serial interface starts sending data at the rising edge of RXDi (1)



Notes :
1. The falling edge of RXDi when IOPOL = 0; the rising edge of RXDi when IOPOL = 1.
2. The transmit condition must be met before the falling edge of RXDi (1).

The above diagram applies to the case where IOPOL = 1 (reversed).

i = 0 to 2, 5 to 7

Figure 17.32 Bus Collision Detect Function-Related Bits

17.1.6 Special Mode 4 (SIM Mode) (UART2)

SIM interface devices can communicate in UART mode. Both direct and inverse formats are available. The TXD2 pin outputs a low-level signal when a parity error is detected.
Table 17.18 lists the SIM Mode Specifications. Table 17.19 lists the Registers to Be Used and Settings in SIM Mode.

Table 17.18 SIM Mode Specifications

Item	Specification
Transfer Data Format	• Direct format • Inverse format
Transfer Clock	• The CKDIR bit in the U2MR register = 0 (internal clock): fi / (16(n + 1)) fi = f1SIO, f2SIO, f8SIO, f32SIO n = setting value of the U2BRG register 00h to FFh • The CKDIR bit = 1 (external clock): fEXT / (16(n + 1)) fEXT = input from the CLK2 pin n = setting value of the U2BRG register 00h to FFh
Transmission Start Condition	Before transmission starts, satisfy the following requirements • The TE bit in the U2C1 register = 1 (transmission enabled) • The TI bit in the U2C1 register = 0 (data present in the U2TB register)
Reception Start Condition	Before reception starts, satisfy the following requirements • The RE bit in the U2C1 register = 1 (reception enabled) • Start bit detection
Interrupt Request Generation Timing (2)	• While transmitting When the serial interface completed sending data from the UART2 transmit register (the U2IRS bit =1) • While receiving When transferring data from the UART2 receive register to the U2RB register (at completion of reception)
Error Detection	• Overrun error (1) This error occurs if the serial interface started receiving the next data before reading the U2RB register and received the bit one before the last stop bit of the next data • Framing error (3) This error occurs when the number of stop bits set is not detected • Parity error (3) During reception, if a parity error is detected, parity error signal is output from the TXD2 pin. During transmission, a parity error is detected by the level of input to the RXD2 pin when a transmission interrupt occurs • Error sum flag This flag is set to 1 when one of the overrun, framing, and parity errors occurs

Notes:
1. If an overrun error occurs, the received data of the U2RB register will be indeterminate. The IR bit in the S2RIC register does not change.
2. A transmit interrupt request is generated by setting the U2IRS bit to 1 (transmission completed) and the U2ERE bit to 1 (error signal output) in the U2C1 register after reset is canceled. Therefore, when using SIM mode, set the IR bit to 0 (interrupt not requested) after setting the bits.
3. The timing at which the framing error flag and the parity error flag are set is detected when data is transferred from the UART2 receive register to the U2RB register.

Table 17.19 Registers to Be Used and Settings in SIM Mode

Register	Bit	Function
U2TB (1)	0 to 7	Set transmission data
U2RB (1)	0 to 7	Reception data can be read
	OER,FER,PER,SUM	Error flag
U2BRG	0 to 7	Set a bit rate

Table 17.19 Registers to Be Used and Settings in SIM Mode

U2MR	SMD2 to SMD0	Set to 101b
	CKDIR	Select the internal clock or external clock
	STPS	Set to 0
	PRY	Set to 1 in direct format or 0 in inverse format
	PRYE	Set to 1
	IOPOL	Set to 0
U2C0	CLK0,CLK1	Select the count source for the U2BRG register
	CRS	Invalid because CRD = 1
	TXEPT	Transmit register empty flag
	CRD	Set to 1
	NCH	Set to 0
	CKPOL	Set to 0
	UFORM	Set to 0 in direct format or 1 in inverse format
U2C1	TE	Set to 1 to enable transmission
	TI	Transmit buffer empty flag
	RE	Set to 1 to enable reception
	RI	Reception complete flag
	U2IRS	Set to 1
	U2RRM	Set to 0
	U2LCH	Set to 0 in direct format or 1 in inverse format
	U2ERE	Set to 1
U2SMR (1)	0 to 3	Set to 0
U2SMR2	0 to 7	Set to 0
U2SMR3	0 to 7	Set to 0
U2SMR4	0 to 7	Set to 0

Note:
1. Set the bits not listed above to 0 when writing to the registers in SIM mode.

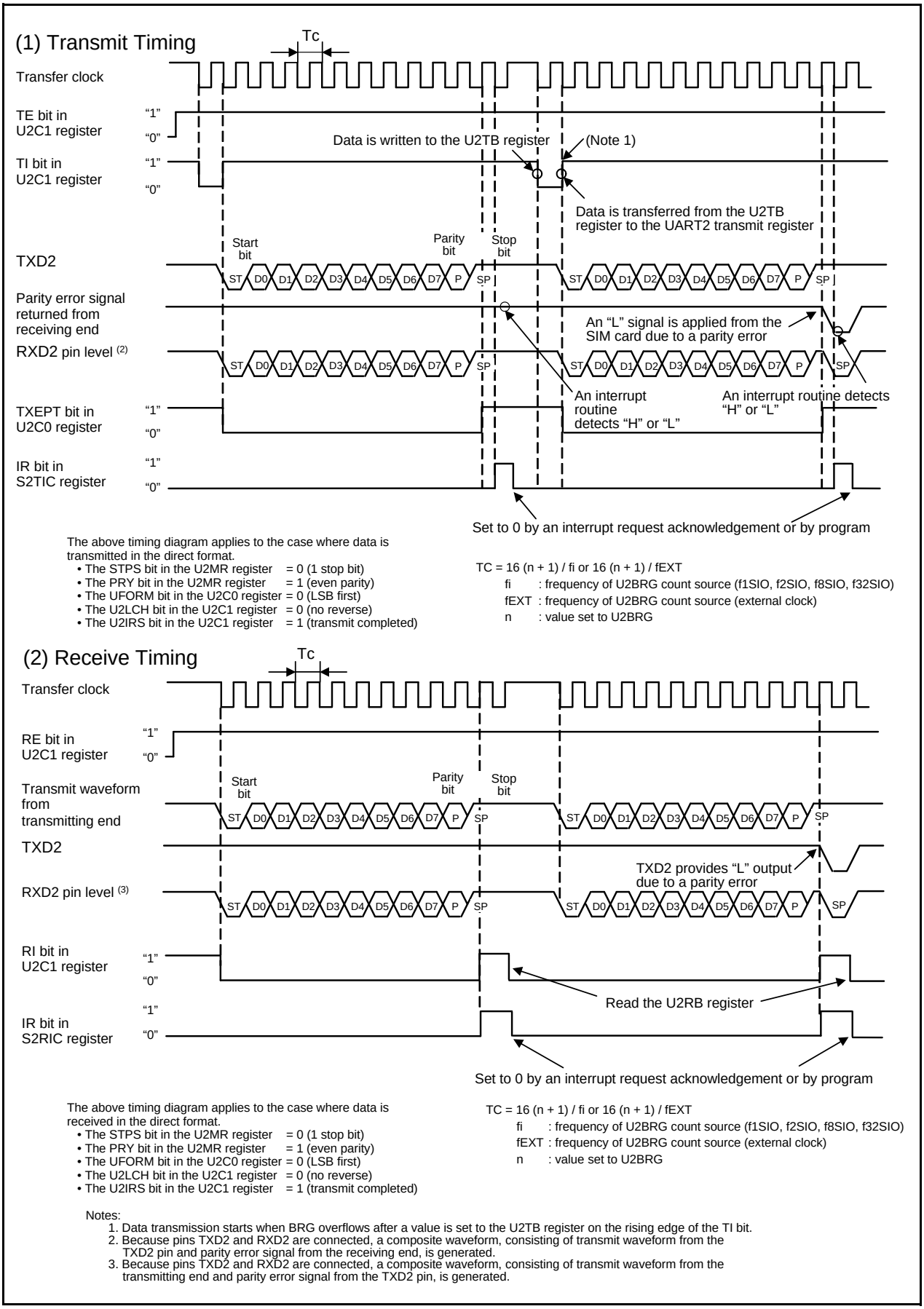


Figure 17.33 Transmit and Receive Timing in SIM Mode

Figure 17.34 shows an Example of SIM Interface Connection. Connect TXD2 and RXD2, and then place a pull-up resistance.

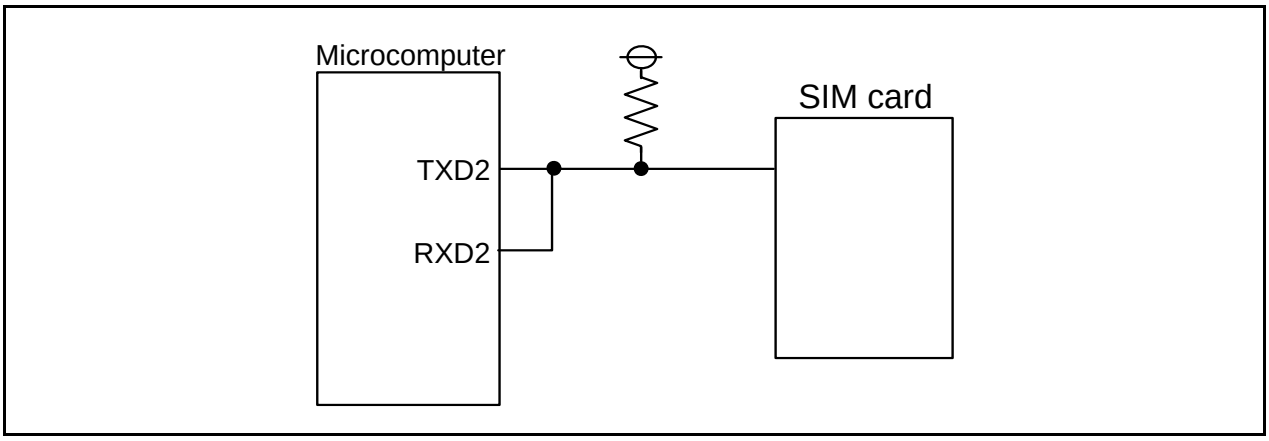


Figure 17.34 Example of SIM Interface Connection

17.1.6.1 Parity Error Signal Output

The parity error signal is enabled by setting the U2ERE bit in the U2C1 register to 1 (error signal output).

The parity error signal is output when a parity error is detected while receiving data. A low-level signal is output from the TXD2 pin in the timing shown in Figure 17.35. If the U2RB register is read while outputting a parity error signal, the PER bit is cleared to 0 (no parity error) and at the same time the TXD2 output is returned high.

When transmitting, a transmission complete interrupt request is generated at the falling edge of the transfer clock pulse that immediately follows the stop bit. Therefore, whether a parity error signal has been returned can be determined by reading the port that shares the RXD2 pin in a transmission complete interrupt routine.

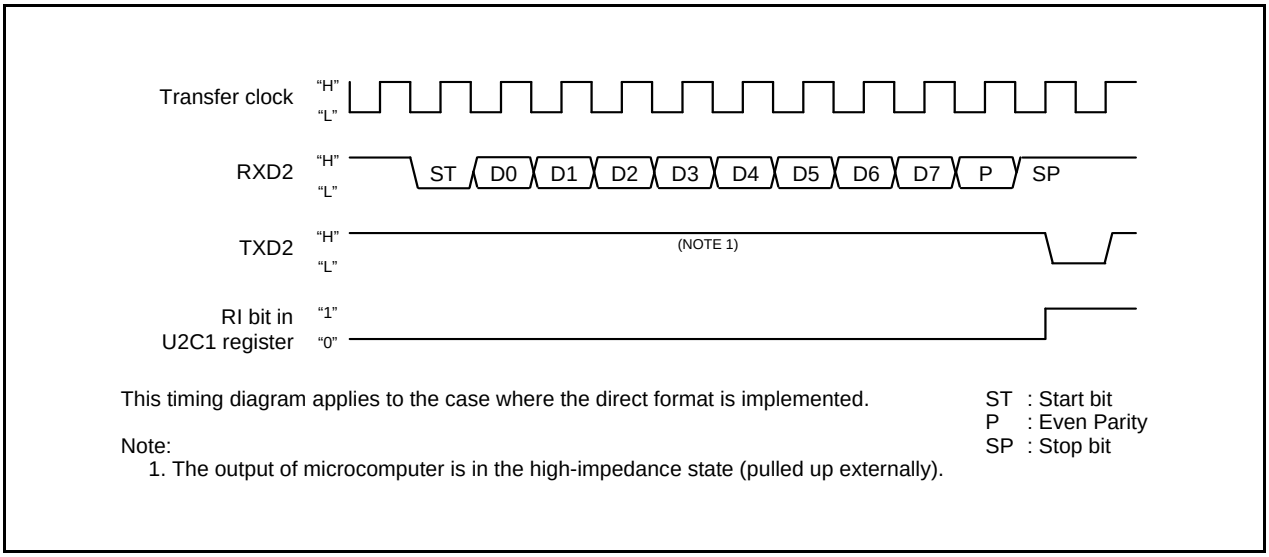


Figure 17.35 Parity Error Signal Output Timing

17.1.6.2 Format

Two formats are available: direct format and inverse format.
In direct format, set the PRYE bit in the U2MR register to 1 (parity enabled), the PRY bit to 1(even parity), the UFORM bit in the U2C0 register to 0 (LSB first) and the U2LCH bit in the U2C1 register to 0 (not inverted). When data are transmitted, data set in the U2TB register are transmitted with the even-numbered parity, starting from D0. When data are received, received data are stored in the U2RB register, starting from D0. The even-numbered parity determines whether a parity error occurs.
In inverse format, set the PRYE bit to 1, the PRY bit to 0 (odd parity), the UFORM bit to 1 (MSB first), and the U2LCH bit to 1 (inverted). When data are transmitted, values set in the U2TB register are logically inversed and are transmitted with the odd-numbered parity, starting from D7. When data are received, received data are logically inversed to be stored in the U2RB register, starting from D7. The odd-numbered parity determines whether a parity error occurs.

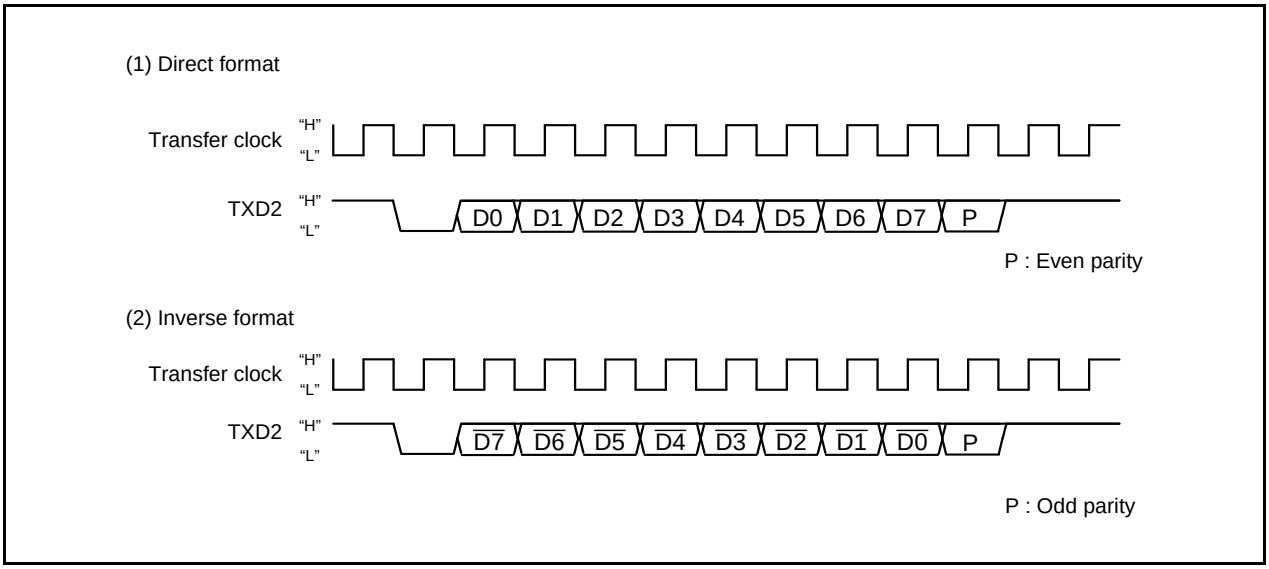


Figure 17.36 SIM Interface Format

17.2 SI/O3 and SI/O4

SI/O3 and SI/O4 are exclusive clock-synchronous serial I/Os.

Figure 17.37 shows the SI/O3 and SI/O4 Block Diagram, and Figure 17.38 shows the Registers S3C, S4C, S3BRG, S4BRG, S3TRR, and S4TRR.

Table 17.20 shows the SI/O3 and SI/O4 Specifications.

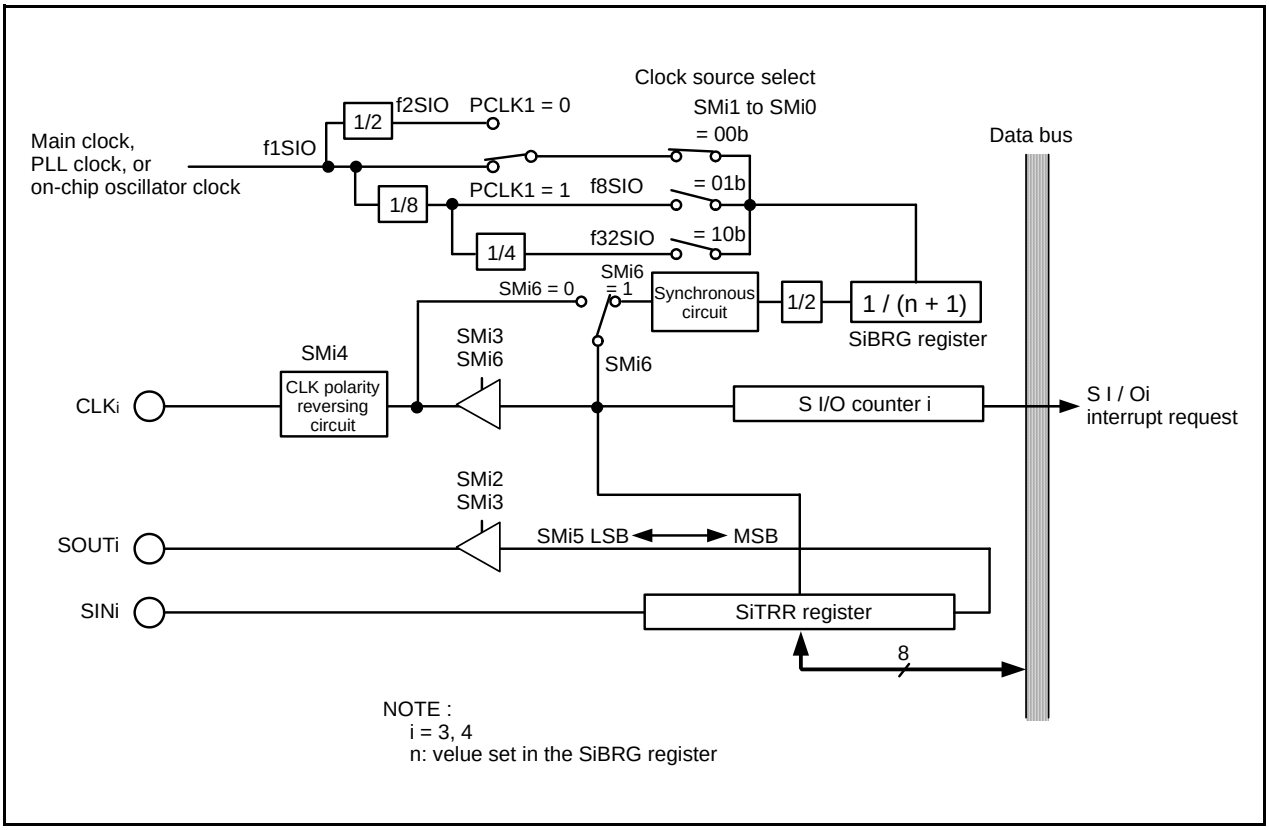


Figure 17.37 SI/O3 and SI/O4 Block Diagram

SI/Oi Control Register (i = 3, 4) (1)

b7 b6 b5 b4 b3 b2 b1 b0

Symbol	Address	After Reset
S3C	0272h	01000000b
S4C	0276h	01000000b

Bit symbol	Bit Name	Function	RW
SMi0	Internal synchronous clock select bit (6)	b1 b0 0 0 : Selecting f1SIO or f2SIO (5) 0 1 : Selecting f8SIO 1 0 : Selecting f32SIO 1 1 : Do not set	RW
SMi1			
SMi2	SOUTi output disable bit (4)	0 : SOUTi output enabled 1 : SOUTi output disabled (high-Impedance)	RW
SMi3	SI/Oi port select bit	0 : Input / output port serial interface disabled 1 : SOUTi output, CLKi function serial interface enabled	RW
SMi4	CLK polarity select bit	0 : Transmit data is output at falling edge of transfer clock and receive data is input at rising edge 1 : Transmit data is output at rising edge of transfer clock and receive data is input at falling edge	RW
SMi5	Transfer direction select bit	0 : LSB first 1 : MSB first	RW
SMi6	Synchronous clock select bit	0 : External clock (2) 1 : Internal clock (3)	RW
SMi7	SOUTi initial value set bit	Valid when SMi6 = 0 (7) 0 : "L" output 1 : "H" output	RW

Notes :
1. Make sure this register is written to by the next instruction after setting the PRC2 bit in the PRCR register to 1 (write enabled).
2. Set the SMi3 bit to 1 and the corresponding port direction bit to 0 (input mode).
3. Set the SMi3 bit to 1 (SOUTi output, CLKi function).
4. When the SMi2 bit is set to 1, the target pin goes to high-impedance state regardless of which function of the pin is being used.
5. Selected by the PCLK1 bit in the PCLKR register.
6. When the values of bits SMi1 and SMi0 are changed, set the SiBRG register.
7. Set the value when SMi3 bit is set to 0 (I/O port). When the SMi3 bit is set to 1 (SOUTi output) subsequently, the selected level signal by the SMi7 bit is output from the SOUTi pin.

SI/Oi Bit Rate Register (i = 3, 4) (1, 2, 3)

b7 b0

Symbol	Address	After Reset
S3BRG	0273h	Indeterminate
S4BRG	0277h	Indeterminate

Function	Setting Range	RW
BRGi divides the count source by n + 1 where n = set value	00h to FFh	WO

Notes :
1. Write to this register while serial interface is neither transmitting nor receiving.
2. Use MOV instruction to write to this register.
3. Write to this register after setting bits SMi1 and SMi0 in the SiC register.

SI/Oi Transmit / Receive Register (i = 3, 4) (1, 2)

b7 b0

Symbol	Address	After Reset
S3TRR	0270h	Indeterminate
S4TRR	0274h	Indeterminate

Function	Setting Range	RW
Transmission / reception starts by writing transmit data to this register. After transmission / reception completes, reception data can be read by reading this register.		RW

Notes :
1. Write to this register while serial interface is neither transmitting nor receiving.
2. To receive data, set the corresponding port direction bit for SINi to 0 (input mode).

Figure 17.38 Registers S3C, S4C, S3BRG, S4BRG, S3TRR, and S4TRR

SI/O 34 Control Register 2

b7 b6 b5 b4 b3 b2 b1 b0: X X X X 0 X 0

Symbol	Address	After Reset
S34C2	0278h	00XXX0X0b

Bit Symbol	Bit Name	Function	RW
— (b0)	Reserved bit	Set to 0	RW
— (b1)	No register bit. If necessary, set to 0. Read as undefined value		—
— (b2)	Reserved bit	Set to 0	RW
— (b5-b3)	No register bits. If necessary, set to 0. Read as undefined value		—
SM26	SOUT3 output control bit (1)	SOUT3 status after transmission 0 : High-impedance 1 : Last bit level retained	RW
SM27	SOUT4 output control bit (1)	SOUT4 status after transmission 0 : High-impedance 1 : Last bit level retained	RW

NOTE :
1. Bits SM26 and SM27 are valid when the SMi3 bit in registers S3C and S4C are set to 1 (SOUT, CLK)

Figure 17.39 S34C2 Register

Table 17.20 SI/O3 and SI/O4 Specifications

Item	Specification
Transfer Data Format	Transfer data length: 8 bits
Transfer Clock	• The SMi6 bit in the SiC (i = 3, 4) register = 1 (internal clock): fj / (2(n + 1)) fj = f1SIO, f8SIO, f32SIO n = setting value of the SiBRG register 00h to FFh • The SMi6 bit = 0 (external clock): input from the CLKi pin (1)
Transmission / Reception Start Condition	Before transmission / reception starts, satisfy the following requirements Write transmit data to the SiTRR register (2, 3)
Interrupt Request Generation Timing	• When the SMi4 bit in the SiC register = 0 The rising edge of the last transfer clock pulse (4) • When the SMi4 bit = 1 The falling edge of the last transfer clock pulse (4)
CLKi Pin Function	I/O port, transfer clock input, transfer clock output
SOUTi Pin Function	I/O port, transmit data output, high-impedance
SINi Pin Function	I/O port, receive data input
Select Function	• LSB first or MSB first selection Whether to start sending / receiving data beginning with bit 0 or beginning with bit 7 can be selected • CLK polarity selection Whether transmit data is output / input at the rising edge or falling edge of transfer clock can be selected. • Function for setting an SOUTi initial value set function When the SMi6 bit in the SiC register = 0 (external clock), the SOUTi pin output level while not transmitting can be selected. • SOUTi state selection after transmission Whether to set to high-impedance or retain the last bit level can be selected.

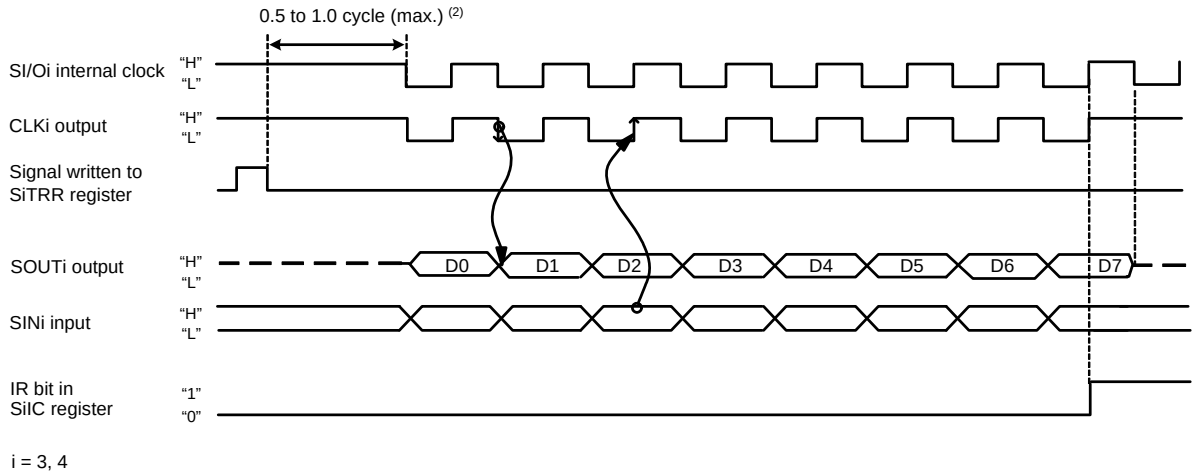
Notes:

1. To set the SMi6 bit in the SiC register to 0 (external clock), follow the procedure described below.
   - If the SMi4 bit in the SiC register = 0, write transmit data to the SiTRR register while input on the CLKi pin is high. The same applies when rewriting the SMi7 bit in the SiC register.
   - If the SMi4 bit = 1, write transmit data to the SiTRR register while input on the CLKi pin is low. The same applies when rewriting the SMi7 bit.
   - Because shift operation continues as long as the transfer clock is supplied to the SI/Oi circuit, stop the transfer clock after supplying eight pulses. If the SMi6 bit = 1 (internal clock), the transfer clock automatically stops.
2. Unlike UART0 to UART2, SI/Oi (i = 3 to 4) is not separated between the transfer register and buffer. Therefore, do not write the next transmit data to the SiTRR register during transmission.
3. When the SMi6 bit = 1 (internal clock) and bits SM26 (SOUT3) and SM27 (SOUT4) in the S34C2 register = 0 (high-impedance after transmission), SOUTi retains the last data for a 1/2 transfer clock period after completion of transfer and, thereafter, goes to high-impedance state. However, if transmit data is written to the SiTRR register during this period, SOUTi immediately goes to high-impedance state, with the data hold time thereby reduced.
4. When the SMi6 bit = 1 (internal clock), the transfer clock stops in the high state if the SMi4 bit = 0, or stops in the low state if the SMi4 bit = 1.

17.2.1 SI/Oi Operation Timing

Figure 17.40 shows the SI/Oi Operation Timing

.



i = 3, 4

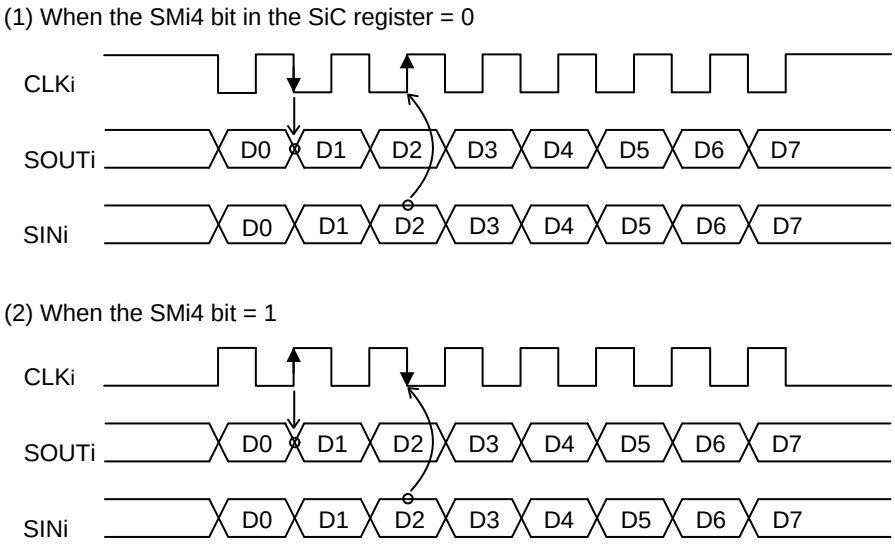
Notes :

1. This diagram applies to the case where the SiC register bits are set as follows:
   SMi2 = 0 (SOUTi output), SMi3 = 1 (SOUTi output, CLKi function), SMi4 = 0 (transmit data output at the falling edge and receive data input at the rising edge of the transfer clock), SMi5 = 0 (LSB first) and SMi6 = 1 (internal clock)
   Bits SM26 (SOUT3) and SM27 (SOUT4) in the S34C2 register are 0 (high-impedance after transmission).
2. If the SMi6 bit = 1 (internal clock), the serial I/O starts sending or receiving data a maximum of 0.5 to 1.0 transfer clock cycles after writing to the SiTRR register.

Figure 17.40 SI/Oi Operation Timing

17.2.2 CLK Polarity Selection

The SMi4 bit in the SiC register allows selection of the polarity of the transfer clock. Figure 17.41 shows the Polarity of Transfer Clock



i = 3, 4

Notes:

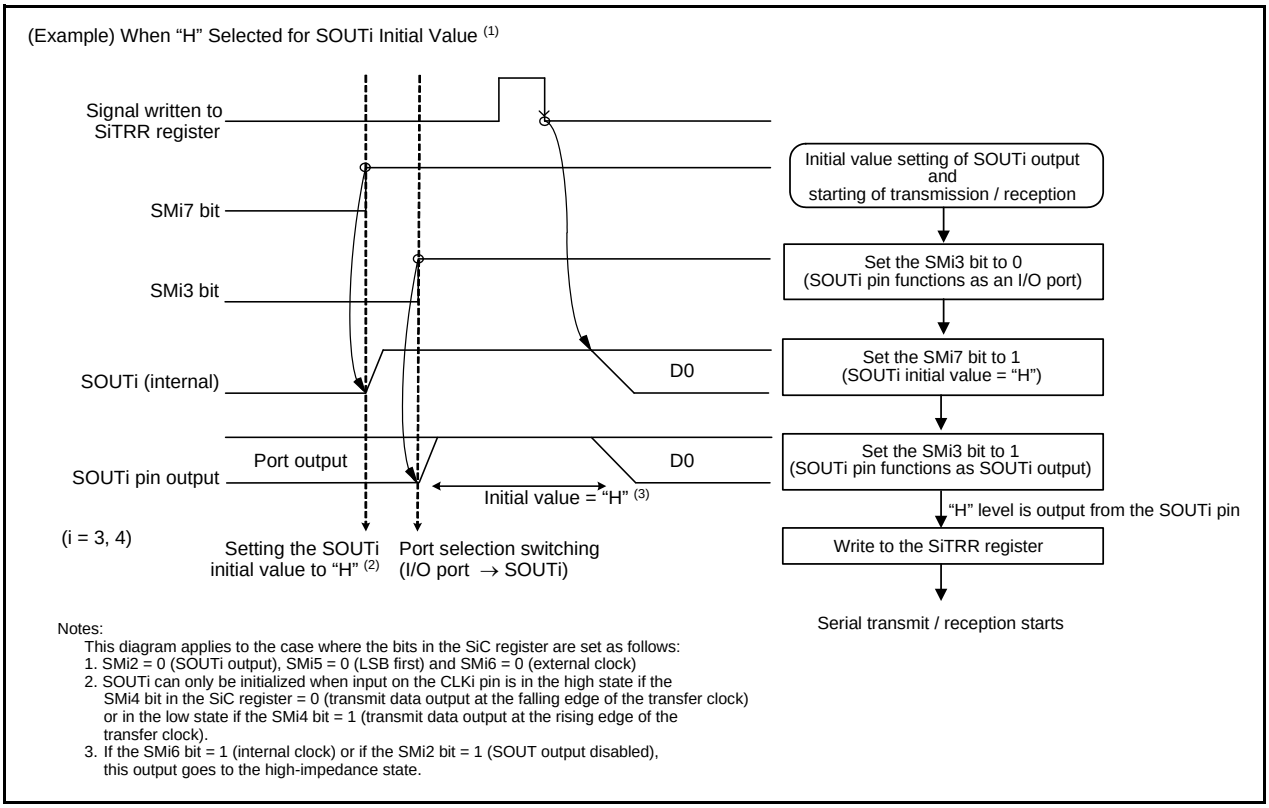
This diagram applies to the case where the SiC register bits are set as follows:

1. When the SMi5 = 0 (LSB first) and the SMi6 = 1 (internal clock)
2. When the SMi6 bit =1 (internal clock), high level is output from the CLKi pin if not transferring data.
3. When the SMi6 bit =1

Figure 17.41 Polarity of Transfer Clock

17.2.3 Functions for Setting an SOUTi Initial Value

If the SMi6 bit in the SiC register = 0 (external clock), the SOUTi pin output can be fixed high or low when not transferring. However, the last bit value of the former data is retained between data and data when transmitting data consecutively. Figure 17.42 shows the timing chart for setting an SOUTi initial value and how to set it.

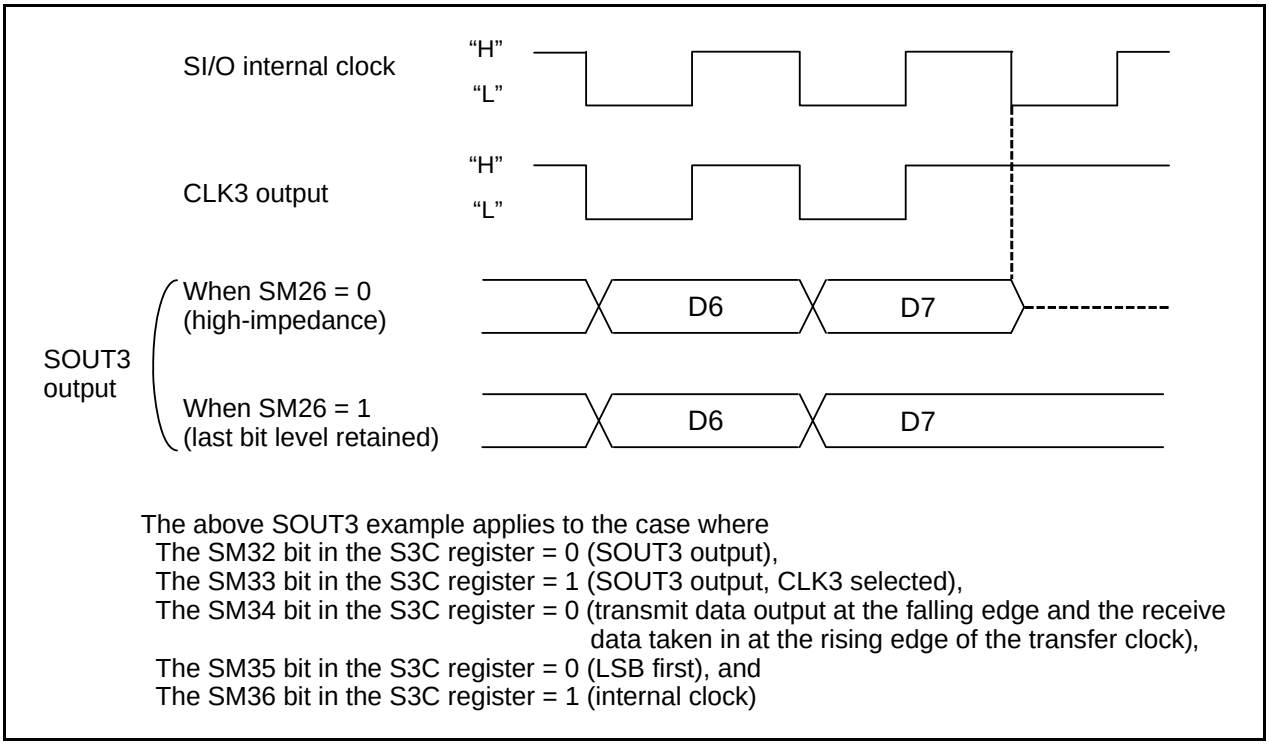


Notes:
This diagram applies to the case where the bits in the SiC register are set as follows:
1. SMi2 = 0 (SOUTi output), SMi5 = 0 (LSB first) and SMi6 = 0 (external clock)
2. SOUTi can only be initialized when input on the CLKi pin is in the high state if the SMi4 bit in the SiC register = 0 (transmit data output at the falling edge of the transfer clock) or in the low state if the SMi4 bit = 1 (transmit data output at the rising edge of the transfer clock).
3. If the SMi6 bit = 1 (internal clock) or if the SMi2 bit = 1 (SOUT output disabled), this output goes to the high-impedance state.

Figure 17.42 SOUTi Initial Value Setting

17.2.4 Functions for Selecting SOUTi State after Transmission

If bits SM26 and SM27 in the S34C2 register = 1 (last bit level retained), output from the SOUTi pin retains the last bit level after transmission. Figure 17.43 shows the Level of SOUT3 Pin after Transmission.



The above SOUT3 example applies to the case where
The SM32 bit in the S3C register = 0 (SOUT3 output),
The SM33 bit in the S3C register = 1 (SOUT3 output, CLK3 selected),
The SM34 bit in the S3C register = 0 (transmit data output at the falling edge and the receive data taken in at the rising edge of the transfer clock),
The SM35 bit in the S3C register = 0 (LSB first), and
The SM36 bit in the S3C register = 1 (internal clock)

Figure 17.43 Level of SOUT3 Pin after Transmission

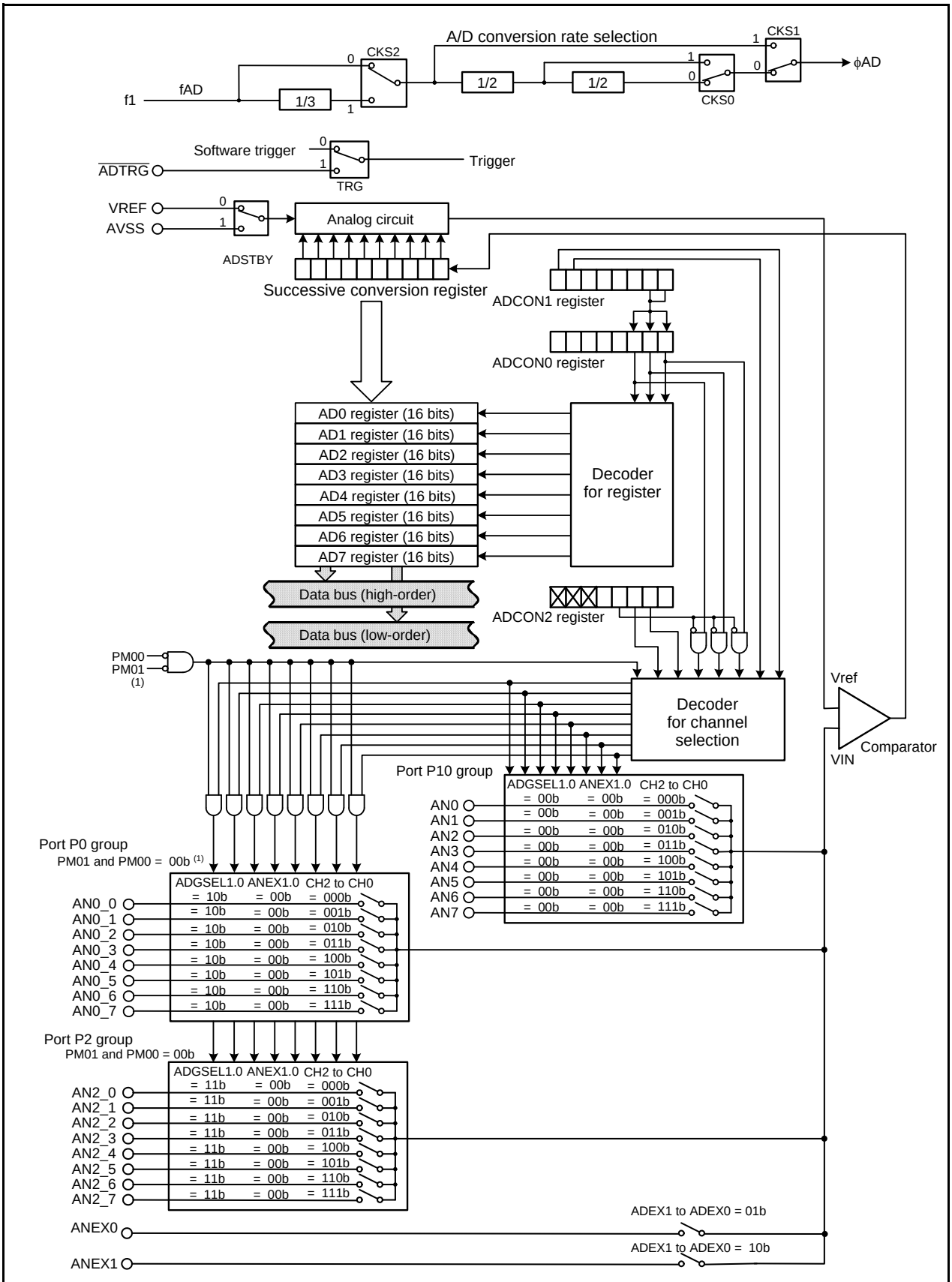
18. A/D Converter

The microcomputer contains one A/D converter circuit based on 10-bit successive approximation method. The analog inputs share the pins with P10_0 to P10_7, P9_5, P9_6, P0_0 to P0_7, and P2_0 to P2_7. Similarly, $\overline{\text{ADTRG}}$ input shares the pin with P9_7. Therefore, when using these inputs, make sure the corresponding port direction bits are set to 0 (input mode).
When not using the A/D converter, set the ADSTBY bit to 0 (A/D operation stop: standby), so that no current will flow for the A/D converter, helping to reduce the power consumption of the chip.
The A/D conversion result is stored in the ADi register for pins ANi, AN0_i, and AN2_i (i = 0 to 7).
Table 18.1 shows the A/D Converter Specifications. Figure 18.1 shows the A/D Converter Block Diagram, and Figures 18.2 and 18.3 show the A/D converter-related registers.

Table 18.1 A/D Converter Specifications

Item	Performance
A/D Conversion Method	Successive approximation
Analog Input Voltage (1)	0V to AVCC (VCC1)
Operating clock ϕAD (1)	fAD, divide-by-2 of fAD, divide-by-3 of fAD, divide-by-4 of fAD, divide-by-6 of fAD, divide-by-12 of fAD
Resolution	10-bit
Integral Nonlinearity Error	When AVCC = VREF = 5V AN0 to AN7 input, AN0_0 to AN0_7 input or AN2_0 to AN2_7 input: ±3LSB ANEX0 or ANEX1 input: ±3LSB When AVCC = VREF = 3.0V AN0 to AN7 input, AN0_0 to AN0_7 input or AN2_0 to AN2_7 input: ±3LSB ANEX0 or ANEX1 input: ±3LSB
Operating Modes	One-shot mode, repeat mode, single sweep mode, repeat sweep mode 0, repeat sweep mode 1
Analog Input Pins	8 pins (AN0 to AN7) + 2 pins (ANEX0 and ANEX1) + 8 pins (AN0_0 to AN0_7) + 8 pins (AN2_0 to AN2_7)
A/D Conversion Start Condition	• Software trigger The ADST bit in the ADCON0 register is set to 1 (A/D conversion start) • External trigger (retriggerable) Input on the $\overline{\text{ADTRG}}$ pin changes state from high to low after the ADST bit is set to 1 (A/D conversion start)
Conversion Speed per Pin	43 ϕAD cycles minimum

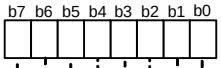
Notes:
1. Set ϕAD frequency as follows:
   When VCC1 = 4.0 to 5.5 V, 2 MHz ≤ ϕAD ≤ 25 MHz
   When VCC1 = 3.2 to 4.0 V, 2 MHz ≤ ϕAD ≤ 16 MHz
   When VCC1 = 3.0 to 3.2 V, 2 MHz ≤ ϕAD ≤ 10 MHz



Note :
1. Port P0 group (AN0_0 to AN0_7) can be used as analog input pins even when bits PM01 and PM00 are set to 01b (memory expansion mode) and bits PM05 and PM04 are set to 11b (multiplex bus allocated to the entire CS space).

Figure 18.1 A/D Converter Block Diagram

A/D Control Register 0 (1)

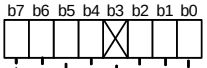


Symbol	Address	After Reset
ADCON0	03D6h	00000XXXb

Bit Symbol	Bit Name	Function	RW
CH0	Analog input pin select bit	Function varies with each operation mode	RW
CH1			RW
CH2			RW
MD0	A/D operation mode select bit 0	b4 b3 0 0 : One-shot mode 0 1 : Repeat mode 1 0 : Single sweep mode 1 1 : Repeat sweep mode 0 or repeat sweep mode 1	RW
MD1			RW
TRG	Trigger select bit	0 : Software trigger 1 : ADTRG trigger	RW
ADST	A/D conversion start flag	0 : A/D conversion stop 1 : A/D conversion start	RW
CKS0	Frequency select bit 0	Refer to **Note 2 of the ADCON2 Register**	RW

Note :
1. If the ADCON0 register is rewritten during A/D conversion, the conversion result will be indeterminate.

A/D Control Register 1 (1)



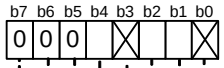
Symbol	Address	After Reset
ADCON1	03D7h	0000X000b

Bit Symbol	Bit Name	Function	RW
SCAN0	A/D sweep pin select bit	Function varies with each operation mode	RW
SCAN1			RW
MD2	A/D operation mode select bit 1	0 : Any mode other than repeat sweep mode 1 1 : Repeat sweep mode 1	RW
— (b3)	No register bit. If necessary, set to 0. Read as undefined value		—
CKS1	Frequency select bit 1	Refer to **Note 2 of the ADCON2 Register**	RW
ADSTBY	A/D standby bit (2)	0 : A/D operation stopped (standby) 1 : A/D operation enabled	RW
ADEX0	Extended pin select bit	Function varies with each operation mode	RW
ADEX1			RW

Notes:
1. If the ADCON1 register is rewritten during A/D conversion, the conversion result will be indeterminate.
2. If the ADSTBY bit is changed from 0 (A/D operation stopped) to 1 (A/D operation enabled), wait for 1 ϕAD cycle or more before starting A/D conversion.

Figure 18.2 Registers ADCON0 and ADCON1

A/D Control Register 2 (1)



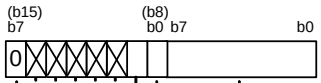
Symbol	Address	After Reset
ADCON2	03D4h	0000X00Xb

Bit Symbol	Bit Name	Function	RW
— (b0)	No register bit. If necessary, set to 0. Read as undefined value		—
ADGSEL0	A/D input group select bit	b2 b1 0 0 : Select port P10 group 0 1 : Do not set 1 0 : Select port P0 group 1 1 : Select port P2 group	RW
ADGSEL1			RW
— (b3)	No register bit. If necessary, set to 0. Read as undefined value		—
CKS2	Frequency select bit 2 (2)	0: Selects fAD, fAD divided by 2, or fAD divided by 4. 1: Selects fAD divided by 3, fAD divided by 6, or fAD divided by 12.	RW
— (b7-b5)	Reserved bits	Set to 0	RW

Notes :
1. If the ADCON2 register is rewritten during A/D conversion, the conversion result will be indeterminate.
2. ϕAD frequency is selected by a combination of the CKS0 bit in the ADCON0 register, the CKS1 bit in the ADCON1 register, and the CKS2 bit in the ADCON2 register.

CKS2	CKS1	CKS0	ϕAD
0	0	0	fAD divided by 4
0	0	1	fAD divided by 2
0	1	0	fAD
0	1	1	
1	0	0	fAD divided by 12
1	0	1	fAD divided by 6
1	1	0	fAD divided by 3
1	1	1	

A/D Register (i = 0 to 7)



Symbol	Address	After Reset
AD0	03C1h to 03C0h	000000XXb, XXXXXXXXb
AD1	03C3h to 03C2h	000000XXb, XXXXXXXXb
AD2	03C5h to 03C4h	000000XXb, XXXXXXXXb
AD3	03C7h to 03C6h	000000XXb, XXXXXXXXb
AD4	03C9h to 03C8h	000000XXb, XXXXXXXXb
AD5	03CBh to 03CAh	000000XXb, XXXXXXXXb
AD6	03CDh to 03CCh	000000XXb, XXXXXXXXb
AD7	03CFh to 03CEh	000000XXb, XXXXXXXXb

Function		RW
Eight low-order bits of A/D conversion result		RO
Two high-order bits of A/D conversion result		RO
No register bits. If necessary, set to 0. Read as 0		—
Reserved bit	Read as 0	RO

Note :
1. Use the MOV instruction to write to this register.

Figure 18.3 Registers ADCON2 and AD0 to AD7

18.1 Mode Description

18.1.1 One-Shot Mode

In one-shot mode, analog voltage applied to a selected pin is converted to a digital code once. Table 18.2 shows the One-Shot Mode Specifications. Figure 18.4 shows the Registers ADCON0 and ADCON1 (One-shot Mode).

Table 18.2 One-Shot Mode Specifications

Item	Specification
Function	Bits CH2 to CH0 in the ADCON0 register and bits ADGSEL1 and ADGSEL0 in the ADCON2 register, or bits ADEX1 and ADEX0 in the ADCON1 register select a pin. Analog voltage applied to the pin is converted to a digital code once.
A/D Conversion Start Condition	• When the TRG bit in the ADCON0 register is 0 (software trigger) the ADST bit in the ADCON0 register is set to 1 (A/D conversion starts) • When the TRG bit is 1 ($\overline{\text{ADTRG}}$ trigger) input on the $\overline{\text{ADTRG}}$ pin changes state from high to low after the ADST bit is set to 1 (A/D conversion start)
A/D Conversion Stop Condition	• Completion of A/D conversion (The ADST bit is cleared to 0 (A/D conversion stop)) • Set the ADST bit to 0
Interrupt Request Generation Timing	Completion of A/D conversion
Analog Input Pin	Select one pin from AN0 to AN7, AN0_0 to AN0_7, AN2_0 to AN2_7, ANEX0, and ANEX1
Reading of Result of A/D Converter	Read one of the registers AD0 to AD7 that corresponds to the selected pin

A/D Control Register 0 (1)

b7	b6	b5	b4	b3	b2	b1	b0
			0	0			

Symbol	Address	After Reset
ADCON0	03D6h	00000XXXb

Bit Symbol	Bit Name	Function	RW
CH0	Analog input pin select bit (2)	b2 b1 b0 0 0 0 : Select AN0 0 0 1 : Select AN1 0 1 0 : Select AN2 0 1 1 : Select AN3 1 0 0 : Select AN4 1 0 1 : Select AN5 1 1 0 : Select AN6 1 1 1 : Select AN7	RW
CH1			RW
CH2			RW
MD0	A/D operation mode select bit 0	b4 b3 0 0 : One-shot mode	RW
MD1			RW
TRG	Trigger select bit	0 : Software trigger 1 : ADTRG trigger	RW
ADST	A/D conversion start flag	0 : A/D conversion stop 1 : A/D conversion start	RW
CKS0	Frequency select bit 0	Refer to **Note 2 of the ADCON2 Register**	RW

Notes :
1. If the ADCON0 register is rewritten during A/D conversion, the conversion result will be indeterminate.
2. AN0_0 to AN0_7 and AN2_0 to AN2_7 can be used in the same way as AN0 to AN7. Use bits ADGSEL1 and ADGSEL0 in the ADCON2 register to select the desired pin.

A/D Control Register 1 (1)

b7	b6	b5	b4	b3	b2	b1	b0
		1		X	0		

Symbol	Address	After Reset
ADCON1	03D7h	0000X000b

Bit Symbol	Bit Name	Function	RW
SCAN0	A/D sweep pin select bit	Invalid in one-shot mode	RW
SCAN1			RW
MD2	A/D operation mode select bit 1	Set to 0 when one-shot mode is selected	RW
— (b3)	No register bit. If necessary, set to 0. Read as undefined value		—
CKS1	Frequency select bit 1	Refer to **NOTE 2 of the ADCON2 Register**	RW
ADSTBY	A/D standby bit (2)	Set to 1 (A/D operation enabled)	RW
ADEX0	Extended pin select bit	b7 b6 0 0 : ANEX0 and ANEX1 are not used 0 1 : ANEX0 input is A/D converted 1 0 : ANEX1 input is A/D converted 1 1 : Do not set	RW
ADEX1			RW

Notes :
1. If the ADCON1 register is rewritten during A/D conversion, the conversion result will be indeterminate.
2. If the ADSTBY bit is changed from 0 (A/D operation stopped) to 1 (A/D operation enabled), wait for 1 ϕAD cycle or more before starting A/D conversion.

Figure 18.4 Registers ADCON0 and ADCON1 (One-shot Mode)

18.1.2 Repeat Mode

In repeat mode, analog voltage applied to a selected pin is repeatedly converted to a digital code. Table 18.3 shows the Repeat Mode Specifications. Figure 18.5 shows the Registers ADCON0 and ADCON1 (Repeat Mode).

Table 18.3 Repeat Mode Specifications

Item	Specification
Function	Bits CH2 to CH0 in the ADCON0 register and bits ADGSEL1 and ADGSEL0 in the ADCON2 register, or bits ADEX1 and ADEX0 in the ADCON1 register select a pin. Analog voltage applied to this pin is repeatedly converted to a digital code.
A/D Conversion Start Condition	• When the TRG bit in the ADCON0 register is 0 (software trigger) the ADST bit in the ADCON0 register is set to 1 (A/D conversion start) • When the TRG bit is 1 ($\overline{\text{ADTRG}}$ trigger) input on the $\overline{\text{ADTRG}}$ pin changes state from high to low after the ADST bit is set to 1 (A/D conversion start)
A/D Conversion Stop Condition	Set the ADST bit to 0 (A/D conversion stop)
Interrupt Request Generation timing	No interrupt requests generated
Analog Input Pin	Select one pin from AN0 to AN7, AN0_0 to AN0_7, AN2_0 to AN2_7, ANEX0, and ANEX1
Reading of Result of A/D Converter	Read one of the registers AD0 to AD7 that corresponds to the selected pin

A/D Control Register 0 (1)

b7	b6	b5	b4	b3	b2	b1	b0
			0	1			

Symbol	Address	After Reset
ADCON0	03D6h	00000XXXb

Bit Symbol	Bit Name	Function	RW
CH0	Analog input pin select bit (2)	b2 b1 b0 0 0 0 : Select AN0 0 0 1 : Select AN1 0 1 0 : Select AN2 0 1 1 : Select AN3 1 0 0 : Select AN4 1 0 1 : Select AN5 1 1 0 : Select AN6 1 1 1 : Select AN7	RW
CH1			RW
CH2			RW
MD0	A/D operation mode select bit 0	b4 b3 0 1 : Repeat mode	RW
MD1			RW
TRG	Trigger select bit	0 : Software trigger 1 : $\overline{\text{ADTRG}}$ trigger	RW
ADST	A/D conversion start flag	0 : A/D conversion stop 1 : A/D conversion start	RW
CKS0	Frequency select bit 0	Refer to **Note 2 of the ADCON2 Register**	RW

Notes :
1. If the ADCON0 register is rewritten during A/D conversion, the conversion result will be indeterminate.
2. AN0_0 to AN0_7, and AN2_0 to AN2_7 can be used in the same way as AN0 to AN7. Use bits ADGSEL1 and ADGSEL0 in the ADCON2 register to select the desired pin.

A/D Control Register 1 (1)

b7	b6	b5	b4	b3	b2	b1	b0
		1		X	0		

Symbol	Address	After Reset
ADCON1	03D7h	0000X000b

Bit Symbol	Bit Name	Function	RW
SCAN0	A/D sweep pin select bit	Invalid in repeat mode	RW
SCAN1			RW
MD2	A/D operation mode select bit 1	Set to 0 when repeat mode is selected	RW
— (b3)	No register bit. If necessary, set to 0. Read as undefined value		—
CKS1	Frequency select bit 1	Refer to **Note 2 of the ADCON2 Register**	RW
ADSTBY	A/D standby bit (2)	Set to 1 (A/D operation enabled)	RW
ADEX0	Extended pin select bit	b7 b6 0 0 : ANEX0 and ANEX1 are not used 0 1 : ANEX0 input is A/D converted 1 0 : ANEX1 input is A/D converted 1 1 : Do not set	RW
ADEX1			RW

Notes :
1. If the ADCON1 register is rewritten during A/D conversion, the conversion result will be indeterminate.
2. When the ADSTBY bit is reset from 0 (A/D operation stopped) to 1 (A/D operation enabled), wait for 1 ϕAD cycle or more before starting A/D conversion.

Figure 18.5 Registers ADCON0 and ADCON1 (Repeat Mode)

18.1.3 Single Sweep Mode

In single sweep mode, analog voltage that is applied to selected pins is converted one-by-one to a digital code. Table 18.4 shows the Single Sweep Mode Specifications. Figure 18.6 shows Registers ADCON0 and ADCON1 (Single Sweep Mode).

Table 18.4 Single Sweep Mode Specifications

Item	Specification
Function	Bits SCAN1 and SCAN0 in the ADCON1 register and bits ADGSEL1 and ADGSEL0 in the ADCON2 register select pins. Analog voltage applied to the pins is converted one-by-one to a digital code.
A/D Conversion Start Condition	• When the TRG bit in the ADCON0 register is 0 (software trigger) the ADST bit in the ADCON0 register is set to 1 (A/D conversion start) • When the TRG bit is 1 ($\overline{\text{ADTRG}}$ trigger) input on the $\overline{\text{ADTRG}}$ pin changes state from high to low after the ADST bit is set to 1 (A/D conversion start)
A/D Conversion Stop Condition	• Completion of A/D conversion (The ADST bit is cleared to 0 (A/D conversion stop)) • Set the ADST bit to 0
Interrupt Request Generation timing	Completion of A/D conversion
Analog Input Pin	Select from AN0 and AN1 (2 pins), AN0 to AN3 (4 pins), AN0 to AN5 (6 pins), and AN0 to AN7 (8 pin) (1)
Reading of Result of A/D Converter	Read one of the registers AD0 to AD7 that corresponds to the selected pin

Note:
1. AN0_0 to AN0_7 and AN2_0 to AN2_7 can be used in the same way as AN0 to AN7.

A/D Control Register 0 (1)

b7	b6	b5	b4	b3	b2	b1	b0
			1	0			

Symbol	Address	After Reset
ADCON0	03D6h	0000 0XXXb

Bit Symbol	Bit Name	Function	RW
CH0	Analog input pin select bit	Invalid in single sweep mode	RW
CH1			RW
CH2			RW
MD0	A/D operation mode select bit 0	b4 b3 1 0 : Single sweep mode	RW
MD1			RW
TRG	Trigger select bit	0 : Software trigger 1 : ADTRG trigger	RW
ADST	A/D conversion start flag	0 : A/D conversion stop 1 : A/D conversion start	RW
CKS0	Frequency select bit 0	Refer to **Note 2 of the ADCON2 Register**	RW

Note :
1. If the ADCON0 register is rewritten during A/D conversion, the conversion result will be indeterminate.

A/D Control Register 1 (1)

b7	b6	b5	b4	b3	b2	b1	b0
		1		X	0		

Symbol	Address	After Reset
ADCON1	03D7h	0000 X000b

Bit Symbol	Bit Name	Function	RW
SCAN0	A/D sweep pin select bit (2)	When single sweep mode is selected b1 b0 0 0: AN0 to AN1 (2 pins) 0 1: AN0 to AN3 (4 pins) 1 0: AN0 to AN5 (6 pins) 1 1: AN0 to AN7 (8 pins)	RW
SCAN1			RW
MD2	A/D operation mode select bit 1	Set to 0 in single sweep mode.	RW
— (b3)	No register bit. If necessary, set to 0. Read as undefined value		—
CKS1	Frequency select bit 1	Refer to **Note 2 of the ADCON2 Register**	RW
ADSTBY	A/D standby bit (3)	Set to 1 (A/D operation enabled)	RW
ADEX0	Extended pin select bit	b7 b6 0 0: ANEX0 and ANEX1 are not used 0 1: Do not set 1 0: Do not set 1 1: Do not set	RW
ADEX1			RW

Notes :
1. If the ADCON1 register is rewritten during A/D conversion, the conversion result will be indeterminate.
2. AN0_0 to AN0_7 and AN2_0 to AN2_7 can be used in the same way as AN0 to AN7. Use bits ADGSEL1 and ADGSEL0 in the ADCON2 register to select the desired pin.
3. If the ADSTBY bit is changed from 0 (A/D operation stopped) to 1 (A/D operation enabled), wait for 1 ϕAD cycle or more before starting A/D conversion.

Figure 18.6 Registers ADCON0 and ADCON1 (Single Sweep Mode)

18.1.4 Repeat Sweep Mode 0

In repeat sweep mode 0, analog voltage applied to selected pins is repeatedly converted to a digital code.

Table 18.5 shows the Repeat Sweep Mode 0 Specifications. Figure 18.7 shows Registers ADCON0 and ADCON1 (Repeat Sweep Mode 0).

Table 18.5 Repeat Sweep Mode 0 Specifications

Item	Specification
Function	Bits SCAN1 and SCAN0 in the ADCON1 register and bits ADGSEL1 and ADGSEL0 in the ADCON2 register select pins. Analog voltage applied to the pins is repeatedly converted to a digital code.
A/D Conversion Start Condition	• When the TRG bit in the ADCON0 register is 0 (software trigger) the ADST bit in the ADCON0 register is set to 1 (A/D conversion start) • When the TRG bit is 1 ($\overline{\text{ADTRG}}$ trigger) input on the $\overline{\text{ADTRG}}$ pin changes state from high to low after the ADST bit is set to 1 (A/D conversion start)
A/D Conversion Stop Condition	Set the ADST bit to 0 (A/D conversion stop)
Interrupt Request Generation timing	No interrupt requests generated
Analog Input Pin	Select from AN0 and AN1 (2 pins), AN0 to AN3 (4 pins), AN0 to AN5 (6 pins), and AN0 to AN7 (8 pin) (1)
Reading of Result of A/D Converter	Read one of the registers AD0 to AD7 that corresponds to the selected pin

Note:
1. AN0_0 to AN0_7 and AN2_0 to AN2_7 can be used in the same way as AN0 to AN7.

A/D Control Register 0 (1)

b7 b6 b5 b4 b3 b2 b1 b0: 1 1

Symbol	Address	After Reset
ADCON0	03D6h	00000XXXb

Bit Symbol	Bit Name	Function	RW
CH0	Analog input pin select bit	Invalid in repeat sweep mode 0	RW
CH1			RW
CH2			RW
MD0	A/D operation mode select bit 0	b4 b3 1 1 : Repeat sweep mode 0 or repeat sweep mode 1	RW
MD1			RW
TRG	Trigger select bit	0 : Software trigger 1 : ADTRG trigger	RW
ADST	A/D conversion start flag	0 : A/D conversion stop 1 : A/D conversion start	RW
CKS0	Frequency select bit 0	Refer to **Note 2 of the ADCON2 Register**	RW

Note :
1. If the ADCON0 register is rewritten during A/D conversion, the conversion result will be indeterminate.

A/D Control Register 1 (1)

b7 b6 b5 b4 b3 b2 b1 b0: 1 X 0

Symbol	Address	After Reset
ADCON1	03D7h	0000X000b

Bit Symbol	Bit Name	Function	RW
SCAN0	A/D sweep pin select bit (2)	When repeat sweep mode 0 is selected b1 b0 0 0 : AN0 to AN1 (2 pins) 0 1 : AN0 to AN3 (4 pins) 1 0 : AN0 to AN5 (6 pins) 1 1 : AN0 to AN7 (8 pins)	RW
SCAN1			RW
MD2	A/D operation mode select bit 1	Set to 0 when repeat sweep mode 0 is selected	RW
— (b3)	No register bit. If necessary, set to 0. Read as undefined value		—
CKS1	Frequency select bit 1	Refer to **Note 2 of the ADCON2 Register**	RW
ADSTBY	A/D standby bit (3)	Set to 1 (A/D operation enabled)	RW
ADEX0	Extension pin select bit	b7 b6 0 0 : ANEX0 and ANEX1 are not used 0 1 : Do not set 1 0 : Do not set 1 1 : Do not set	RW
ADEX1			RW

Notes :
1. If the ADCON1 register is rewritten during A/D conversion, the conversion result will be indeterminate.
2. AN0_0 to AN0_7 and AN2_0 to AN2_7 can be used in the same way as AN0 to AN7. Use bits ADGSEL1 and ADGSEL0 in the ADCON2 register to select the desired pin.
3. If the ADSTBY bit is changed from 0 (A/D operation stopped) to 1 (A/D operation enabled), wait for 1 ϕAD cycle or more before starting A/D conversion.

Figure 18.7 Registers ADCON0 and ADCON1 (Repeat Sweep Mode 0)

18.1.5 Repeat Sweep Mode 1

In repeat sweep mode 1, analog voltage selectively applied to all pins is repeatedly converted to a digital code. Table 18.6 shows the Repeat Sweep Mode 1 Specifications. Figure 18.8 shows Registers ADCON0 and ADCON1 (Repeat Sweep Mode 1).

Table 18.6 Repeat Sweep Mode 1 Specifications

Item	Specification
Function	The input voltages on all pins selected by bits ADGSEL1 and ADGSEL0 in the ADCON2 register are A/D converted repeatedly, with priority given to pins selected by bits SCAN1 and SCAN0 in the ADCON1 register and bits ADGSEL1 and ADGSEL0. Example: If AN0 selected, input voltages are A/D converted in order of AN0→AN1→AN0→AN2→AN0→AN3, and so on.
A/D Conversion Start Condition	• When the TRG bit in the ADCON0 register is 0 (software trigger), the ADST bit in the ADCON0 register is set to 1 (A/D conversion start) • When the TRG bit is 1 ($\overline{\text{ADTRG}}$ trigger), input on the $\overline{\text{ADTRG}}$ pin changes state from high to low after the ADST bit is set to 1 (A/D conversion start)
A/D Conversion Stop Condition	Set the ADST bit to 0 (A/D conversion stop)
Interrupt Request Generation timing	No interrupt requests generated
Analog Input Pins to be Given Priority When A/D Converted	Select from AN0 (1 pin), AN0 and AN1 (2 pins), AN0 to AN2 (3 pins), and AN0 to AN3 (4 pins) (1)
Reading of Result of A/D Converter	Read one of the registers AD0 to AD7 that corresponds to the selected pin

Notes:
1. AN0_0 to AN0_7 and AN2_0 to AN2_7 can be used in the same way as AN0 to AN7.

A/D Control Register 0 (1)

b7	b6	b5	b4	b3	b2	b1	b0
			1	1			

Symbol	Address	After Reset
ADCON0	03D6h	00000XXXb

Bit Symbol	Bit Name	Function	RW
CH0	Analog input pin select bit	Invalid in repeat sweep mode 1	RW
CH1			RW
CH2			RW
MD0	A/D operation mode select bit 0	b4 b3 1 1 : Repeat sweep mode 0 or repeat sweep mode 1	RW
MD1			RW
TRG	Trigger select bit	0 : Software trigger 1 : ADTRG trigger	RW
ADST	A/D conversion start flag	0 : A/D conversion stop 1 : A/D conversion start	RW
CKS0	Frequency select bit 0	Refer to **Note 2 of the ADCON2 Register**	RW

Note :
1. If the ADCON0 register is rewritten during A/D conversion, the conversion result will be indeterminate.

A/D Control Register 1 (1)

b7	b6	b5	b4	b3	b2	b1	b0
		1		X	1		

Symbol	Address	After Reset
ADCON1	03D7h	0000X000b

Bit Symbol	Bit Name	Function	RW
SCAN0	A/D sweep pin select bit (2)	When repeat sweep mode 1 is selected b1 b0 0 0 : AN0 (1 pin) 0 1 : AN1 (2 pins) 1 0 : AN2 (3 pins) 1 1 : AN3 (4 pins)	RW
SCAN1			RW
MD2	A/D operation mode select bit 1	1 : Repeat sweep mode 1	RW
— (b3)	No register bit. If necessary, set to 0. Read as undefined value		—
CKS1	Frequency select bit 1	Refer to **Note 2 of the ADCON2 Register**	RW
ADSTBY	A/D standby bit (3)	Set to 1 (A/D operation enabled)	RW
ADEX0	Extended pin select bit	b7 b6 0 0 : ANEX0 and ANEX1 are not used 0 1 : Do not set 1 0 : Do not set 1 1 : Do not set	RW
ADEX1			RW

Notes :
1. If the ADCON1 register is rewritten during A/D conversion, the conversion result will be indeterminate.
2. AN0_0 to AN0_7 and AN2_0 to AN2_7 can be used in the same way as AN0 to AN7. Use bits ADGSEL1 and ADGSEL0 in the ADCON2 register to select the desired pin.
3. If the ADSTBY bit is changed from 0 (A/D operation stopped) to 1 (A/D operation enabled), wait for 1 ϕAD cycle or more before starting A/D conversion.

Figure 18.8 Registers ADCON0 and ADCON1 (Repeat Sweep Mode 1)

18.2 Conversion Rate

The conversion rate is defined as follows.
Start dummy time depends on which ϕAD is selected. Table 18.7 shows Start Dummy Time. When the ADST bit in the ADCON0 register is set to 1 (A/D conversion start), A/D conversion starts after start dummy time elapses. 0 (A/D conversion stop) is read if the ADST bit is read before A/D conversion starts.
For multiple pins or A/D conversion repeat mode, for each pin, between-execution dummy time is inserted between A/D conversion execution time and the next A/D conversion execution time.
The ADST bit is set to 0 during the end dummy time, and the last A/D conversion result is set to the ADi register in one-shot mode and single sweep mode.

While in one-shot mode:
Start dummy time + A/D conversion execution time + end dummy time

When two pins are selected while in single sweep mode:
Start dummy time + (A/D conversion execution time + between-execution dummy time + A/D conversion execution time) + end dummy time

Start dummy time: See **Table 18.7 “Start Dummy Time”**
A/D conversion execution time: 40 ϕAD cycles per pin
Between-execution dummy time: 1 ϕAD cycle
End dummy time: 2 to 3 cycles of fAD

Table 18.7 Start Dummy Time

ϕAD Selection	Start Dummy Time
fAD	1 to 2 cycles of fAD
fAD divided by 2	2 to 3 cycles of fAD
fAD divided by 3	3 to 4 cycles of fAD
fAD divided by 4	3 to 4 cycles of fAD
fAD divided by 6	4 to 5 cycles of fAD
fAD divided by 12	7 to 8 cycles of fAD

18.3 Extended Analog Input Pins

In one-shot and repeat modes, pins ANEX0 and ANEX1 can be used as analog input pins. Use bits ADEX1 and ADEX0 in the ADCON1 register to select whether or not to use ANEX0 and ANEX1.
The A/D conversion results of ANEX0 and ANEX1 inputs are stored in registers AD0 and AD1, respectively.

18.4 Current Consumption Reducing Function

When not using the A/D converter, power consumption can be reduced by setting the ADSTBY bit in the ADCON1 register to 0 (A/D operation stopped: standby) to shut off any analog circuit current flow.
To use the A/D converter, set the ADSTBY bit to 1 (A/D operation enabled) after operating longer than one cycle of a timer count source, and then set the ADST bit in the ADCON0 register to 1 (A/D conversion start). Do not set bits ADST and ADSTBY to 1 at the same time.
Also, do not set the ADSTBY bit to 0 (A/D operation stopped: standby) during A/D conversion.

18.5 External Sensor

To perform A/D conversion accurately, charging the internal capacitor C shown in Figure 18.9 must be completed within a specified period of time.

T: Specified period of time (sampling time)
R0: Output impedance of sensor equivalent circuit
R: Internal resistance of the MCU
X: Precision (error) of the A/D converter
Y: Resolution of the A/D converter be Y (Y is 1024)

Generally, $VC = VIN\left\{1 - e^{-\frac{1}{C(R0+R)}t}\right\}$

When t = T, $VC = VIN - \frac{X}{Y}VIN = VIN\left(1 - \frac{X}{Y}\right)$

$$e^{-\frac{1}{C(R0+R)}T} = \frac{X}{Y}$$

$$-\frac{1}{C(R0+R)}T = \ln\frac{X}{Y}$$

Therefore, $R0 = -\frac{T}{C \bullet \ln\frac{X}{Y}} - R$

Figure 18.9 shows Analog Input Pin and External Sensor Equivalent Circuit. Impedance R0 by which voltage VC between pins of the capacitor C changes from 0 to VIN - (0.1/1024)VIN in time T when the difference between VIN and VC is 0.1LSB is obtained. (0.1/1024) means that A/D precision drop due to insufficient capacitor charge is kept to 0.1LSB in A/D conversion. Actual error however is the value of absolute accuracy added to 0.1LSB.
When ϕAD is 20 MHz, T is 0.75 μs. Output impedance R0 for charging capacitor C sufficiently within the time T is obtained as follows.

T = 0.75 μs, R = 10 kΩ, C = 6.0 pF, X = 0.1, and Y = 1024. Therefore,

$$R0 = -\frac{0.75 \times 10^{-6}}{6.0 \times 10^{-12} \bullet \ln\frac{0.1}{1024}} - 10 \times 10^{3} \approx 3.5 \times 10^{3}$$

Thus, the output impedance R0 of the sensor equivalent circuit, making the A/D converter precision (error) 0.1LSB or less, is up to 3.5 kΩ.

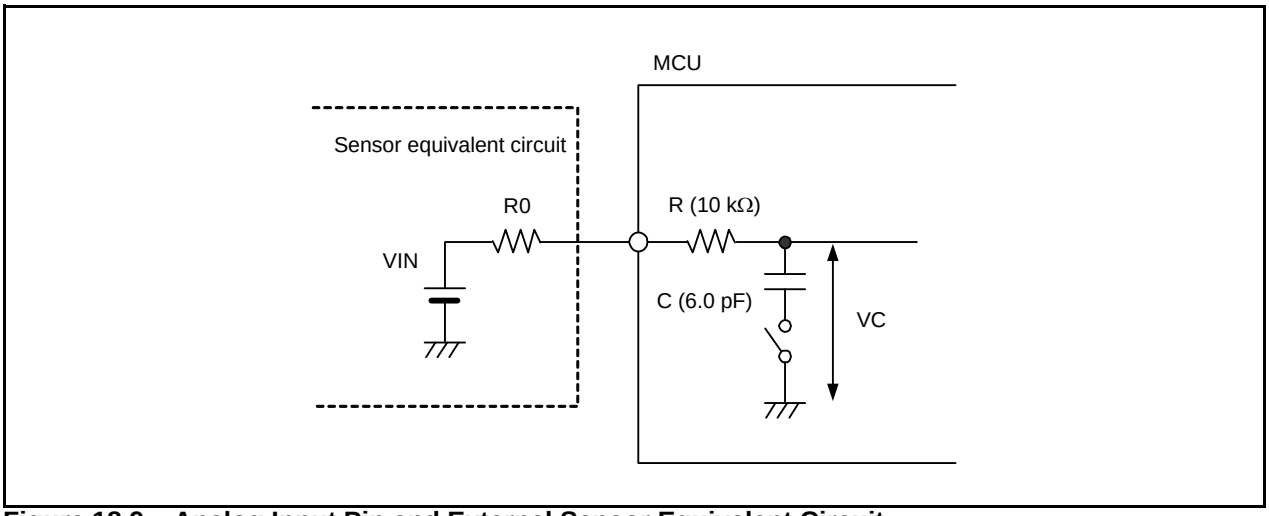


Figure 18.9 Analog Input Pin and External Sensor Equivalent Circuit

19. D/A Converter

19.1 Summary

The D/A converter consists of two independent 8-bit R-2R type D/A converters.
D/A conversion is performed by writing to the DAi register (i = 0 to 1). To output the result of conversion, set the DAiE bit in the DACON register to 1 (output enabled). Before using D/A conversion, clear the corresponding port direction bit to 0 (input mode). When the DAiE bit is set to 1 (input enabled), pull-up of a corresponding port is disabled.
Output analog voltage (V) is determined by a set value (n: decimal) in the DAi register.

$V = VREF \times \frac{n}{256}$ (n = 0 to 255)

VREF: reference voltage
Table 19.1 lists the D/A Converter Performance. Figure 19.1 shows the D/A Converter Block Diagram. Figure 19.2 shows Registers DACON, DA0, and DA1. Figure 19.3 shows the D/A Converter Equivalent Circuit.

Table 19.1 D/A Converter Performance

Item	Performance
D/A Conversion Method	R-2R
Resolution	8 bits
Analog Output Pin	2 channels (DA0 and DA1)

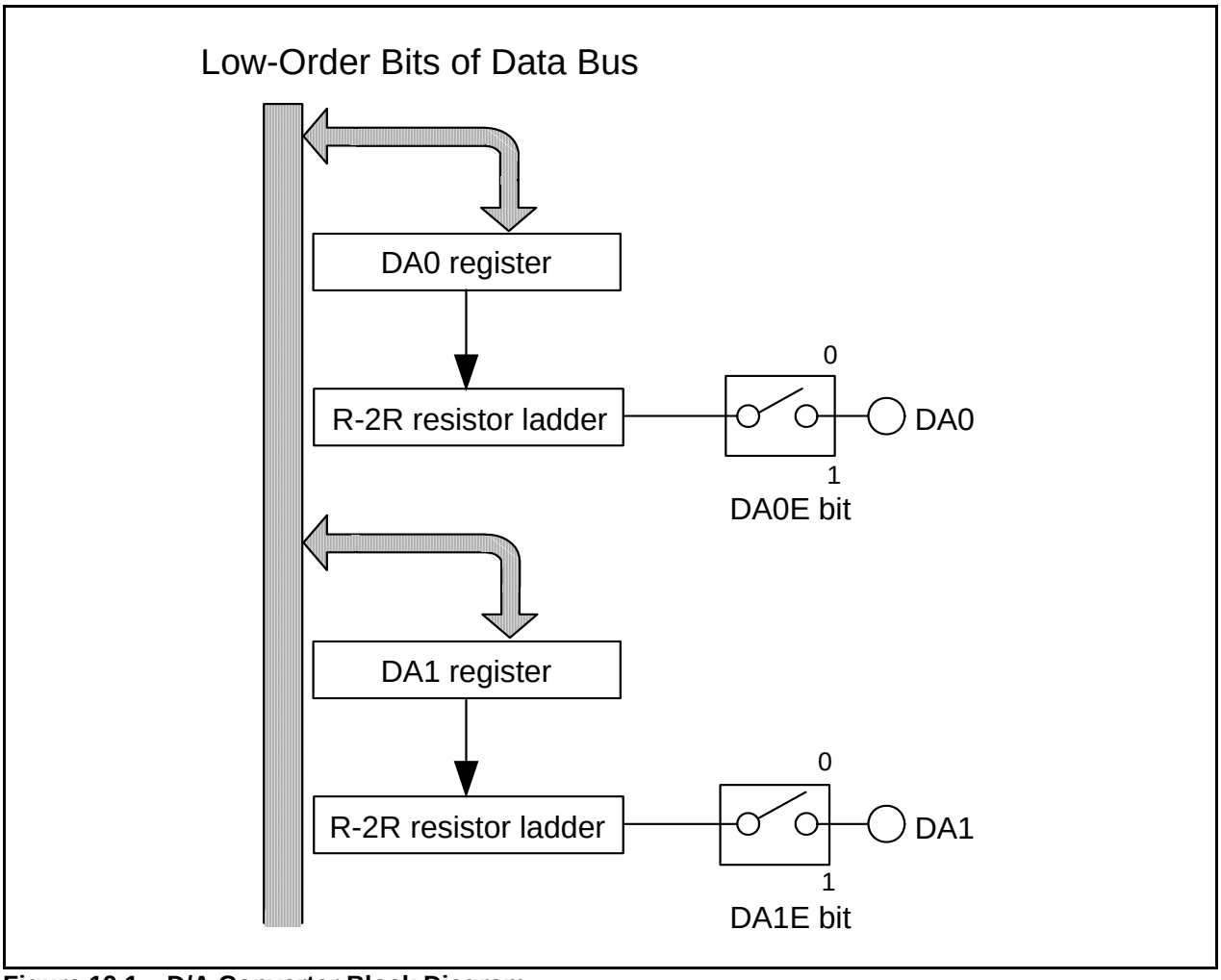


Figure 19.1 D/A Converter Block Diagram

D/A Control Register (1)

b7 b6 b5 b4 b3 b2 b1 b0

Symbol	Address	After Reset
DACON	03DCh	00h

Bit Symbol	Bit Name	Function	RW
DA0E	D/A 0 output enable bit	0 : Output disabled 1 : Output enabled	RW
DA1E	D/A 1 output enable bit	0 : Output disabled 1 : Output enabled	RW
— (b7-b2)	No register bits. If necessary, set to 0. Read as 0		—

Note :
1. When not using the D/A converter, clear the DAiE bit (i = 0 to 1) to 0 (output disabled) to reduce the unnecessary current consumption in the chip and set the DAi register to 00h to prevent current from flowing into the R-2R resistor ladder.

D/Ai Register (i = 0 to 1) (1)

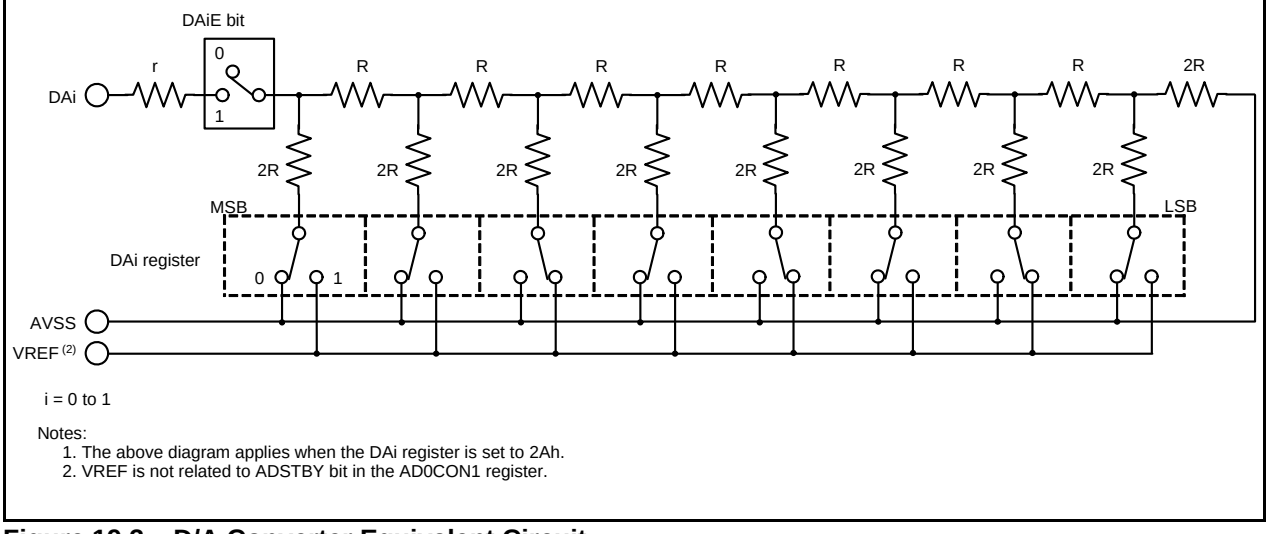
b7 b0

Symbol	Address	After Reset
DA0	03D8h	00h
DA1	03DAh	00h

Function	Setting Range	RW
Output value of D/A conversion	00h to FFh	RW

Note :
1. When not using the D/A converter, clear the DAiE bit (i = 0 to 1) to 0 (output disabled) to reduce the unnecessary current consumption in the chip and set the DAi register to 00h to prevent current from flowing into the R-2R resistor ladder.

Figure 19.2 Registers DACON, DA0, and DA1



Notes:
1. The above diagram applies when the DAi register is set to 2Ah.
2. VREF is not related to ADSTBY bit in the AD0CON1 register.

Figure 19.3 D/A Converter Equivalent Circuit

20. CRC Operation

The Cyclic Redundancy Check (CRC) operation detects an error in data blocks. The microcomputer uses a generator polynomial of CRC_CCITT ($X^{16} + X^{12} + X^5 + 1$) to generate CRC code.
The CRC code consists of 16 bits which are generated for each data block in given length, separated in 8 bit units. After the initial value is set in the CRCD register, the CRC code is set in that register each time one byte of data is written to the CRCIN register. CRC code generation for one-byte data is finished in two cycles.
Figure 20.1 shows the CRC Circuit Block Diagram. Figure 20.2 shows Registers CRCD and CRCIN. Figure 20.3 shows an example using the CRC Operation.

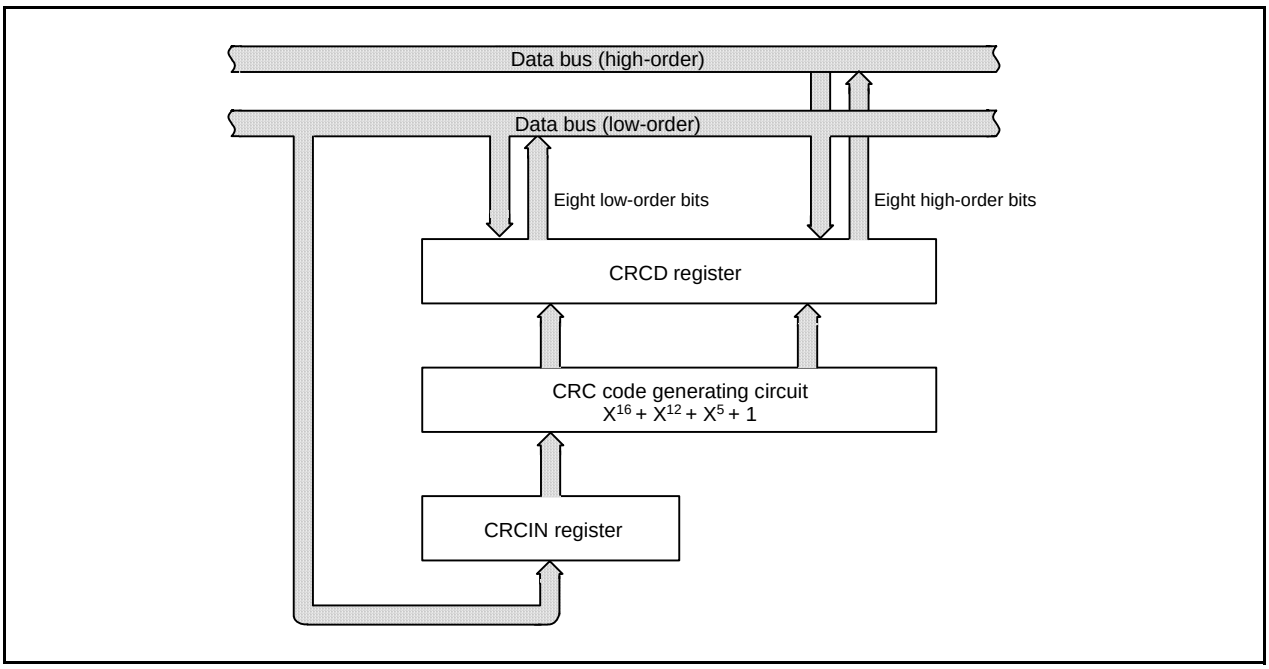


Figure 20.1 CRC Circuit Block Diagram

CRC Data Register

(b15) (b8)
b7 b0 b7 b0

Symbol	Address	After Reset
CRCD	03BDh to 03BCh	Indeterminate

Function	Setting Range	RW
When data is written to the CRCIN register after setting the initial value in the CRCD register, the CRC code can be read out from the CRCD register.	0000h to FFFFh	RW

CRC Input Register

b7 b0

Symbol	Address	After Reset
CRCIN	03BEh	Indeterminate

Function	Setting Range	RW
Data input	00h to FFh	RW

Figure 20.2 Registers CRCD and CRCIN

Setup procedure and CRC operation when generating CRC code “80C4h”

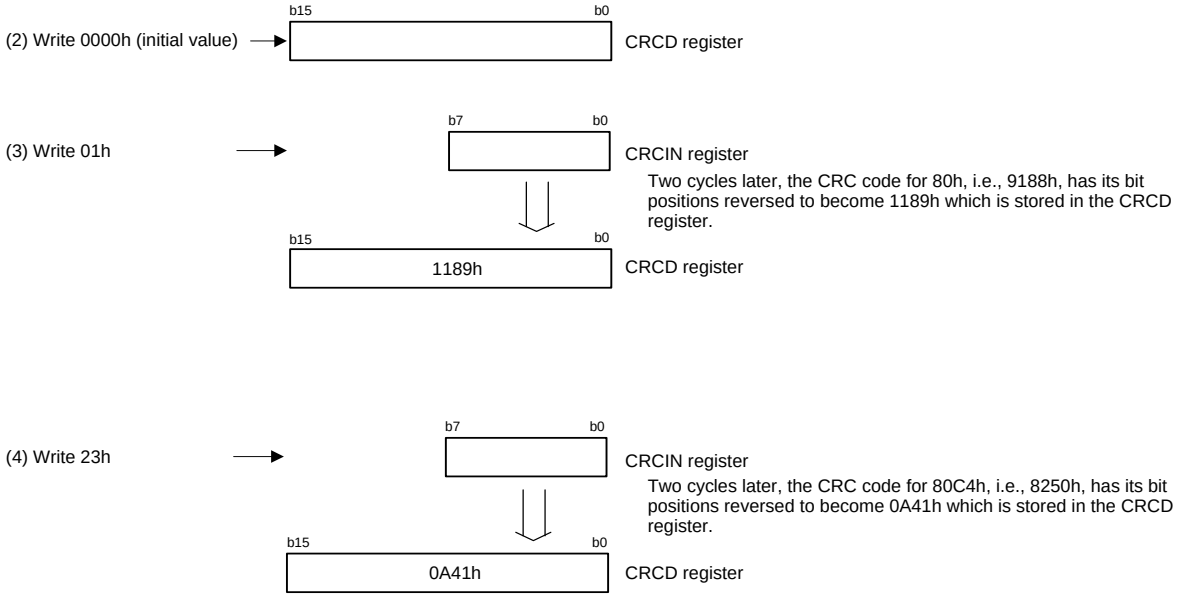
• CRC operation performed by the M16C

CRC code : remainder of a division in which the value written to the CRCIN register with its bit positions reversed is divided by the generator polynomial
Generator polynomial : $X^{16} + X^{12} + X^5 + 1$ (1 0001 0000 0010 0001b)

• Setting procedure

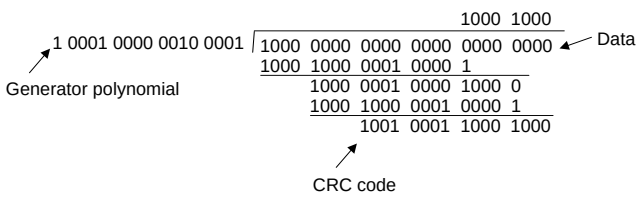
(1) Reverse the bit positions of the value “80C4h” by program in 1-byte units.

80h → 01h, C4h → 23h



• Details of CRC operation

As shown in (3) above, bit position of 01h (00000001b) written to the CRCIN register is reversed and becomes 10000000b.
Add 1000 0000 0000 0000 0000 0000b, as 10000000b plus 16 digits, to 0000 0000 0000 0000 0000 0000b,
as 0000 0000 0000 0000b plus 8 digits as the default value of the CRCD register to perform the modulo-2 division.



Modulo-2 operation is operation that complies with the law given below.

0 + 0 = 0
0 + 1 = 1
1 + 0 = 1
1 + 1 = 0
-1 = 1

0001 0001 1000 1001b (1189h), the remainder 1001 0001 1000 1000b (9188h) with inversed bit position, can be read from the CRCD register.

When going on to (4) above, 23h (00100011b) written in the CRCIN register is reversed and becomes 11000100b.
Add 1100 0100 0000 0000 0000 0000b, as 11000100b plus 16 digits, to 1001 0001 1000 1000 0000 0000b, as 1001 0001 1000 1000b plus 8 digits as a remainder of (3) left in the CRCD register to perform the modulo-2 division.
0000 1010 0100 0001b (0A41h), the remainder with reversed bit position, can be read from the CRCD register.

Figure 20.3 CRC Operation

21. Programmable I/O Ports

88 programmable input / output ports (I/O ports) are available. The direction registers determine individual port status, input or output. The pull-up control registers determine whether the pots, divided into groups of four ports, are pulled up or not. P8_5 is an input port and no pull-up is allowed. Port P8_5 shares the pin with $\overline{NMI}$, so that the $\overline{NMI}$ input level can be read from the P8_5 bit in the P8 register.

Figures 21.1 to 21.5 show the I/O ports. Figure 21.6 shows the I/O Pins.

Each pin functions as an I/O port, a peripheral function input / output, or a bus control pin.

To set peripheral functions, refer to the description for individual functions. If any pin is used as a peripheral function input or D/A converter output pin, set the direction bit of the corresponding pin to 0 (input mode). Any pin used as an output pin for peripheral functions other than the D/A converter is directed for output no matter how the corresponding direction bit is set.

To use as bus control pins, refer to **8.2 “Bus Control”**.

P0 to P5 are capable of VCC2-level input / output; P6 to P10 are capable of VCC1- level input / output.

21.1 Port Pi Direction Register (PDi Register, i = 0 to 10)

Figure 21.7 shows the Pi Direction Registers.

This register selects whether the I/O port is to be used for input or output. Each bit in the PDi register corresponds to one port.

During memory extension or microprocessor mode, the PDi registers for the pins functioning as bus control pins (A0 to A19, D0 to D15, $\overline{CS0}$ to $\overline{CS3}$, $\overline{RD}$, $\overline{WRL}$ / $\overline{WR}$, $\overline{WRH}$ / $\overline{BHE}$, ALE, $\overline{RDY}$, $\overline{HOLD}$, $\overline{HLDA}$, and BCLK) cannot be modified.

21.2 Port Pi Register (Pi Register, i = 0 to 10)

Figure 21.8 shows the Pi Registers.

Data input / output to and from external devices are accomplished by reading and writing to the Pi register.

Each bit of the Pi register consists of a port latch to hold the output data and a circuit to read the pin status.

For ports set for input mode, the input level of the pin can be read by reading the corresponding Pi register, and data can be written to the port latch by writing to the Pi register.

For ports set for output mode, the port latch can be read by reading the corresponding Pi register, and data can be written to the port latch by writing to the Pi register. The data written to the port latch is output from the pin. Each bit in the Pi register correspond to each port.

During memory extension or microprocessor mode, the Pi registers for the pins functioning as bus control pins (A0 to A19, D0 to D15, $\overline{CS0}$ to $\overline{CS3}$, $\overline{RD}$, $\overline{WRL}$ / $\overline{WR}$, $\overline{WRH}$ / $\overline{BHE}$, ALE, $\overline{RDY}$, $\overline{HOLD}$, $\overline{HLDA}$, and BCLK) cannot be modified.

21.3 Pull-up Control Register 0 to Pull-up Control Register 2 (Registers PUR0 to PUR2)

Figures 21.9 and 21.10 show the Registers PUR0 to PUR2.

Bits in registers PUR0 to PUR2 can be used to select whether or not to pull the corresponding port high in 4 pin units. The port chosen to be pulled high has a pull-up resistor connected to it when the direction bit is set for input mode.

However, the pull-up control register has no effect on P0 to P3, P4_0 to P4_3, and P5 during memory extension or microprocessor mode. Although the register contents can be modified, no pull-up resistors are connected.

21.4 Port Control Register (PCR Register)

Figure 21.11 shows the PCR Register.

When the P1 register is read after setting the PCR0 bit in the PCR register to 1, the corresponding port latch can be read no matter how the PD1 register is set.

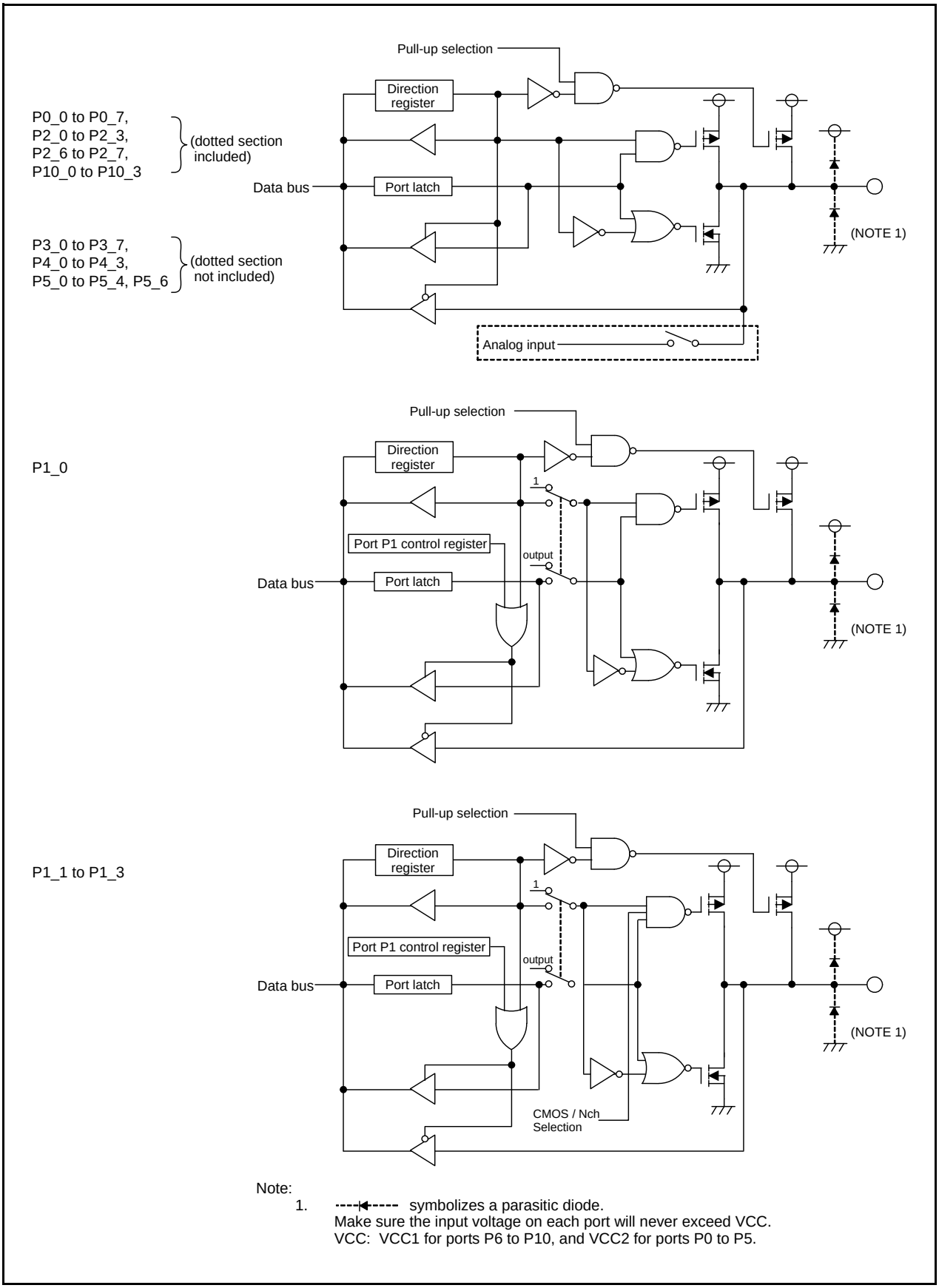
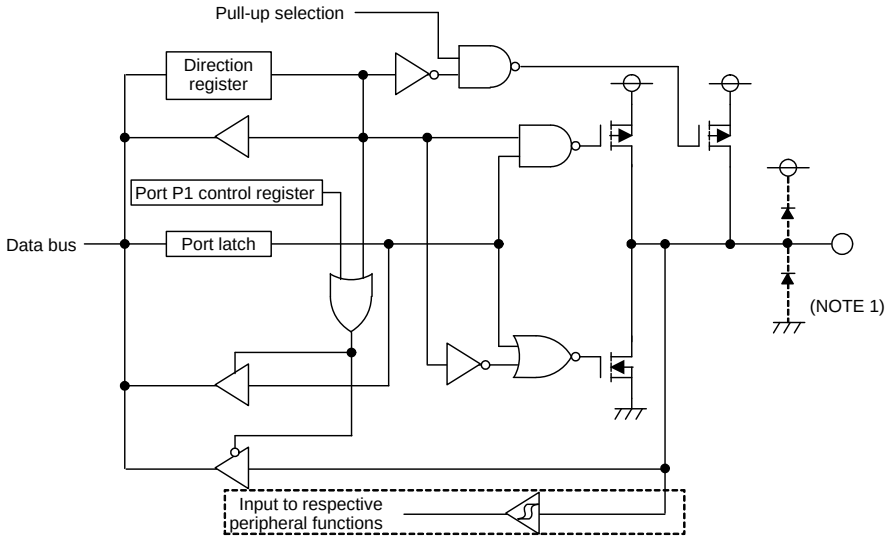
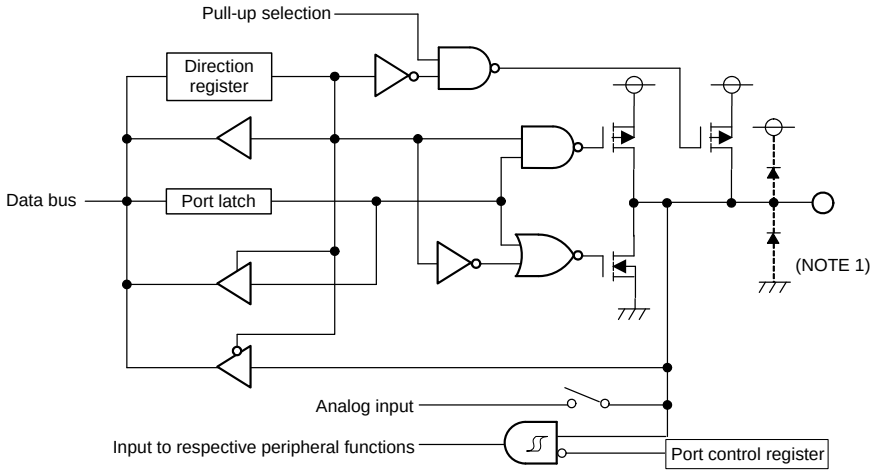


Figure 21.1 I/O Ports (1)

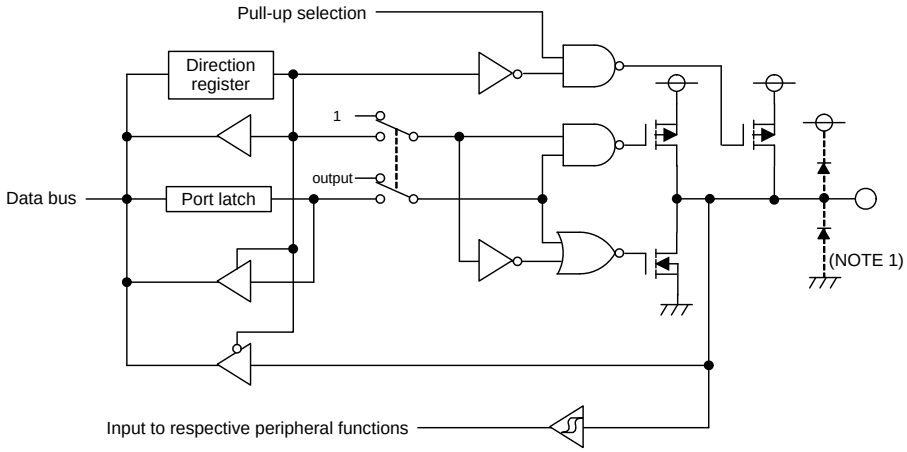
P1_4
(dotted section not included)
P1_5 to P1_7
(dotted section included)



P2_4, P2_5
P10_4 to P10_7



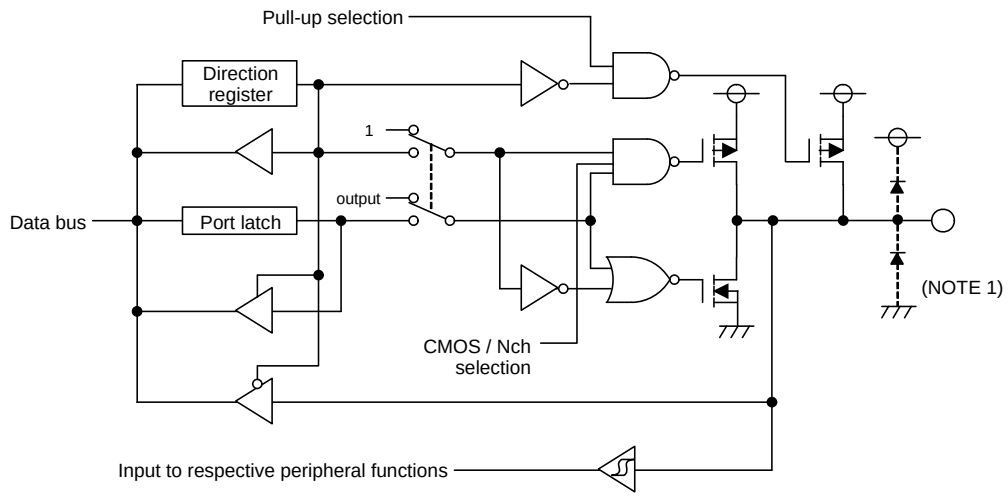
P4_4, P5_7, P6_0,
P6_4, P7_3 to P7_5,
P8_1, P9_0, P9_2



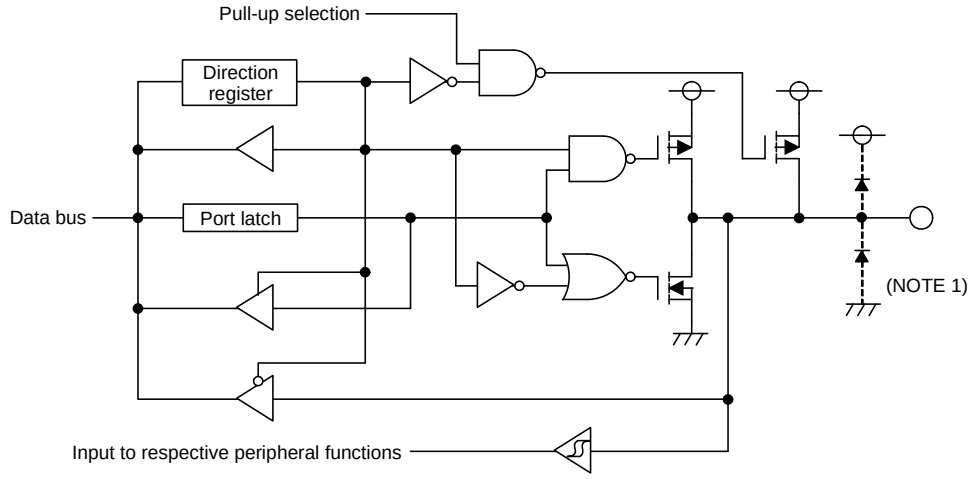
Note:
1. -◄+------ symbolizes a parasitic diode.
Make sure the input voltage on each port will never exceed VCC.
VCC: VCC1 for ports P6 to P10, and VCC2 for ports P0 to P5.

Figure 21.2 I/O Ports (2)

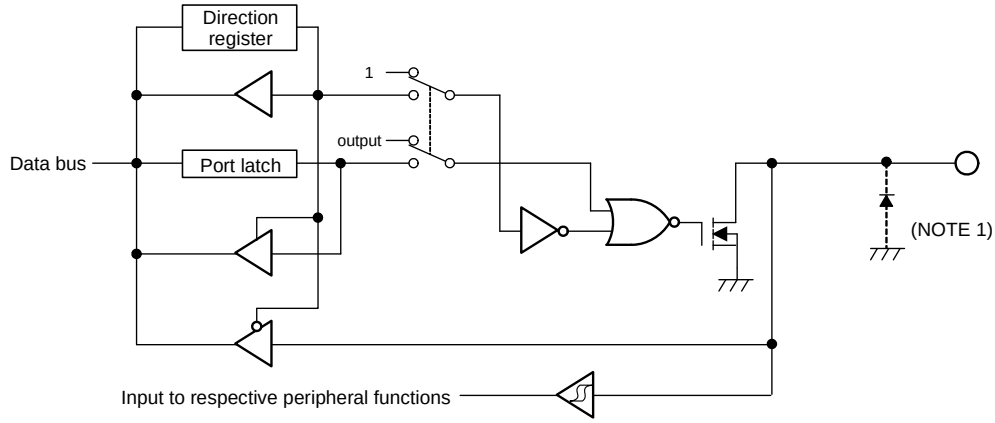
P4_5 to P4_7,
P6_1 to P6_3,
P6_5 to P6_7, P7_2,
P7_6 to P7_7, P8_0



P5_5, P8_2 to P8_4,
P9_1, P9_7

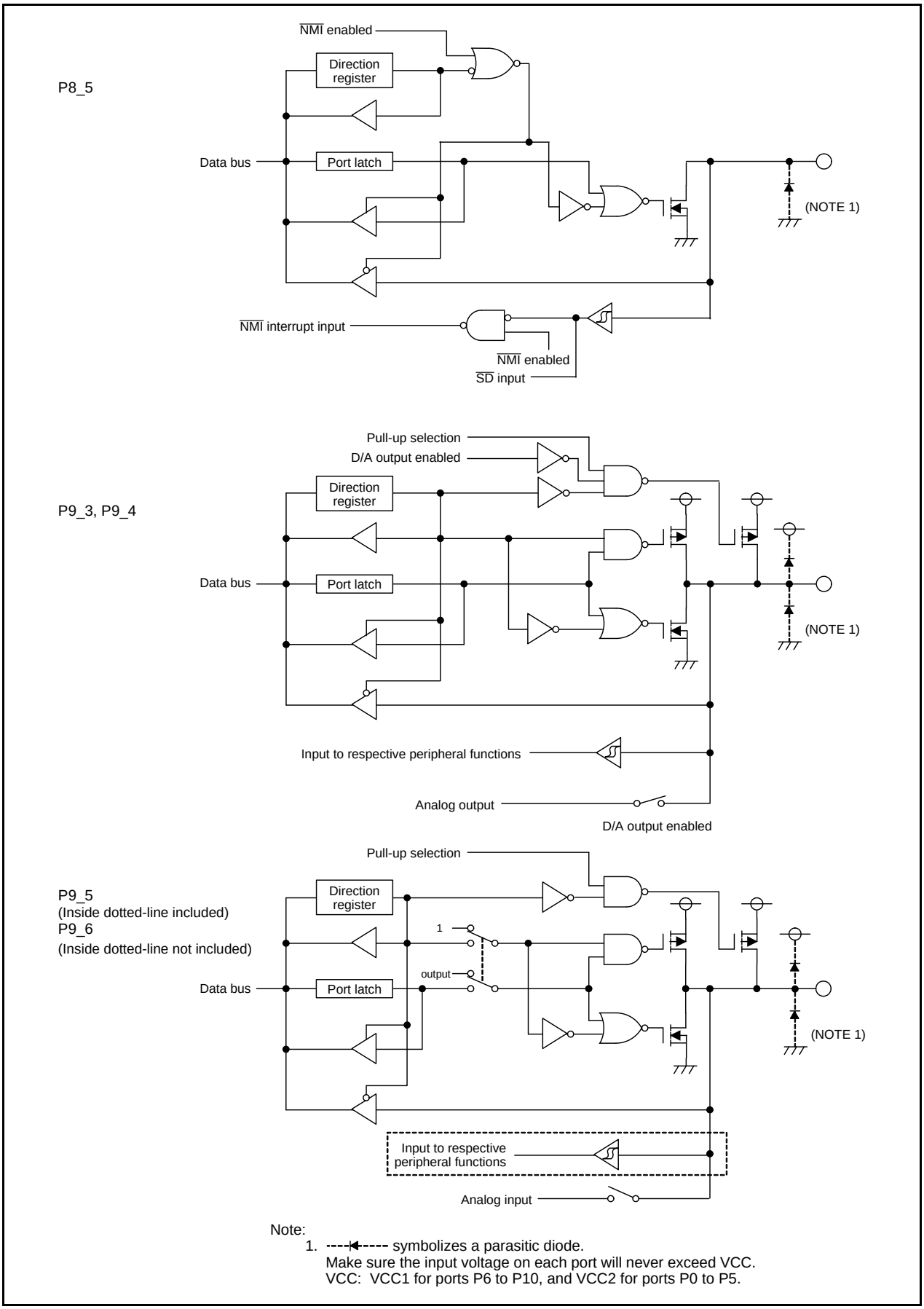


P7_0, P7_1



Note:
1. ----|◄----- symbolizes a parasitic diode.
Make sure the input voltage on each port will never exceed VCC.
VCC: VCC1 for ports P6 to P10, and VCC2 for ports P0 to P5.

Figure 21.3 I/O Ports (3)



Note:
1. ----|◄----- symbolizes a parasitic diode.
Make sure the input voltage on each port will never exceed VCC.
VCC: VCC1 for ports P6 to P10, and VCC2 for ports P0 to P5.

Figure 21.4 I/O Ports (4)

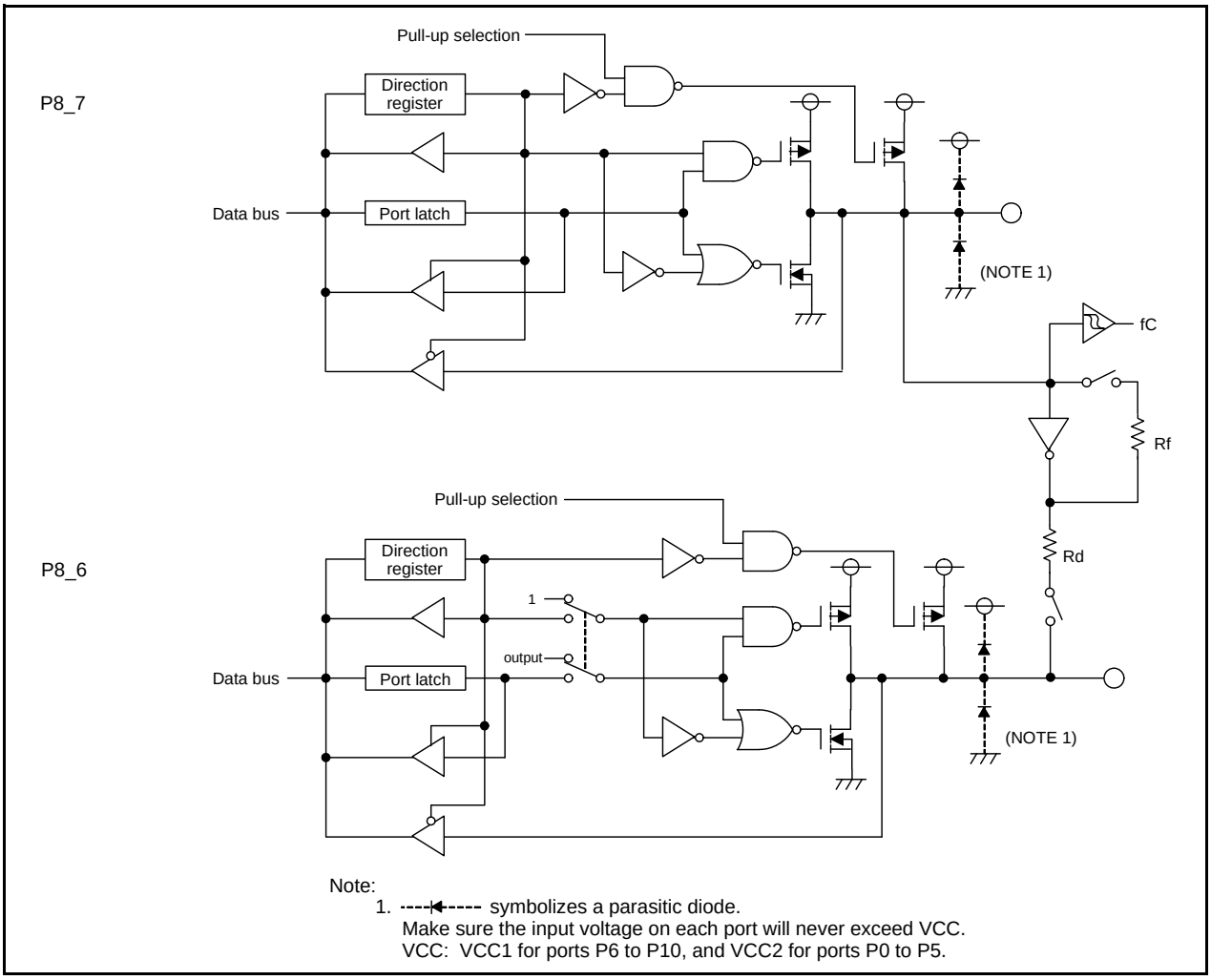


Figure 21.5 I/O Ports (5)

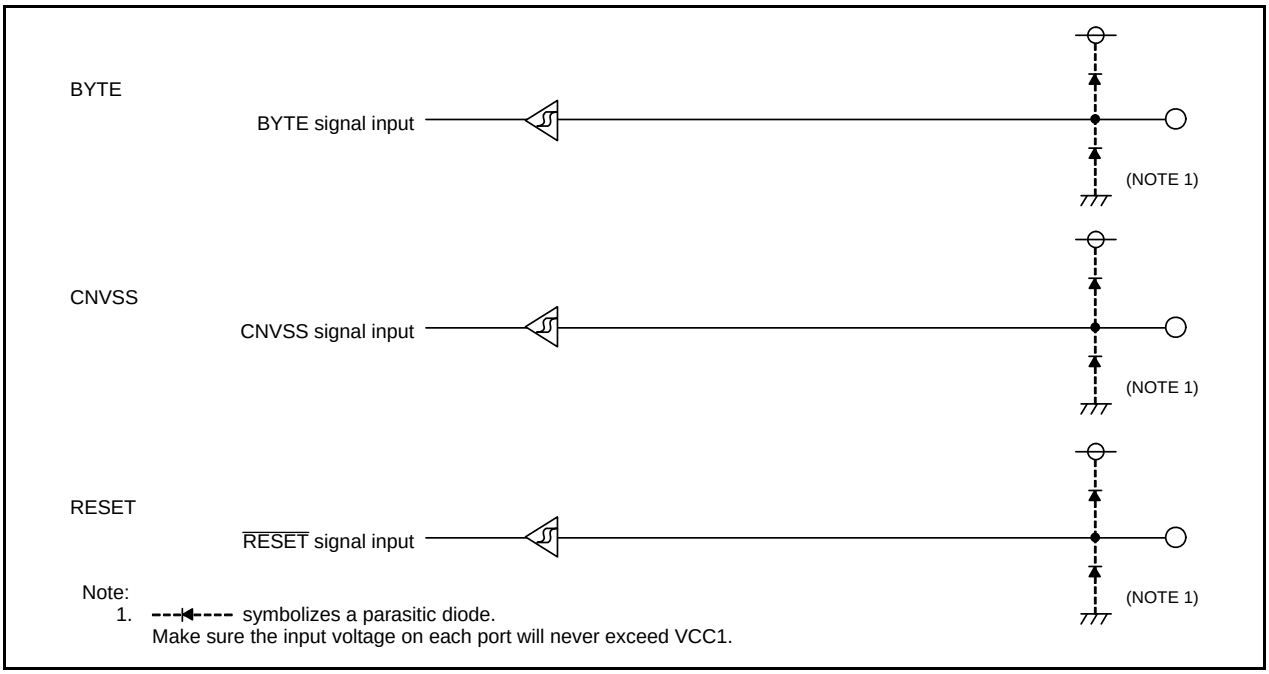
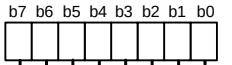


Figure 21.6 I/O Pins

Port Pi Direction Register (i = 0 to 10) (1, 2)



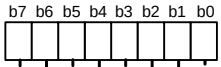
Symbol	Address	After Reset
PD0 to PD3	03E2h, 03E3h, 03E6h, 03E7h	00h
PD4 to PD7	03EAh, 03EBh, 03EEh, 03EFh	00h
PD8	03F2h	00h
PD9, PD10	03F3h, 03F6h	00h

Bit Symbol	Bit Name	Function	RW
PDi_0	Port Pi_0 direction bit	0 : Input mode (Functions as an input port) 1 : Output mode (Functions as an output port)	RW
PDi_1	Port Pi_1 direction bit		RW
PDi_2	Port Pi_2 direction bit		RW
PDi_3	Port Pi_3 direction bit		RW
PDi_4	Port Pi_4 direction bit		RW
PDi_5	Port Pi_5 direction bit		RW
PDi_6	Port Pi_6 direction bit		RW
PDi_7	Port Pi_7 direction bit		RW

Notes :
1. Make sure the PD9 register is written following the instruction to set the PRC2 bit in the PRCR register to 1 (write enabled).
2. During memory extension and microprocessor modes, the PDi register for the pins functioning as bus control pins (A0 to A19, D0 to D15, $\overline{CS0}$ to $\overline{CS3}$, $\overline{RD}$, $\overline{WRL}$ / $\overline{WR}$, $\overline{WRH}$ / $\overline{BHE}$, ALE, $\overline{RDY}$, $\overline{HOLD}$, $\overline{HLDA}$ and BCLK) cannot be modified.

Figure 21.7 Registers PD0 to PD10

Port Pi Register (i = 0 to 10) (2)



Symbol	Address	After Reset
P0 to P3	03E0h, 03E1h, 03E4h, 03E5h	Indeterminate
P4 to P7	03E8h, 03E9h, 03ECh, 03EDh	Indeterminate
P8	03F0h	Indeterminate
P9, P10	03F1h, 03F4h	Indeterminate

Bit Symbol	Bit Name	Function	RW
Pi_0	Port Pi_0 bit	The pin level on any I/O port which is set for input mode can be read by reading the corresponding bit in this register. The pin level on any I/O port which is set for output mode can be controlled by writing to the corresponding bit in this register 0 : "L" level 1 : "H" level (1)	RW
Pi_1	Port Pi_1 bit		RW
Pi_2	Port Pi_2 bit		RW
Pi_3	Port Pi_3 bit		RW
Pi_4	Port Pi_4 bit		RW
Pi_5	Port Pi_5 bit		RW
Pi_6	Port Pi_6 bit		RW
Pi_7	Port Pi_7 bit		RW

Notes :
1. Since P7_0, P7_1, and P8_5 are N-channel open drain ports, the pin status becomes high-impedance.
2. During memory extension and microprocessor modes, the Pi register for the pins functioning as bus control pins (A0 to A19, D0 to D15, $\overline{CS0}$ to $\overline{CS3}$, $\overline{RD}$, $\overline{WRL}$ / $\overline{WR}$, $\overline{WRH}$ / $\overline{BHE}$, ALE, $\overline{RDY}$, $\overline{HOLD}$, $\overline{HLDA}$ and BCLK) cannot be modified.

Figure 21.8 Registers P0 to P10

Pull-up Control Register 0 (1)

b7 b6 b5 b4 b3 b2 b1 b0

Symbol	Address	After Reset
PUR0	0360h	00h

Bit Symbol	Bit Name	Function	RW
PU00	P0_0 to P0_3 pull-up	0 : Not pulled high 1 : Pulled high (2)	RW
PU01	P0_4 to P0_7 pull-up		RW
PU02	P1_0 to P1_3 pull-up		RW
PU03	P1_4 to P1_7 pull-up		RW
PU04	P2_0 to P2_3 pull-up		RW
PU05	P2_4 to P2_7 pull-up		RW
PU06	P3_0 to P3_3 pull-up		RW
PU07	P3_4 to P3_7 pull-up		RW

Notes :
1. During memory extension or microprocessor mode, the corresponding register contents can be modified, but the pins are not pulled high.
2. The pin for which this bit is 1 (pulled high) and the direction bit is 0 (input mode) is pulled high.

Pull-up Control Register 1

b7 b6 b5 b4 b3 b2 b1 b0

Symbol	Address	After Reset (5)
PUR1	0361h	00000000b 00000010b

Bit Symbol	Bit Name	Function	RW
PU10	P4_0 to P4_3 pull-up (2)	0 : Not pulled high 1 : Pulled high (3)	RW
PU11	P4_4 to P4_7 pull-up (4)		RW
PU12	P5_0 to P5_3 pull-up (2)		RW
PU13	P5_4 to P5_7 pull-up (2)		RW
PU14	P6_0 to P6_3 pull-up		RW
PU15	P6_4 to P6_7 pull-up		RW
PU16	P7_2 to P7_3 pull-up (1)		RW
PU17	P7_4 to P7_7 pull-up		RW

Notes :
1. Pins P7_0 and P7_1 do not have pull-ups.
2. During memory extension and microprocessor modes, the pins are not pulled high although the contents of these bits can be modified.
3. To enable the pull-up registers, the corresponding bit in the register should be set to 1 (pulled high) and the respective bits in the direction register should be set to 0 (input mode).
4. If bits PM01 to PM00 in the PM0 register are set to 01b (memory expansion mode) or 11b (microprocessor mode) in a program during single-chip mode, the PU11 bit becomes 1.
5. The values after hardware reset 1 or brown-out reset is as follows:
   - 00000000b when input on CNVSS pin is “L”
   - 00000010b when input on CNVSS pin is “H”

   The values after software reset, watchdog timer reset, and oscillation stop detection reset are as follows:
   - 00000000b when bits PM01 to PM00 are 00b (single-chip mode)
   - 00000010b when bits PM01 to PM00 are 01b (memory expansion mode) or 11b (microprocessor mode)

Figure 21.9 Registers PUR0 and PUR1

Pull-up Control Register 2

b7	b6	b5	b4	b3	b2	b1	b0
X	X						

Symbol	Address	After Reset
PUR2	0362h	00h

Bit Symbol	Bit Name	Function	RW
PU20	P8_0 to P8_3 pull-up	0 : Not pulled high 1 : Pulled high (1)	RW
PU21	P8_4 to P8_7 pull-up (2)		RW
PU22	P9_0 to P9_3 pull-up		RW
PU23	P9_4 to P9_7 pull-up		RW
PU24	P10_0 to P10_3 pull-up		RW
PU25	P10_4 to P10_7 pull-up		RW
— (b7-b6)	No register bits. If necessary, set to 0. Read as 0		—

Notes :
1. To enable the pull-up registers, the corresponding bit in the register should be set to 1 (pulled high) and the respective bits in the direction register should be set to 0 (input mode).
2. The P8_5 pin does not have pull-up.

Figure 21.10 PUR2 Register

Port Control Register

b7	b6	b5	b4	b3	b2	b1	b0
			0	0	X	X	

Symbol	Address	After Reset
PCR	0366h	00000XX0b

Bit Symbol	Bit Name	Function	RW
PCR0	Port P1 control bit	Operation performed when the P1 register is read 0 : When the port is set for input, the input levels of pins P1_0 to P1_7 are read. When set for output, the port latch is read. 1 : The port latch is read regardless of whether the port is set for input or output.	RW
— (b2-b1)	No register bits. If necessary, set to 0. Read as 0		—
— (b4-b3)	Reserved	Should be written with 0	RW
PCR5	$\overline{INT6}$ input enable bit (1)	0 : Enabled 1 : Disabled	RW
PCR6	$\overline{INT7}$ input enable bit (2)	0 : Enabled 1 : Disabled	RW
PCR7	Key input enable bit (3)	0 : Enabled 1 : Disabled	RW

Notes :
1. To use the AN2_4 pin as an analog input pin, set the PCR5 bit to 1 ($\overline{INT6}$ input disabled).
2. To use the AN2_5 pin as an analog input pin, set the PCR6 bit to 1 ($\overline{INT7}$ input disabled).
3. To use pins AN4 to AN7 as analog input pins, set the PCR7 bit to 1 (key input disabled).

Figure 21.11 PCR Register

Table 21.1 Unassigned Pin Handling in Single-chip Mode

Pin Name	Connection (2)
Ports P0 to P5	One of the followings: Set for input mode and connect a pin to VSS via resistor (pull-down) Set for input mode and connect a pin to VCC2 via resistor (pull-up) Set for output mode and leave the pins open (1)
Ports P6 to P10	One of the followings: Set for input mode and connect a pin to VSS via resistor (pull-down) Set for input mode and connect a pin to VCC1 via resistor (pull-up) Set for output mode and leave the pins open (1, 3)
XOUT (4)	Open
XIN	Connect to VCC1 (pull-up) via resistor
AVCC, VREF	Connect to VCC1
AVSS, BYTE	Connect to VSS

Notes:

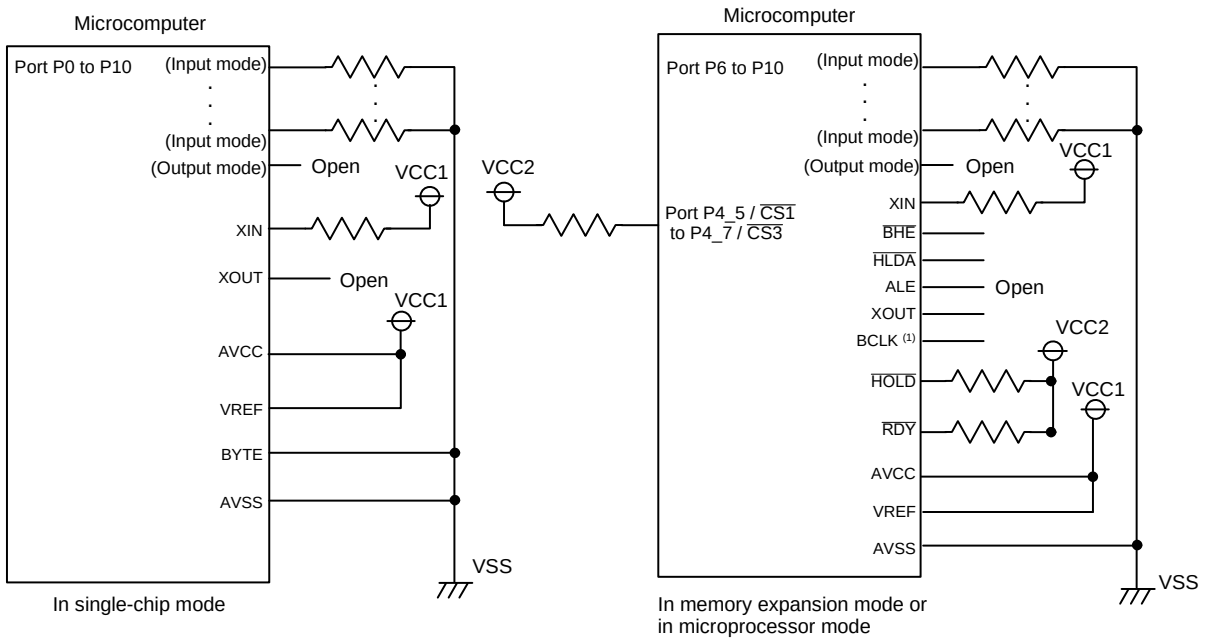
1. When setting the port for output mode and leave it open, be aware that the port remains in input mode until it is switched to output mode in a program after reset. For this reason, the voltage level on the pin becomes indeterminate, causing the power supply current to increase while the port remains in input mode.
2. Furthermore, by considering a possibility that the contents of the direction registers could be changed by noise or noise-induced loss of control, it is recommended that the contents of the direction registers be regularly reset in software to improve reliability of the program.
3. Make sure the unused pins are processed with the shortest possible wiring from the microcomputer pins (within 2 cm).
4. When the ports P7_0, P7_1, and P8_5 are set for output mode, make sure a low-level signal is output from the pins.
5. The ports P7_0, P7_1, and P8_5 are N-channel open-drain outputs.
6. This applies when external clock is input to the XIN pin or when VCC1 is connected to via a resistor.

Table 21.2 Unassigned Pin Handling in Memory Expansion Mode and Microprocessor Mode

Pin Name	Connection [2.]
Ports P0 to P5	One of the followings: Set for input mode and connect a pin to VSS via resistor (pull-down) Set for input mode and connect a pin to VCC2 via resistor (pull-up) Set for output mode and leave the pins open [(1, 3)]
Ports P6 to P10	One of the followings: Set for input mode and connect a pin to VSS via resistor (pull-down) Set for input mode and connect a pin to VCC1 via resistor (pull-up) Set for output mode and leave the pins open [(1, 4)]
$\overline{BHE}$, ALE, $\overline{HLDA}$, XOUT [(5)], BCLK [(6)]	Open
$\overline{HOLD}$, $\overline{RDY}$	Connect to VCC2 (pull-up) via resistor
XIN	Connect to VCC1 (pull-up) via resistor
AVCC, VREF	Connect to VCC1
AVSS	Connect to VSS

Notes:

1. When setting the port for output mode and leave it open, be aware that the port remains in input mode until it is switched to output mode in a program after reset. For this reason, the voltage level on the pin becomes indeterminate, causing the power supply current to increase while the port remains in input mode.
2. Furthermore, by considering a possibility that the contents of the direction registers could be changed by noise or noise-induced loss of control, it is recommended that the contents of the direction registers be regularly reset in software to improve reliability of the program.
3. Make sure the unused pins are processed with the shortest possible wiring from the microcomputer pins (within 2 cm).
4. If the CNVSS pin has the VSS level applied to it, these pins are set for input ports until the processor mode is switched over in a program after reset. For this reason, the voltage levels on these pins become indeterminate, causing the power supply current to increase while they remain set for input ports.
5. When the ports P7_0, P7_1, and P8_5 are set for output mode, make sure a low-level signal is output from the pins.
6. The ports P7_0, P7_1, and P8_5 are N-channel open-drain outputs.
7. This applies when external clock is input to the XIN pin or when VCC1 is connected to via a resistor.
8. If the PM07 bit in the PM0 register is set to 1 (BCLK not output), connect this pin to VCC2 via a resistor (pulled high).



Note:
1. If the PM07 bit in the PM0 register is set to 1 (BCLK not output), connect this pin to VCC2 via a resistor (pulled high).

Figure 21.12 Unassigned Pin Handling

22. Flash Memory Version

The flash memory can perform in three rewrite modes: CPU rewrite mode, standard serial I/O mode, and parallel I/O mode. Table 22.1 lists specifications of the flash memory version. See Tables 1.1 and 1.2 Specifications Overview for the items not listed in Table 22.1.

Table 22.1 Flash Memory Version Specifications

Item		Specification
Flash Memory Rewrite Mode		3 modes (CPU rewrite, standard serial I/O, parallel I/O)
Erase Block	Program ROM 1	See **Figure 22.1 "Flash Memory Block Diagram"**
	Program ROM 2	1 block (16 Kbytes)
	Data Flash	2 blocks (4 Kbytes each)
Program Method		In units of 2 words
Erase Method		Block erase
Program and Erase Control Method		Program and erase controlled by software command
Protect Method		The lock bit protects each block
Number of Commands		8 commands
Program and Erase Endurance		100 times (1)
Data Retention		10 years
ROM Code Protection		Parallel I/O and standard serial I/O modes are supported

Note:

1. Definition of program and erase endurance
   The program and erase endurance refers to the number of per-block erasures.
   For example, assume a case where a 4 Kbyte block is programmed in 1,024 operations, writing two words at a time, and erased thereafter. In this case, the block is reckoned as having been programmed and erased once. If the program and erase endurance is 100 times, each block can be erased up to 100 times.

Table 22.2 Flash Memory Rewrite Modes Overview

Flash Memory Rewrite Mode	CPU rewrite Mode (1)	Standard Serial I/O Mode	Parallel I/O Mode
Function	Program ROM 1, program ROM 2, and data flash are rewritten when the CPU executes software commands. EW0 mode: Rewritable in areas other than flash memory (2) EW1 mode: Rewritable in the flash memory	Program ROM 1, program ROM 2, and data flash are rewritten using a dedicated serial programmer. Standard serial I/O mode 1: clock synchronous serial I/O Standard serial I/O mode 2: clock asynchronous serial I/O Standard serial I/O mode 3: special clock asynchronous serial I/O	Program ROM 1, program ROM 2 and data flash are rewritten using a dedicated parallel programmer.
Areas Which Can Be Rewritten	Program ROM 1, program ROM 2, and data flash	Program ROM 1, program ROM 2, and data flash	Program ROM 1, program ROM 2, and data flash
Operating Mode	Single-chip mode Memory expansion mode (EW0 mode)	Boot mode	Parallel I/O mode
ROM Programmer	None	Serial programmer	Parallel programmer

Notes:

1. The PM13 bit remains set to 1 while the FMR01 bit in the FMR0 register = 1 (CPU rewrite mode enabled). The PM13 bit is reverted to its original value by clearing the FMR01 bit to 0 (CPU rewrite mode disabled). However, if the PM13 bit is changed during CPU rewrite mode, its changed value is not reflected until after the FMR01 bit is cleared to 0.
2. In CPU rewrite mode, bits PM10 and PM13 in the PM1 register are set to 1. The rewrite control program can only be executed in the internal RAM or in an external area that is enabled for use when the PM10 bit and PM13 bit are 1. When the PM13 bit = 0 and the flash memory is used in 4-Mbyte mode, the extended accessible area (40000h to BFFFFh) cannot be used.

22.1 Memory Map

The flash memory contains program ROM 1, program ROM 2, and a data flash. Figure 22.1 shows a Flash Memory Block Diagram.

Program ROM 1 is divided into several blocks, each of which can be protected (locked) from program or erase. Program ROM 1 and program ROM 2 can be rewritten in CPU rewrite, standard serial I/O, and parallel I/O modes.

Program ROM 2 can be used when the PRG2C0 bit in the PRG2C register is set to 0 (program ROM 2 enabled). The user boot code area is in program ROM 2. Data flash can be used when the PM10 bit in the PM1 register is set to 1 (0E000h to 0FFFFh: data flash). Data flash is divided into block A and block B.

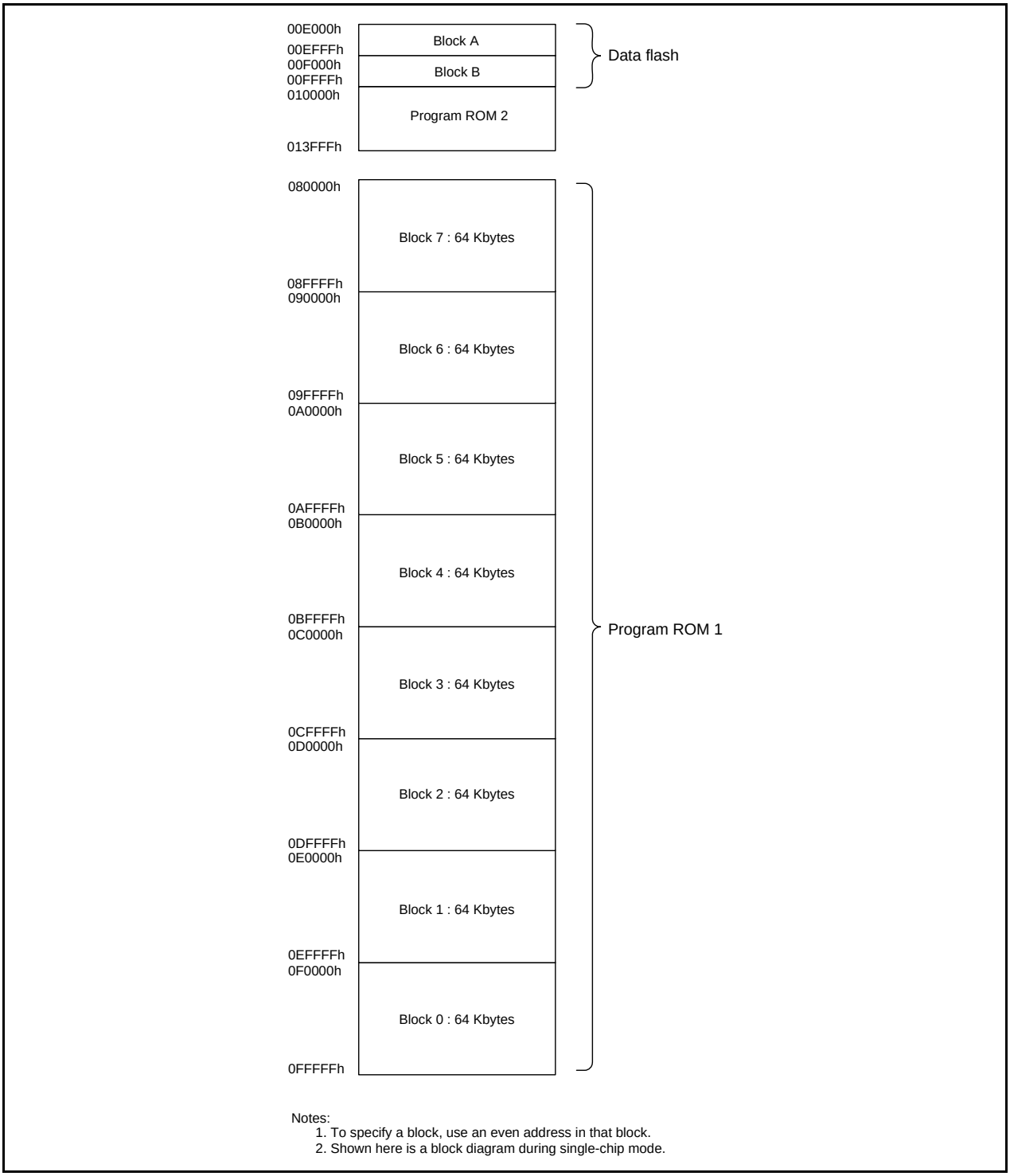


Figure 22.1 Flash Memory Block Diagram

22.1.1 Boot Mode

The microcomputer enters boot mode when a hardware reset occurs while an “L” signal is applied to the P5_5 pin and an “H” signal is applied to pins CNVSS and P5_0. In boot mode, user boot mode or standard serial I/O mode is selected in accordance with the data in the user boot code area. Refer to **22.4 “Standard Serial I/O Mode”** for details.

22.1.2 User Boot Function

User boot mode can be selected by the status of a port when the MCU starts in boot mode. Table 22.3 shows the user boot function specifications.

Table 22.3 User Boot Function Specifications

Item	Specification
Entry Pin	None or select a port from P0_0 to P10_7
User Boot Start Level	Select “H” or “L”
User Boot Start Address	Address 10000h (the start address of program ROM 2)

Set “UserBoot” in ASCII code to the addresses 13FF0h to 13FF7h in the user boot code area and select a port for entry from addresses13FF8h to 13FF9h and the start level with the address 13FFBh. After starting boot mode, user boot mode or standard serial I/O mode is selected in accordance with the level of the selected port.

In addition, if addresses 13FF0h to 13FF7h are set to “UserBoot” in ASCII code and address 13FF8h to 13FFBh are set to “00h”, user boot mode is selected.

In user boot mode, the program of address 10000h (the start address of program ROM2) is executed.

Figure 22.2 shows user boot code area, Table 22.4 shows the start mode, Tables 22.5 and 22.6 the values to be set to the user boot code area.

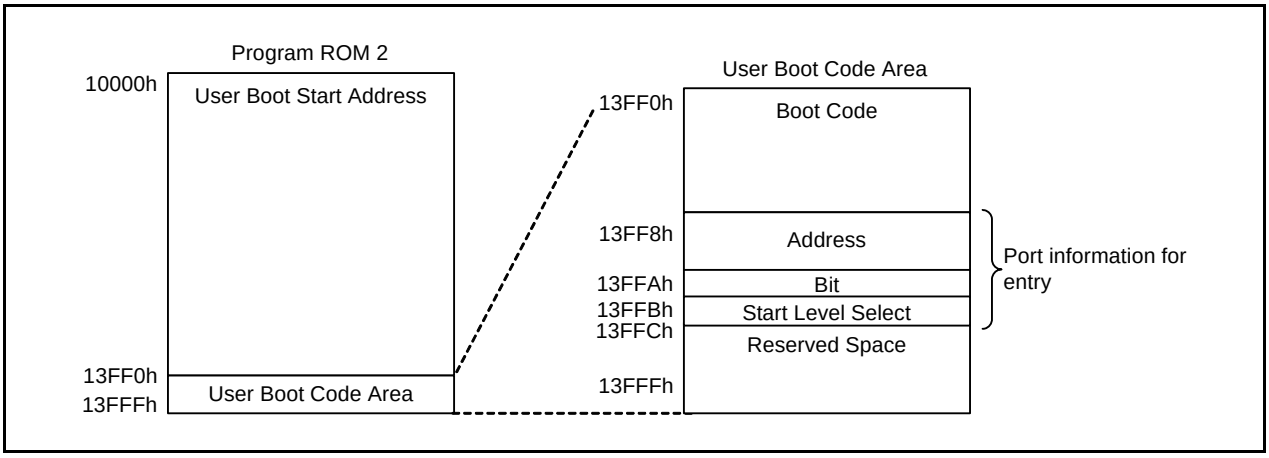


Figure 22.2 User Boot Code Area

Table 22.4 Start Mode (When the Port Pj_j is Selected for Entry)

Boot Code (13FF0h to 13FF7h)	Port information for entry			Port Pi_j input level	Start Mode
	Address (13FF8h to 13FF9h)	Bit (13FFAh)	Start level Select (13FFBh)		
"UserBoot" in ASCII code	0000h	00h	00h	–	User boot mode
	Pi register address	00h to 07h (value of j)	00h	H	Standard serial I/O mode
				L	User boot mode
	Pi register address	00h to 07h (value of j)	01h	H	User boot mode
				L	Standard serial I/O mode
Other Than "UserBoot" in ASCII code	–	–	–	–	Standard serial I/O mode

i=0 to 10, j=0 to 7

Notes:
1. Do not use another combination of values apart from Table 22.4.
2. Refer to **Table 22.5 ""UserBoot"in ASCII code"**
3. Refer to **Table 22.6 "Addresses of Selectable Ports for Entry"**

Table 22.5 "UserBoot"in ASCII code

Address	13FF0h	13FF1h	13FF2h	13FF3h	13FF4h	13FF5h	13FF6h	13FF7h
ASCII code	55h (U)	73h (s)	65h (e)	72h (r)	42h (B)	6Fh (o)	6Fh (o)	74h (t)
	Upper-case	Lower-case			Upper-case	Lower-case		

Table 22.6 Addresses of Selectable Ports for Entry

Port	Address	Port	Address
P0	03E0h	P6	03ECh
P1	03E1h	P7	03EDh
P2	03E4h	P8	03F0h
P3	03E5h	P9	03F1h
P4	03E8h	P10	03F4h
P5	03E9h		

22.2 Functions to Prevent Flash Memory from Rewriting

The flash memory has a built-in ROM code protect function for parallel I/O mode and a built-in ID code check function for standard I/O mode to prevent the flash memory from reading or rewriting.

22.2.1 ROM Code Protect Function

The ROM code protect function inhibits the flash memory from being read or rewritten during parallel input/output mode. Figure 22.3 shows the OFS1 Address. The OFS1 address is located in block 0 in program ROM 1.

The ROM code protect function is enabled when the ROMCP1 bit is set to 0.

When exiting ROM code protect, erase block 0 including the OFS1 address by the CPU rewrite mode or the standard serial I/O mode.

22.2.2 ID Code Check Function

Use the ID code check function in standard serial I/O mode. The ID code sent from the serial programmer is compared with the ID code written in the flash memory for a match. If the ID codes do not match, commands sent from the serial programmer are not accepted. However, if the four bytes of the reset vector are “FFFFFFFFh”, ID codes are not compared, allowing all commands to be accepted.

The ID codes are 7-byte data stored consecutively, starting with the first byte, into addresses 0FFFDFh, 0FFFE3h, 0FFFEBh, 0FFFEFh, 0FFFF3h, 0FFFF7h, and 0FFFFBh. The flash memory must have a program with the ID codes set in these addresses.

Table 22.7 shows address for ID code stored.

The reserved character sequence of the ASCII codes “ALeRASE” is used for forced erase function. The reserved character sequence of the ASCII codes “Protect” is used for standard serial I/O mode disabled function. Table 22.7 lists reserved character sequence.

When the ID codes stored in the ID code addresses in the user ROM area are set to the ASCII codes: “ALeRASE” as the combination table listed in Table 22.7, forced erase function becomes active. When the forced erase function or standard serial I/O mode disabled function is not used, use another combination of the ASCII codes.

Table 22.7 Reserved Character Sequence (Reserved Word)

ID Code Address		Reserved word combination of ID Code (ASCII)	
		ALeRASE	Protect
FFFDFh	ID1	41h (A)	50h (upper-case P)
FFFE3h	ID2	4Ch (L)	72h (lower-case r)
FFFEBh	ID3	65h (e)	6Fh (lower-case o)
FFFEFh	ID4	52h (R)	74h (lower-case t)
FFFF3h	ID5	41h (A)	65h (lower-case e)
FFFF7h	ID6	53h (S)	63h (lower-case c)
FFFFBh	ID7	45h (E)	74h (lower-case t)

Reserve word for forced erase function: A set of reserved characters that match all the ID code addresses in sequence as the combination table listed in Table 22.7.

22.2.3 Forced Erase Function

This function is available only in standard serial I/O mode.

When the reserved characters, “ALeRASE” in ASCII code, are sent from the serial programmer as ID codes, the content of program ROM 1 and program ROM 2 will be erased at once. However, if the ID codes stored in the ID code addresses in the user ROM area are set to other than a reserved word “ALeRASE” (other than the combination table listed in Table 22.7) when the ROMCP bit in the OFS1 address is set to 0 (ROM code protect enabled), forced erase function is ignored and ID code check is executed. Table 22.8 lists conditions and functions for forced erase function.

When both the ID codes sent from the serial programmer and the ID codes stored in the ID code addresses correspond to the reserved word “ALeRASE”, program ROM 1 and program ROM 2 will be erased. However, when the serial programmer sends other than “ALeRASE”, even if the ID codes stored in the ID code addresses are “ALeRASE”, there is no ID match and any command is ignored. The flash memory remains protected accordingly.

Table 22.8 Forced Erase Function

Condition			Function
ID code from serial programmer	Code in ID code stored address	ROMCP1 bit in the OFS1 address	
ALeRASE	ALeRASE	–	Program ROM 1 and program ROM 2 all erase (forced erase function)
	Other than ALeRASE (1)	1 (ROM code protect disabled)	
		0 (ROM code protect enabled)	ID code check
Other than ALeRASE	ALeRASE	–	ID code check (no ID match)
	Other than ALeRASE (1)	–	ID code check

Note:

1. For the combination of the stored addresses is “Protect”, refer to **22.2.4 “Standard Serial I/O Mode Disable Function”**.

22.2.4 Standard Serial I/O Mode Disable Function

This function is available in standard serial I/O mode. When the ID codes in the ID code stored addresses are set to “Protect” in ASCII code, the MCU does not communicate with a serial programmer. Therefore, the flash memory cannot be read, written or erased by a serial programmer. User boot mode can be selected, when the ID codes set to “Protect”.

When the ID codes are set to “Protect” and the ROMCP1 bit in the address OFS1 is set to 0 (ROM code protect enabled), ROM code protection cannot be disabled by a serial programmer. Therefore, the flash memory cannot be read, written or erased by a serial or parallel programmer.

Optional Feature Select Address (1, 5)

b7	b6	b5	b4	b3	b2	b1	b0
	1	1	1		1	1	

Symbol: OFS1 — Address: FFFFFh — After Reset: FFh (2)

Bit Symbol	Bit Name	Function	RW
WDTON	Watchdog timer start select bit (3, 4)	0 : Watchdog timer starts automatically after reset 1 : Watchdog timer is in a stopped state after reset	RW
— (b2-b1)	Reserved bits	Set to 1	RW
ROMCP1	ROM code protection bit	0 : ROM code protection enabled 1 : ROM code protection disabled	RW
— (b6-b4)	Reserved bits	Set to 1	RW
CSPROINI	After-reset count source protection mode select bit (3)	0 : Count source protection mode enabled after reset 1 : Count source protection mode disabled after reset	RW

Notes :
1. The OFS1 address exists in flash memory. Set the values when writing a program.
2. The OFS1 address is set to FFh when a block including the OFS1 address is erased.
3. Set the WDTON bit to 0 (watchdog timer starts automatically after reset) when setting the CSPROINI bit to 0 (count source protection mode enabled after reset).
4. This function is also effective in user boot mode.
5. The OFS1 address can be set in single-chip and memory expansion mode. The OFS1 address cannot be used in micro microprocessor mode. Before using the OFS1 address, clear the internal ROM.

Figure 22.3 OFS1 Address

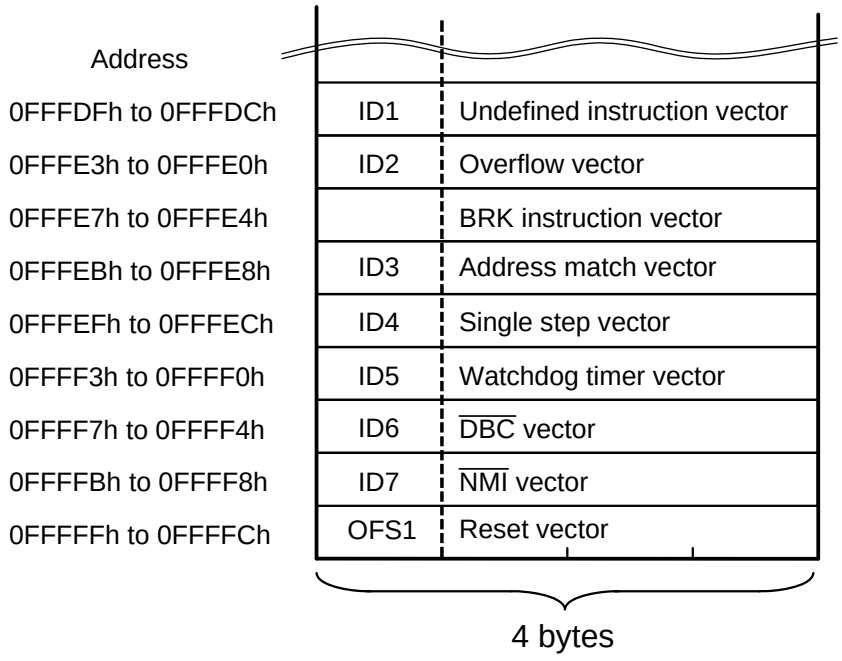


Figure 22.4 Address for ID Code Stored

22.3 CPU Rewrite Mode

In CPU rewrite mode, the flash memory can be rewritten when the CPU executes software commands. Program ROM 1, program ROM 2, and the data flash can be rewritten with the microcomputer mounted on a board without using a ROM programmer.

The program and block erase commands are executed only in each block area of program ROM 1, program ROM 2, and the data flash.

Erase-write 0 (EW0) mode and erase-write 1 (EW1) mode are provided as CPU rewrite mode. Table 22.9 lists differences between erase-write 0 (EW0) and erase-write 1 (EW1) modes.

Table 22.9 EW0 Mode and EW1 Mode

Item	EW0 Mode	EW1 Mode
Operating Mode	• Single-chip mode • Memory expansion mode	Single-chip mode
Rewrite Control Program Allocatable Area	• Program ROM 1 • Program ROM 2 • External memory area	• Program ROM 1 • Program ROM 2
Rewrite Control Program Executable Area	The rewrite control program must be transferred to any area other than the flash memory (e.g., RAM) before being executed (2)	The rewrite control program can be executed in program ROM 1 and program ROM 2.
Rewritable Area	• Program ROM 1 • Program ROM 2 • Data flash	Program ROM 1, program ROM 2, and data flash, excluding blocks with the rewrite control program
Software Command Restriction	None	• Program and block erase commands cannot be executed in a block having the rewrite control program. • Read status register command cannot be used.
Mode after Program or Erase	Read status register mode	Read array mode
CPU State during Auto Write and Auto Erase	Operating	Maintains hold state (I/O ports maintains the state before the command execution) (1)
Flash Memory Status Detection	• Read bits FMR00, FMR06, and FMR07 in the FMR0 register by program • Execute the read status register command to read bits SR7, SR5, and SR4 in the status register.	Read bits FMR00, FMR06, and FMR07 in the FMR0 register by program

Notes:
1. Do not generate an interrupt (except $\overline{\text{NMI}}$ interrupt) or start a DMA transfer.
2. When in CPU rewrite mode, bits PM10 and PM13 in the PM1 register are set to 1. The rewrite control program can only be executed in the internal RAM or in an external area that is enabled for use when the PM10 bit and PM13 bit are 1. When the PM13 bit = 0 and the flash memory is used in 4-Mbyte mode, the extended accessible area (40000h to BFFFFh) cannot be used.

22.3.1 EW0 Mode

The microcomputer enters CPU rewrite mode by setting the FMR01 bit in the FMR0 register to 1 (CPU rewrite mode enabled) and is ready to accept commands. EW0 mode is selected by setting the FMR60 bit in the FMR6 register to 0. Figure 22.12 shows setting and resetting of EW0 mode.

The software commands control programming and erasing. The FMR0 register or the status register indicates whether a program or erase operation is completed as expected or not.

22.3.2 EW1 Mode

EW1 mode is selected by setting the FMR60 bit to 1 after setting the FMR01 bit to 1. Figure 22.8 shows setting and resetting of EW1 mode.

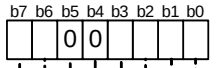
The FMR0 register indicates whether or not a program or erase operation has been completed as expected. The status register cannot be read in EW1 mode.

When a program / erase operation is initiated, the CPU halts all program execution until the operation is completed.

22.3.3 Flash Memory Control Register (Registers FMR0, FMR1, FMR2 and FMR6)

Figures 22.5 to 22.8 show the registers FMR0, FMR1, FMR2 and FMR6, respectively.

Flash Memory Control Register 0



Symbol: FMR0

Address: 0220h

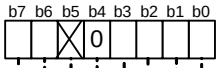
After Reset: 0000 0001b (other than user boot mode)
0010 0001b (user boot mode)

Bit Symbol	Bit Name	Function	RW
FMR00	RY / $\overline{BY}$ status flag	0 : Busy (being written or erased) (6) 1 : Ready	RO
FMR01	CPU rewrite mode select bit (1)	0 : CPU rewrite mode disabled 1 : CPU rewrite mode enabled	RW
FMR02	Lock bit disable select bit (2)	0 : Lock bit enabled 1 : Lock bit disabled	RW
FMSTP	Flash memory stop bit (3, 5, 7)	0 : Flash memory operation enabled 1 : Flash memory operation stopped (placed in low power mode, flash memory initialized)	RW
— (b4)	Reserved bit	Set to 0	RW
— (b5)	Reserved bit	Set to 0 in other than user boot mode Set to 1 in user boot mode	RW
FMR06	Program status flag (4)	0 : Terminated normally 1 : Terminated in error	RO
FMR07	Erase Status Flag (4)	0 : Terminated normally 1 : Terminated in error	RO

Notes :
1. To set the FMR01 bit to 1, write a 0 and then a 1 in succession. Make sure no interrupts or DMA transfers will occur before writing a 1 after writing a 0. While in EW0 mode, write to this bit from a program in other than the flash memory. Enter read array mode, and then set this bit to 0.
2. To set the FMR02 bit to 1, write a 0 and then a 1 in succession when the FMR01 bit = 1. Make sure no interrupts or no DMA transfers will occur before writing a 1 after writing a 0.
3. Write to the FMSTP bit from a program in area other than the flash memory.
4. Bits FMR06 and FMR07 are cleared to 0 by executing the clear status command.
5. The FMSTP bit is valid when the FMR01 bit = 1 (CPU rewrite mode). If the FMR01 bit = 0, although the FMSTP bit can be set to 1 by writing 1 in a program, the flash memory is neither placed in low power mode nor initialized.
6. This status includes writing or reading with the lock bit program, blank check, or read lock bit status command.
7. When the FMR23 bit in the FMR 2 register is set to 1 (low-current consumption), do not set the FMSTP bit to 1 (flash memory stop). Also, when the FMSTP bit is set to 1, do not set the FMR23 bit to 1.

Figure 22.5 FMR0 Register

Flash Memory Control Register 1



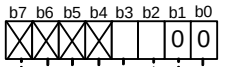
Symbol	Address	After Reset
FMR1	0221h	00X0XX0Xb

Bit Symbol	Bit Name	Function	RW
— (b0)	Reserved bit	Read as undefined value	RO
FMR11	Write to FMR6 register enable bit	0 : Disabled 1 : Enabled	RW
— (b3-b2)	Reserved bits	Read as undefined value	RO
— (b4)	Reserved bit	Set to 0	RW
— (b5)	No register bit. If necessary, set to 0. Read as undefined value		RW
FMR16	Lock bit status flag	0 : Lock 1 : Unlock	RO
FMR17	Data flash wait bit (1)	0 : 1 wait 1 : Follow the setting of the PM17 bit	RW

Note :
1. When 2.7 V ≤ VCC1 ≤ 3.0 V and f(BCLK) ≥ 16 MHz, or when 3.0 V < VCC1 ≤ 5.5 V and f(BCLK) ≥ 20 MHz, one wait is necessary to execute a program and read data of the data flash. Use the PM17 or FMR17 bit to set one wait.

Figure 22.6 FMR1 Register

Flash Memory Control Register 2



Symbol	Address	After Reset
FMR2	0222h	XXXX0000b

Bit Symbol	Bit Name	Function	RW
— (b1-b0)	Reserved bit	Set to 0	RW
FMR22	Slow read mode enable bit (1, 3, 4, 5)	0 : Disabled 1 : Enabled	RW
FMR23	Low-current consumption read mode enable bit (2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7)	0 : Disabled 1 : Enabled	RW
— (b7-b4)	No register bit. If necessary, set to 0. Read as undefined value		—

Notes:
1. Slow read mode can be used when f(BCLK) ≤ 5 MHz. When f(BCLK) > 5 MHz, set the FMR22 bit to 0 (slow read mode disabled).
2. The low-current consumption read mode can be used when f(BCLK) ≤ 32.768 kHz. When f(BCLK) > 32.768 kHz, set the FMR23 bit to 0 (low-current consumption read mode disabled).
3. To set the FMR01 bit to 1, write a 0 and then a 1 in succession. Make sure no interrupts or DMA transfers will occur before writing a 1 after writing a 0.
4. This bit enables the mode to reduce the amount of current consumption when reading the flash memory. To rewrite flash memory (CPU rewrite mode), set the FMR22 and FMR23 bits to 0.
5. Set the FMR23 bit to 1 (low-current consumption read mode enabled) after the FMR22 bit is set to 1 (slow read mode enabled). Also, set the FMR22 bit to 0 (slow read mode disabled) after the FMR23 bit is set to 0 (slow read mode disabled). Do not write the FMR22 and FMR23 bits at same time.
6. When the FMR23 bit is set to 1, do not set the FMSTP bit in the FMR0 register to 1 (flash memory stopped). Also, when the FMSTP bit is set to 1, do not set the FMR23 bit to 1.
7. When the FMR23 bit in the FMR2 register is set to 1 (Low-current consumption read mode enabled), do not enter wait mode or stop mode. To enter wait mode or stop mode, set the FMR23 bit to 0 (low-current consumption read mode disabled) before entering.

Figure 22.7 FMR2 Register

Flash Memory Control Register 6

b7	b6	b5	b4	b3	b2	b1	b0
		0				1	

Symbol	Address	After Reset
FMR6	0230h	XX0XXX00b

Bit Symbol	Bit Name	Function	RW
FMR60	EW1 mode select bit (1)	0 : EW0 mode 1 : EW1 mode	RW
FMR61	Reserved bit (2)	Set to 1	RW
— (b4-b2)	Reserved bits	Read as undefined value	RO
— (b5)	Reserved bit	Set to 0	RW
— (b7-b6)	Reserved bits	Read as undefined value	RO

Note :
1. To set the FMR60 bit to 1, write 1 when both bits FMR01 and FMR11 are 1.
2. To use CPU rewrite mode, set to 1.
3. When accessing the FMR6 register, set a CPU clock frequency of 10 MHz or less by the CM06 bit in the CM0 register and bits CM17 and CM16 in the CM1 register. Also, set the PM17 bit in the PM1 register to 1 (wait state).

Figure 22.8 FMR6 Register

22.3.3.1 FMR00 Bit

This bit indicates the flash memory operating state. It is set to 0 while the program, block erase, lock bit program, read lock bit status command, or blank check command is being executed; otherwise, it is set to 1.

22.3.3.2 FMR01 Bit

The microcomputer can accept commands when the FMR01 bit is set to 1 (CPU rewrite mode).

22.3.3.3 FMR02 Bit

The lock bit is disabled by setting the FMR02 bit to 1 (lock bit disabled). (Refer to **22.3.6 "Data Protect Function"**.) The lock bit is enabled by setting the FMR02 bit to 0 (lock bit enabled).
The FMR02 bit does not change the lock bit status but disables the lock bit function. If an erase command is executed when the FMR02 bit is set to 1, the lock bit status changes 0 (locked) to 1 (unlocked) after command execution is completed.

22.3.3.4 FMSTP Bit

The FMSTP bit resets the flash memory control circuits and minimizes power consumption in the flash memory. Access to the flash memory is disabled when the FMSTP bit is set to 1 (flash memory stops). Set the FMSTP bit by program in an area other than the flash memory.
Set the FMSTP bit to 1 if one of the followings occurs:

- A flash memory access error occurs while erasing or programming in EW0 mode (the FMR00 bit does not switch back to 1 (ready)).
- Low-power consumption mode or on-chip oscillator low-power consumption mode is entered

Use the following steps to stop the flash memory.

(1) Set the FMSTP bit to 1
(2) Wait tps (the wait time to stabilize the flash memory circuit)

Use the following steps to restart.

(1) Set the FMSTP bit to 0
(2) Wait tps (the wait time to stabilize the flash memory circuit)

Figure 22.9 shows a Flow Chart Illustrating How to Start and Stop the Flash Memory Processing Before and After Low-Power Consumption Mode or On-Chip Oscillator Low-Power Consumption Mode. Follow the procedure on this flow chart.
When entering stop or wait mode, the flash memory is automatically turned off. When exiting stop or wait mode, the flash memory is turned back on. The FMR0 register does not need to be set.

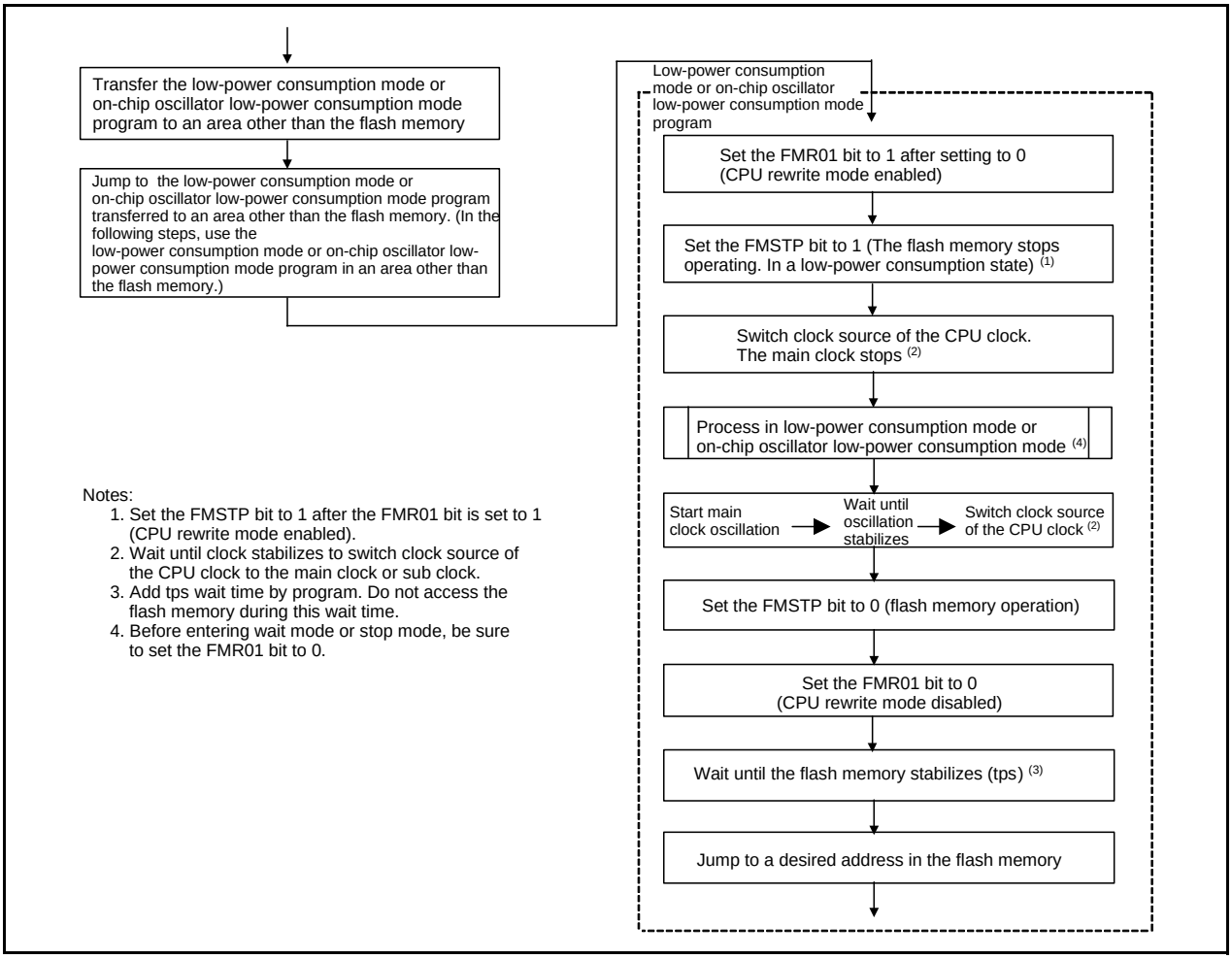


Figure 22.9 Processing Before and After Low-Power Consumption Mode or On-Chip Oscillator Low-Power Consumption Mode

22.3.3.5 FMR06 Bit

This is a read-only bit indicating an auto program operation state. The FMR06 bit is set to 1 when a program error occurs; otherwise, it is set to 0. Refer to **22.3.8 "Full Status Check"**.

22.3.3.6 FMR07 Bit

This is a read-only bit indicating the auto erase operation status. The FMR07 bit is set to 1 when an erase error occurs; otherwise, it is set to 0. The FMR07 bit is also used for blank check. For details, refer to **22.3.8 "Full Status Check"**.

22.3.3.7 FMR11 Bit

The FMR11 bit enables programming to the FMR6 register.

22.3.3.8 FMR16 Bit

This is a read-only bit indicating the execution result of the read lock bit status command.
When the block, where the read lock bit status command is executed, is locked, the FMR16 bit is set to 0.
When the block, where the read lock bit status command is executed, is unlocked, the FMR16 bit is set to 1.

22.3.3.9 FMR17 Bit

This is a bit to select wait state for data flash.

22.3.3.10 FMR22 Bit

This bit enables the mode to reduce the amount of current consumption when reading the flash memory. When rewriting the flash memory (CPU rewrite mode), set the FMR22 bit to 0 (slow read mode disabled).
Also, when f(BCLK) > 5 MHz, set the FMR22 bit to 0 (slow read mode disabled).
Figure 22.10 shows setting and resetting of the slow read mode.

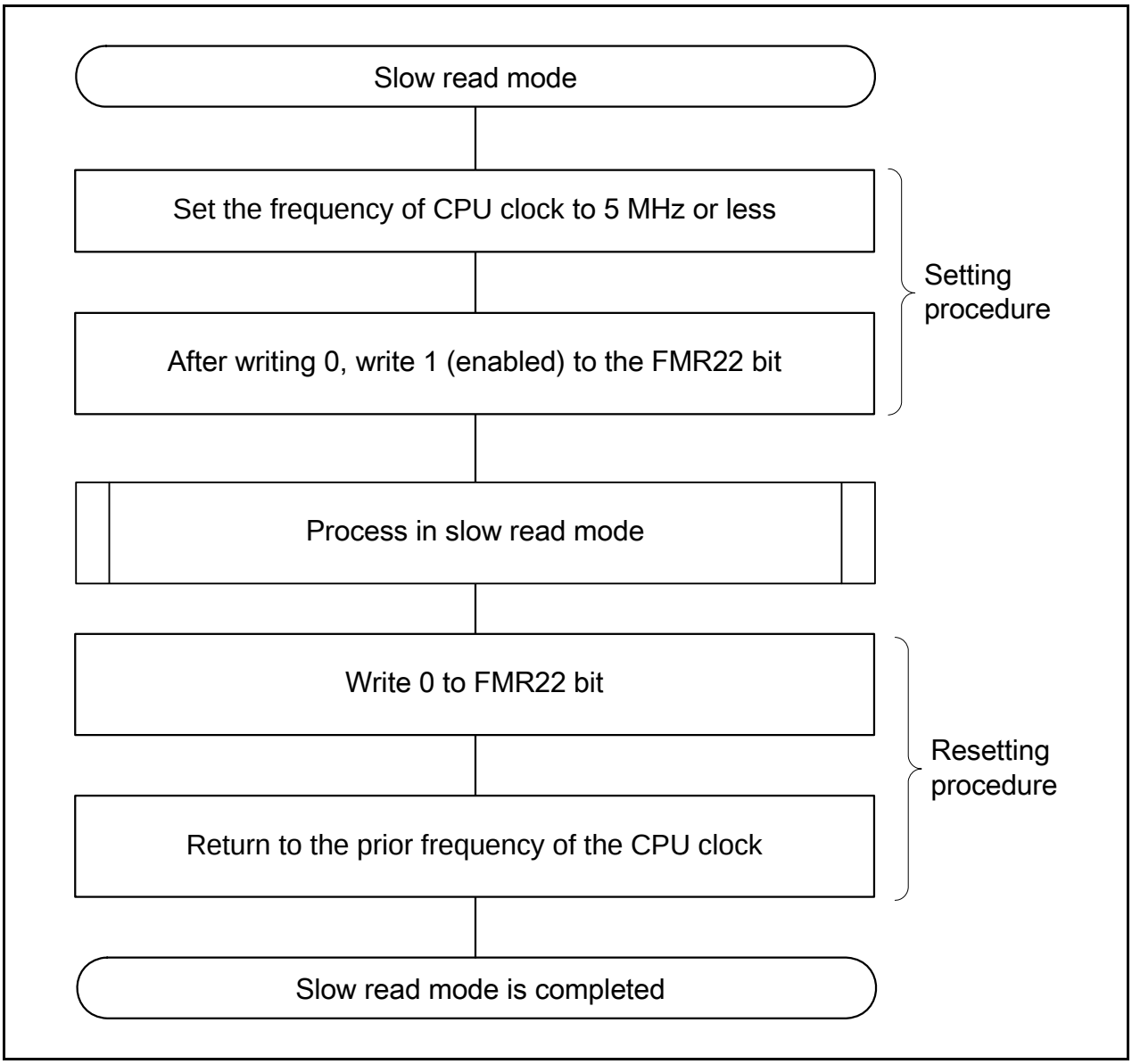


Figure 22.10 Setting and Resetting of Slow Read Mode

22.3.3.11 FMR23 Bit

This bit enables the mode to reduce the amount of current consumption when reading the flash memory. When rewriting the flash memory (CPU rewrite mode), set the FMR23 bit to 0 (low-current consumption read mode disabled).

This bit is effective when the FMR22 bit is enabled. Use the low-current consumption read mode when CM07 bit in the CM0 register is “1” (CPU clock is sub clock). When CM07 bit is “0”, set FMR23 bit to “0” (low-current consumption read mode is disabled).

Figure 22.11 shows setting and resetting of the low-current consumption read mode.

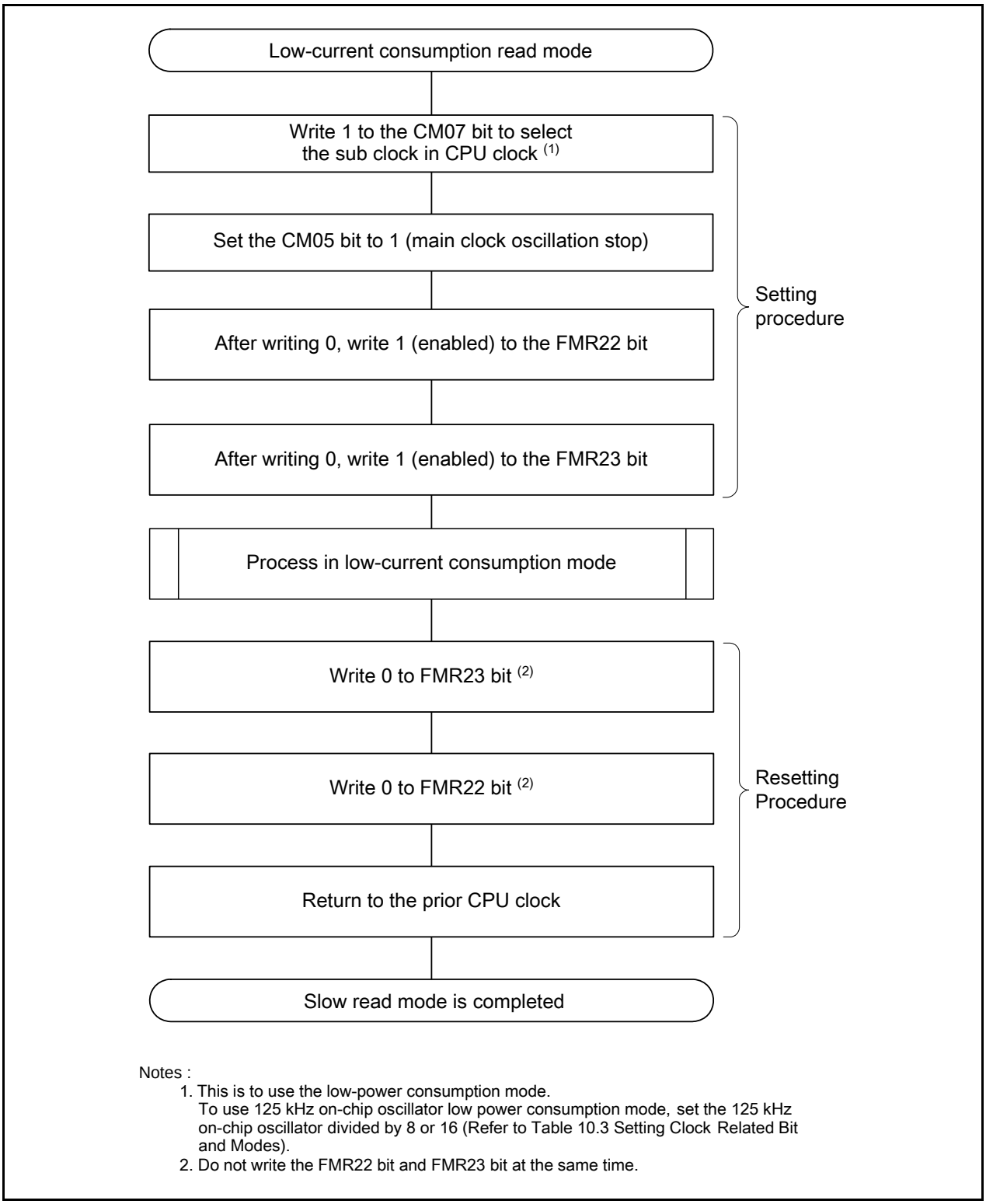


Figure 22.11 Setting and Resetting of Low-current Consumption Read Mode

22.3.3.12 FMR60 Bit

This bit is used to select EW1 mode when the FMR01 bit is set to 1 (CPU rewrite mode enabled). Figure 22.12 shows Setting and Resetting of EW0 Mode and Figure 22.13 for Setting and Resetting of EW1 Mode.

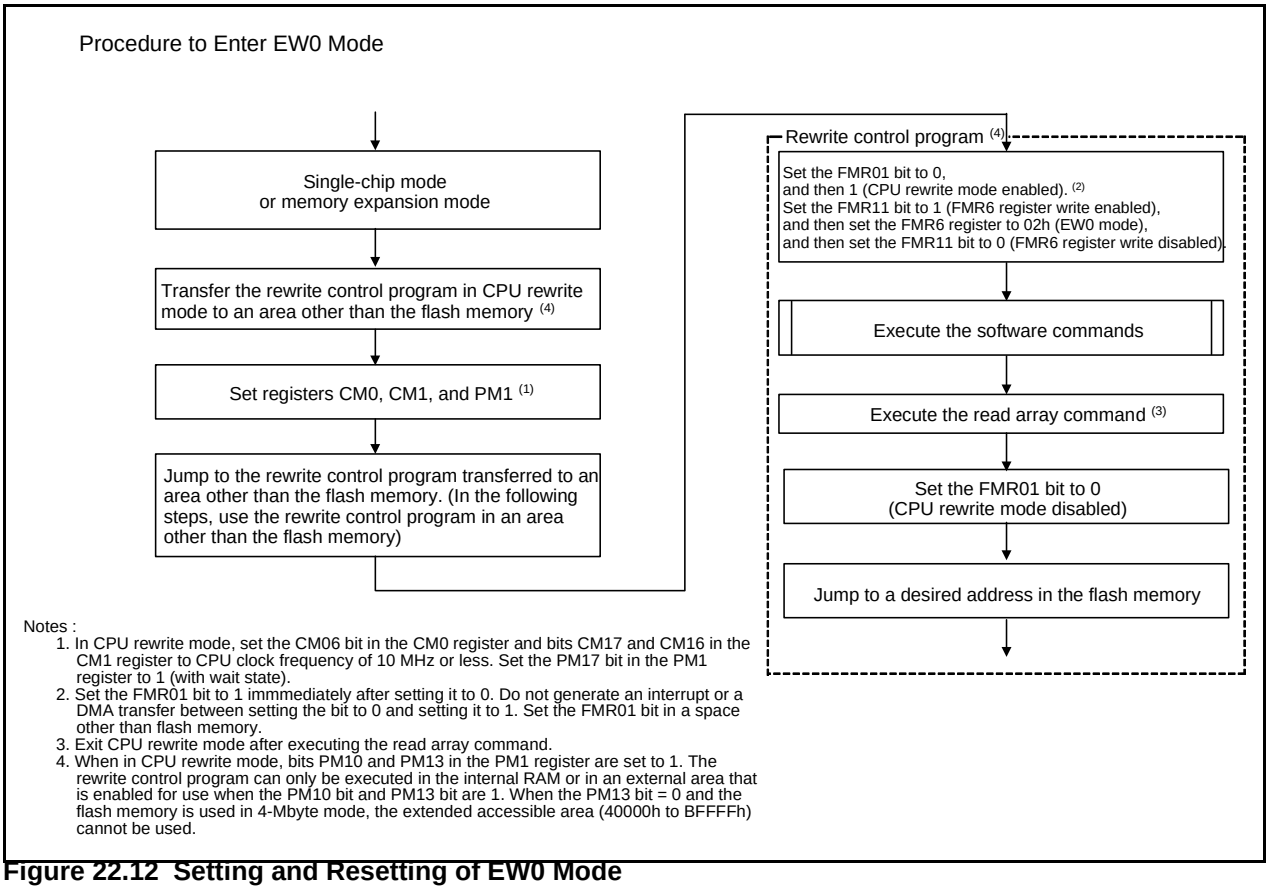


Figure 22.12 Setting and Resetting of EW0 Mode

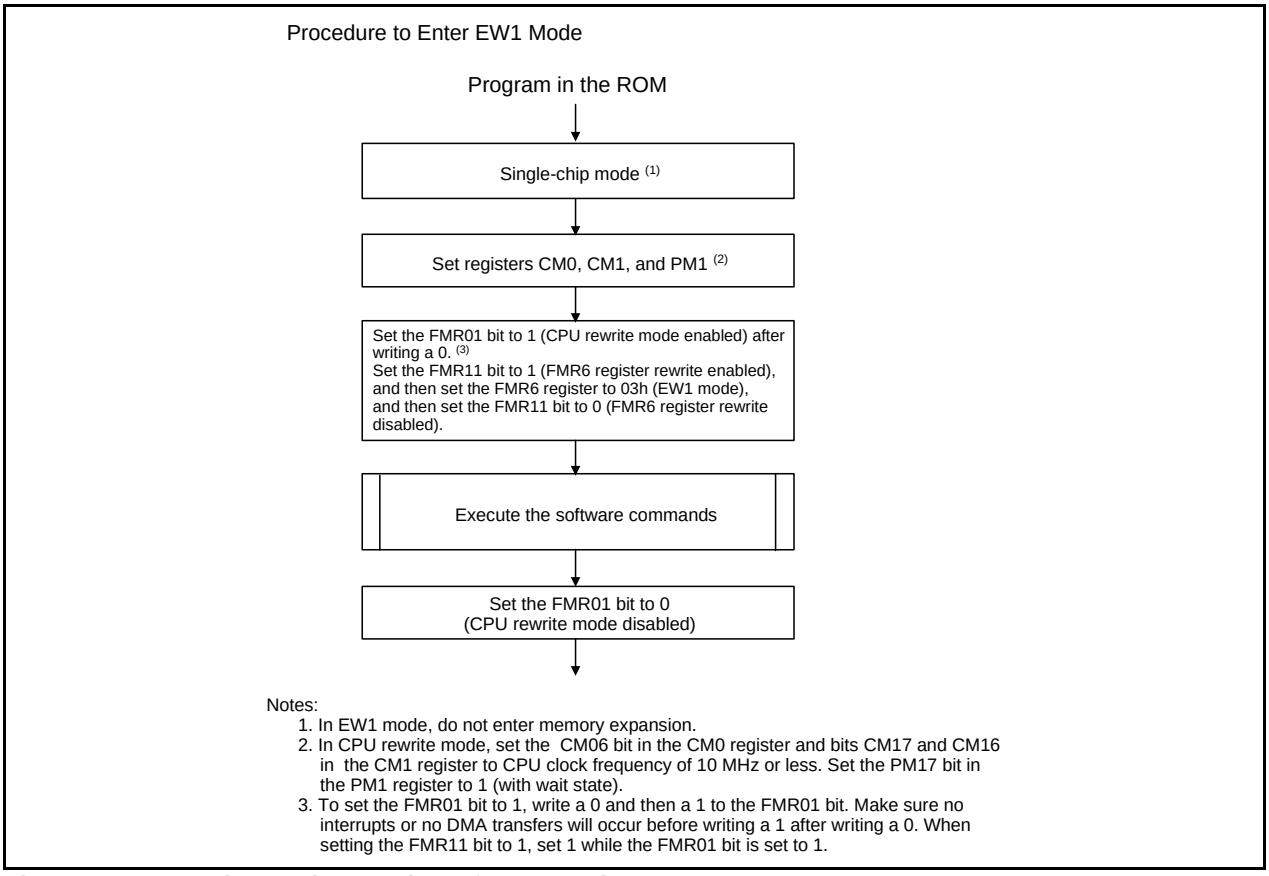


Figure 22.13 Setting and Resetting of EW1 Mode

22.3.3.13 FMR61 Bit

To use CPU rewrite mode, set to 1.

22.3.4 Precautions on CPU Rewrite Mode

22.3.4.1 Operating Speed

Set the CM06 bit in the CM0 register and bits CM17 and CM16 in the CM1 register to a CPU clock frequency of 10 MHz or less before entering CPU rewrite mode (EW0 or EW1 mode). Also, set the PM17 bit in the PM1 register to 1 (wait state).

22.3.4.2 Prohibited Instructions

The following instructions cannot be used in EW0 mode because the CPU tries to read data in the flash memory: the UND instruction, INTO instruction, JMPS instruction, JSRS instruction, and BRK instruction.

22.3.4.3 Interrupts (EW0 mode)

- To use interrupts with vectors in a relocatable vector table, relocate the vectors to the RAM area.
- The $\overline{\text{NMI}}$ and watchdog timer interrupts are available since registers FMR0 and FMR1 are forcibly reset when either interrupt occurs. Allocate the jump addresses for each interrupt routine to the fixed vector table. Flash memory rewrite operation stops when the $\overline{\text{NMI}}$ or watchdog timer interrupt occurs. Execute the rewrite program again after exiting the interrupt routine.
- The address match interrupt is not available since the CPU tries to read data in the flash memory.

22.3.4.4 Interrupts (EW1 mode)

- Do not acknowledge any interrupts with vectors in a relocatable vector table or address match interrupt during the auto program or auto erase period.
- The $\overline{\text{NMI}}$ interrupt is available since registers FMR0 and FMR1 are forcibly reset when the interrupt occurs. Allocate the jump address for the interrupt routine to the fixed vector table. Flash memory rewrite operation stops when the $\overline{\text{NMI}}$ interrupt occurs. Execute the rewrite program again after exiting the interrupt routine.
- The watchdog timer stops counting during auto write and auto erase.

22.3.4.5 How to Access

To set the FMR01 or FMR02 bit to 1, write a 1 after first setting the bit to 0. Make sure that no interrupts or no DMA transfers will occur before writing a 1 after writing a 0.

22.3.4.6 Rewrite (EW0 mode)

If the supply voltage drops while rewriting the block where the rewrite control program is stored, the rewrite control program is not correctly rewritten. This may cause the flash memory not to be rewritten. If this error occurs, use standard serial I/O mode or parallel I/O mode for rewriting.

22.3.4.7 Rewrite (EW1 mode)

- Do not rewrite any block in which the rewrite control program is stored.
- When a software command is executed for another block on the flash memory, the software command may not be executed as expected. This may occur when RAM is written by the rewriting program which is executed in EW1 mode.

Example Program (When the program command is executed)

```
PRG_CMD:
        MOV.W   PRG_ADDR    ,   A0          ;
        MOV.W   PRG_ADDR+2  ,   A1          ;
        STE.W   #0041h      ,   [A1A0]      ;   Program command
        STE.W   WR_DATA0    ,   [A1A0]      ;   The first word data to write
        ADD.W   #4          ,   PRG_ADDR    ;   ←Write to RAM
                                                (This is acknowledged as the second
                                                data to write)
        MOV.W   PRG_ADDR    ,   A0          ;
        STE.W   WR_DATA1    ,   [A1A0]      ;   The second word data to write
                                                (Depending on the value of
                                                WR_DATA1, this may be
                                                acknowledged as next software
                                                command)
                    :
                    :
        JMP     PRG_CMD
```

*PRG_ADDR; RAM address (the executing command address to be stored.)

When rewriting flash memory, execute a rewriting program on the area other than flash memory such as RAM or external area in EW0 mode. When using EW1 mode, do not write to RAM in EW1 mode.

22.3.4.8 DMA Transfer

In EW1 mode, do not generate a DMA transfer while the FMR00 bit in the FMR0 register is set to 0 (auto programming or auto erasing).

22.3.4.9 Writing Command and Data

Write commands and data to even addresses.

22.3.4.10 Wait Mode

When entering wait mode, set the FMR01 bit to 0 (CPU rewrite mode disabled) before executing the WAIT instruction.

22.3.4.11 Stop Mode

To enter stop mode, set the FMR01 bit to 0 (CPU rewrite mode disabled) and disable DMA transfer, then execute a command to set the CM10 bit to 1 (stop mode).

22.3.4.12 Low-Power Consumption Mode and On-Chip Oscillator Low-power Consumption Mode

When the CM05 bit is set to 1 (main clock stopped), do not execute the following commands:

- Program
- Block erase
- Lock bit program
- Read lock bit status
- Block blank check

22.3.5 Software Commands

Software commands are described below. Read and write the command code and data in 16-bit units, from and to even addresses in program ROM 1, program ROM 2, and the data flash. When the command code is written, the 8 high-order bits (D15 to D8) are ignored.

Table 22.10 Software Commands

Command	First Bus Cycle			Second Bus Cycle			Third Bus Cycle		
	Mode	Address	Data (D15 to D0)	Mode	Address	Data (D15 to D0)	Mode	Address	Data (D15 to D0)
Read Array	Write	x	xxFFh						
Read Status Register	Write	x	xx70h	Read	x	SRD			
Clear Status Register	Write	x	xx50h						
Program	Write	WA	xx41h	Write	WA	WD0	Write	WA	WD1
Block Erase	Write	x	xx20h	Write	BA	xxD0h			
Lock Bit Program	Write	BA	xx77h	Write	BA	xxD0h			
Read Lock Bit Status	Write	x	xx71h	Write	BA	xxD0h			
Block blank check	Write	x	xx25h	Write	BA	xxD0h			

SRD : Data in the status register (D7 to D0)
WA : Address are written (the last digit of write address must be 0, 4, 8, or C in hexadecimal)
WD0 : Write data low-order word (16 bits)
WD1 : Write data high-order word (16 bits)
BA : Highest-order block address (even address)
x : Given even address in program ROM 1, program ROM 2, and the data flash
xx : Eight high-order bits of command code (ignored)

22.3.5.1 Read Array Command

The read array command reads the flash memory.
By writing the command code xxFFh in the first bus cycle, read array mode is entered. Content of a specified address can be read in 16-bit units by entering an address to be read after the next bus cycle.
The microcomputer remains in read array mode until another command is written. Therefore, contents from multiple addresses can be read consecutively.

22.3.5.2 Read Status Register Command

The read status register command reads the status register.
By writing the command code xx70h in the first bus cycle, the status register can be read in the second bus cycle (refer to **22.3.7 "Status Register"**l). Read an even address in program ROM 1, program ROM 2, and the data flash.
Do not execute this command in EW1 mode.

22.3.5.3 Clear Status Register Command

The clear status register command clears the status register. By writing xx50h in the first bus cycle, bits FMR07 and FMR06 in the FMR0 register are set to 00b, and bits SR5 and SR4 in the status register are set to 00b.

22.3.5.4 Program Command

The program command writes 2-word (4 bytes) data to the flash memory. By writing xx41h in the first bus cycle and data to the write address in the second and third bus cycles, an auto program operation (data program and verify) will start. The last digit of write address must be 0, 4, 8, or C in hexadecimal.

The FMR00 bit in the FMR0 register indicates whether an auto program operation has been completed. The FMR00 bit is set to 0 (busy) during auto program and to 1 (ready) while in an auto program operation.

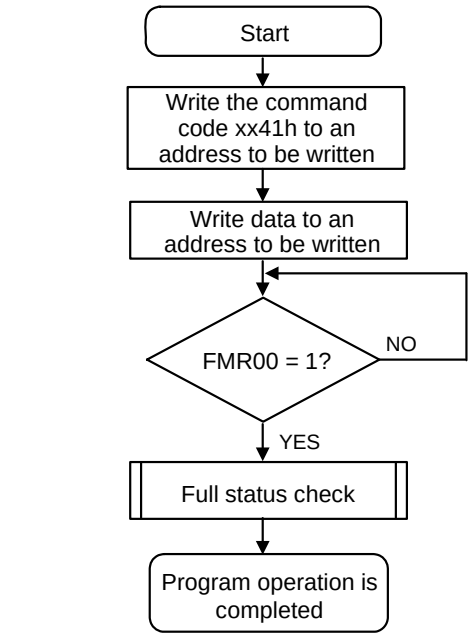
After the completion of an auto program operation, the FMR06 bit in the FMR0 register indicates whether or not the auto program operation has been completed as expected. (Refer to **22.3.8 "Full Status Check"**.)

An address that is already written cannot be altered or rewritten. Figure 22.14 shows a Flow Chart of the Program Command Programming.

The lock bit protects each block from being programmed inadvertently. (Refer to **22.3.6 "Data Protect Function"**.)

In EW1 mode, do not execute this command on the block to which the rewrite control program is allocated.

In EW0 mode, the microcomputer enters read status register mode as soon as an auto program operation starts. The status register can be read. The SR7 bit in the status register is set to 0 at the same time an auto program operation starts. It is set to 1 when the auto program operation is completed. The microcomputer remains in read status register mode until the read array command is written. After completion of an auto program operation, the status register indicates whether or not the auto program operation has been completed as expected.

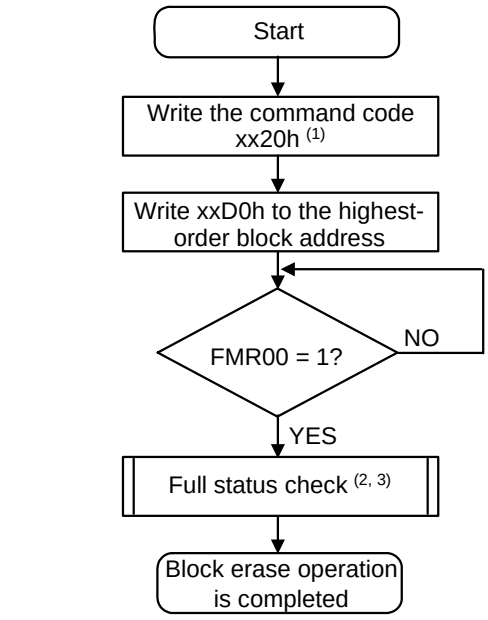


Note:
1. Write the command code and data to even addresses.

Figure 22.14 Program Command

22.3.5.5 Block Erase Command

By writing xx20h in the first bus cycle and xxD0h in the second bus cycle to the highest-order even address of a block, an auto erase operation (erase and verify) will start in the specified block.
The FMR00 bit in the FMR0 register indicates whether an auto erase operation has been completed. The FMR00 bit is set to 0 (busy) during auto erase and to 1 (ready) when the auto erase operation is completed.
After the completion of an auto erase operation, the FMR07 bit in the FMR0 register indicates whether or not the auto erase operation has been completed as expected. (Refer to **22.3.8 "Full Status Check"**.)
Figure 22.15 shows a Block Erase Command.
The lock bit protects each block from being erased inadvertently. (Refer to **22.3.6 "Data Protect Function"**.)
In EW1 mode, do not execute this command on the block where the rewrite control program is allocated.
In EW0 mode, the microcomputer enters read status register mode as soon as an auto erase operation starts. The status register can be read. The SR7 bit in the status register is set to 0 at the same time an auto erase operation starts. It is set to 1 when an auto erase operation is completed. The microcomputer remains in read status register mode until the read array command or read lock bit status command is written. If an erase error occurs, execute the clear status register command and then block erase command at least 3 times until an erase error is not generated.

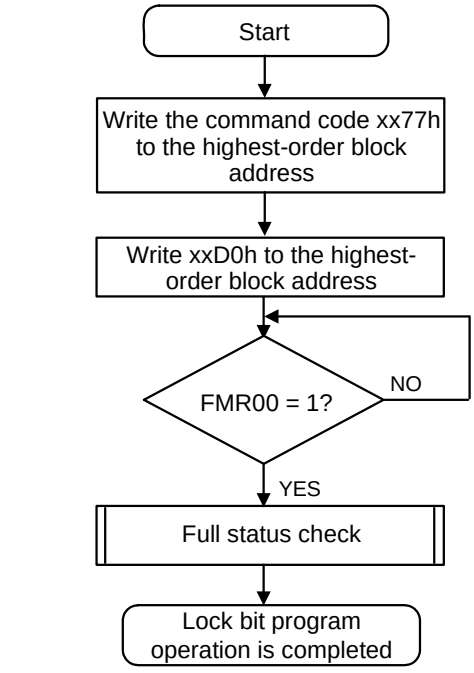


Notes:
1. Write the command code and data to even addresses.
2. Refer to **Figure 22.15 Full Status Check and Handling Procedure for Each Error.**
3. If an erase error occurs, execute the clear status register command and then block erase command at least 3 times until an erase error is not generated.

Figure 22.15 Block Erase Command

22.3.5.6 Lock Bit Program Command

The lock bit program command sets the lock bit for a specified block to 0 (locked).
By writing xx77h in the first bus cycle and xxD0h in the second bus cycle to the highest-order even address of a block, the lock bit for the specified block is set to 0. The address value specified in the first bus cycle must be the same highest-order address of a block specified in the second bus cycle.
Figure 22.16 shows a Flow Chart of the Lock Bit Program Command Programming. Execute read lock bit status command to read lock bit state (lock bit data).
The FMR00 bit in the FMR0 register indicates whether a lock bit program operation is completed.
Refer to **22.3.6 "Data Protect Function"** for details on lock bit functions and how to set it to 1 (unlocked).

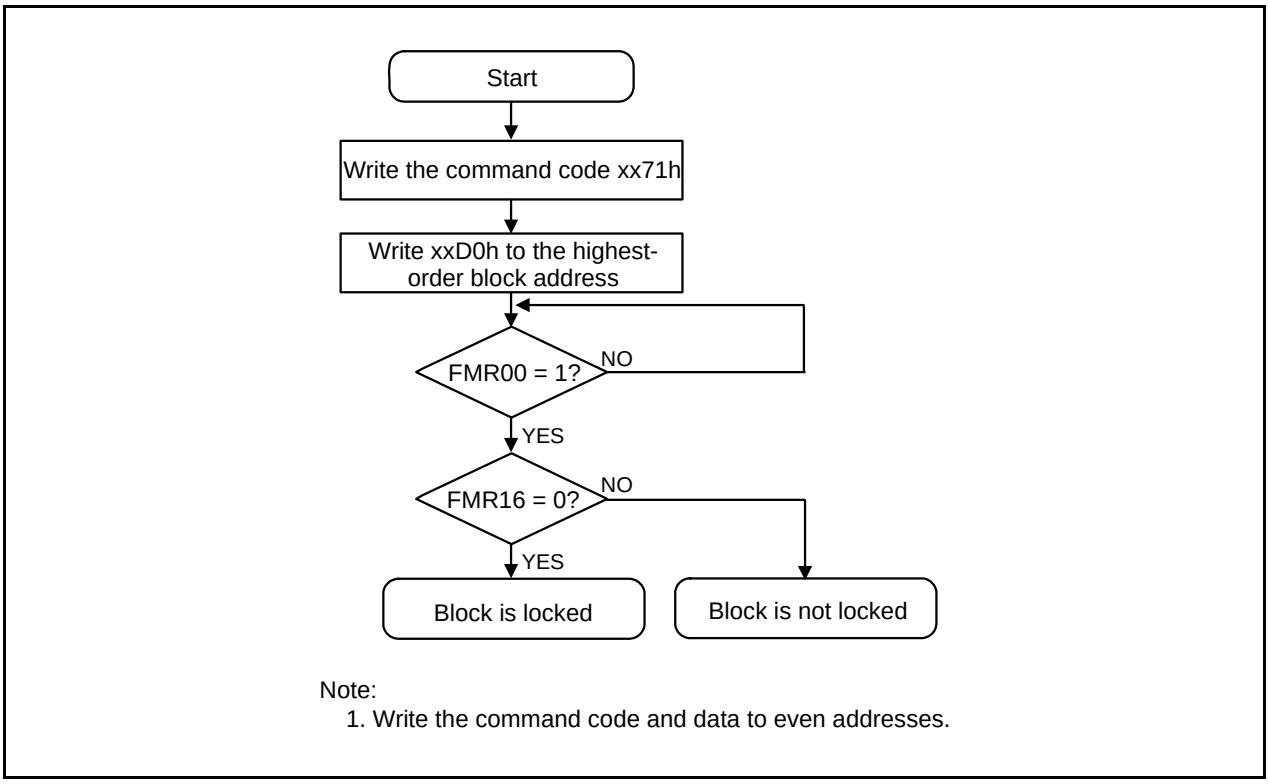


Note:
1. Write the command code and data to even addresses.

Figure 22.16 Lock Bit Program Command

22.3.5.7 Read Lock Bit Status Command

The read lock bit status command reads the lock bit state of a specified block.
By writing xx71h in the first bus cycle and xxD0h in the second bus cycle to the highest-order even address of a block, the FMR16 bit in the FMR1 register stores information on the lock bit status of a specified block. Read the FMR16 bit after the FMR00 bit in the FMR0 register is set to 1 (ready).
Figure 22.17 shows a Flow Chart of the Read Lock Bit Status Command Programming.



Note:
1. Write the command code and data to even addresses.

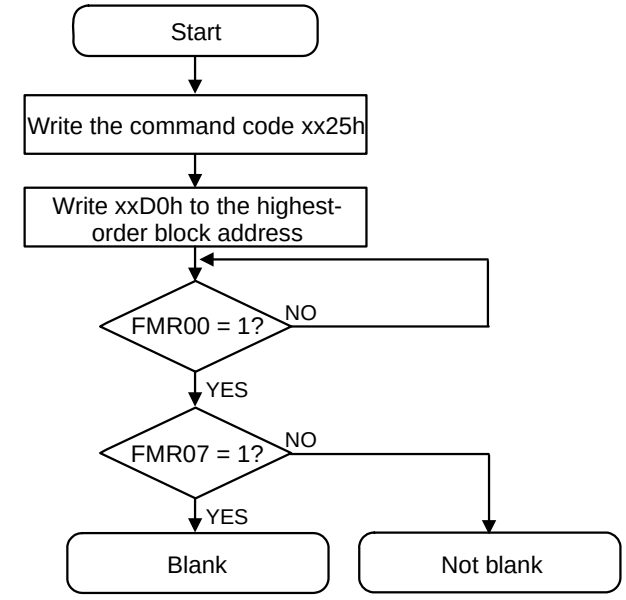
Figure 22.17 Read Lock Bit Status Command

22.3.5.8 Block Blank Check

The block blank check command checks whether or not a specified block is blank (state after erase). By writing xx25h in the first bus cycle and xxD0h in the second bus cycle to the highest-order even address of a block, the check result is stored in the FMR07 bit in the FMR0 register. Read the FMR07 bit after the FMR00 bit in the FMR0 register is set to 1 (ready).

The block blank check command is valid for unlocked blocks. If the block blank check command is executed to a block whose lock bit is 0 (locked), the FMR07 bit (SR5) is set to 1 (not blank) regardless of the FMR02 bit state.

Figure 22.18 shows a Flow Chart of the Block Blank Check Command.



Note:
1. Write the command code and data to even addresses.

Figure 22.18 Block Blank Check Command

22.3.6 Data Protect Function

Each block in the flash memory has a nonvolatile lock bit. The lock bit is enabled by setting the FMR02 bit to 0 (lock bit enabled). The lock bit allows each block to be individually protected (locked) against program and erase. This prevents data from being inadvertently written to or erased from the flash memory.

A block changes its status according to the lock bit status:

- When the lock bit status is set to 0, the block is locked (block is protected against program and erase).
- When the lock bit status is set to 1, the block is not locked (block can be programmed or erased).

The lock bit status is set to 0 (locked) by executing the lock bit program command and to 1 (unlocked) by erasing the block. No commands can set the lock bit status to 1.

The lock bit status can be read by the read lock bit status command.

When the FMR02 bit is set to 1, the lock bit function is disabled, and all blocks are unlocked. However, individual lock bit status remains unchanged. The lock bit function is enabled by setting the FMR02 bit to 0. Lock bit status is retained.

If the block erase command is executed while the FMR02 bit is set to 1, the target block or all blocks are erased regardless of lock bit status. The lock bit status of each block is set to 1 after an erase operation is completed.

Refer to **22.3.5 “Software Commands”** for details on each command.

22.3.7 Status Register

The status register indicates the flash memory operation state and whether or not an erase or program operation is completed as expected. Bits FMR00, FMR06, and FMR07 in the FMR0 register indicate status register states.

Table 22.11 shows the Status Register.

In EW0 mode, the status register can be read when the followings occur.

- Any even address in program ROM 1, program ROM 2, or the data flash is read after writing the read status register command.
- Any even address in program ROM 1, program ROM 2, or the data flash is read from when the program, block erase, lock bit program, or block blank check command is executed until when the read array command is executed.

22.3.7.1 Sequencer Status (Bits SR7 and FMR00)

The sequencer status indicates the flash memory operation state. It is set to 0 while the program, block erase, lock bit program, block blank check, or read lock bit status command is being executed; otherwise, it is set to 1.

22.3.7.2 Erase Status (Bits SR5 and FMR07)

Refer to **22.3.8 “Full Status Check”**.

22.3.7.3 Program Status (Bits SR4 and FMR06)

Refer to **22.3.8 “Full Status Check”**.

Table 22.11 Status Register

Bits in Status Register	Bit in FMR0 Register	Status name	Definition		Value after Reset
			0	1	
SR0 (D0)	-	Reserved	-	-	-
SR1 (D1)	-	Reserved	-	-	-
SR2 (D2)	-	Reserved	-	-	-
SR3 (D3)	-	Reserved	-	-	-
SR4 (D4)	FMR06	Program status	Terminated normally	Terminated in error	0
SR5 (D5)	FMR07	Erase status	Terminated normally	Terminated in error	0
SR6 (D6)	-	Reserved	-	-	-
SR7 (D7)	FMR00	Sequencer status	Busy	Ready	1

D0 to D7 are the data buses read when the read status register command is executed.
Bits FMR07 (SR5) and FMR06 (SR4) are set to 0 when the clear status register command is executed.
When the FMR07 (SR5) or FMR06 bit (SR4) is set to 1, the program, block erase, lock bit program, blank check, and read lock bit status commands are not accepted.

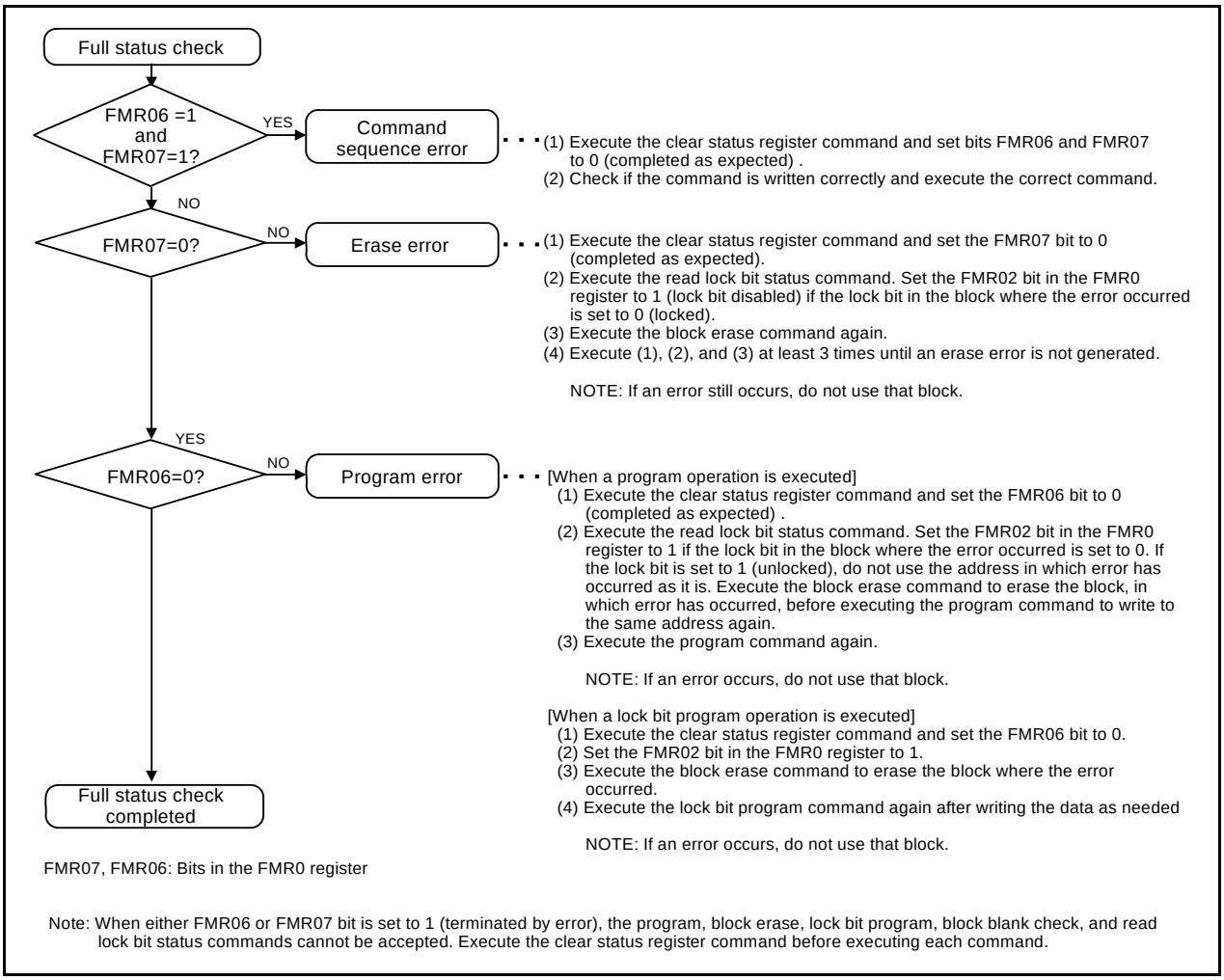
22.3.8 Full Status Check

If an error occurs when a program or erase operation is completed, bits FMR06 and FMR07 in the FMR0 register are set to 1, indicating a specific error. Therefore, execution results can be confirmed by checking these status (full status check).
Table 22.12 lists Errors and FMR0 Register State. Figure 22.19 shows a Full Status Check and Handling Procedure for Each Error.

Table 22.12 Errors and FMR0 Register State

FMR00 Register (Status Register) State		Error	Error Occurrence Conditions
FMR07 bit (SR5 bit)	FMR06 bit (SR4 bit)		
1	1	Command Sequence error	• Command is written incorrectly • A value other than xxD0h or xxFFh is written in the second bus cycle of the lock bit program or block erase command (1)
1	0	Erase error	• The block erase command is executed on a locked block (2) • The block erase command is executed on an unlocked block, but auto erase operation is not completed as expected • The block blank check command is executed, and the check result is not blank • The block blank check command is executed on a locked block
0	1	Program error	• The program command is executed on a locked block (2) • The program command is executed on an unlocked block, but program operation is not completed as expected • The lock bit program command is executed, but the lock bit is not written as expected (2)

Notes:
1. The flash memory enters read array mode by writing command code xxFFh in the second bus cycle of the commands. The command code written in the first bus cycle becomes invalid.
2. When the FMR02 bit is set to 1 (lock bit disabled), no error occurs even under the conditions above.



Note: When either FMR06 or FMR07 bit is set to 1 (terminated by error), the program, block erase, lock bit program, block blank check, and read lock bit status commands cannot be accepted. Execute the clear status register command before executing each command.

Figure 22.19 Full Status Check and Handling Procedure for Each Error

22.4 Standard Serial I/O Mode

In standard serial I/O mode, the serial programmer supporting the M16C/64 Group can be used to rewrite program ROM 1, program ROM 2, and the data flash in the microcomputer mounted on a board.

For more information about the serial programmer, contact your serial programmer manufacturer. Refer to the user's manual included with your serial programmer for instructions.

Table 22.13 lists Pin Functions (Flash Memory Standard Serial I/O Mode). Figures 22.20 and 22.21 show Pin Connections in Serial I/O Mode.

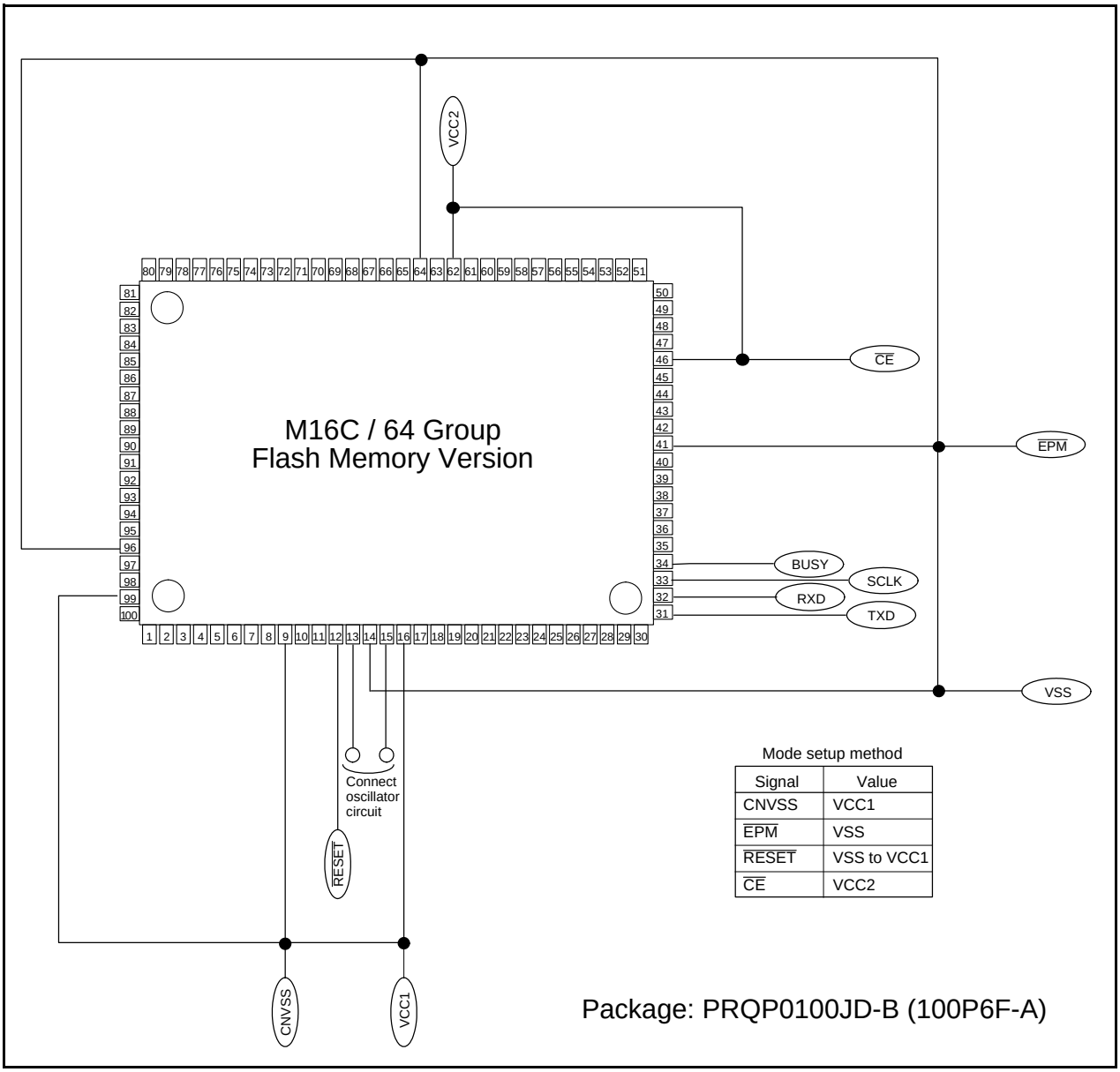
22.4.1 ID Code Check Function

The ID code check function determines whether the ID codes sent from the serial programmer match those written in the flash memory. (Refer to **22.2 "Functions to Prevent Flash Memory from Rewriting"**.)

Table 22.13 Pin Functions (Flash Memory Standard Serial I/O Mode)

Pin	Name	I/O	Power Supply	Description
VCC1, VCC2, VSS	Power input		-	Apply the flash program and erase voltage to the VCC1 pin, and VCC2 to the VCC2 pin. The VCC apply condition is that VCC2 = VCC1. Apply 0 V to the VSS pin.
CNVSS	CNVSS	I	VCC1	Connect to VCC1 pin.
RESET	Reset input	I	VCC1	Set the $\overline{\text{RESET}}$ pin low during td (ROC).
XIN	Clock input	I	VCC1	Connect a ceramic resonator or crystal oscillator between pins XIN and XOUT. To input an externally generated clock, input it to the XIN pin and open the XOUT pin.
XOUT	Clock output	O	VCC1	
BYTE	BYTE input	I	VCC1	Connect this pin to VCC1 or VSS.
AVCC, AVSS	Analog power supply input			Connect AVSS to VSS and AVCC to VCC1, respectively.
VREF	Reference voltage input	I		Reference voltage input pin for A/D converter. Connect to VCC1.
P0_0 to P0_7	Input port P0	I	VCC2	Input “H” or “L” level signal or open.
P1_0 to P1_7	Input port P1	I	VCC2	Input “H” or “L” level signal or open.
P2_0 to P2_7	Input port P2	I	VCC2	Input “H” or “L” level signal or open.
P3_0 to P3_7	Input port P3	I	VCC2	Input “H” or “L” level signal or open.
P4_0 to P4_7	Input port P4	I	VCC2	Input “H” or “L” level signal or open.
P5_1 to P5_4, P5_6, P5_7	Input port P5	I	VCC2	Input “H” or “L” level signal or open.
P5_0	$\overline{\text{CE}}$ input	I	VCC2	Input “H” level signal.
P5_5	$\overline{\text{EPM}}$ input	I	VCC2	Input “L” level signal.
P6_0 to P6_3	Input port P6	I	VCC1	Input “H” or “L” level signal or open.
P6_4 / $\overline{\text{RTS1}}$	BUSY output	O	VCC1	Standard serial I/O mode 1: BUSY signal output pin Standard serial I/O mode 2: monitor signal output pin to check the boot program operation
P6_5/CLK1	SCLK input	I	VCC1	Standard serial I/O mode 1: serial clock input pin Standard serial I/O mode 2: Input “L”.
P6_6 / RXD1	RXD input	I	VCC1	Serial data input pin.
P6_7 / TXD1	TXD input	O	VCC1	Serial data output pin. (1)
P7_0 to P7_7	Input port P7	I	VCC1	Input “H” or “L” level signal or open.
P8_0 to P8_7	Input port P8	I	VCC1	Input “H” or “L” level signal or open.
P9_0 to P9_7	Input port P9	I	VCC1	Input “H” or “L” level signal or open.
P10_0 to P10_7	Input port P10	I	VCC1	Input “H” or “L” level signal or open.

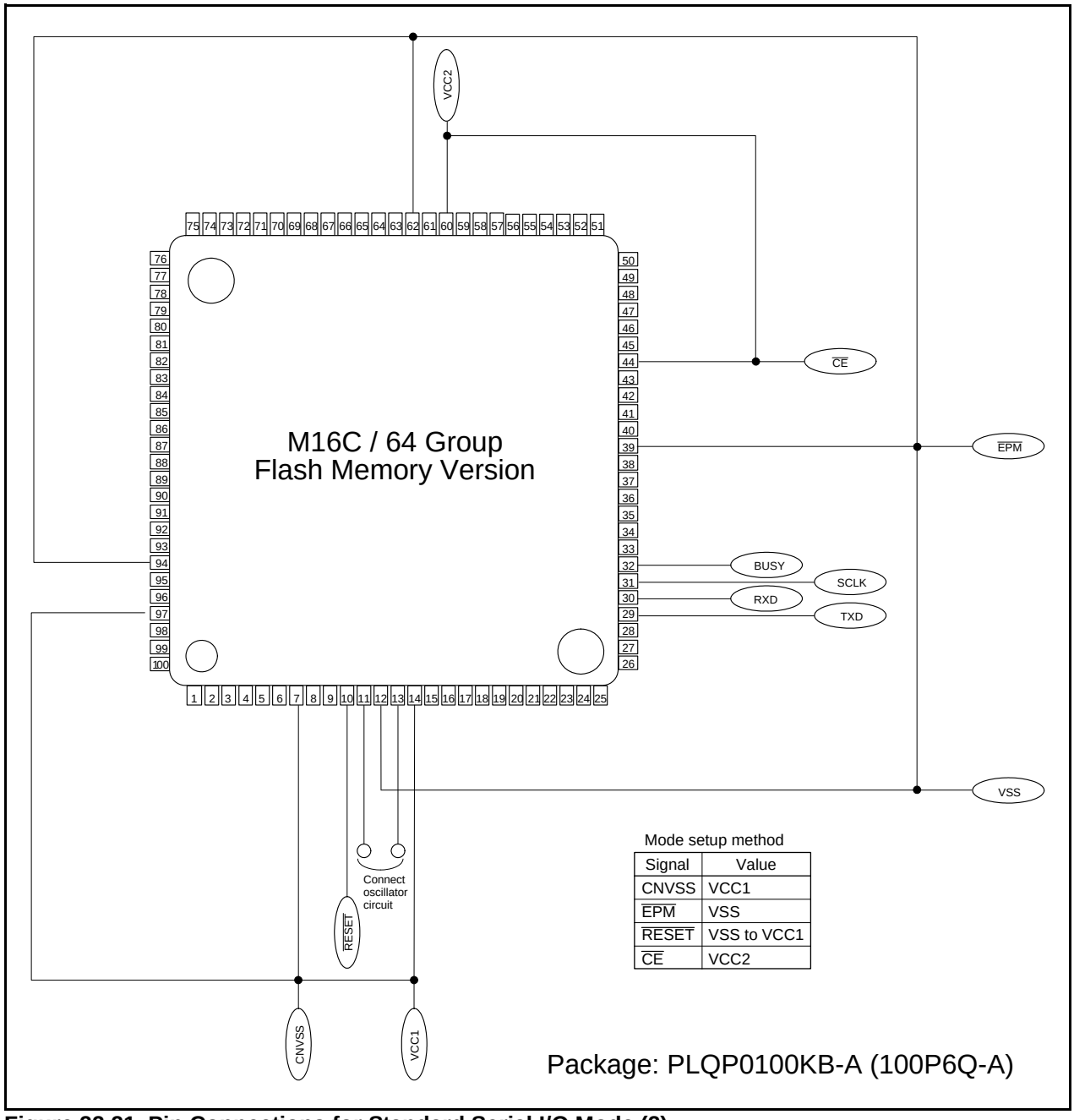
Notes:
1. When using the standard serial I/O mode, the internal pull-up is enabled for the TXD1 (P6_7) pin while the $\overline{\text{RESET}}$ pin is “L”.



Mode setup method

Signal	Value
CNVSS	VCC1
$\overline{\text{EPM}}$	VSS
$\overline{\text{RESET}}$	VSS to VCC1
$\overline{\text{CE}}$	VCC2

Figure 22.20 Pin Connections for Standard Serial I/O Mode (1)



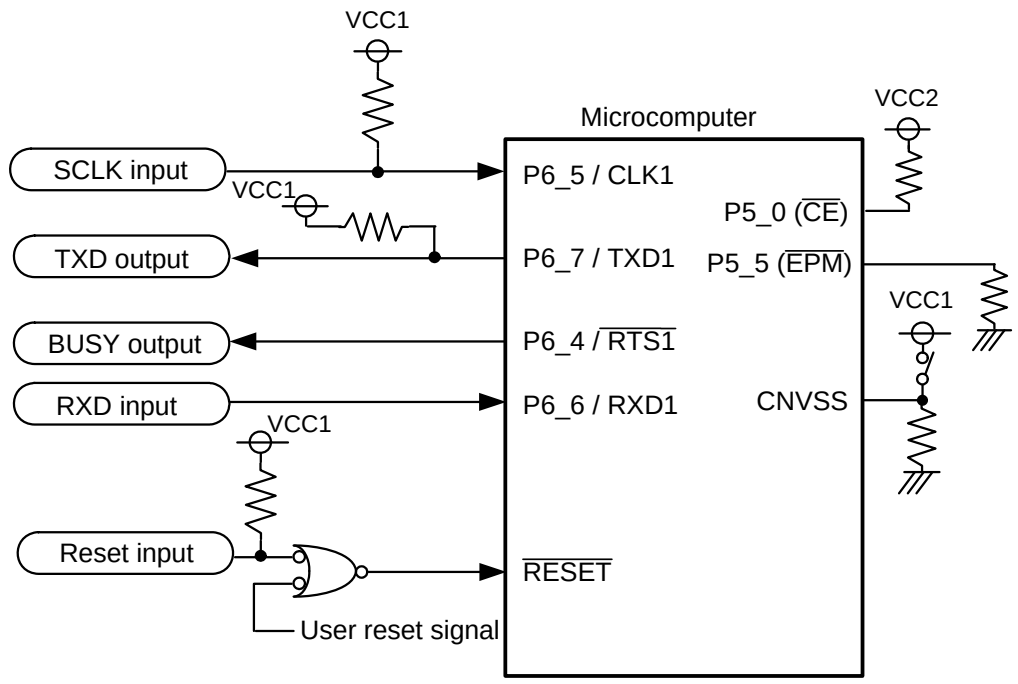
Mode setup method

Signal	Value
CNVSS	VCC1
$\overline{\text{EPM}}$	VSS
$\overline{\text{RESET}}$	VSS to VCC1
$\overline{\text{CE}}$	VCC2

Figure 22.21 Pin Connections for Standard Serial I/O Mode (2)

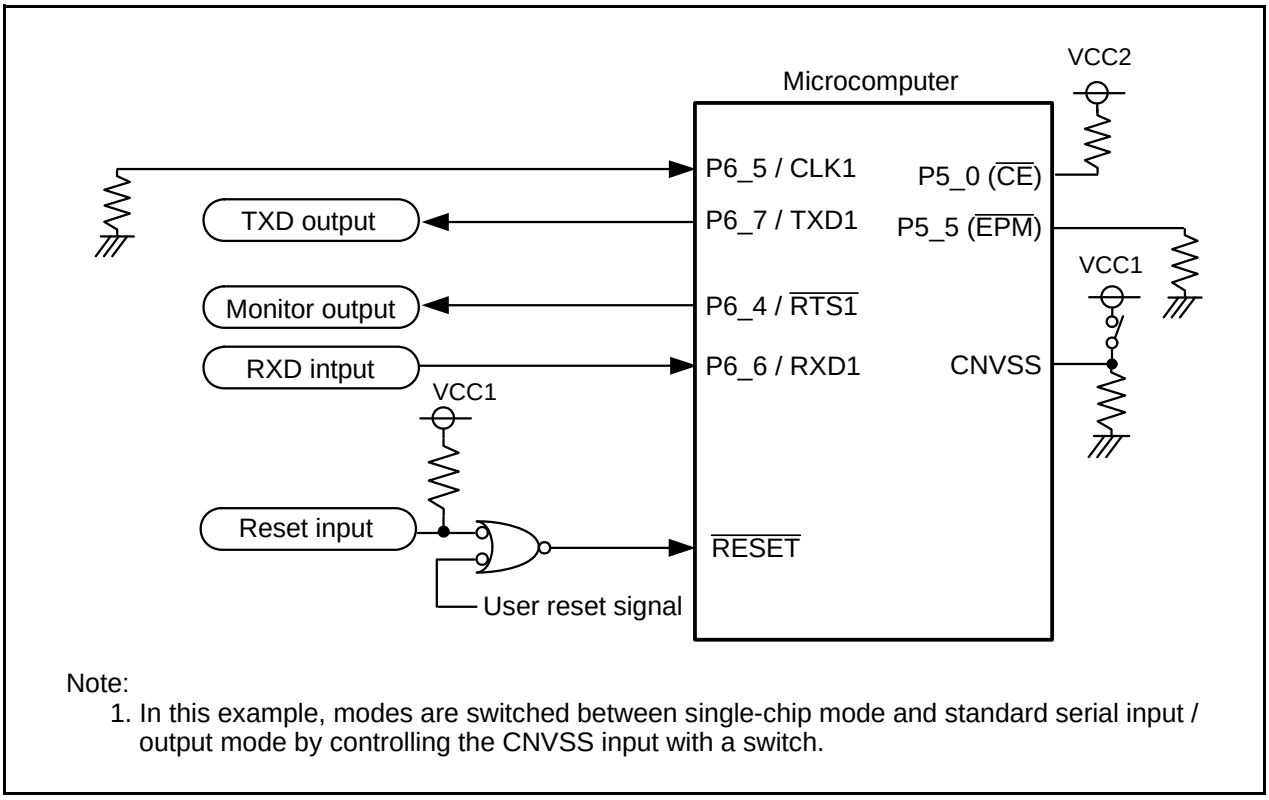
22.4.2 Example of Circuit Application in the Standard Serial I/O Mode

Figures 22.22 and 22.23 show examples of Circuit Application in Standard Serial I/O Mode 1 and Mode 2, respectively. Refer to the user's manual of your serial programmer to handle pins controlled by the serial programmer.



Notes:
1. Control pins and external circuitry will vary according to a programmer. For more information, see the programmer manual.
2. In this example, modes are switched between single-chip mode and standard serial input / output mode by controlling the CNVSS input with a switch.
3. If in standard serial input / output mode 1 there is a possibility that the user reset signal will go low during serial input / output mode, break the connection between the user reset signal and $\overline{\text{RESET}}$ pin by using, for example, a jumper switch.

Figure 22.22 Circuit Application in Standard Serial I/O Mode 1



Note:
1. In this example, modes are switched between single-chip mode and standard serial input / output mode by controlling the CNVSS input with a switch.

Figure 22.23 Circuit Application in Standard Serial I/O Mode 2

22.5 Parallel I/O Mode

In parallel I/O mode, program ROM 1, program ROM 2, and the data flash can be rewritten by a parallel programmer supporting the M16C/64 Group. Contact your parallel programmer manufacturer for more information on the parallel programmer. Refer to the user's manual included with your parallel programmer for instructions.

22.5.1 ROM Code Protect Function

The ROM code protect function prevents the flash memory from being read and rewritten. (Refer to **22.2 "Functions to Prevent Flash Memory from Rewriting"**.)

23. Electrical Characteristics

23.1 Electrical Characteristics

Table 23.1 Absolute Maximum Ratings

Symbol	Parameter		Condition	Rated Value	Unit
VCC1, VCC2	Supply Voltage		VCC1=VCC2 =AVCC	−0.3 to 6.5	V
AVCC	Analog Supply Voltage		VCC1=AVCC	−0.3 to 6.5	V
VI	Input Voltage	$\overline{\text{RESET}}$, CNVSS, BYTE, P6_0 to P6_7, P7_2 to P7_7, P8_0 to P8_4, P8_6, P8_7, P9_0 to P9_7, P10_0 to P10_7 XIN		−0.3 to VCC1+0.3	V
		P0_0 to P0_7, P1_0 to P1_7, P2_0 to P2_7, P3_0 to P3_7, P4_0 to P4_7, P5_0 to P5_7,		−0.3 to VCC2+0.3	V
		P7_0, P7_1, P8_5		−0.3 to 6.5	V
VO	Output Voltage	P6_0 to P6_7, P7_2 to P7_7, P8_0 to P8_4, P8_6, P8_7, P9_0 to P9_7, P10_0 to P10_7, XOUT		−0.3 to VCC1+0.3	V
		P0_0 to P0_7, P1_0 to P1_7, P2_0 to P2_7, P3_0 to P3_7, P4_0 to P4_7, P5_0 to P5_7		−0.3 to VCC2+0.3	V
		P7_0, P7_1, P8_5		−0.3 to 6.5	V
Pd	Power Dissipation		−40°C<Topr≤85°C	300	mW
Topr	Operating Ambient Temperature	When the Microcomputer is Operating		−20 to 85/-40 to 85	°C
		Flash Program Erase		0 to 60	
Tstg	Storage Temperature			−65 to 150	°C

Table 23.2 Recommended Operating Conditions (1)

Symbol	Parameter			Standard			Unit
				Min.	Typ.	Max.	
VCC1, VCC2	Supply Voltage (VCC1 = VCC2)			2.7	5.0	5.5	V
AVCC	Analog Supply Voltage				VCC1		V
VSS	Supply Voltage				0		V
AVSS	Analog Supply Voltage				0		V
VIH	HIGH Input Voltage	P3_1 to P3_7, P4_0 to P4_7, P5_0 to P5_7		0.8VCC2		VCC2	V
		P0_0 to P0_7, P1_0 to P1_7, P2_0 to P2_7, P3_0 (during single-chip mode)		0.8VCC2		VCC2	V
		P0_0 to P0_7, P1_0 to P1_7, P2_0 to P2_7, P3_0 (data input during memory expansion and microprocessor mode)		0.5VCC2		VCC2	V
		P6_0 to P6_7, P7_2 to P7_7, P8_0 to P8_4, P8_6, P8_7, P9_0 to P9_7, P10_0 to P10_7, XIN, $\overline{\text{RESET}}$, CNVSS, BYTE		0.8VCC1		VCC1	V
		P7_0, P7_1, P8_5		0.8VCC1		6.5	V
VIL	LOW Input Voltage	P3_1 to P3_7, P4_0 to P4_7, P5_0 to P5_7		0		0.2VCC2	V
		P0_0 to P0_7, P1_0 to P1_7, P2_0 to P2_7, P3_0 (during single-chip mode)		0		0.2VCC2	V
		P0_0 to P0_7, P1_0 to P1_7, P2_0 to P2_7, P3_0 (data input during memory expansion and microprocessor mode)		0		0.16VCC2	V
		P6_0 to P6_7, P7_0 to P7_7, P8_0 to P8_7, P9_0 to P9_7, P10_0 to P10_7, XIN, $\overline{\text{RESET}}$, CNVSS, BYTE		0		0.2VCC	V
IOH(peak)	HIGH Peak Output Current	P0_0 to P0_7, P1_0 to P1_7, P2_0 to P2_7, P3_0 to P3_7, P4_0 to P4_7, P5_0 to P5_7, P6_0 to P6_7, P7_2 to P7_7, P8_0 to P8_4, P8_6, P8_7, P9_0 to P9_7, P10_0 to P10_7				−10.0	mA
IOH(avg)	HIGH Average Output Current	P0_0 to P0_7, P1_0 to P1_7, P2_0 to P2_7, P3_0 to P3_7, P4_0 to P4_7, P5_0 to P5_7, P6_0 to P6_7, P7_2 to P7_7, P8_0 to P8_4, P8_6, P8_7, P9_0 to P9_7, P10_0 to P10_7,				−5.0	mA
IOL(peak)	LOW Peak Output Current	P0_0 to P0_7, P1_0 to P1_7, P2_0 to P2_7, P3_0 to P3_7, P4_0 to P4_7, P5_0 to P5_7, P6_0 to P6_7, P7_0 to P7_7, P8_0 to P8_7, P9_0 to P9_7, P10_0 to P10_7				10.0	mA
IOL(avg)	LOW Average Output Current	P0_0 to P0_7, P1_0 to P1_7, P2_0 to P2_7, P3_0 to P3_7, P4_0 to P4_7, P5_0 to P5_7, P6_0 to P6_7, P7_0 to P7_7, P8_0 to P8_7, P9_0 to P9_7, P10_0 to P10_7				5.0	mA
f(XIN)	Main Clock Input Oscillation Frequency		VCC1=2.7V to 5.5V	0		20	MHz
f(XCIN)	Sub-Clock Oscillation Frequency				32.768	50	kHz
f(OCO)	125kHz On-chip Oscillation Frequency			100	125	150	kHz
f(PLL)	PLL Clock Oscillation Frequency		VCC1=2.7V to 5.5V	10		25	MHz
f(BCLK)	CPU Operation Clock			0		25	MHz
tSU(PLL)	PLL Frequency Synthesizer Stabilization Wait Time		VCC1=5.0V			3	ms
			VCC1=3.0V			2	ms

Notes:
1. Referenced to VCC1 = VCC2 = 2.7 to 5.5V at Topr = −20 to 85°C/-40 to 85°C unless otherwise specified.
2. The Average Output Current is the mean value within 100ms.
3. The total IOL(peak) for ports P0, P1, P2, P8_6, P8_7, P9 and P10 must be 80mA max. The total IOL(peak) for ports P3, P4, P5, P6, P7 and P8_0 to P8_5 must be 80mA max. The total IOH(peak) for ports P0, P1, and P2 must be −40mA max. The total IOH(peak) for ports P3, P4 and P5 must be −40mA max. The total IOH(peak) for ports P6, P7_2 to P7_7 and P8_0 to P8_4 must be −40mA max.

Table 23.3 A/D Conversion Characteristics (1)

Symbol	Parameter		Measuring Condition		Standard			Unit
					Min.	Typ.	Max.	
-	Resolution		VREF=VCC1				10	Bits
INL	Integral Non-Linearity Error	10bit	VREF=VCC1=5.0V	AN0 to AN7 input, AN0_0 to AN0_7 input, AN2_0 to AN2_7 input, ANEX0, ANEX1 input			±3	LSB
			VREF=VCC1=3.3V	AN0 to AN7 input, AN0_0 to AN0_7 input, AN2_0 to AN2_7 input, ANEX0, ANEX1 input			±3	LSB
			VREF=VCC1=3.0V	AN0 to AN7 input, AN0_0 to AN0_7 input, AN2_0 to AN2_7 input, ANEX0, ANEX1 input			±3	LSB
-	Absolute Accuracy	10bit	VREF=VCC1=5.0V	AN0 to AN7 input, AN0_0 to AN0_7 input, AN2_0 to AN2_7 input, ANEX0, ANEX1 input			±3	LSB
			VREF=VCC1=3.3V	AN0 to AN7 input, AN0_0 to AN0_7 input, AN2_0 to AN2_7 input, ANEX0, ANEX1 input			±3	LSB
			VREF=VCC1=3.0V	AN0 to AN7 input, AN0_0 to AN0_7 input, AN2_0 to AN2_7 input, ANEX0, ANEX1 input			±3	LSB
-	Tolerance Level Impedance					3		kΩ
DNL	Differential Non-Linearity Error						±1	LSB
-	Offset Error						±3	LSB
-	Gain Error						±3	LSB
tCONV	10-bit Conversion Time		VREF=VCC1=5V, ϕAD=25MHz		1.60			µs
tSAMP	Sampling Time				0.60			µs
VREF	Reference Voltage					VCC1		V
VIA	Analog Input Voltage				0		VREF	V

Notes:
1. Referenced to VCC1=AVCC=VREF=3.0 to 5.5V, VSS=AVSS=0V at Topr = -20 to 85°C/-40 to 85°C unless otherwise specified.
2. Set ϕAD frequency as follows:
   When VCC1 = 4.0 to 5.5 V, 2 MHz ≤ ϕAD ≤ 25 MHz
   When VCC1 = 3.2 to 4.0 V, 2 MHz ≤ ϕAD ≤ 16 MHz
   When VCC1 = 3.0 to 3.2 V, 2 MHz ≤ ϕAD ≤ 10 MHz
3. Use when VREF=VCC1.

Table 23.4 D/A Conversion Characteristics (1)

Symbol	Parameter	Measuring Condition	Standard			Unit
			Min.	Typ.	Max.	
-	Resolution				8	Bits
-	Absolute Accuracy				2.5	LSB
tSU	Setup Time				3	µs
RO	Output Resistance		5	6	8.2	kΩ
IVREF	Reference Power Supply Input Current	(NOTE 2)			1.5	mA

Notes:
1. Referenced to VCC1=VREF=3.0 to 5.5V, VSS=AVSS=0V at Topr = -20 to 85°C / -40 to 85°C unless otherwise specified.
2. This applies when using one D/A converter, with the D/A register for the unused D/A converter set to “00h”.
3. The current consumption of the A/D converter is not included. Also, when D/A register contents are not “00h”, the IVREF will flow even if Vref id disconnected by the A/D control register.

Table 23.5 Flash Memory Version Electrical Characteristics (1)

Symbol	Parameter		Standard			Unit
			Min.	Typ.	Max.	
-	Program and Erase Endurance (2)	Other than data flash	100			cycle
		Data flash	100			cycle
-	2 Word Program Time (VCC1=3.3V at Topr=25°C)	Other than data flash		150		µs
		Data flash		300		µs
-	Lock Bit Program Time (VCC1=3.3V at Topr=25°C)	Other than data flash		70		µs
		Data flash		140		µs
-	Block Erase Time (VCC1=3.3V at Topr=25°C)	4-Kbyte block		0.20	3	s
		16-Kbyte block		0.20	3	s
		64-Kbyte block		0.20	3	s
tPS	Flash Memory Circuit Stabilization Wait Time				50	µs
-	Data Hold Time (3)		10			year

Notes:
1. Referenced to VCC1=2.7 to 5.5V at Topr = 0 to 60 °C unless otherwise specified.
2. Definition of program and erase endurance
   The program and erase endurance refers to the number of per-block erasures.
   If the program and erase endurance is n (n=100), each block can be erased n times.
   For example, if a 4 Kbyte block is erased after writing two word data 1,024 times, each to a different address, this counts as one program and erase endurance. Data cannot be written to the same address more than once without erasing the block. (Rewrite prohibited)
3. Topr = -20 to 85 °C/-40 to 85°C

Table 23.6 Flash Memory Version Program / Erase Voltage and Read Operation Voltage Characteristics (at Topr = 0 to 60 °C)

Flash Program, Erase Voltage	Flash Read Operation Voltage
VCC1 = 2.7 to 5.5 V	VCC1=2.7 to 5.5 V

Table 23.7 Low Voltage Detection Circuit Electrical Characteristics(3)

Symbol	Parameter	Measuring Condition	Standard			Unit
			Min.	Typ.	Max.	
Vdet2	Low Voltage Detection Voltage (1)	VCC1=0.8V to 5.5V	3.3	3.8	4.4	V
Vdet0	Reset Level Detection Voltage (1)			1.9		V
Vdet2 -Vdet0	Electric potential difference of Low Voltage Detection and Reset Level Detection		0.3			V
Vdet0s	Low Voltage Reset Retention Voltage				0.8	V
Vdet0r	Low Voltage Reset Release Voltage (2)			2.0		V

Notes:
1. Vdet2 > Vdet0.
2. Vdet0r > Vdet0 is not guaranteed.
3. The voltage detection circuit is designed to use when VCC1 is set to 5V.

Table 23.8 Power Supply Circuit Timing Characteristics

Symbol	Parameter	Measuring Condition	Standard			Unit
			Min.	Typ.	Max.	
td(P-R)	Time for Internal Power Supply Stabilization During Powering-On	VCC1=2.7V to 5.5V			5	ms
td(R-S)	STOP Release Time				150	µs
td(W-S)	Low Power Dissipation Mode Wait Mode Release Time				150	µs
td(S-R)	Brown-out Detection Reset (Hardware Reset 2) Release Wait Time	VCC1=Vdet0r to 5.5V		6 (1)	20	ms
td(E-A)	Low Voltage Detection Circuit Operation Start Time	VCC1=2.7V to 5.5V			20	µs

Note:
1. When VCC1 = 5V.

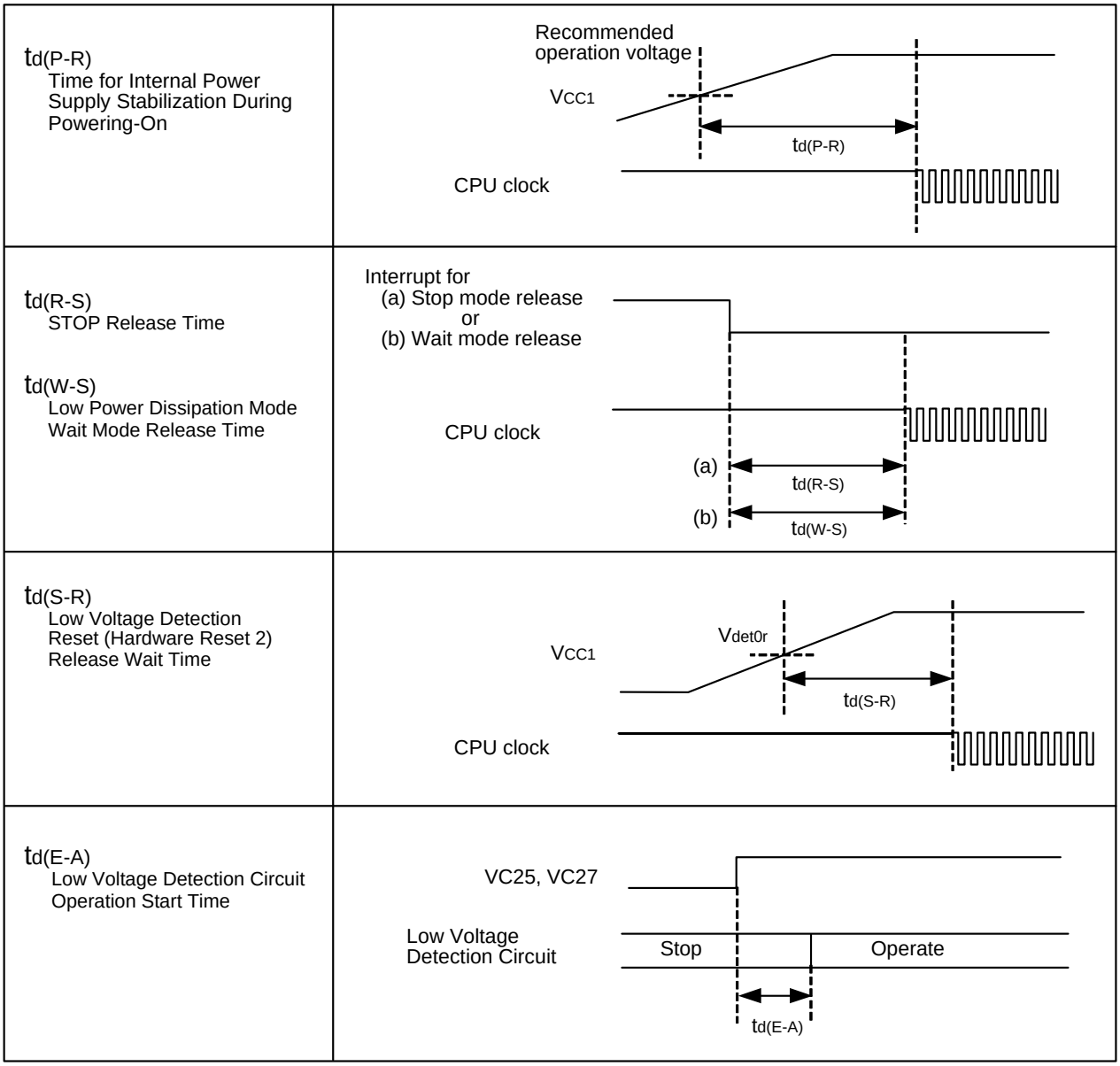


Figure 23.1 Power Supply Circuit Timing Diagram

VCC1=VCC2=5V

Table 23.9 Electrical Characteristics (1) [1]

Symbol	Parameter		Measuring Condition	Standard			Unit
				Min.	Typ.	Max.	
VOH	HIGH Output Voltage	P6_0 to P6_7, P7_2 to P7_7, P8_0 to P8_4, P8_6, P8_7, P9_0 to P9_7, P10_0 to P10_7	IOH=−5mA	VCC1−2.0		VCC1	V
		P0_0 to P0_7, P1_0 to P1_7, P2_0 to P2_7, P3_0 to P3_7, P4_0 to P4_7, P5_0 to P5_7	IOH=−5mA	VCC2−2.0		VCC2	
VOH	HIGH Output Voltage	P6_0 to P6_7, P7_2 to P7_7, P8_0 to P8_4, P8_6, P8_7, P9_0 to P9_7, P10_0 to P10_7	OH=−200µA	VCC1−0.3		VCC1	V
		P0_0 to P0_7, P1_0 to P1_7, P2_0 to P2_7, P3_0 to P3_7, P4_0 to P4_7, P5_0 to P5_7	IOH=−200µA	VCC2−0.3		VCC2	
VOH	HIGH Output Voltage XOUT	HIGHPOWER	IOH=−1mA	VCC1−2.0		VCC1	V
		LOWPOWER	IOH=−0.5mA	VCC1−2.0		VCC1	
	HIGH Output Voltage XCOUT	HIGHPOWER	With no load applied		2.6		V
		LOWPOWER	With no load applied		2.2		
VOL	LOW Output Voltage	P6_0 to P6_7, P7_0 to P7_7, P8_0 to P8_7, P9_0 to P9_7, P10_0 to P10_7	IOL=5mA			2.0	V
		P0_0 to P0_7, P1_0 to P1_7, P2_0 to P2_7, P3_0 to P3_7, P4_0 to P4_7, P5_0 to P5_7	IOL=5mA			2.0	
VOL	LOW Output Voltage	P6_0 to P6_7, P7_0 to P7_7, P8_0 to P8_7, P9_0 to P9_7, P10_0 to P10_7	IOL=200µA			0.45	V
		P0_0 to P0_7, P1_0 to P1_7, P2_0 to P2_7, P3_0 to P3_7, P4_0 to P4_7, P5_0 to P5_7	IOL=200µA			0.45	
VOL	LOW Output Voltage XOUT	HIGHPOWER	IOL=1mA			2.0	V
		LOWPOWER	IOL=0.5mA			2.0	
	LOW Output Voltage XCOUT	HIGHPOWER	With no load applied		0		V
		LOWPOWER	With no load applied		0		
VT+-VT-	Hysteresis	$\overline{HOLD}$, $\overline{RDY}$, TA0IN to TA4IN, TB0IN to TB5IN, $\overline{INT0}$ to $\overline{INT7}$, $\overline{NMI}$, $\overline{ADTRG}$, $\overline{CTS0}$ to $\overline{CTS2}$, $\overline{CTS5}$ to $\overline{CTS7}$, SCL0 to SCL2, SCL5 to SCL7, SDA0 to SDA2, SDA5 to SDA7, CLK0 to CLK7, TA0OUT to TA4OUT, $\overline{KI0}$ to $\overline{KI3}$, RXD0 to RXD2, RXD5 to RXD7, SIN3, SIN4		0.5		2.0	V
VT+-VT-	Hysteresis	$\overline{RESET}$		0.5		2.0	V
IIH	HIGH Input Current	P0_0 to P0_7, P1_0 to P1_7, P2_0 to P2_7, P3_0 to P3_7, P4_0 to P4_7, P5_0 to P5_7, P6_0 to P6_7, P7_0 to P7_7, P8_0 to P8_7, P9_0 to P9_7, P10_0 to P10_7, XIN, $\overline{RESET}$, CNVSS, BYTE	VI=5V			5.0	µA
IIL	LOW Input Current	P0_0 to P0_7, P1_0 to P1_7, P2_0 to P2_7, P3_0 to P3_7, P4_0 to P4_7, P5_0 to P5_7, P6_0 to P6_7, P7_0 to P7_7, P8_0 to P8_7, P9_0 to P9_7, P10_0 to P10_7, XIN, $\overline{RESET}$, CNVSS, BYTE	VI=0V			−5.0	µA
RPULLUP	Pull-Up Resistance	P0_0 to P0_7, P1_0 to P1_7, P2_0 to P2_7, P3_0 to P3_7, P4_0 to P4_7, P5_0 to P5_7, P6_0 to P6_7, P7_2 to P7_7, P8_0 to P8_4, P8_6, P8_7, P9_0 to P9_7, P10_0 to P10_7	VI=0V	30	50	100	kΩ
RfXIN	Feedback Resistance XIN				1.5		MΩ
RfXCIN	Feedback Resistance XCIN				15		MΩ
VRAM	RAM Retention Voltage		At stop mode	1.8			V

Notes:
1. Referenced to VCC1=VCC2=4.2 to 5.5V, VSS = 0V at Topr = −20 to 85°C/-40 to 85°C, f(BCLK)=25MHz unless otherwise specified.

VCC1=VCC2=5V

Table 23.10 Electrical Characteristics (2) (1)

Symbol	Parameter		Measuring Condition		Standard			Unit
					Min.	Typ.	Max.	
ICC	Power Supply Current (VCC1=4.0V to 5.5V)	In single-chip mode, the output pins are open and other pins are VSS	Flash Memory	f(BCLK)=25MHz, No division, PLL operation		20	30	mA
				125 kHz On-chip oscillation, No division, FMR22=1		450		µA
			Flash Memory Program	f(BCLK)=10MHz, VCC1=5.0V		20		mA
			Flash Memory Erase	f(BCLK)=10MHz, VCC1=5.0V		30		mA
			Flash Memory	f(BCLK)=32kHz Low power dissipation mode, RAM (3)		45		µA
				f(BCLK)=32kHz Low power dissipation mode, Flash Memory (3) FMR22=FMR23=1		200		µA
				125 kHz On-chip oscillation, Wait mode		20		µA
				f(BCLK)=32kHz Wait mode (2), Oscillation capability High		11.0		µA
				f(BCLK)=32kHz Wait mode (2), Oscillation capability Low		6.0		µA
				Stop mode Topr =25°C		1.8		µA
Idet2	Low Voltage Detection Dissipation Current (4)					3.0		µA
Idet0	Reset Area Detection Dissipation Current (4)					6.0		µA

Notes:
1. Referenced to VCC1=VCC2=4.2 to 5.5V, VSS = 0V at Topr = –20 to 85°C/-40 to 85°C, f(BCLK)=25MHz unless otherwise specified.
2. With one timer operated using fC32.
3. This indicates the memory in which the program to be executed exists.
4. Idet is dissipation current when the following bit is set to “1” (detection circuit enabled).
   Idet2: VC27 bit in the VCR2 register
   Idet0: VC25 bit in the VCR2 register

VCC1=VCC2=5V

Timing Requirements
(VCC1 = VCC2 = 5V, VSS = 0V, at Topr = –20 to 85°C/-40 to 85°C unless otherwise specified)

Table 23.11 External Clock Input (XIN input) (1)

Symbol	Parameter	Standard		Unit
		Min.	Max.	
tc	External Clock Input Cycle Time	50		ns
tw(H)	External Clock Input HIGH Pulse Width	20		ns
tw(L)	External Clock Input LOW Pulse Width	20		ns
tr	External Clock Rise Time		9	ns
tf	External Clock Fall Time		9	ns

Note:
1. The condition is VCC1=VCC2=3.0 to 5.0V.

Table 23.12 Memory Expansion Mode and Microprocessor Mode

Symbol	Parameter	Standard		Unit
		Min.	Max.	
tac1(RD-DB)	Data Input Access Time (for setting with no wait)		(NOTE 1)	ns
tac2(RD-DB)	Data Input Access Time (for setting with wait)		(NOTE 2)	ns
tac3(RD-DB)	Data Input Access Time (when accessing multiplex bus area)		(NOTE 3)	ns
tsu(DB-RD)	Data Input Setup Time	40		ns
tsu(RDY-BCLK)	$\overline{\text{RDY}}$ Input Setup Time	30		ns
tsu(HOLD-BCLK)	$\overline{\text{HOLD}}$ Input Setup Time	40		ns
th(RD-DB)	Data Input Hold Time	0		ns
th(BCLK-RDY)	$\overline{\text{RDY}}$ Input Hold Time	0		ns
th(BCLK-HOLD)	$\overline{\text{HOLD}}$ Input Hold Time	0		ns

Notes:
1. Calculated according to the BCLK frequency as follows:

$$\frac{0.5 \times 10^9}{f(BCLK)} - 45[ns]$$

2. Calculated according to the BCLK frequency as follows:

$$\frac{(n-0.5) \times 10^9}{f(BCLK)} - 45[ns]$$ n is ”2” for 1-wait setting, “3” for 2-wait setting and “4” for 3-wait setting.

3. Calculated according to the BCLK frequency as follows:

$$\frac{(n-0.5) \times 10^9}{f(BCLK)} - 45[ns]$$ n is “2” for 2-wait setting, “3” for 3-wait setting.

VCC1=VCC2=5V

Timing Requirements
(VCC1 = VCC2 = 5V, VSS = 0V, at Topr = –20 to 85°C/-40 to 85°C unless otherwise specified)

Table 23.13 Timer A Input (Counter Input in Event Counter Mode)

Symbol	Parameter	Standard		Unit
		Min.	Max.	
tc(TA)	TAiIN Input Cycle Time	100		ns
tw(TAH)	TAiIN Input HIGH Pulse Width	40		ns
tw(TAL)	TAiIN Input LOW Pulse Width	40		ns

Table 23.14 Timer A Input (Gating Input in Timer Mode)

Symbol	Parameter	Standard		Unit
		Min.	Max.	
tc(TA)	TAiIN Input Cycle Time	400		ns
tw(TAH)	TAiIN Input HIGH Pulse Width	200		ns
tw(TAL)	TAiIN Input LOW Pulse Width	200		ns

Table 23.15 Timer A Input (External Trigger Input in One-shot Timer Mode)

Symbol	Parameter	Standard		Unit
		Min.	Max.	
tc(TA)	TAiIN Input Cycle Time	200		ns
tw(TAH)	TAiIN Input HIGH Pulse Width	100		ns
tw(TAL)	TAiIN Input LOW Pulse Width	100		ns

Table 23.16 Timer A Input (External Trigger Input in Pulse Width Modulation Mode)

Symbol	Parameter	Standard		Unit
		Min.	Max.	
tw(TAH)	TAiIN Input HIGH Pulse Width	100		ns
tw(TAL)	TAiIN Input LOW Pulse Width	100		ns

Table 23.17 Timer A Input (Two-phase Pulse Input in Event Counter Mode)

Symbol	Parameter	Standard		Unit
		Min.	Max.	
tc(TA)	TAiIN Input Cycle Time	800		ns
tsu(TAIN-TAOUT)	TAiOUT Input Setup Time	200		ns
tsu(TAOUT-TAIN)	TAiIN Input Setup Time	200		ns

VCC1=VCC2=5V

Timing Requirements
(VCC1 = VCC2 = 5V, VSS = 0V, at Topr = –20 to 85°C/-40 to 85°C unless otherwise specified)

Table 23.18 Timer B Input (Counter Input in Event Counter Mode)

Symbol	Parameter	Standard		Unit
		Min.	Max.	
tc(TB)	TBiIN Input Cycle Time (counted on one edge)	100		ns
tw(TBH)	TBiIN Input HIGH Pulse Width (counted on one edge)	40		ns
tw(TBL)	TBiIN Input LOW Pulse Width (counted on one edge)	40		ns
tc(TB)	TBiIN Input Cycle Time (counted on both edges)	200		ns
tw(TBH)	TBiIN Input HIGH Pulse Width (counted on both edges)	80		ns
tw(TBL)	TBiIN Input LOW Pulse Width (counted on both edges)	80		ns

Table 23.19 Timer B Input (Pulse Period Measurement Mode)

Symbol	Parameter	Standard		Unit
		Min.	Max.	
tc(TB)	TBiIN Input Cycle Time	400		ns
tw(TBH)	TBiIN Input HIGH Pulse Width	200		ns
tw(TBL)	TBiIN Input LOW Pulse Width	200		ns

Table 23.20 Timer B Input (Pulse Width Measurement Mode)

Symbol	Parameter	Standard		Unit
		Min.	Max.	
tc(TB)	TBiIN Input Cycle Time	400		ns
tw(TBH)	TBiIN Input HIGH Pulse Width	200		ns
tw(TBL)	TBiIN Input LOW Pulse Width	200		ns

Table 23.21 A/D Trigger Input

Symbol	Parameter	Standard		Unit
		Min.	Max.	
tc(AD)	$\overline{\text{ADTRG}}$ Input Cycle Time	1000		ns
tw(ADL)	$\overline{\text{ADTRG}}$ input LOW Pulse Width	125		ns

Table 23.22 Serial Interface

Symbol	Parameter	Standard		Unit
		Min.	Max.	
tc(CK)	CLKi Input Cycle Time	200		ns
tw(CKH)	CLKi Input HIGH Pulse Width	100		ns
tw(CKL)	CLKi Input LOW Pulse Width	100		ns
td(C-Q)	TXDi Output Delay Time		80	ns
th(C-Q)	TXDi Hold Time	0		ns
tsu(D-C)	RXDi Input Setup Time	70		ns
th(C-D)	RXDi Input Hold Time	90		ns

Table 23.23 External Interrupt $\overline{\text{INTi}}$ Input

Symbol	Parameter	Standard		Unit
		Min.	Max.	
tw(INH)	$\overline{\text{INTi}}$ Input HIGH Pulse Width	250		ns
tw(INL)	$\overline{\text{INTi}}$ Input LOW Pulse Width	250		ns

VCC1=VCC2=5V

Switching Characteristics

(VCC1 = VCC2 = 5V, VSS = 0V, at Topr = –20 to 85°C/-40 to 85°C unless otherwise specified)

Table 23.24 Memory Expansion and Microprocessor Modes (for setting with no wait)

Symbol	Parameter	Measuring Condition	Standard		Unit
			Min.	Max.	
td(BCLK-AD)	Address Output Delay Time	See **Figure 23.2**		25	ns
th(BCLK-AD)	Address Output Hold Time (in relation to BCLK)		2		ns
th(RD-AD)	Address Output Hold Time (in relation to RD)		0		ns
th(WR-AD)	Address Output Hold Time (in relation to WR)		(NOTE 2)		ns
td(BCLK-CS)	Chip Select Output Delay Time			25	ns
th(BCLK-CS)	Chip Select Output Hold Time (in relation to BCLK)		2		ns
td(BCLK-ALE)	ALE Signal Output Delay Time			15	ns
th(BCLK-ALE)	ALE Signal Output Hold Time		–4		ns
td(BCLK-RD)	RD Signal Output Delay Time			25	ns
th(BCLK-RD)	RD Signal Output Hold Time		0		ns
td(BCLK-WR)	WR Signal Output Delay Time			25	ns
th(BCLK-WR)	WR Signal Output Hold Time		0		ns
td(BCLK-DB)	Data Output Delay Time (in relation to BCLK)			40	ns
th(BCLK-DB)	Data Output Hold Time (in relation to BCLK) (3)		2		ns
td(DB-WR)	Data Output Delay Time (in relation to WR)		(NOTE 1)		ns
th(WR-DB)	Data Output Hold Time (in relation to WR) (3)		(NOTE 2)		ns
td(BCLK-HLDA)	$\overline{\text{HLDA}}$ Output Delay Time			40	ns

Notes:

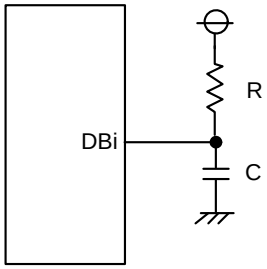
1. Calculated according to the BCLK frequency as follows:

$$\frac{0.5 \times 10^9}{f(BCLK)} - 40[ns]$$ f(BCLK) is 12.5MHz or less.

2. Calculated according to the BCLK frequency as follows:

$$\frac{0.5 \times 10^9}{f(BCLK)} - 10[ns]$$

3. This standard value shows the timing when the output is off, and does not show hold time of data bus.
Hold time of data bus varies with capacitor volume and pull-up (pull-down) resistance value.
Hold time of data bus is expressed in
t = –CR X ln (1–VOL / VCC2)
by a circuit of the right figure.
For example, when VOL = 0.2VCC2, C = 30pF, R = 1kΩ, hold time of output "L" level is
t = –30pF X 1k Ω X ln(1–0.2VCC2 / VCC2)
= 6.7ns.



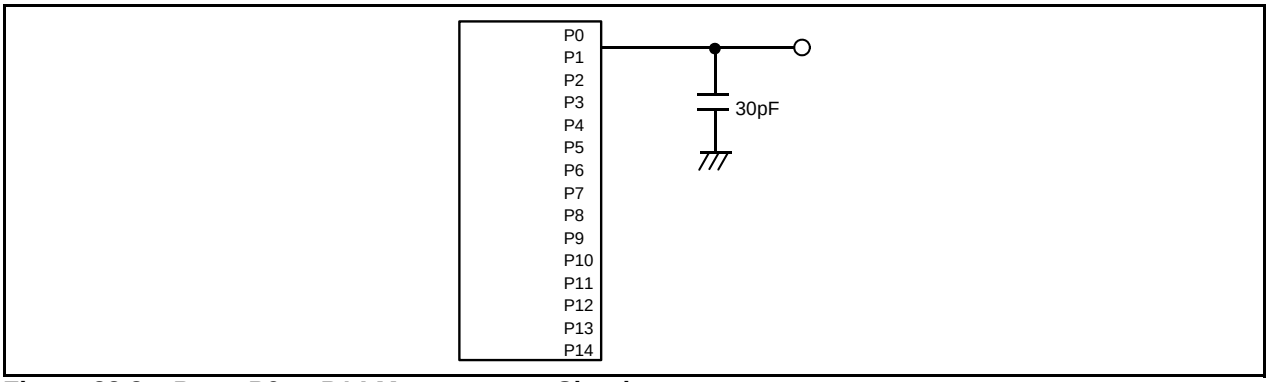


Figure 23.2 Ports P0 to P14 Measurement Circuit

VCC1=VCC2=5V

Switching Characteristics

(VCC1 = VCC2 = 5V, VSS = 0V, at Topr = –20 to 85°C/-40 to 85°C unless otherwise specified)

Table 23.25 Memory Expansion and Microprocessor Modes (for 1- to 3-wait setting and external area access)

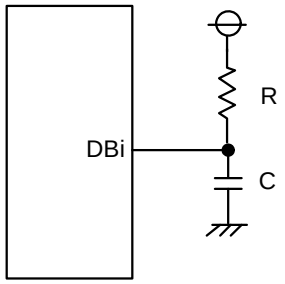
Symbol	Parameter	Measuring Condition	Standard		Unit
			Min.	Max.	
td(BCLK-AD)	Address Output Delay Time	See **Figure 23.2**		25	ns
th(BCLK-AD)	Address Output Hold Time (in relation to BCLK)		2		ns
th(RD-AD)	Address Output Hold Time (in relation to RD)		0		ns
th(WR-AD)	Address Output Hold Time (in relation to WR)		(NOTE 2)		ns
td(BCLK-CS)	Chip Select Output Delay Time			25	ns
th(BCLK-CS)	Chip Select Output Hold Time (in relation to BCLK)		2		ns
td(BCLK-ALE)	ALE Signal Output Delay Time			15	ns
th(BCLK-ALE)	ALE Signal Output Hold Time		-4		ns
td(BCLK-RD)	RD Signal Output Delay Time			25	ns
th(BCLK-RD)	RD Signal Output Hold Time		0		ns
td(BCLK-WR)	WR Signal Output Delay Time			25	ns
th(BCLK-WR)	WR Signal Output Hold Time		0		ns
td(BCLK-DB)	Data Output Delay Time (in relation to BCLK)			40	ns
th(BCLK-DB)	Data Output Hold Time (in relation to BCLK) (3)		2		ns
td(DB-WR)	Data Output Delay Time (in relation to WR)		(NOTE 1)		ns
th(WR-DB)	Data Output Hold Time (in relation to WR)(3)		(NOTE 2)		ns
td(BCLK-HLDA)	$\overline{\text{HLDA}}$ Output Delay Time			40	ns

Notes:

1. Calculated according to the BCLK frequency as follows:
$$\frac{(n-0.5)\times 10^9}{f(BCLK)} - 40[ns]$$
n is “1” for 1-wait setting, “2” for 2-wait setting and “3” for 3-wait setting.
When n=1, (BCLK) is 12.5MHz or less.

2. Calculated according to the BCLK frequency as follows:
$$\frac{0.5\times 10^9}{f(BCLK)} - 10[ns]$$

3. This standard value shows the timing when the output is off, and does not show hold time of data bus.
Hold time of data bus varies with capacitor volume and pull-up (pull-down) resistance value.
Hold time of data bus is expressed in
t = –CR X ln (1–VOL / VCC2)
by a circuit of the right figure.
For example, when VOL = 0.2VCC2, C = 30pF, R = 1kΩ, hold time of output ”L” level is
t = –30pF X 1kΩ X ln(1–0.2VCC2 / VCC2)
= 6.7ns.



VCC1=VCC2=5V

Switching Characteristics
(VCC1 = VCC2 = 5V, VSS = 0V, at Topr = −20 to 85°C/-40 to 85°C unless otherwise specified)

Table 23.26 Memory Expansion and Microprocessor Modes (for 1- to 3-wait setting, external area access and multiplex bus selection)(5)

Symbol	Parameter	Measuring Condition	Standard		Unit
			Min.	Max.	
td(BCLK-AD)	Address Output Delay Time	See Figure 23.2		25	ns
th(BCLK-AD)	Address Output Hold Time (in relation to BCLK)		2		ns
th(RD-AD)	Address Output Hold Time (in relation to RD)		(NOTE 1)		ns
th(WR-AD)	Address Output Hold Time (in relation to WR)		(NOTE 1)		ns
td(BCLK-CS)	Chip Select Output Delay Time			25	ns
th(BCLK-CS)	Chip Select Output Hold Time (in relation to BCLK)		2		ns
th(RD-CS)	Chip Select Output Hold Time (in relation to RD)		(NOTE 1)		ns
th(WR-CS)	Chip Select Output Hold Time (in relation to WR)		(NOTE 1)		ns
td(BCLK-RD)	RD Signal Output Delay Time			25	ns
th(BCLK-RD)	RD Signal Output Hold Time		0		ns
td(BCLK-WR)	WR Signal Output Delay Time			25	ns
th(BCLK-WR)	WR Signal Output Hold Time		0		ns
td(BCLK-DB)	Data Output Delay Time (in relation to BCLK)			40	ns
th(BCLK-DB)	Data Output Hold Time (in relation to BCLK)		2		ns
td(DB-WR)	Data Output Delay Time (in relation to WR)		(NOTE 2)		ns
th(WR-DB)	Data Output Hold Time (in relation to WR)		(NOTE 1)		ns
td(BCLK-HLDA)	$\overline{\text{HLDA}}$ Output Delay Time			40	ns
td(BCLK-ALE)	ALE Signal Output Delay Time (in relation to BCLK)			15	ns
th(BCLK-ALE)	ALE Signal Output Hold Time (in relation to BCLK)		−4		ns
td(AD-ALE)	ALE Signal Output Delay Time (in relation to Address)		(NOTE 3)		ns
th(AD-ALE)	ALE Signal Output Hold Time (in relation to Address)		(NOTE 4)		ns
td(AD-RD)	RD Signal Output Delay From the End of Address		0		ns
td(AD-WR)	WR Signal Output Delay From the End of Address		0		ns
tdz(RD-AD)	Address Output Floating Start Time			8	ns

Notes:
1. Calculated according to the BCLK frequency as follows:

$$\frac{0.5 \times 10^9}{f(BCLK)} - 10[ns]$$

2. Calculated according to the BCLK frequency as follows:

$$\frac{(n - 0.5) \times 10^9}{f(BCLK)} - 40[ns]$$ n is “2” for 2-wait setting, “3” for 3-wait setting.

3. Calculated according to the BCLK frequency as follows:

$$\frac{0.5 \times 10^9}{f(BCLK)} - 25[ns]$$

4. Calculated according to the BCLK frequency as follows:

$$\frac{0.5 \times 10^9}{f(BCLK)} - 15[ns]$$

5. When using multiplex bus, set f(BCLK) 12.5MHz or less.

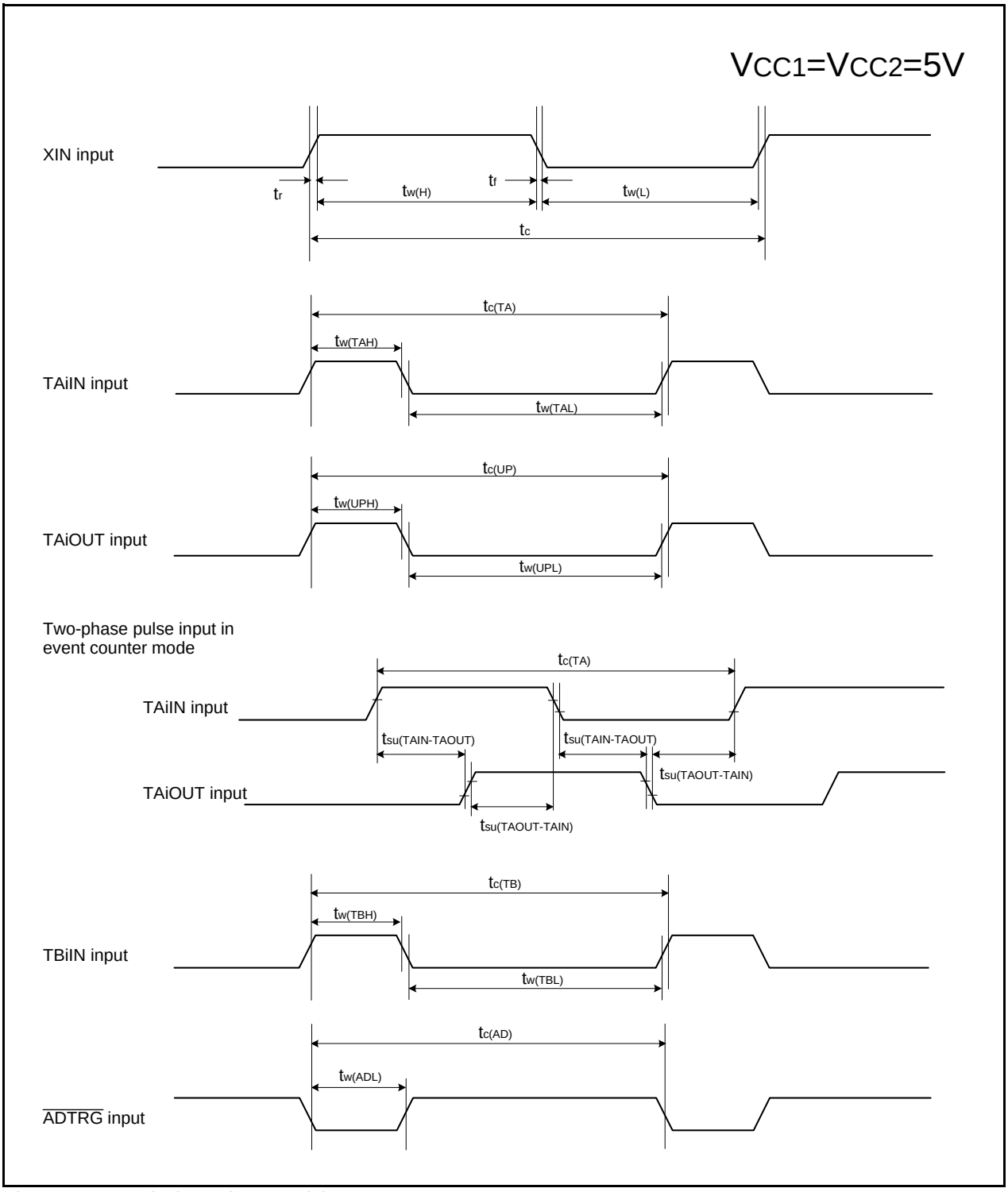


Figure 23.3 Timing Diagram (1)

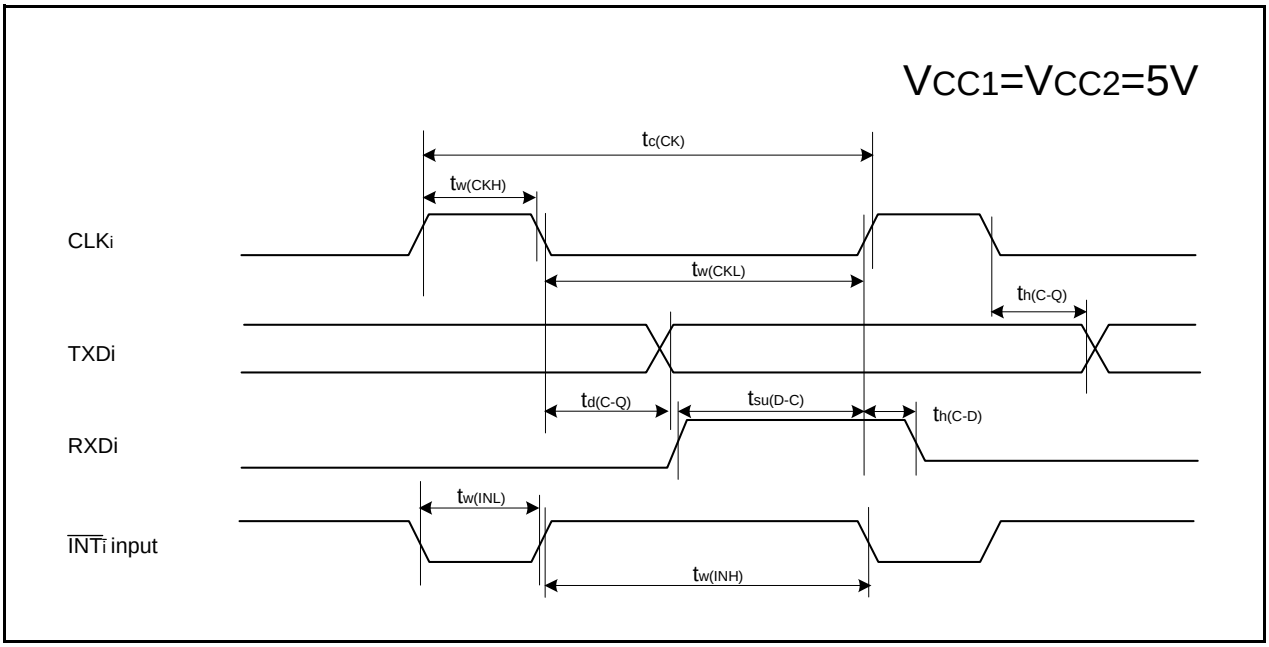
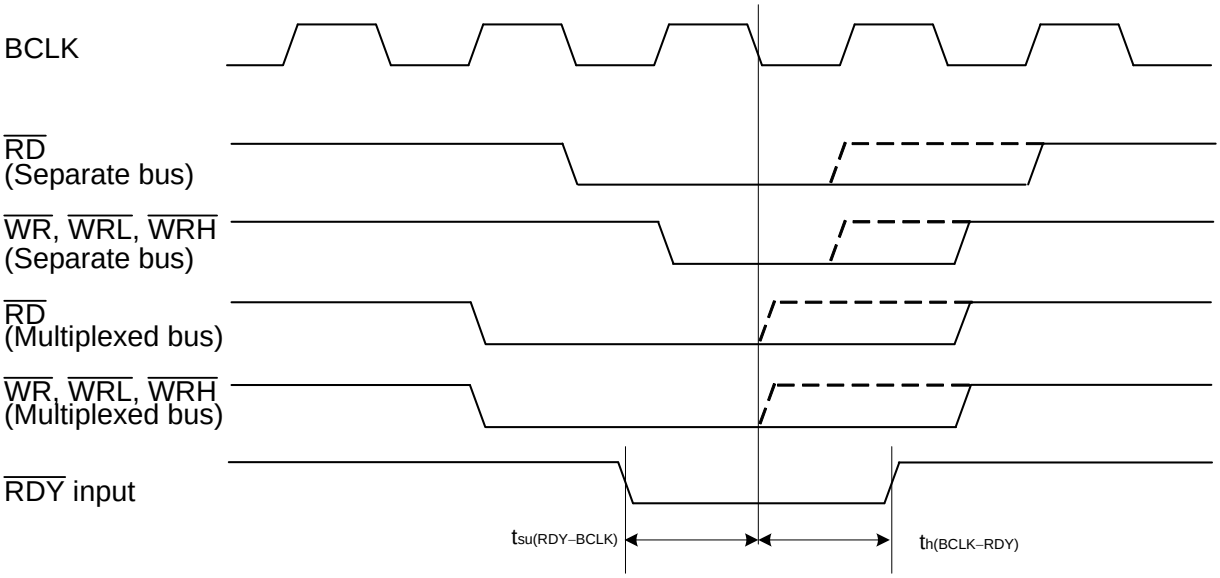


Figure 23.4 Timing Diagram (2)

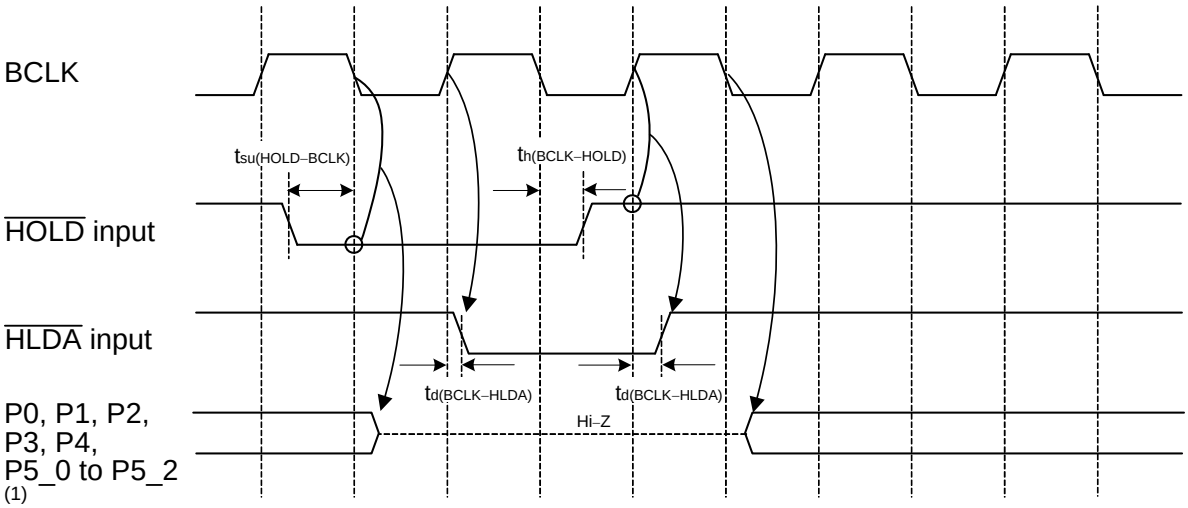
$V_{CC1}=V_{CC2}=5V$

Memory Expansion Mode, Microprocessor Mode

(Effective for setting with wait**)**



(Common to setting with wait and setting without wait**)**



Note:

1. These pins are set to high-impedance regardless of the input level of the BYTE pin, PM06 bit in PM0 register and PM11 bit in PM1 register.

Measuring conditions :

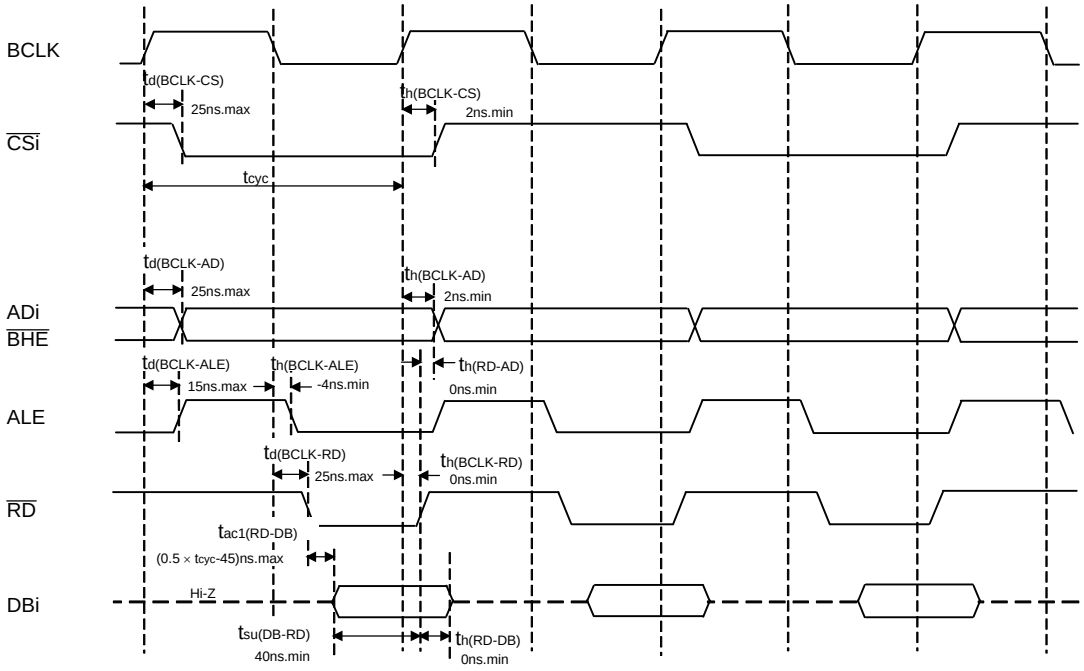
- $V_{CC1}=V_{CC2}=5V$
- Input timing voltage : Determined with $V_{IL}=1.0V$, $V_{IH}=4.0V$
- Output timing voltage : Determined with $V_{OL}=2.5V$, $V_{OH}=2.5V$

Figure 23.5 Timing Diagram (3)

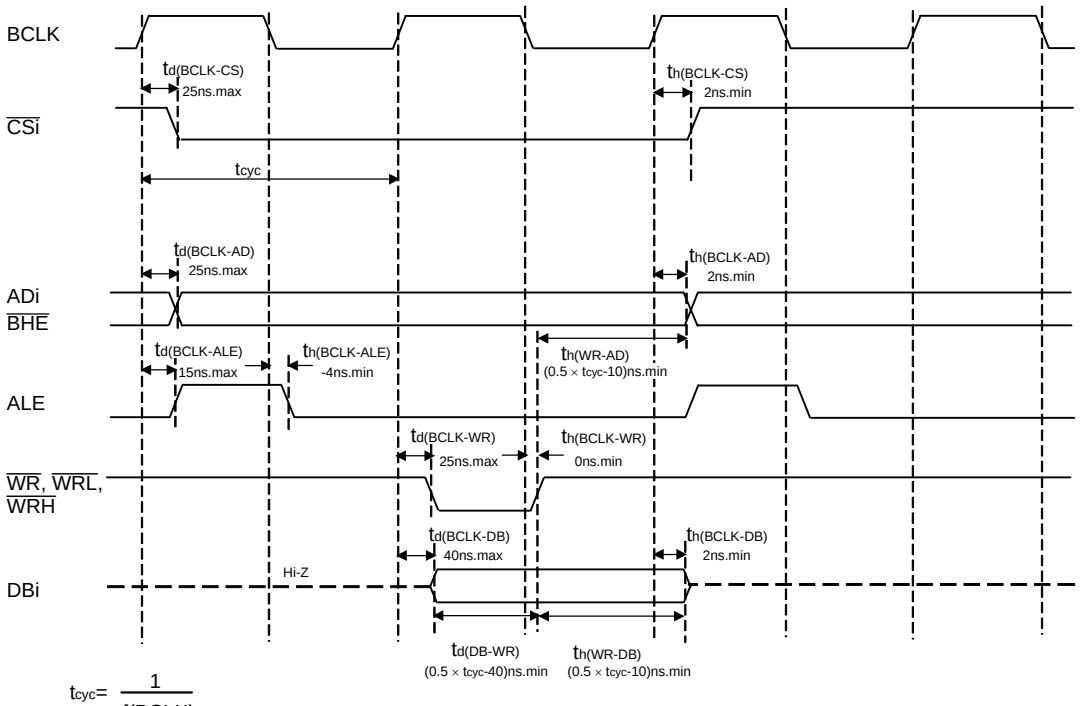
Memory Expansion Mode, Microprocessor Mode
(For setting with no wait)

$V_{CC1}=V_{CC2}=5V$

Read timing



Write timing



$$t_{cyc}=\frac{1}{f(BCLK)}$$

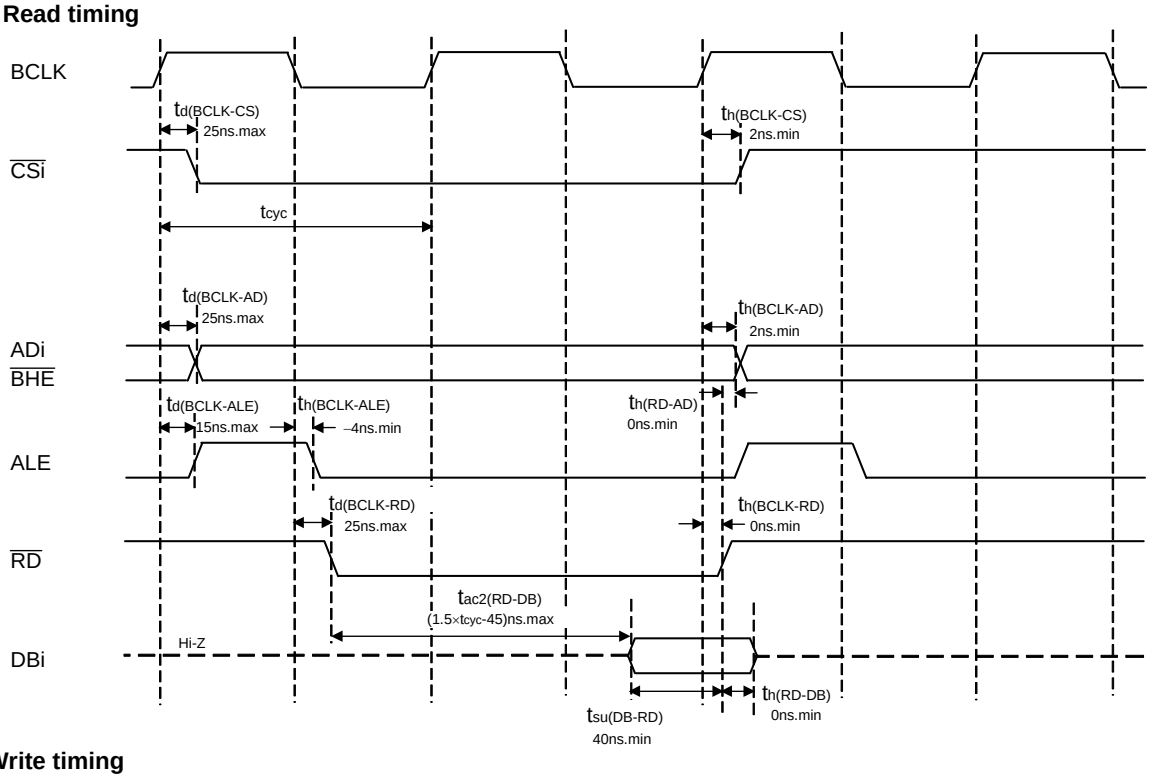
Measuring conditions
- $V_{CC1}=V_{CC2}=5V$
- Input timing voltage : $V_{IL}=0.8V$, $V_{IH}=2.0V$
- Output timing voltage : $V_{OL}=0.4V$, $V_{OH}=2.4V$

Figure 23.6 Timing Diagram (4)

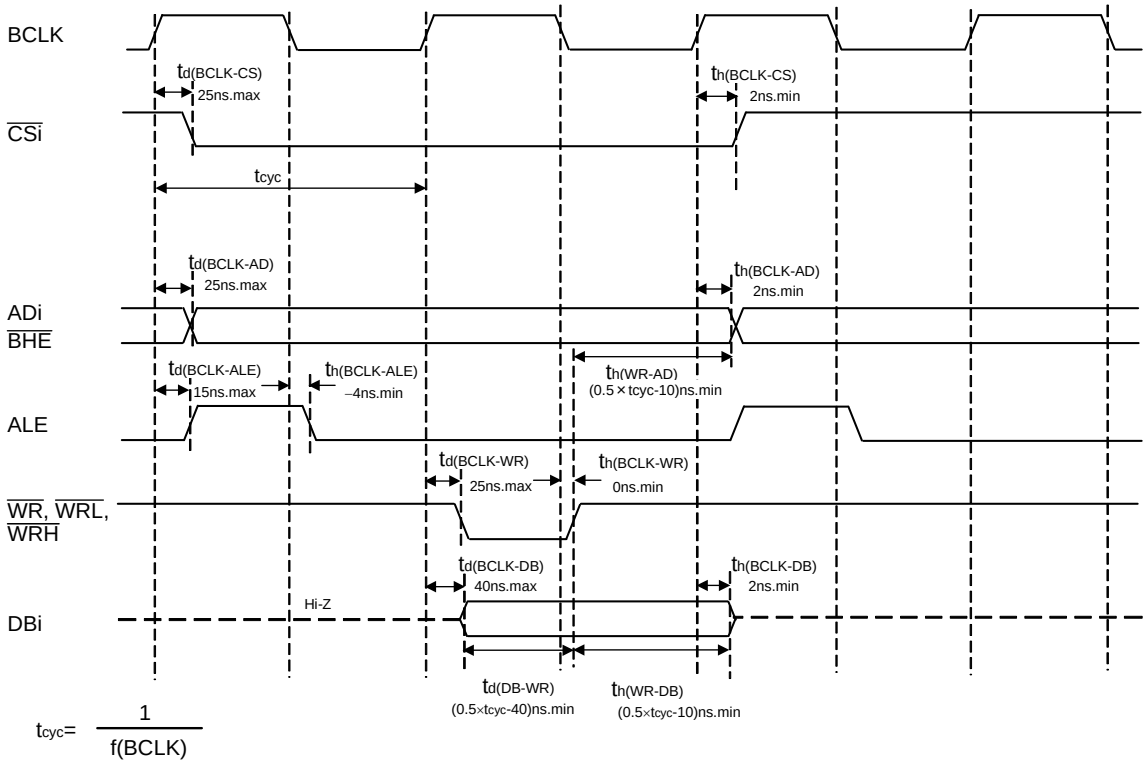
$V_{CC1}=V_{CC2}=5V$

Memory Expansion Mode, Microprocessor Mode
(for 1-wait setting and external area access**)**

Read timing



Write timing



$$t_{cyc}=\frac{1}{f(BCLK)}$$

Measuring conditions
- $V_{CC1}=V_{CC2}=5V$
- Input timing voltage : $V_{IL}=0.8V$, $V_{IH}=2.0V$
- Output timing voltage : $V_{OL}=0.4V$, $V_{OH}=2.4V$

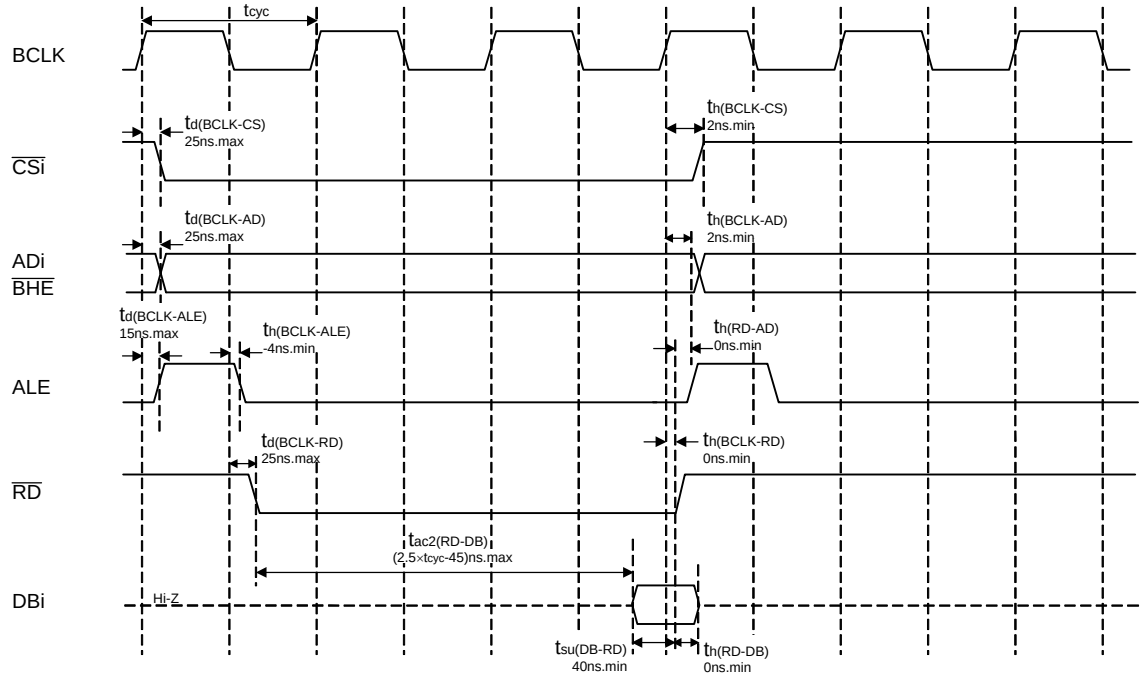
Figure 23.7 Timing Diagram (5)

$V_{CC1}=V_{CC2}=5V$

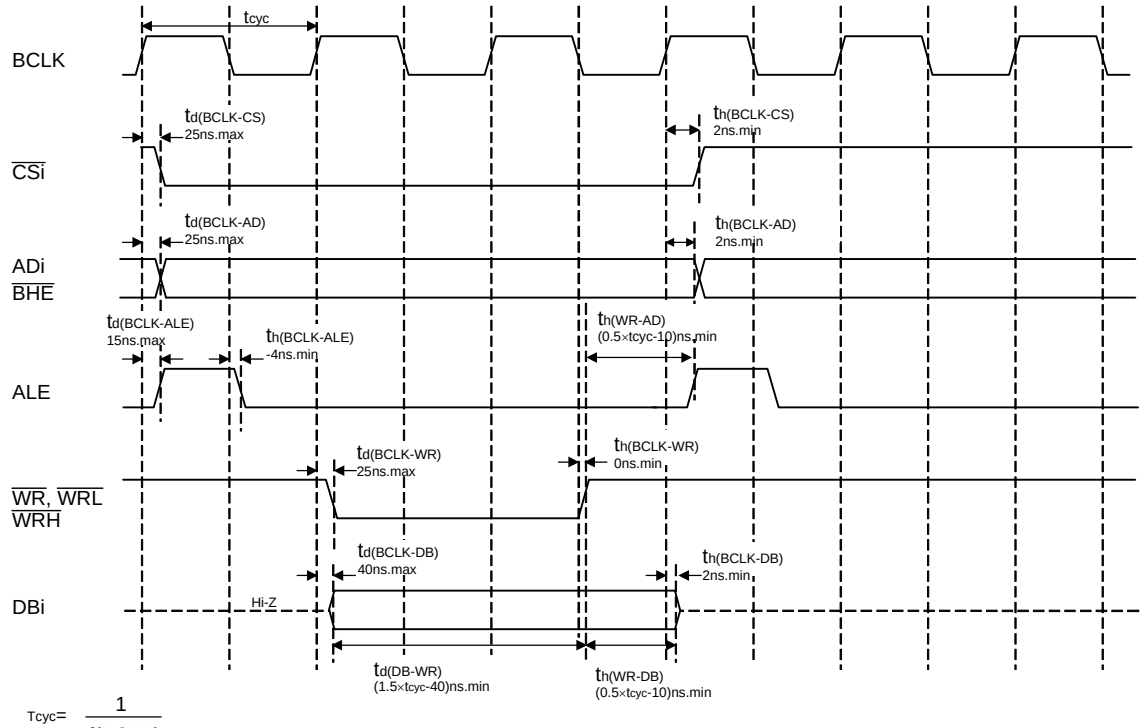
Memory Expansion Mode, Microprocessor Mode

(for 2-wait setting and external area access)

Read timing



Write timing



$$T_{cyc}=\frac{1}{f(BCLK)}$$

Measuring conditions
- $V_{CC1}=V_{CC2}=5V$
- Input timing voltage : $V_{IL}=0.8V$, $V_{IH}=2.0V$
- Output timing voltage : $V_{OL}=0.4V$, $V_{OH}=2.4V$

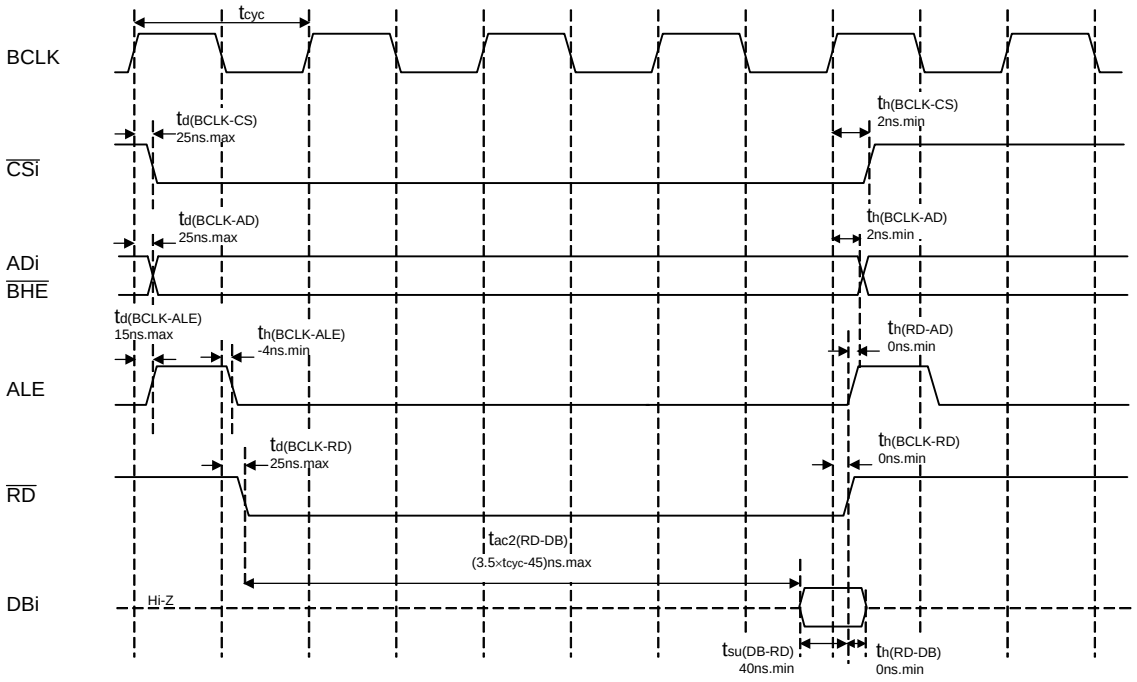
Figure 23.8 Timing Diagram (6)

Memory Expansion Mode, Microprocessor Mode

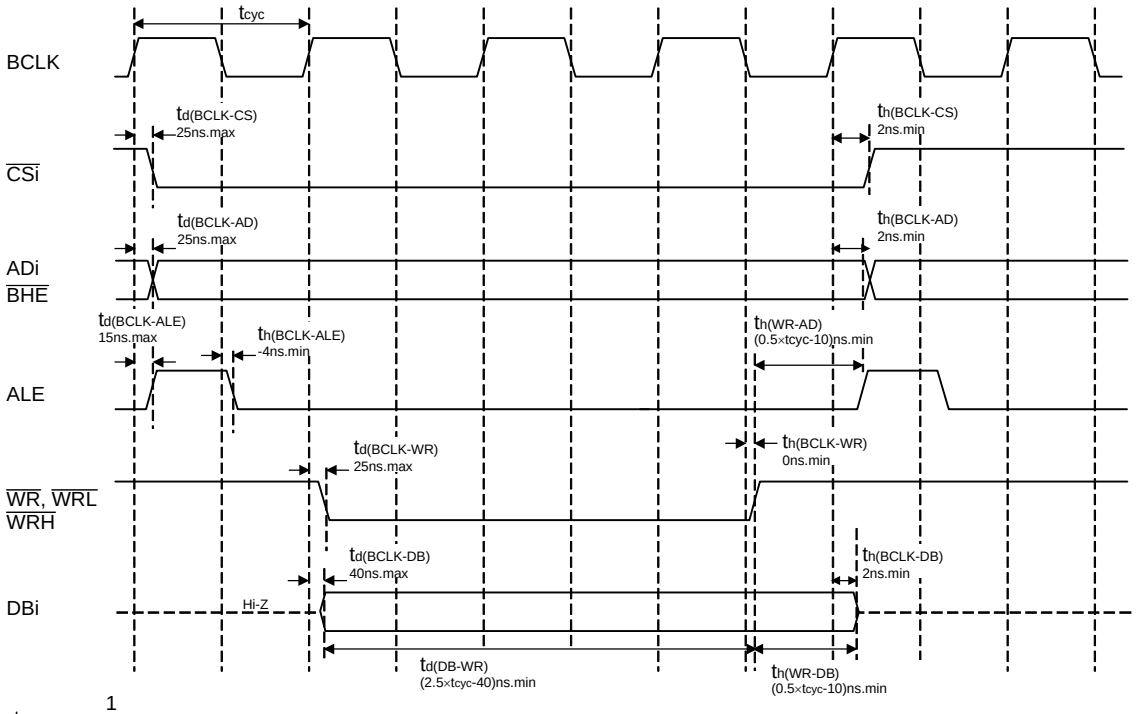
(for 3-wait setting and external area access**)**

$V_{CC1}=V_{CC2}=5V$

Read timing



Write timing



$$t_{cyc}=\frac{1}{f(BCLK)}$$

Measuring conditions

- $V_{CC1}=V_{CC2}=5V$
- Input timing voltage : $V_{IL}=0.8V$, $V_{IH}=2.0V$
- Output timing voltage : $V_{OL}=0.4V$, $V_{OH}=2.4V$

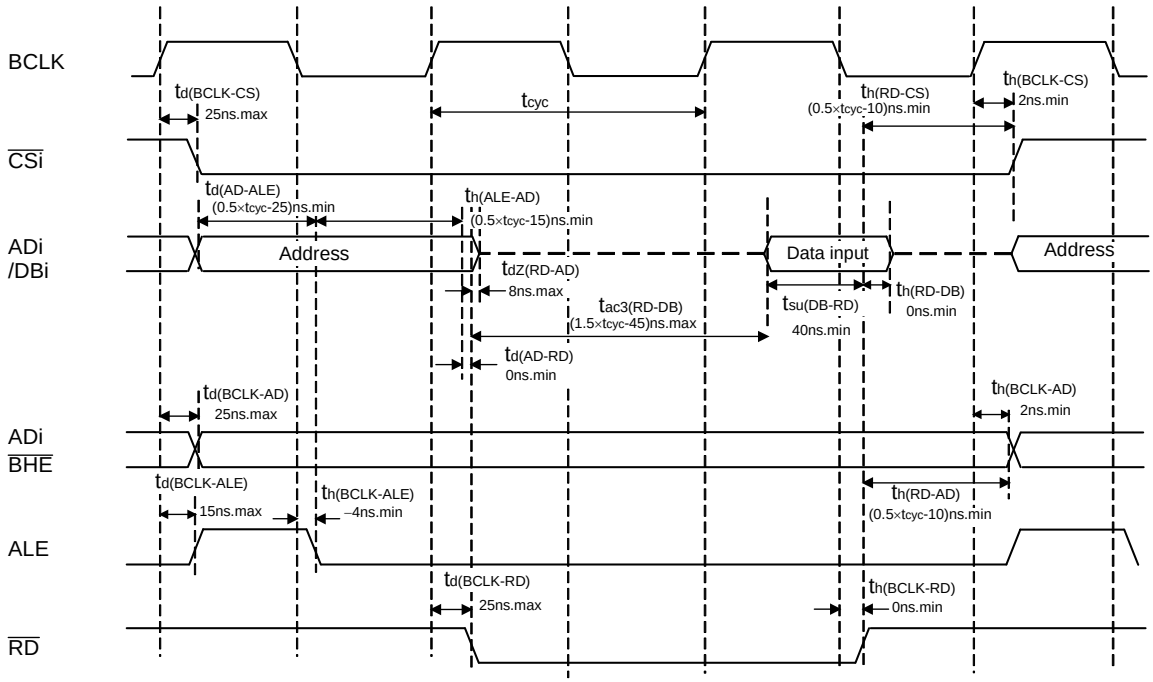
Figure 23.9 Timing Diagram (7)

$V_{CC1}=V_{CC2}=5V$

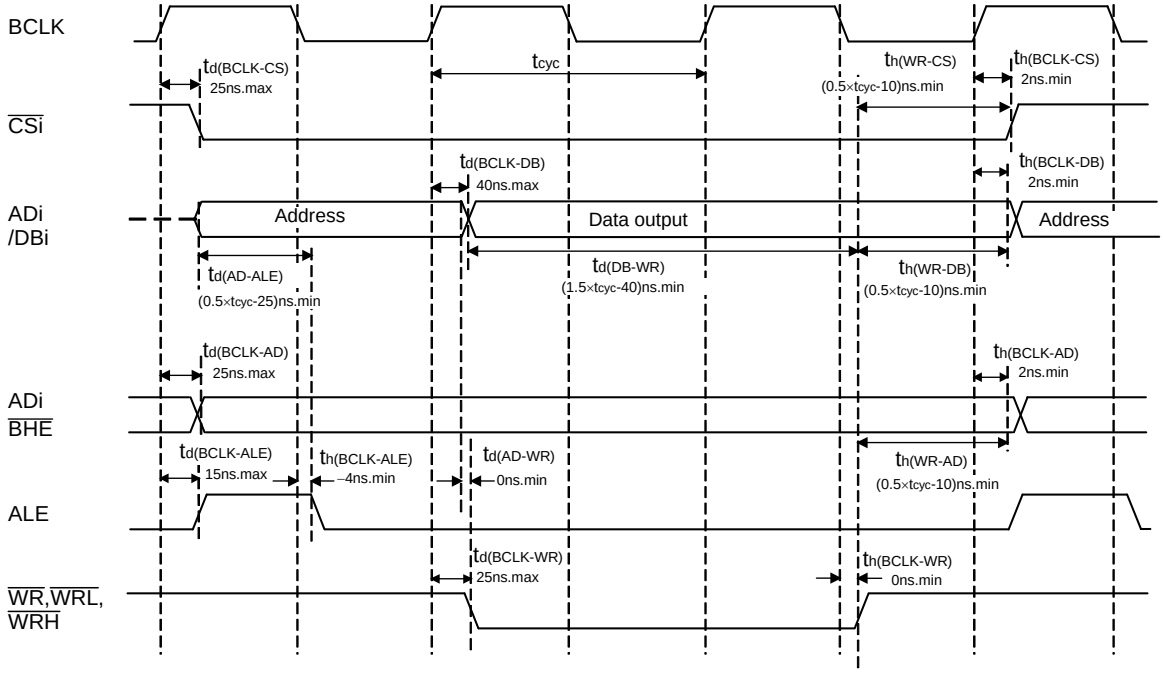
Memory Expansion Mode, Microprocessor Mode

(For 1- or 2-wait setting, external area access and multiplex bus selection**)**

Read timing



Write timing



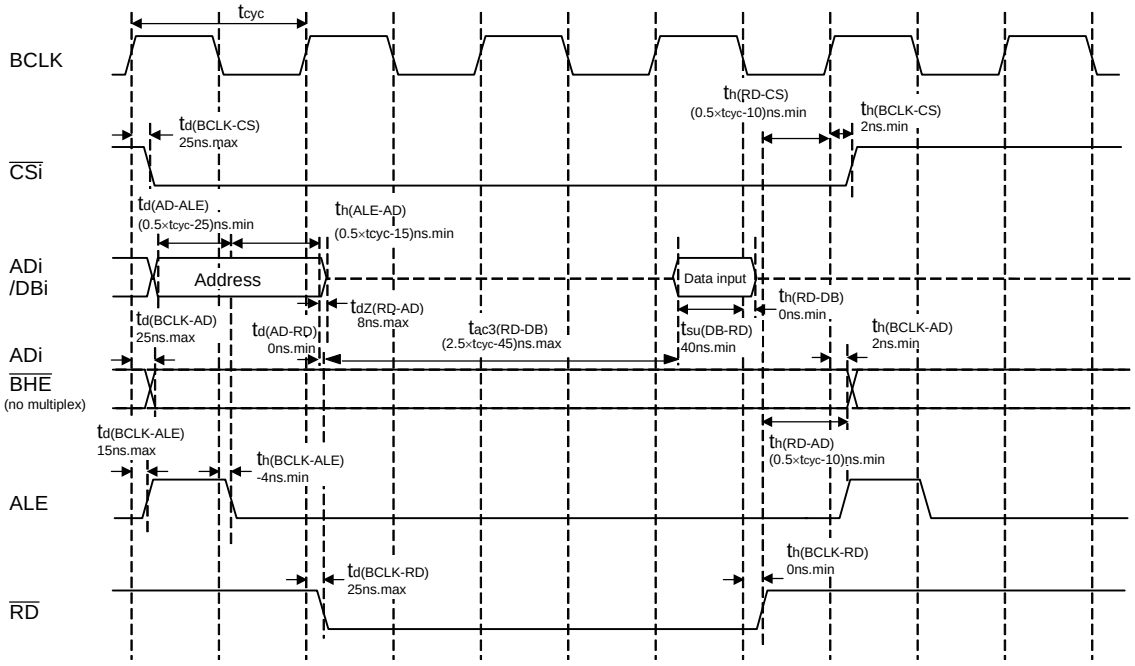
Measuring conditions
- $V_{CC1}=V_{CC2}=5V$
- Input timing voltage : $V_{IL}=0.8V$, $V_{IH}=2.0V$
- Output timing voltage : $V_{OL}=0.4V$, $V_{OH}=2.4V$

Figure 23.10 Timing Diagram (8)

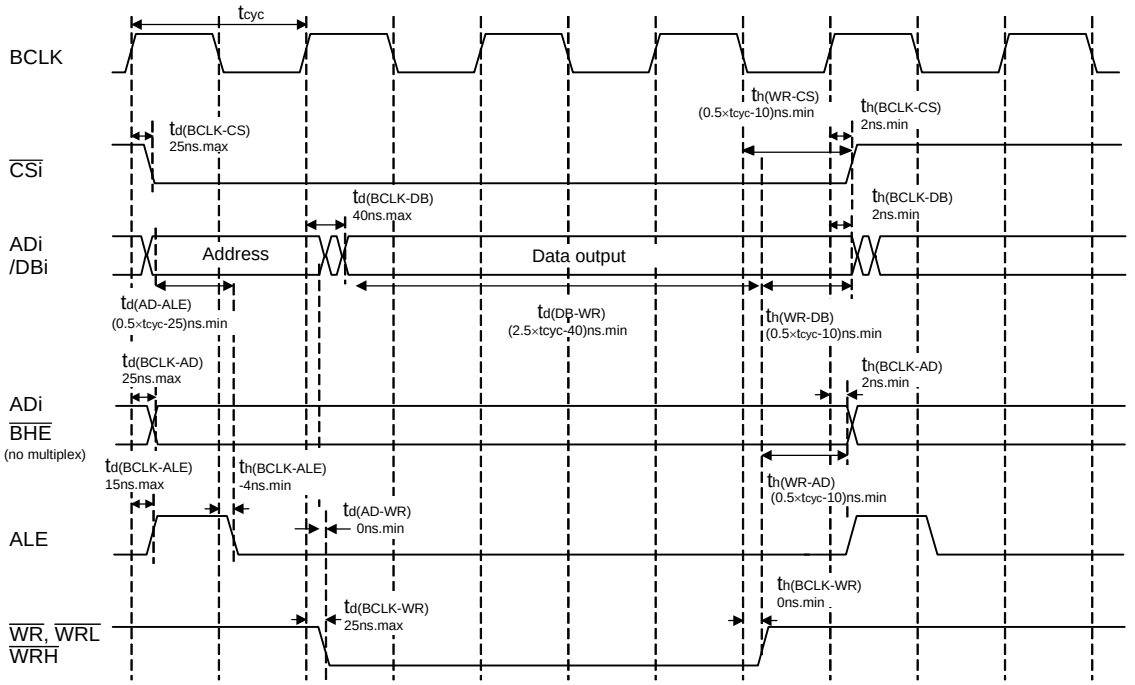
$V_{CC1}=V_{CC2}=5V$

Memory Expansion Mode, Microprocessor Mode
(For 3-wait setting, external area access and multiplex bus selection**)**

Read timing



Write timing



$$t_{cyc}=\frac{1}{f(BCLK)}$$

Measuring conditions
- $V_{CC1}=V_{CC2}=5V$
- Input timing voltage : $V_{IL}=0.8V$, $V_{IH}=2.0V$
- Output timing voltage : $V_{OL}=0.4V$, $V_{OH}=2.4V$

Figure 23.11 Timing Diagram (9)

VCC1=VCC2=3V

Table 23.27 Electrical Characteristics (1) [1]

Symbol	Parameter			Measuring Condition	Standard			Unit
					Min.	Typ.	Max.	
VOH	HIGH Output Voltage	P6_0 to P6_7, P7_2 to P7_7, P8_0 to P8_4, P8_6, P8_7, P9_0 to P9_7, P10_0 to P10_7		IOH=−1mA	VCC1−0.5		VCC1	V
		P0_0 to P0_7, P1_0 to P1_7, P2_0 to P2_7, P3_0 to P3_7, P4_0 to P4_7, P5_0 to P5_7		IOH=−1mA [2]	VCC2−0.5		VCC2	
VOH	HIGH Output Voltage	XOUT	HIGHPOWER	IOH=−0.1mA	VCC1−0.5		VCC1	V
			LOWPOWER	IOH=−50µA	VCC1−0.5		VCC1	
	HIGH Output Voltage	XCOUT	HIGHPOWER	With no load applied		2.6		V
			LOWPOWER	With no load applied		2.2		
VOL	LOW Output Voltage	P6_0 to P6_7, P7_0 to P7_7, P8_0 to P8_7, P9_0 to P9_7, P10_0 to P10_7		IOL=1mA			0.5	V
		P0_0 to P0_7, P1_0 to P1_7, P2_0 to P2_7, P3_0 to P3_7, P4_0 to P4_7, P5_0 to P5_7		IOL=1mA [2]			0.5	
VOL	LOW Output Voltage	XOUT	HIGHPOWER	IOL=0.1mA			0.5	V
			LOWPOWER	IOL=50µA			0.5	
	LOW Output Voltage	XCOUT	HIGHPOWER	With no load applied		0		V
			LOWPOWER	With no load applied		0		
VT+-VT-	Hysteresis	$\overline{HOLD}$, $\overline{RDY}$, TA0IN to TA4IN, TB0IN to TB5IN, $\overline{INT0}$ to $\overline{INT7}$, $\overline{NMI}$, $\overline{ADTRG}$, $\overline{CTS0}$ to $\overline{CTS2}$, $\overline{CTS5}$ to $\overline{CTS7}$, SCL0 to SCL2, SCL5 to SCL7, SDA0 to SDA2, SDA5 to SDA7, CLK0 to CLK7, TA0OUT to TA4OUT, $\overline{KI0}$ to $\overline{KI3}$, RXD0 to RXD2, RXD5 to RXD7, SIN3, SIN4			0.5		2.0	V
VT+-VT-	Hysteresis	$\overline{RESET}$			0.5		2.0	V
IIH	HIGH Input Current	P0_0 to P0_7, P1_0 to P1_7, P2_0 to P2_7, P3_0 to P3_7, P4_0 to P4_7, P5_0 to P5_7, P6_0 to P6_7, P7_0 to P7_7, P8_0 to P8_7, P9_0 to P9_7, P10_0 to P10_7, XIN, $\overline{RESET}$, CNVSS, BYTE		VI=3V			4.0	µA
IIL	LOW Input Current	P0_0 to P0_7, P1_0 to P1_7, P2_0 to P2_7, P3_0 to P3_7, P4_0 to P4_7, P5_0 to P5_7, P6_0 to P6_7, P7_0 to P7_7, P8_0 to P8_7, P9_0 to P9_7, P10_0 to P10_7, XIN, $\overline{RESET}$, CNVSS, BYTE		VI=0V			−4.0	µA
RPULLUP	Pull-Up Resistance	P0_0 to P0_7, P1_0 to P1_7, P2_0 to P2_7, P3_0 to P3_7, P4_0 to P4_7, P5_0 to P5_7, P6_0 to P6_7, P7_2 to P7_7, P8_0 to P8_4, P8_6, P8_7, P9_0 to P9_7, P10_0 to P10_7		VI=0V	50	80	150	kΩ
RfXIN	Feedback Resistance	XIN				3.0		MΩ
RfXCIN	Feedback Resistance	XCIN				30		MΩ
VRAM	RAM Retention Voltage			At stop mode	1.8			V

Notes:

1. Referenced to VCC1 = VCC2 = 2.7 to 3.3V, VSS = 0V at Topr = −20 to 85°C/-40 to 85°C, f(XIN)=25MHz unless otherwise specified.
2. VCC1 for the port P6 to P10 and VCC2 for the port P0 to P5.

Table 23.28 Electrical Characteristics (2) (1)

Symbol	Parameter		Measuring Condition		Standard			Unit
					Min.	Typ.	Max.	
ICC	Power Supply Current (VCC1=2.7V to 3.6V)	In single-chip mode, the output pins are open and other pins are VSS	Flash Memory	f(BCLK)=25MHz, No division		20	30	mA
				125 kHz On-chip oscillation, No division, FMR22=1		450		µA
			Flash Memory Program	f(BCLK)=10MHz, VCC1=3.0V		20		mA
			Flash Memory Erase	f(BCLK)=10MHz, VCC1=3.0V		30		mA
			Flash Memory	f(BCLK)=32kHz Low power dissipation mode, RAM (3)		40		µA
				f(BCLK)=32kHz Low power dissipation mode, Flash Memory (3) FMR22=FMR23=1		200		µA
				125 kHz On-chip oscillation, Wait mode		20		µA
				f(BCLK)=32kHz Wait mode (2), Oscillation capability High		7.0		µA
				f(BCLK)=32kHz Wait mode (2), Oscillation capability Low		5.0		µA
				Stop mode Topr =25°C		1.8	4	µA
Idet2	Low Voltage Detection Dissipation Current (4)					3		µA
Idet0	Reset Area Detection Dissipation Current (4)					6		µA

Notes:
1. Referenced to VCC1=VCC2=2.7 to 3.3V, VSS = 0V at Topr = –20 to 85°C/-40 to 85°C, f(BCLK)=25MHz unless otherwise specified.
2. With one timer operated using fC32.
3. This indicates the memory in which the program to be executed exists.
4. Idet is dissipation current when the following bit is set to “1” (detection circuit enabled).
   Idet2: VC27 bit in the VCR2 register
   Idet0: VC25 bit in the VCR2 register

VCC1=VCC2=3V

Timing Requirements
(VCC1 = VCC2 = 3V, VSS = 0V, at Topr = –20 to 85°C/-40 to 85°C unless otherwise specified)

Table 23.29 External Clock Input (XIN input)(1)

Symbol	Parameter	Standard		Unit
		Min.	Max.	
tc	External Clock Input Cycle Time	50		ns
tw(H)	External Clock Input HIGH Pulse Width	20		ns
tw(L)	External Clock Input LOW Pulse Width	20		ns
tr	External Clock Rise Time		9	ns
tf	External Clock Fall Time		9	ns

Note:
1. The condition is VCC1=VCC2=2.7 to 3.0V.

Table 23.30 Memory Expansion Mode and Microprocessor Mode

Symbol	Parameter	Standard		Unit
		Min.	Max.	
tac1(RD-DB)	Data Input Access Time (for setting with no wait)		(NOTE 1)	ns
tac2(RD-DB)	Data Input Access Time (for setting with wait)		(NOTE 2)	ns
tac3(RD-DB)	Data Input Access Time (when accessing multiplex bus area)		(NOTE 3)	ns
tsu(DB-RD)	Data Input Setup Time	50		ns
tsu(RDY-BCLK)	$\overline{\text{RDY}}$ Input Setup Time	40		ns
tsu(HOLD-BCLK)	$\overline{\text{HOLD}}$ Input Setup Time	50		ns
th(RD-DB)	Data Input Hold Time	0		ns
th(BCLK-RDY)	$\overline{\text{RDY}}$ Input Hold Time	0		ns
th(BCLK-HOLD)	$\overline{\text{HOLD}}$ Input Hold Time	0		ns

Notes:
1. Calculated according to the BCLK frequency as follows:

$$\frac{0.5 \times 10^9}{f(BCLK)} - 60[ns]$$

2. Calculated according to the BCLK frequency as follows:

$$\frac{(n - 0.5) \times 10^9}{f(BCLK)} - 60[ns]$$ n is ”2” for 1-wait setting, “3” for 2-wait setting and “4” for 3-wait setting.

3. Calculated according to the BCLK frequency as follows:

$$\frac{(n - 0.5) \times 10^9}{f(BCLK)} - 60[ns]$$ n is “2” for 2-wait setting, “3” for 3-wait setting.

VCC1=VCC2=3V

Timing Requirements
(VCC1 = VCC2 = 3V, VSS = 0V, at Topr = –20 to 85°C/-40 to 85°C unless otherwise specified)

Table 23.31 Timer A Input (Counter Input in Event Counter Mode)

Symbol	Parameter	Standard		Unit
		Min.	Max.	
tc(TA)	TAiIN Input Cycle Time	150		ns
tw(TAH)	TAiIN Input HIGH Pulse Width	60		ns
tw(TAL)	TAiIN Input LOW Pulse Width	60		ns

Table 23.32 Timer A Input (Gating Input in Timer Mode)

Symbol	Parameter	Standard		Unit
		Min.	Max.	
tc(TA)	TAiIN Input Cycle Time	600		ns
tw(TAH)	TAiIN Input HIGH Pulse Width	300		ns
tw(TAL)	TAiIN Input LOW Pulse Width	300		ns

Table 23.33 Timer A Input (External Trigger Input in One-shot Timer Mode)

Symbol	Parameter	Standard		Unit
		Min.	Max.	
tc(TA)	TAiIN Input Cycle Time	300		ns
tw(TAH)	TAiIN Input HIGH Pulse Width	150		ns
tw(TAL)	TAiIN Input LOW Pulse Width	150		ns

Table 23.34 Timer A Input (External Trigger Input in Pulse Width Modulation Mode)

Symbol	Parameter	Standard		Unit
		Min.	Max.	
tw(TAH)	TAiIN Input HIGH Pulse Width	150		ns
tw(TAL)	TAiIN Input LOW Pulse Width	150		ns

Table 23.35 Timer A Input (Two-phase Pulse Input in Event Counter Mode)

Symbol	Parameter	Standard		Unit
		Min.	Max.	
tc(TA)	TAiIN Input Cycle Time	2		µs
tsu(TAIN-TAOUT)	TAiOUT Input Setup Time	500		ns
tsu(TAOUT-TAIN)	TAiIN Input Setup Time	500		ns

VCC1=VCC2=3V

Timing Requirements
(VCC1 = VCC2 = 3V, VSS = 0V, at Topr = –20 to 85°C/-40 to 85°C unless otherwise specified)

Table 23.36 Timer B Input (Counter Input in Event Counter Mode)

Symbol	Parameter	Standard		Unit
		Min.	Max.	
tc(TB)	TBiIN Input Cycle Time (counted on one edge)	150		ns
tw(TBH)	TBiIN Input HIGH Pulse Width (counted on one edge)	60		ns
tw(TBL)	TBiIN Input LOW Pulse Width (counted on one edge)	60		ns
tc(TB)	TBiIN Input Cycle Time (counted on both edges)	300		ns
tw(TBH)	TBiIN Input HIGH Pulse Width (counted on both edges)	120		ns
tw(TBL)	TBiIN Input LOW Pulse Width (counted on both edges)	120		ns

Table 23.37 Timer B Input (Pulse Period Measurement Mode)

Symbol	Parameter	Standard		Unit
		Min.	Max.	
tc(TB)	TBiIN Input Cycle Time	600		ns
tw(TBH)	TBiIN Input HIGH Pulse Width	300		ns
tw(TBL)	TBiIN Input LOW Pulse Width	300		ns

Table 23.38 Timer B Input (Pulse Width Measurement Mode)

Symbol	Parameter	Standard		Unit
		Min.	Max.	
tc(TB)	TBiIN Input Cycle Time	600		ns
tw(TBH)	TBiIN Input HIGH Pulse Width	300		ns
tw(TBL)	TBiIN Input LOW Pulse Width	300		ns

Table 23.39 A/D Trigger Input

Symbol	Parameter	Standard		Unit
		Min.	Max.	
tc(AD)	$\overline{\text{ADTRG}}$ Input Cycle Time	1500		ns
tw(ADL)	$\overline{\text{ADTRG}}$ Input LOW Pulse Width	200		ns

Table 23.40 Serial Interface

Symbol	Parameter	Standard		Unit
		Min.	Max.	
tc(CK)	CLKi Input Cycle Time	300		ns
tw(CKH)	CLKi Input HIGH Pulse Width	150		ns
tw(CKL)	CLKi Input LOW Pulse Width	150		ns
td(C-Q)	TXDi Output Delay Time		160	ns
th(C-Q)	TXDi Hold Time	0		ns
tsu(D-C)	RXDi Input Setup Time	100		ns
th(C-D)	RXDi Input Hold Time	90		ns

Table 23.41 External Interrupt $\overline{\text{INTi}}$ Input

Symbol	Parameter	Standard		Unit
		Min.	Max.	
tw(INH)	$\overline{\text{INTi}}$ Input HIGH Pulse Width	380		ns
tw(INL)	$\overline{\text{INTi}}$ Input LOW Pulse Width	380		ns

VCC1=VCC2=3V

Switching Characteristics

(VCC1 = VCC2 = 3V, VSS = 0V, at Topr = –20 to 85°C/-40 to 85°C unless otherwise specified)

Table 23.42 Memory Expansion and Microprocessor Modes (for setting with no wait)

Symbol	Parameter	Measuring Condition	Standard		Unit
			Min.	Max.	
td(BCLK-AD)	Address Output Delay Time	See **Figure 23.12**		30	ns
th(BCLK-AD)	Address Output Hold Time (in relation to BCLK)		2		ns
th(RD-AD)	Address Output Hold Time (in relation to RD)		0		ns
th(WR-AD)	Address Output Hold Time (in relation to WR)		(NOTE 2)		ns
td(BCLK-CS)	Chip Select Output Delay Time			30	ns
th(BCLK-CS)	Chip Select Output Hold Time (in relation to BCLK)		2		ns
td(BCLK-ALE)	ALE Signal Output Delay Time			25	ns
th(BCLK-ALE)	ALE Signal Output Hold Time		–4		ns
td(BCLK-RD)	RD Signal Output Delay Time			30	ns
th(BCLK-RD)	RD Signal Output Hold Time		0		ns
td(BCLK-WR)	WR Signal Output Delay Time			30	ns
th(BCLK-WR)	WR Signal Output Hold Time		0		ns
td(BCLK-DB)	Data Output Delay Time (in relation to BCLK)			40	ns
th(BCLK-DB)	Data Output Hold Time (in relation to BCLK) (3)		2		ns
td(DB-WR)	Data Output Delay Time (in relation to WR)		(NOTE 1)		ns
th(WR-DB)	Data Output Hold Time (in relation to WR) (3)		(NOTE 2)		ns
td(BCLK-HLDA)	$\overline{\text{HLDA}}$ Output Delay Time			40	ns

Notes:

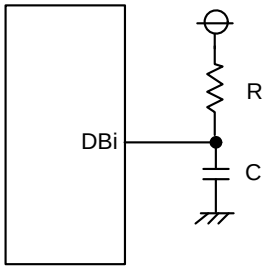
1. Calculated according to the BCLK frequency as follows:

$$\frac{0.5x10^9}{f(BCLK)} - 40[ns]$$ f (BCLK) is 12.5MHz or less.

2. Calculated according to the BCLK frequency as follows:

$$\frac{0.5x10^9}{f(BCLK)} - 10[ns]$$

This standard value shows the timing when the output is off, and does not show hold time of data bus.
Hold time of data bus varies with capacitor volume and pull-up (pull-down) resistance value.
Hold time of data bus is expressed in
t= –CR X ln (1–VOL / VCC2)
by a circuit of the right figure.
For example, when VOL = 0.2VCC2, C = 30pF, R = 1kΩ,
hold time of output "L" level is
t = –30pF X 1k Ω X ln(1–0.2VCC2 / VCC2)
= 6.7ns.



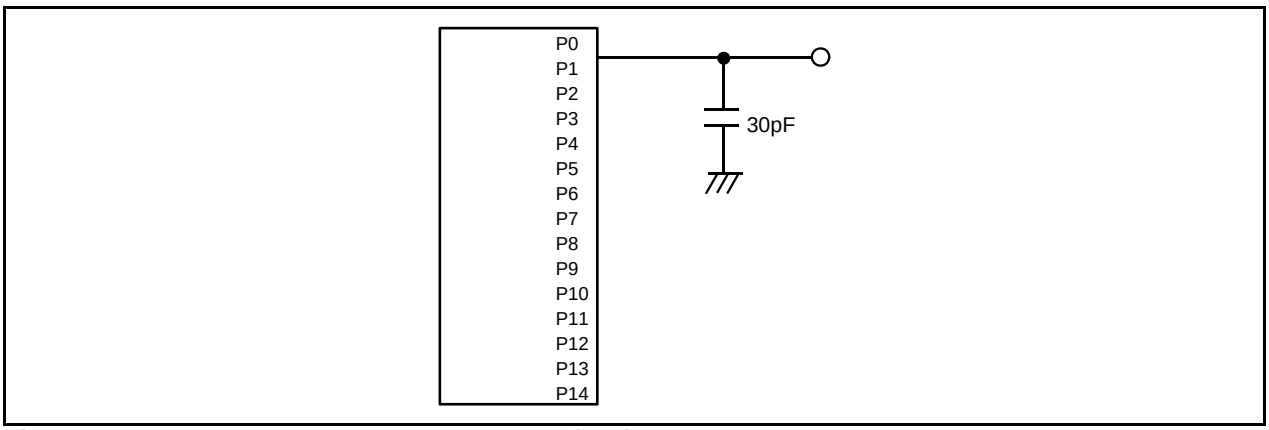


Figure 23.12 Ports P0 to P14 Measurement Circuit

VCC1=VCC2=3V

Switching Characteristics
(VCC1 = VCC2 = 5V, VSS = 0V, at Topr = –20 to 85°C/-40 to 85°C unless otherwise specified)

Table 23.43 Memory Expansion and Microprocessor Modes (for 1- to 3-wait setting and external area access)

Symbol	Parameter	Measuring Condition	Standard		Unit
			Min.	Max.	
td(BCLK-AD)	Address Output Delay Time	See Figure 23.12		30	ns
th(BCLK-AD)	Address Output Hold Time (in relation to BCLK)		2		ns
th(RD-AD)	Address Output Hold Time (in relation to RD)		0		ns
th(WR-AD)	Address Output Hold Time (in relation to WR)		(NOTE 2)		ns
td(BCLK-CS)	Chip Select Output Delay Time			30	ns
th(BCLK-CS)	Chip Select Output Hold Time (in relation to BCLK)		2		ns
td(BCLK-ALE)	ALE Signal Output Delay Time			25	ns
th(BCLK-ALE)	ALE Signal Output Hold Time		-4		ns
td(BCLK-RD)	RD Signal Output Delay Time			30	ns
th(BCLK-RD)	RD Signal Output Hold Time		0		ns
td(BCLK-WR)	WR Signal Output Delay Time			30	ns
th(BCLK-WR)	WR Signal Output Hold Time		0		ns
td(BCLK-DB)	Data Output Delay Time (in relation to BCLK)			40	ns
th(BCLK-DB)	Data Output Hold Time (in relation to BCLK) (3)		2		ns
td(DB-WR)	Data Output Delay Time (in relation to WR)		(NOTE 1)		ns
th(WR-DB)	Data Output Hold Time (in relation to WR)(3)		(NOTE 2)		ns
td(BCLK-HLDA)	$\overline{\text{HLDA}}$ Output Delay Time			40	ns

Notes:

1. Calculated according to the BCLK frequency as follows:

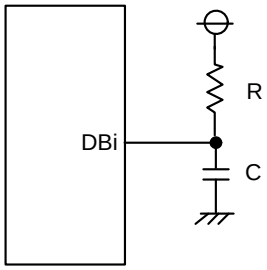
$$\frac{(n-0.5)\times 10^9}{f(BCLK)} - 40[ns]$$

n is “1” for 1-wait setting, “2” for 2-wait setting and “3” for 3-wait setting.
When n = 1, (BCLK) is 12.5MHz or less.

2. Calculated according to the BCLK frequency as follows:

$$\frac{0.5\times 10^9}{f(BCLK)} - 10[ns]$$

3. This standard value shows the timing when the output is off, and does not show hold time of data bus.
Hold time of data bus varies with capacitor volume and pull-up (pull-down) resistance value.
Hold time of data bus is expressed in
t=–CR X ln (1–VOL / VCC2)
by a circuit of the right figure.
For example, when VOL = 0.2VCC2, C = 30pF, R = 1kΩ, hold time of output ”L” level is
t = –30pF X 1kΩ X ln(1–0.2VCC2 / VCC2)
= 6.7ns.



VCC1=VCC2=3V

Switching Characteristics
(VCC1 = VCC2 = 5V, VSS = 0V, at Topr = −20 to 85°C/-40 to 85°C unless otherwise specified)

Table 23.44 Memory Expansion and Microprocessor Modes (for 1- to 3-wait setting, external area access and multiplex bus selection)(5)

Symbol	Parameter	Measuring Condition	Standard		Unit
			Min.	Max.	
td(BCLK-AD)	Address Output Delay Time	See Figure 23.12		50	ns
th(BCLK-AD)	Address Output Hold Time (in relation to BCLK)		2		ns
th(RD-AD)	Address Output Hold Time (in relation to RD)		(NOTE 1)		ns
th(WR-AD)	Address Output Hold Time (in relation to WR)		(NOTE 1)		ns
td(BCLK-CS)	Chip Select Output Delay Time			50	ns
th(BCLK-CS)	Chip Select Output Hold Time (in relation to BCLK)		2		ns
th(RD-CS)	Chip Select Output Hold Time (in relation to RD)		(NOTE 1)		ns
th(WR-CS)	Chip Select Output Hold Time (in relation to WR)		(NOTE 1)		ns
td(BCLK-RD)	RD Signal Output Delay Time			40	ns
th(BCLK-RD)	RD Signal Output Hold Time		0		ns
td(BCLK-WR)	WR Signal Output Delay Time			40	ns
th(BCLK-WR)	WR Signal Output Hold Time		0		ns
td(BCLK-DB)	Data Output Delay Time (in relation to BCLK)			50	ns
th(BCLK-DB)	Data Output Hold Time (in relation to BCLK)		2		ns
td(DB-WR)	Data Output Delay Time (in relation to WR)		(NOTE 2)		ns
th(WR-DB)	Data Output Hold Time (in relation to WR)		(NOTE 1)		ns
td(BCLK-HLDA)	$\overline{\text{HLDA}}$ Output Delay Time			40	ns
td(BCLK-ALE)	ALE Signal Output Delay Time (in relation to BCLK)			25	ns
th(BCLK-ALE)	ALE Signal Output Hold Time (in relation to BCLK)		−4		ns
td(AD-ALE)	ALE Signal Output Delay Time (in relation to Address)		(NOTE 3)		ns
th(AD-ALE)	ALE Signal Output Hold Time (in relation to Address)		(NOTE 4)		ns
td(AD-RD)	RD Signal Output Delay From the End of Address		0		ns
td(AD-WR)	WR Signal Output Delay From the End of Address		0		ns
tdz(RD-AD)	Address Output Floating Start Time			8	ns

Notes:
1. Calculated according to the BCLK frequency as follows:

$$\frac{0.5x10^9}{f(BCLK)} - 10[ns]$$

2. Calculated according to the BCLK frequency as follows:

$$\frac{0.5x10^9}{f(BCLK)} - 50[ns]$$ n is “2” for 2-wait setting, “3” for 3-wait setting.

3. Calculated according to the BCLK frequency as follows:

$$\frac{0.5x10^9}{f(BCLK)} - 40[ns]$$

4. Calculated according to the BCLK frequency as follows:

$$\frac{0.5x10^9}{f(BCLK)} - 15[ns]$$

5. When using multiplex bus, set f(BCLK) 12.5MHz or less.

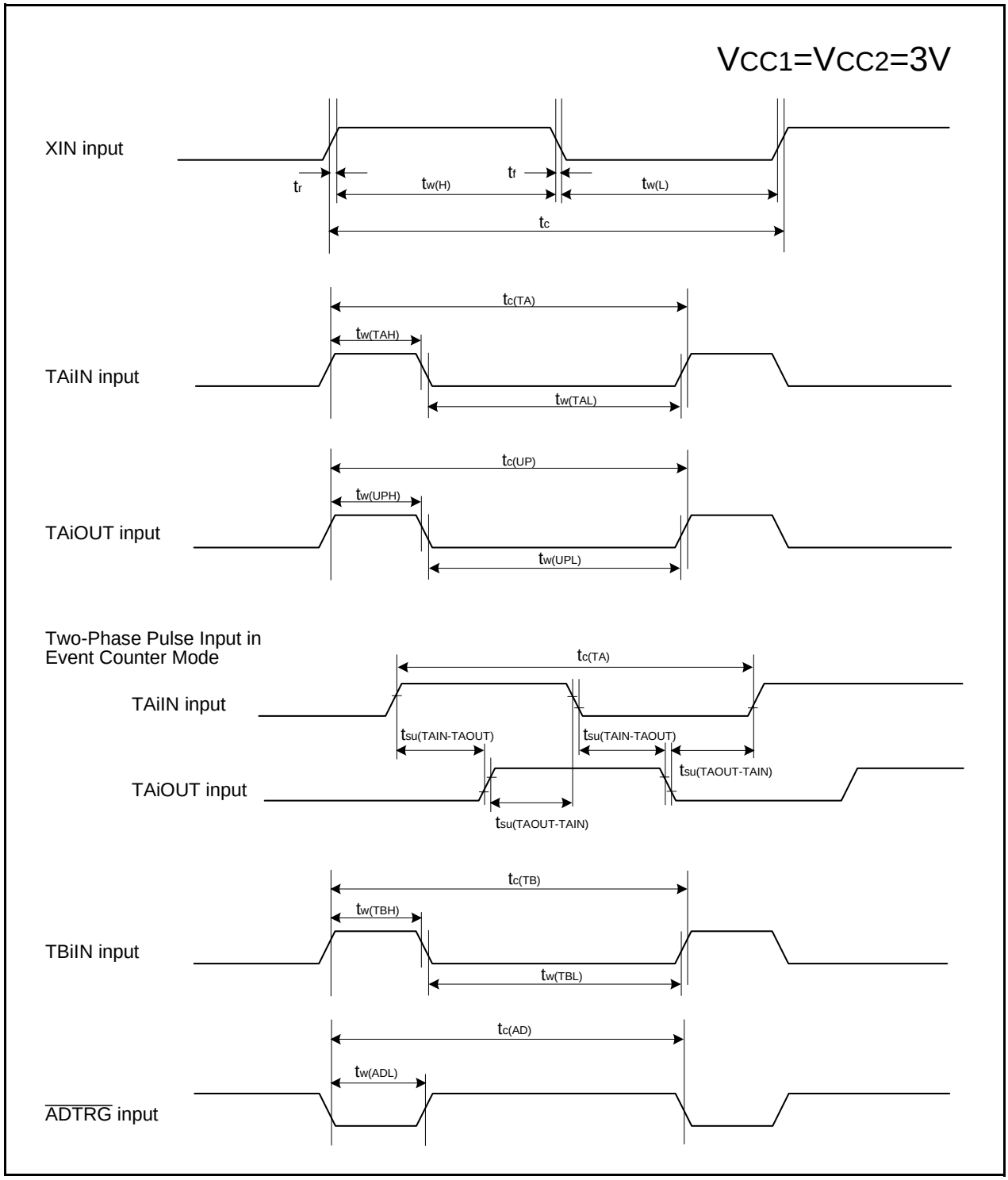


Figure 23.13 Timing Diagram (1)

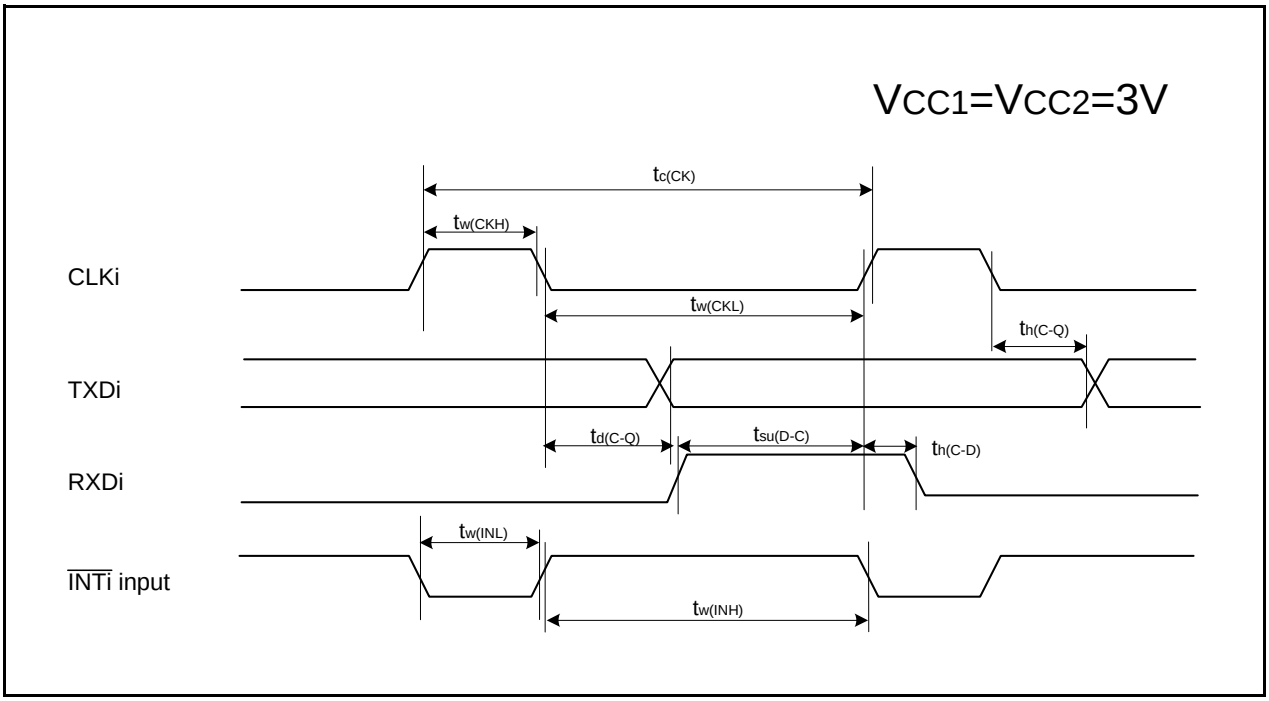
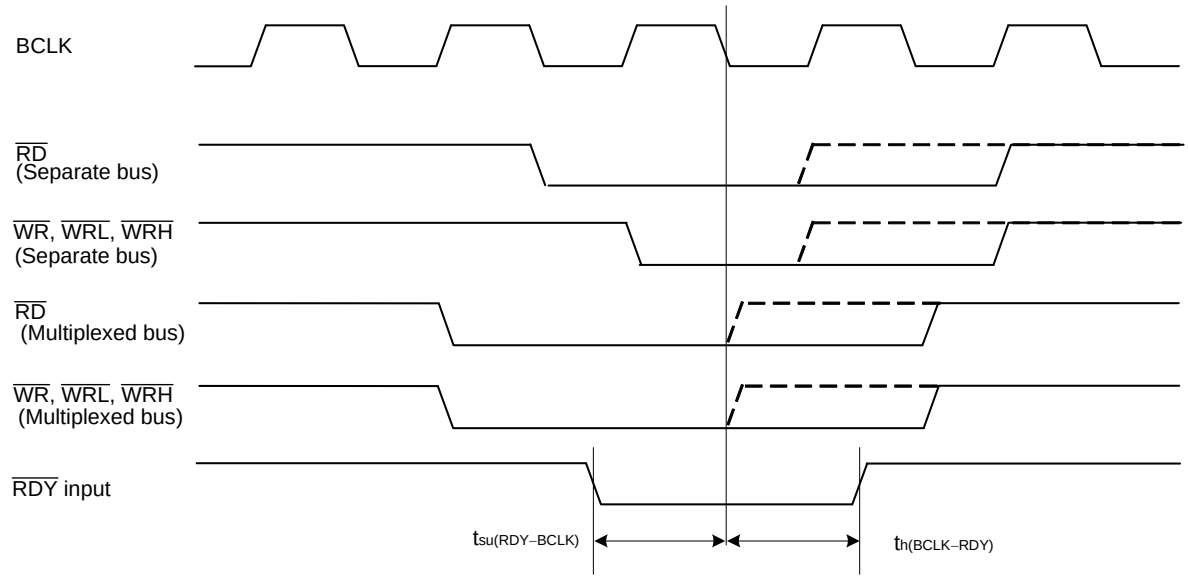


Figure 23.14 Timing Diagram (2)

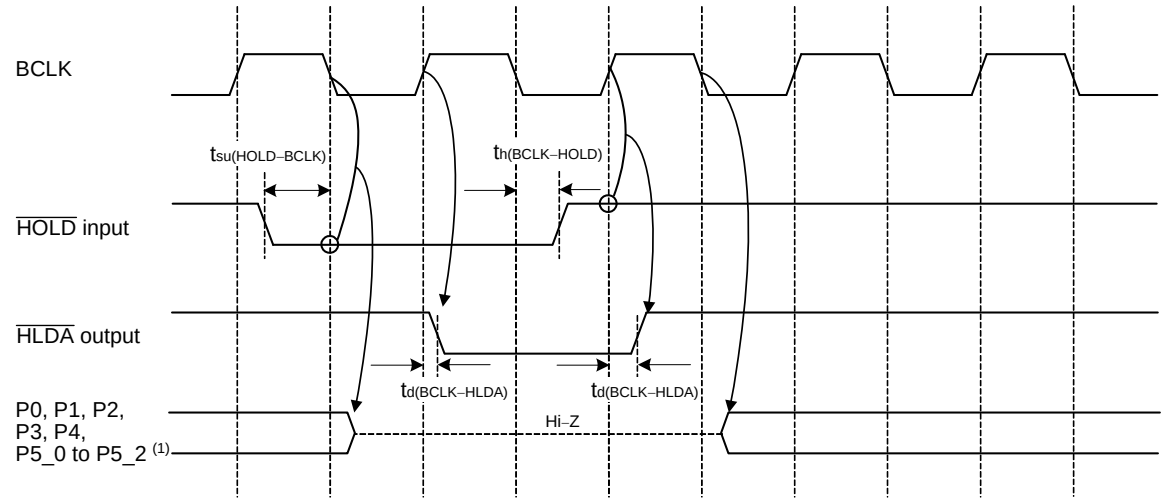
Memory Expansion Mode, Microprocessor Mode

$V_{CC1}=V_{CC2}=3V$

(Effective for setting with wait)



(Common to setting with wait and setting without wait)



Notes:
1. These pins are set to high-impedance regardless of the input level of the BYTE pin, PM06 bit in PM0 register and PM11 bit in PM1 register.

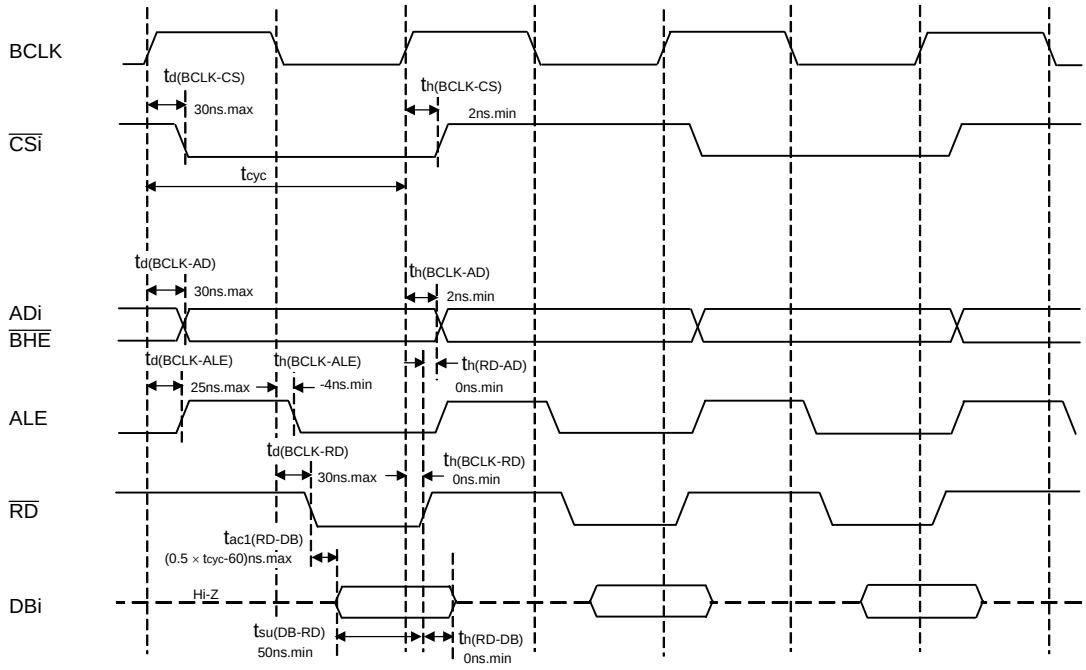
Measuring conditions :
- $V_{CC1}=V_{CC2}=3V$
- Input timing voltage : Determined with $V_{IL}=0.6V$, $V_{IH}=2.4V$
- Output timing voltage : Determined with $V_{OL}=1.5V$, $V_{OH}=1.5V$

Figure 23.15 Timing Diagram (3)

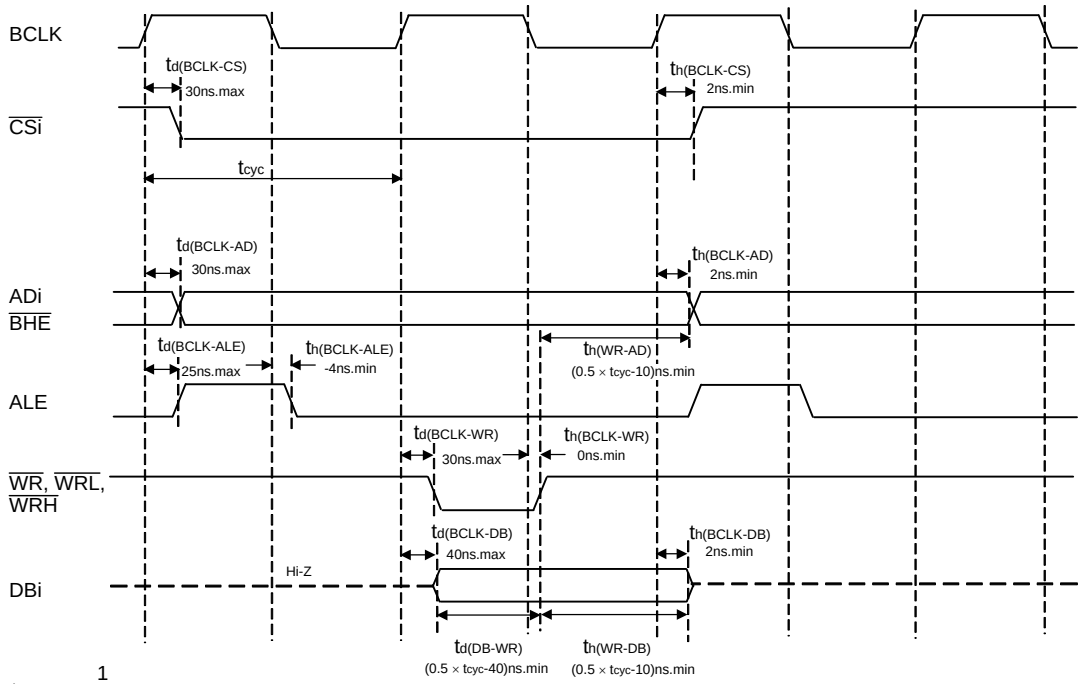
Memory Expansion Mode, Microprocessor Mode
(for setting with no wait**)**

$V_{CC1}=V_{CC2}=3V$

Read timing



Write timing



$$t_{cyc}=\frac{1}{f(BCLK)}$$

Measuring conditions
- $V_{CC1}=V_{CC2}=3V$
- Input timing voltage : $V_{IL}=0.6V$, $V_{IH}=2.4V$
- Output timing voltage : $V_{OL}=1.5V$, $V_{OH}=1.5V$

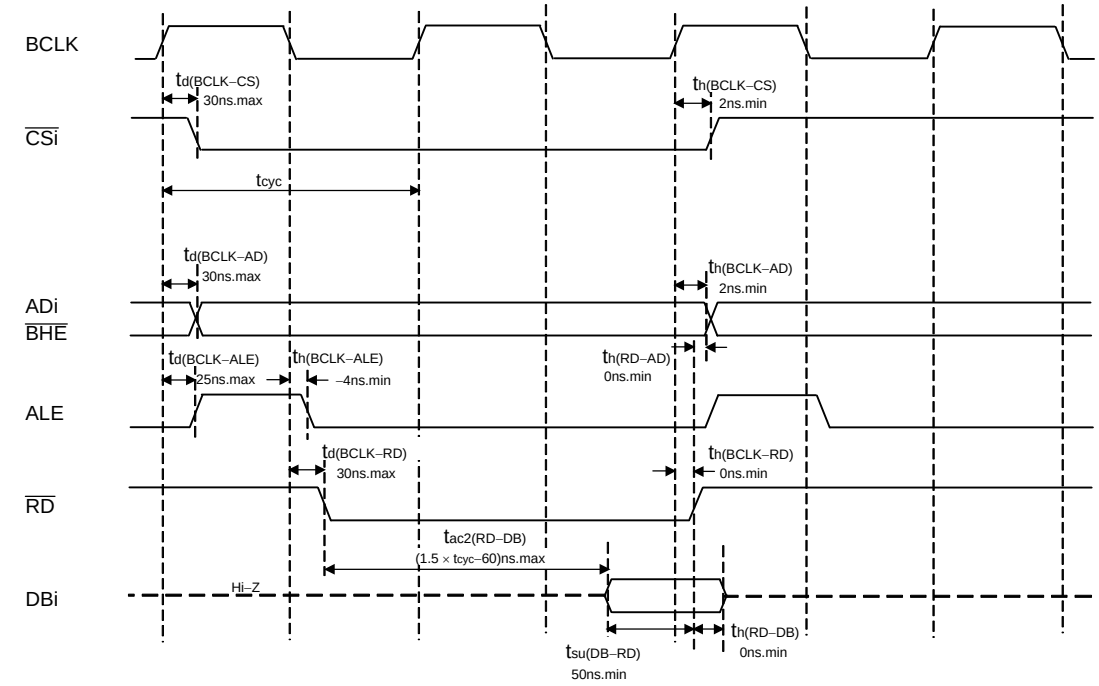
Figure 23.16 Timing Diagram (4)

Memory Expansion Mode, Microprocessor Mode

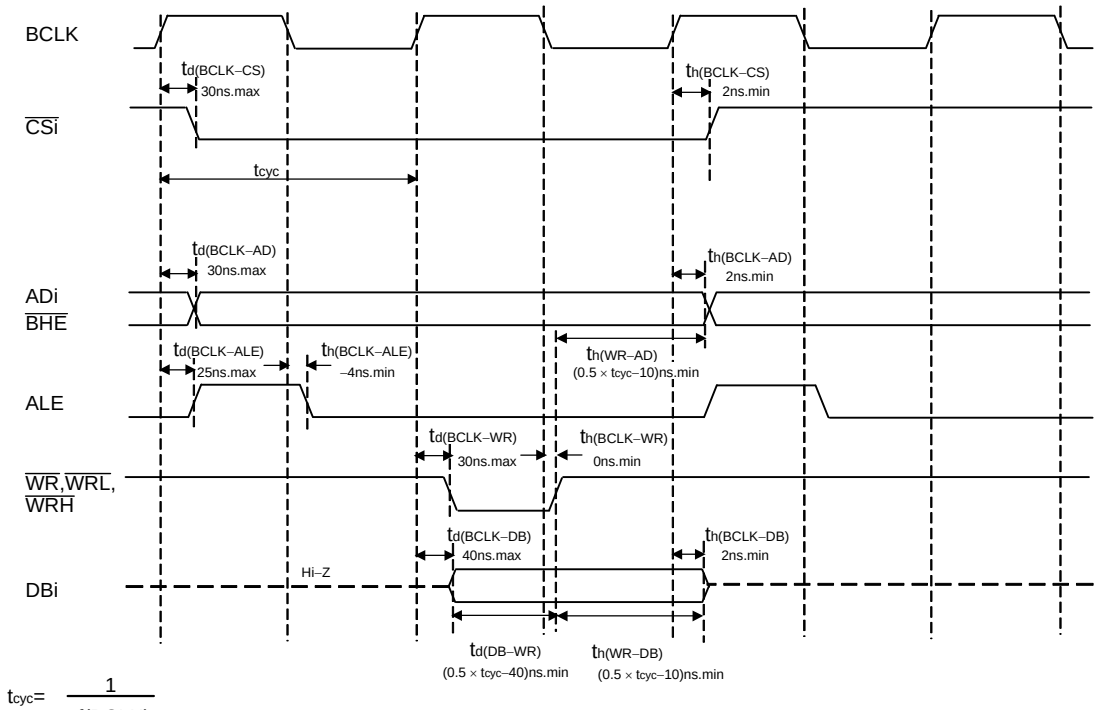
(for 1-wait setting and external area access**)**

$V_{CC1}=V_{CC2}=3V$

Read timing



Write timing



$$t_{cyc}=\frac{1}{f(BCLK)}$$

Measuring conditions

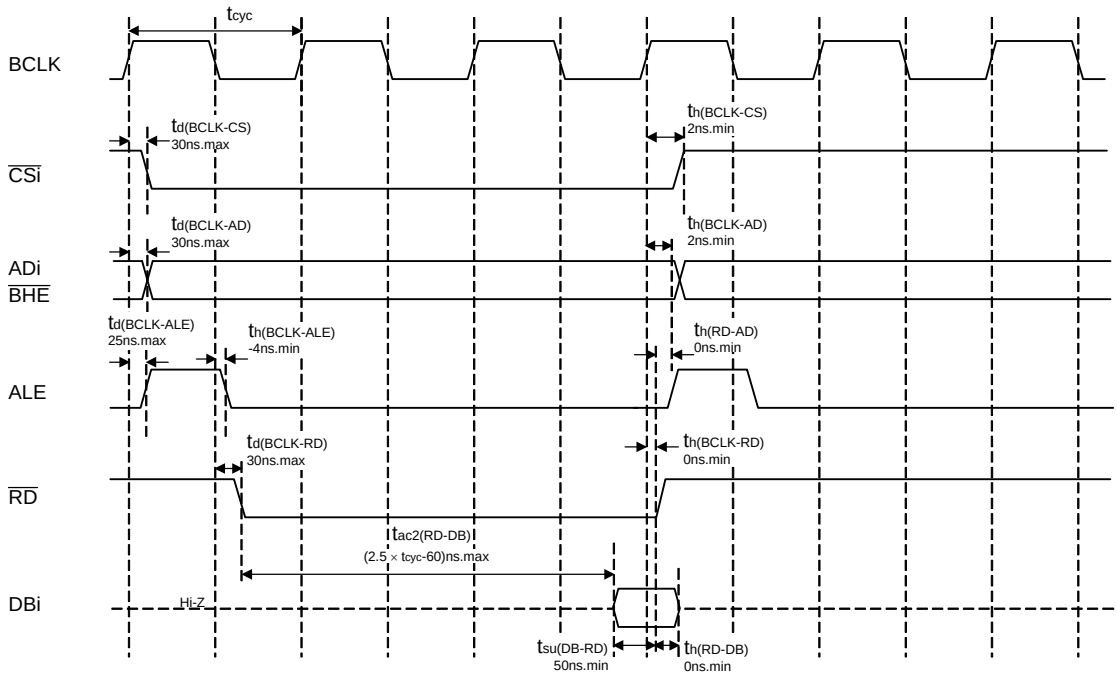
- $V_{CC1}=V_{CC2}=3V$
- Input timing voltage : $V_{IL}=0.6V$, $V_{IH}=2.4V$
- Output timing voltage : $V_{OL}=1.5V$, $V_{OH}=1.5V$

Figure 23.17 Timing Diagram (5)

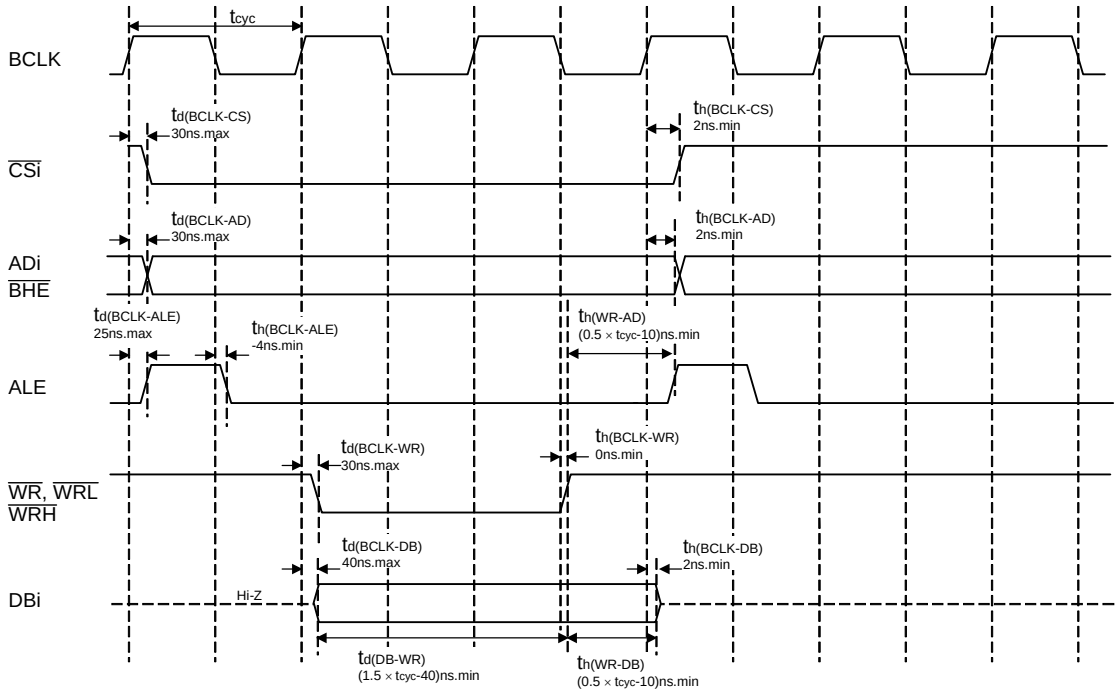
$V_{CC1}=V_{CC2}=3V$

Memory Expansion Mode, Microprocessor Mode
(for 2-wait setting and external area access**)**

Read timing



Write timing



$$t_{cyc}=\frac{1}{f(BCLK)}$$

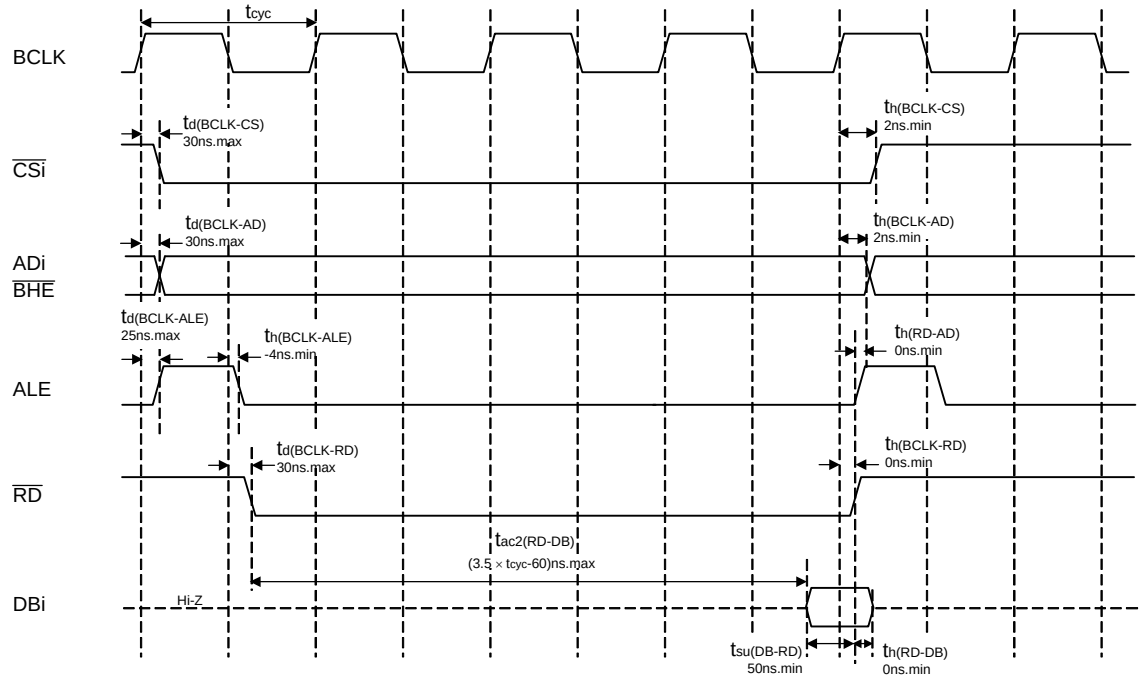
Measuring conditions
- $V_{CC1}=V_{CC2}=3V$
- Input timing voltage : $V_{IL}=0.6V$, $V_{IH}=2.4V$
- Output timing voltage : $V_{OL}=1.5V$, $V_{OH}=1.5V$

Figure 23.18 Timing Diagram (6)

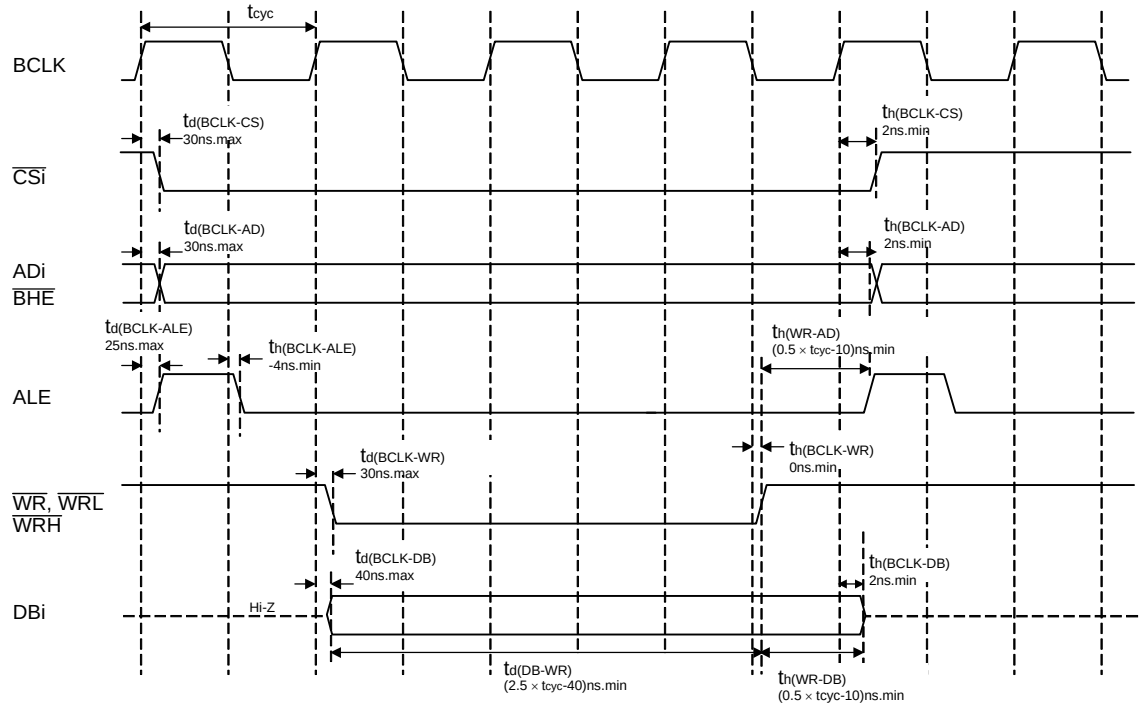
$V_{CC1} = V_{CC2} = 3V$

Memory Expansion Mode, Microprocessor Mode
(for 3-wait setting and external area access**)**

Read timing



Write timing



$$t_{cyc} = \frac{1}{f(BCLK)}$$

Measuring conditions
- V_{CC1}=V_{CC2}=3V
- Input timing voltage : V_{IL}=0.6V, V_{IH}=2.4V
- Output timing voltage : V_{OL}=1.5V, V_{OH}=1.5V

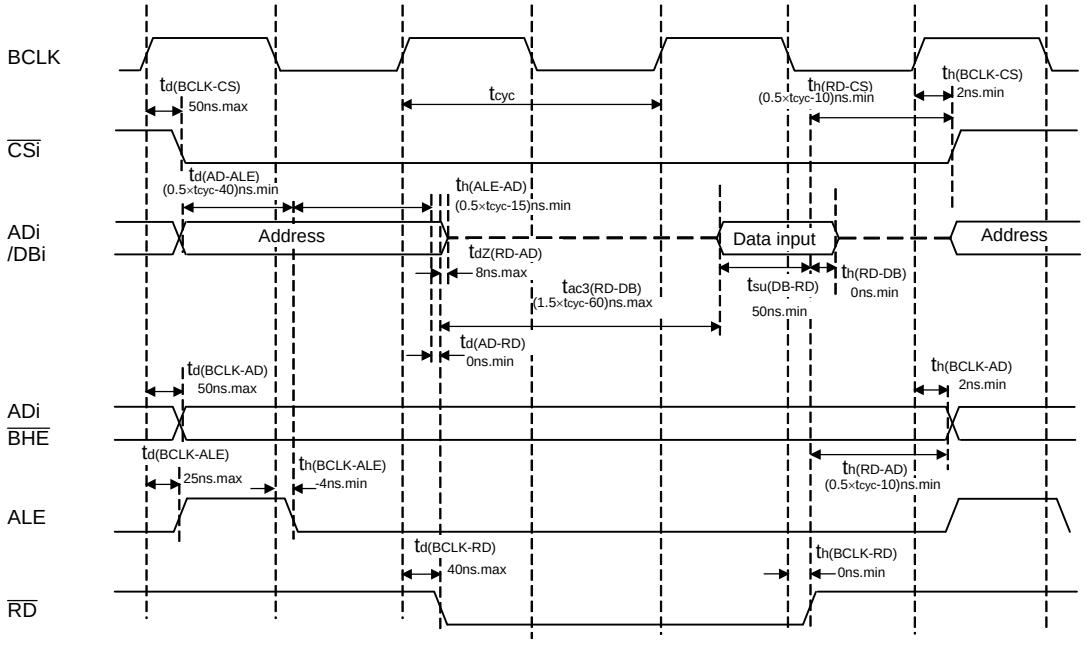
Figure 23.19 Timing Diagram (7)

Memory Expansion Mode, Microprocessor Mode

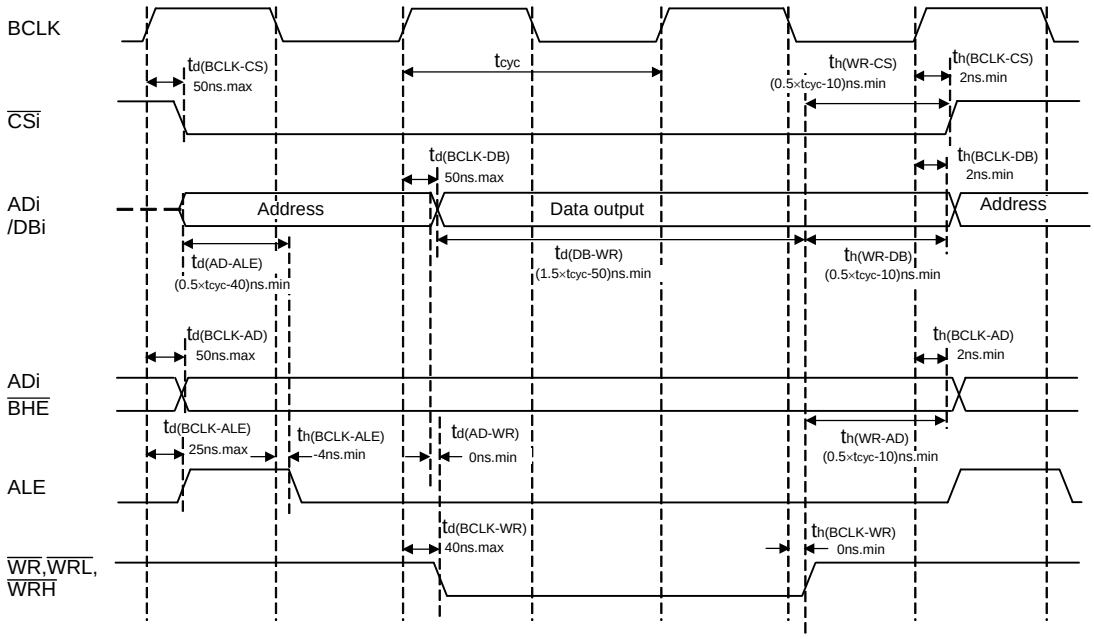
$V_{CC1}=V_{CC2}=3V$

(For 2-wait setting, external area access and multiplex bus selection**)**

Read timing



Write timing



$$t_{cyc}=\frac{1}{f(BCLK)}$$

Measuring conditions

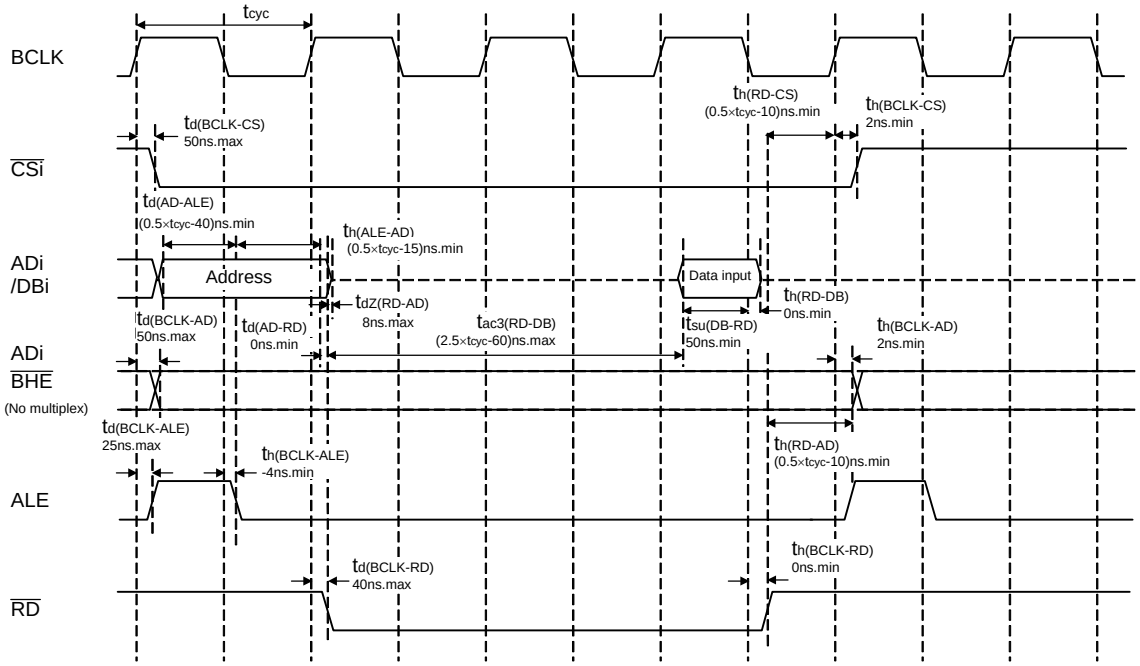
- $V_{CC1}=V_{CC2}=3V$
- Input timing voltage : $V_{IL}=0.6V$, $V_{IH}=2.4V$
- Output timing voltage : $V_{OL}=1.5V$, $V_{OH}=1.5V$

Figure 23.20 Timing Diagram (8)

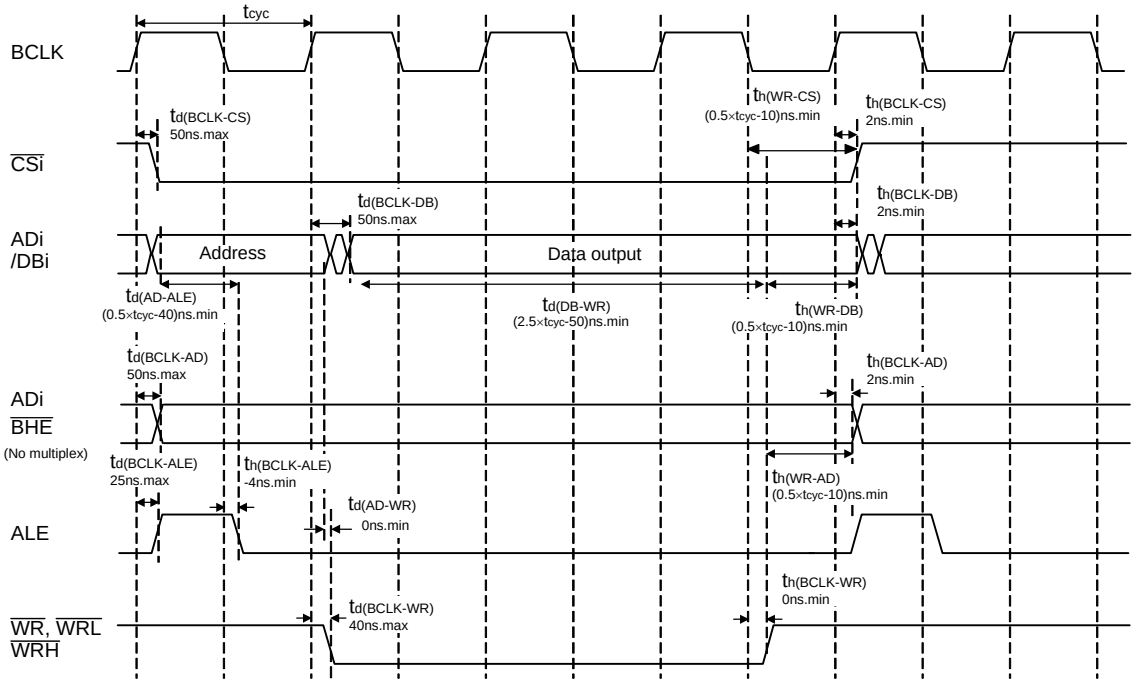
$V_{CC1}=V_{CC2}=3V$

Memory Expansion Mode, Microprocessor Mode
(For 3-wait setting, external area access and multiplex bus selection)

Read timing



Write timing



$$t_{cyc}=\frac{1}{f(BCLK)}$$

Measuring conditions
- $V_{CC1}=V_{CC2}=3V$
- Input timing voltage : $V_{IL}=0.6V$, $V_{IH}=2.4V$
- Output timing voltage : $V_{OL}=1.5V$, $V_{OH}=1.5V$

Figure 23.21 Timing Diagram (9)

24. Precautions

24.1 SFR

24.1.1 Register Settings

Table 24.1 lists Registers with Write-Only Bits. Set these registers with immediate values. When establishing a next value by altering the existing value, write the existing value to the RAM as well as to the register. Transfer the next value to the register after making changes in the RAM.

Table 24.1 Registers with Write-Only Bits

Register	Symbol	Address
Watchdog timer reset register	WDTR	037Dh
Watchdog timer start register	WDTS	037Eh
Timer A1-1 register	TA11	0303h to 0302h
Timer A2-1 register	TA21	0305h to 0304h
Timer A4-1 register	TA41	0307h to 0306h
Dead time timer	DTT	030Ch
Timer B2 interrupt generation frequency set counter	ICTB2	030Dh
SI/O3 bit rate register	S3BRG	0273h
SI/O4 bit rate register	S4BRG	0277h
UART0 bit rate register	U0BRG	0249h
UART1 bit rate register	U1BRG	0259h
UART2 bit rate register	U2BRG	0269h
UART5 bit rate register	U5BRG	0289h
UART6 bit rate register	U6BRG	0299h
UART7 bit rate register	U7BRG	02A9h
UART0 transmit buffer register	U0TB	024Bh to 024Ah
UART1 transmit buffer register	U1TB	025Bh to 025Ah
UART2 transmit buffer register	U2TB	026Bh to 026Ah
UART5 transmit buffer register	U5TB	028Bh to 028Ah
UART6 transmit buffer register	U6TB	029Bh to 029Ah
UART7 transmit buffer register	U7TB	02ABh to 02AAh
Timer A0 register	TA0	0327h to 0326h
Timer A1 register	TA1	0329h to 0328h
Timer A2 register	TA2	032Bh to 032Ah
Timer A3 register	TA3	032Dh to 032Ch
Timer A4 register	TA4	032Fh to 032Eh

24.2 Reset

24.2.1 VCC1

When supplying power to the microcomputer, the power supply voltage applied to the VCC1 pin must meet the conditions of SVCC.

Symbol	Parameter	Standard			Unit
		Min.	Typ.	Max.	
SVCC	Power supply rising gradient (VCC1) (Voltage range 0 to 2)	0.05			V / ms

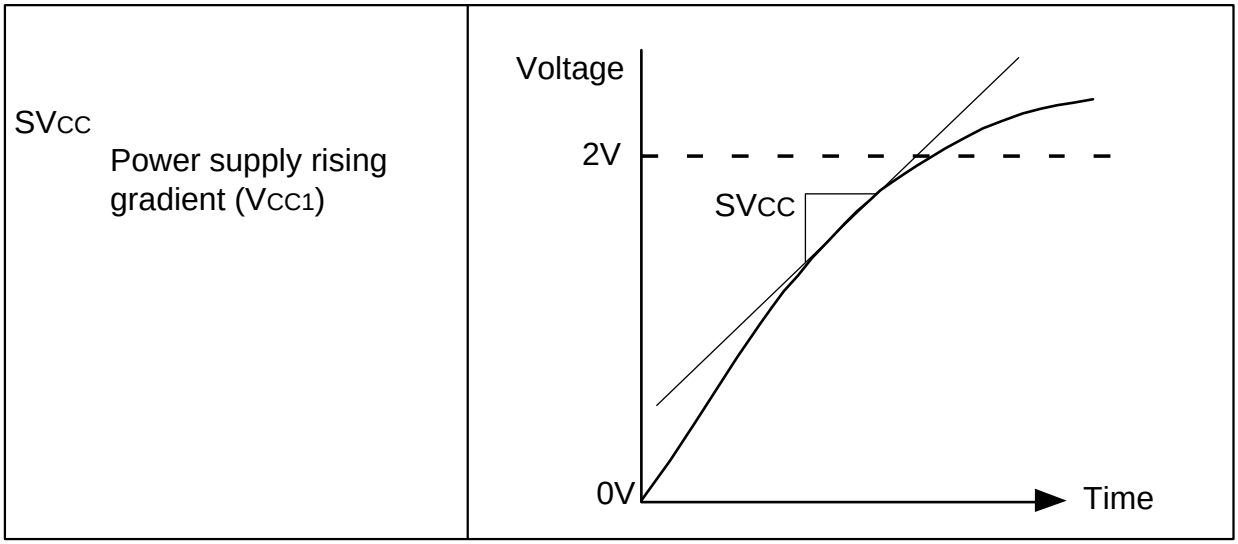


Figure 24.1 Timing of SVcc

24.2.2 CNVSS

To start to operate in single-chip mode after reset, connect to VSS via resistor. The internal pull-up of the CNVSS pin is on immediately after hardware reset 1 or 2 is released in single-chip mode. Therefore, the CNVSS pin level becomes high for two cycles of fOCO-S maximum.

24.3 Bus

- When hardware reset 1 or brown-out reset is performed with “H” input on the CNVSS pin, contents of internal ROM cannot be read.

24.4 PLL Frequency Synthesizer

To use the PLL frequency synthesizer, stabilize supply voltage so that the standard of the power supply ripple is met.

Symbol	Parameter		Standard			Unit
			Min.	Typ.	Max.	
f (ripple)	Power supply ripple allowable frequency (V_{CC1})				10	kHz
V_{P-P} (ripple)	Power supply ripple allowable amplitude voltage	(V_{CC1} = 5V)			0.5	V
		(V_{CC1} = 3V)			0.3	V
V_{CC} ($\lvert\Delta V / \Delta T\rvert$)	Power supply ripple rising / falling gradient	(V_{CC1} = 5V)			0.3	V / ms
		(V_{CC1} = 3V)			0.3	V / ms

f (ripple)
Power supply ripple allowable frequency (VCC1)

Vp-p (ripple)
Power supply ripple allowable amplitude voltage

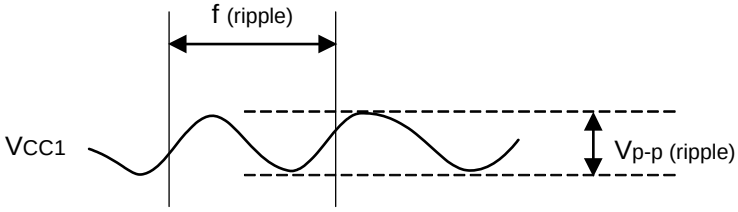


Figure 24.2 Voltage Fluctuation Timing

24.5 Power Control

- When exiting stop mode by hardware reset 1, set the $\overline{\text{RESET}}$ pin to “L” until a main clock oscillation is stabilized.

- Set the MR0 bit in the TAiMR register (i = 0 to 4) to 0 (pulse is not output) to use the timer A to exit stop mode.

- After the WAIT instruction, insert at least four NOP instructions. When entering wait mode, the instruction queue reads ahead the instructions following WAIT, and depending on timing, some of these may execute before the microcomputer enters wait mode.

  Program example when entering wait mode is shown below.

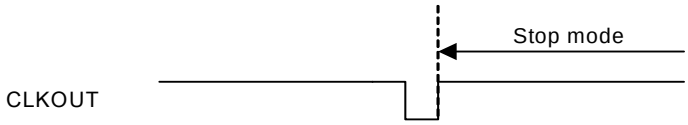
```
Program Example:    FSET  I     ;
                    WAIT        ;Enter wait mode
                    NOP         ;More than four NOP instructions
                    NOP
                    NOP
                    NOP
```

- When entering stop mode, insert a JMP.B instruction immediately after executing an instruction which sets the CM10 bit in the CM1 register to 1, and then insert at least four NOP instructions. When entering stop mode, the instruction queue reads ahead the instructions following the instruction which sets the CM10 bit to 1 (all clock stop), and some of these may execute before the microcomputer enters stop mode or before the interrupt routine for returning from stop mode.

  Program example when entering stop mode

```
Program Example:        FSET    I
                        BSET    0, CM1  ; Enter stop mode
                        JMP.B   L2      ; Insert a JMP.B instruction
                L2:
                        NOP             ; More than four NOP instructions
                        NOP
                        NOP
                        NOP
```

- The CLKOUT pin outputs high in stop mode. Therefore, when the CLKOUT pin changes state from high to low and is immediately driven in stop mode, the low level width becomes short.



- Wait until the main clock oscillation stabilizes, before switching the clock source for the CPU clock to the main clock. Similarly, wait until the sub clock oscillates stably before switching the clock source for the CPU clock to the sub clock.

- Do not stop the externally-generated clock when the externally-generated clock is input to the XIN pin and the main clock is used as the clock source for the CPU clock.
- Suggestions to reduce power consumption
  Refer to the following descriptions when designing a system or programming.

Ports

The processor retains the state of each I/O port even when it goes to wait mode or to stop mode. A current flows in active output ports. A pass current flows to input ports in high-impedance state. When entering wait mode or stop mode, set non-used ports to input and stabilize the potential.

A/D converter

When A/D conversion is not performed, set the ADSTBY bit in the ADCON1 register to 0 (A/D operation stop). When A/D conversion is performed, start the A/D conversion at least 1 ϕAD cycle or longer after setting the ADSTBY bit to 1 (A/D operation enabled).

D/A converter

When not performing D/A conversion, set the DAiE bit (i = 0, 1) in the DACON register to 0 (output inhibited) and the DAi register to 00h.

Stopping peripheral functions

Use the CM02 bit in the CM0 register to stop the unnecessary peripheral functions during wait mode.

Switching the oscillation-driving capacity

Set the driving capacity to “L” when oscillation is stable.

24.6 Protect

Set the PRC2 bit to 1 (write enabled) and then write to given SFR address, and the PRC2 bit will be cleared to 0 (write protected). Change the registers protected by the PRC2 bit in the next instruction after setting the PRC2 bit to 1. Make sure no interrupts or DMA transfers will occur between the instruction in which the PRC2 bit is set to 1 and the next instruction.

24.7 Interrupt

24.7.1 Reading address 00000h

Do not read the address 00000h in a program. When a maskable interrupt request is accepted, the CPU reads interrupt information (interrupt number and interrupt request priority level) from the address 00000h during the interrupt sequence. At this time, the IR bit for the accepted interrupt is cleared to 0.
If the address 00000h is read in a program, the IR bit for the interrupt which has the highest priority among the enabled interrupts is cleared to 0. This factors a problem that the interrupt is canceled, or an unexpected interrupt request is generated.

24.7.2 SP Setting

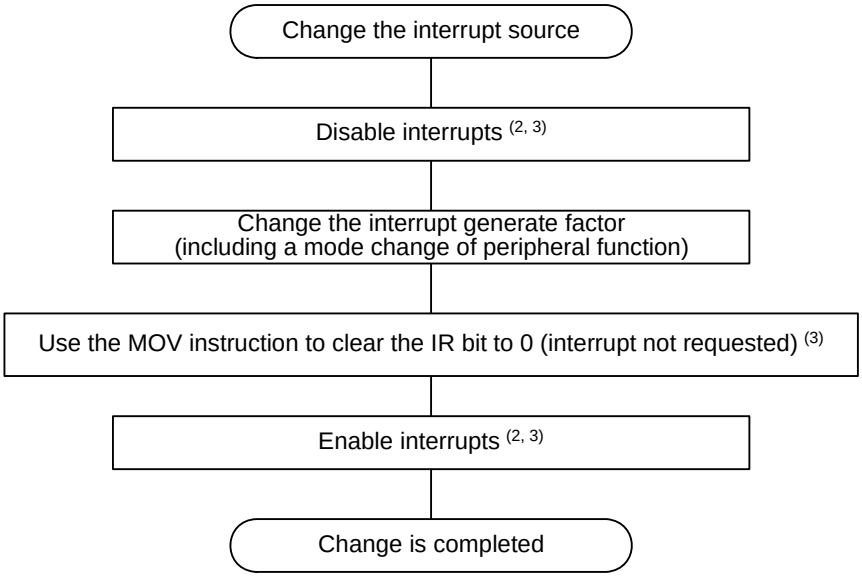
Set any value in the SP (USP, ISP) before accepting an interrupt. The SP (USP, ISP) is cleared to 0000h after reset. Therefore, if an interrupt is accepted before setting any value in the SP (USP, ISP), the program may go out of control.
Especially when using the $\overline{\text{NMI}}$ interrupt, set a value in the ISP at the beginning of the program. Only for the first instruction after reset, all interrupts including the $\overline{\text{NMI}}$ interrupt are disabled.

24.7.3 $\overline{\text{NMI}}$ Interrupt

- The $\overline{\text{NMI}}$ interrupt cannot be disabled. If this interrupt is not used, set the PM24 bit in the PM2 register to 0 ($\overline{\text{NMI}}$ interrupt disabled).
- Stop mode cannot be entered into while input on the $\overline{\text{NMI}}$ pin is low because the CM10 bit in the CM1 register is fixed to 0.
- Do not enter wait mode while input on the $\overline{\text{NMI}}$ pin is low because the CPU clock remains active even though the CPU stops, and therefore, the current consumption in the chip does not drop. In this case, normal condition is restored by a subsequent interrupt generated.
- Set the low and high level durations of the input signal to the $\overline{\text{NMI}}$ pin to 2 CPU clock cycles + 300 ns or more.

24.7.4 Changing an Interrupt Generate Factor

If the interrupt generate factor is changed, the IR bit in the interrupt control register for the changed interrupt may inadvertently be set to 1 (interrupt requested). To use an interrupt, change the interrupt generate factor, and then be sure to clear the IR bit for that interrupt to 0 (interrupt not requested).
Changing the interrupt generate factor referred to here means any act of changing the source, polarity or timing of the interrupt assigned to each software interrupt number. Therefore, if a mode change of any peripheral function involves changing the source, polarity or timing of an interrupt, be sure to clear the IR bit for that interrupt to 0 (interrupt not requested) after making such changes. Refer to the description of each peripheral function for details about the interrupts from peripheral functions.
Figure 24.3 shows the Procedure for Changing the Interrupt Generate Factor.



IR bit: A bit in the interrupt control register for the interrupt whose interrupt generate factor is to be changed

Notes :
1. The above settings must be executed individually. Do not execute two or more settings simultaneously (using one instruction).
2. Use the I flag for the $\overline{\text{INTi}}$ interrupt (i = 0 to 5).
For the interrupts from peripheral functions other than the $\overline{\text{INTi}}$ interrupt, turn off the peripheral function that is the source of the interrupt in order not to generate an interrupt request before changing the interrupt generate factor. In this case, if the maskable interrupts can all be disabled without causing a problem, use the I flag. Otherwise, use the corresponding bits ILVL2 to ILVL0 for the interrupt whose interrupt generate factor is to be changed.
3. Refer to **24.7.6 Rewriting the Interrupt Control Register** for details about the instructions to use and the notes to be taken for instruction execution.

Figure 24.3 Procedure for Changing the Interrupt Generate Factor

24.7.5 $\overline{\text{INT}}$ Interrupt

- Either an “L” level of at least tw (INL) width or an “H” level of at least tw (INH) width is necessary for the signal input to pins $\overline{\text{INT0}}$ through $\overline{\text{INT7}}$ regardless of the CPU operation clock.
- If the POL bit in registers INT0IC to INT7IC, bits IFSR7 to IFSR0 in the IFSR register, or bits IFSR31 and IFSR30 in the IFSR3A register are changed, the IR bit may inadvertently set to 1 (interrupt requested). Be sure to clear the IR bit to 0 (interrupt not requested) after changing any of those register bits.

24.7.6 Rewriting the Interrupt Control Register

(a) The interrupt control register for any interrupt should be modified in places where no requests for that interrupt may occur. Otherwise, disable the interrupt before rewriting the interrupt control register.

(b) To rewrite the interrupt control register for any interrupt after disabling that interrupt, be careful with the instruction to be used.

- Changing any bit other than the IR bit
  When interrupts corresponding to the register occur, the IR bit may not become 1 (interrupt requested) and the interrupts may be ignored. If this causes any troubles, use any of the following instructions to change registers.
  AND, OR, BCLR, or BSET.
- Changing the IR bit
  Depending on the instruction used, the IR bit may not always be cleared to 0 (interrupt not requested). Therefore, be sure to use the MOV instruction to clear the IR bit.

(c) When using the I flag to disable an interrupt, set the I flag while referring to the sample program fragments shown below. (Refer to (b) for details about rewriting the interrupt control registers in the sample program fragments.)

Examples 1 through 3 show how to prevent the I flag from being set to 1 (interrupt enabled) before the interrupt control register is rewritten, owing to the effects of the internal bus and the instruction queue buffer.

Example 1: Using the NOP instruction to keep the program waiting until the interrupt control register is modified

```
INT_SWITCH1:
  FCLR    I            ; Disable interrupts.
  AND.B   #00h, 0055h  ; Set the TA0IC register to 00h.
  NOP                  ;
  NOP
  FSET    I            ; Enable interrupts.
```

The number of the NOP instructions is as follows.
PM20 = 1 (1 wait) : 2, PM20 = 0 (2 waits) : 3, when using the HOLD function : 4.

Example 2: Using the dummy read to keep the FSET instruction waiting

```
INT_SWITCH2:
  FCLR    I            ; Disable interrupts.
  AND.B   #00h, 0055h  ; Set the TA0IC register to 00h.
  MOV.W   MEM, R0      ; Dummy read.
  FSET    I            ; Enable interrupts.
```

Example 3: Using the POPC instruction to change the I flag

```
INT_SWITCH3:
  PUSHC   FLG
  FCLR    I            ; Disable interrupts.
  AND.B   #00h, 0055h  ; Set the TA0IC register to 00h.
  POPC    FLG          ; Enable interrupts.
```

24.7.7 Watchdog Timer Interrupt

Initialize the watchdog timer after the watchdog timer interrupt occurs.

24.8 DMAC

24.8.1 Write to the DMAE Bit in the DMiCON Register (i = 0 to 3)

When both of the conditions below are met, follow the steps below.

Conditions

- The DMAE bit is set to 1 (DMAi is in active state) again while it remains 1.
- A DMA request may occur simultaneously when the DMAE bit is being written.

Steps

(1) Write a 1 to the DMAE bit and DMAS bit in the DMiCON register simultaneously (1).

(2) Make sure that the DMAi is in initial state (2) in a program.
If the DMAi is not in initial state, repeat the above steps.

Notes:

1. The DMAS bit remains unchanged even if a 1 is written. However, if a 0 is written to this bit, it is set to 0 (DMA not requested). In order to prevent the DMAS bit from being modified to 0, 1 should be written to the DMAS bit when 1 is written to the DMAE bit. In this way the state of the DMAS bit immediately before being written can be maintained.
2. Similarly, when writing to the DMAE bit with a read-modify-write instruction, 1 should be written to the DMAS bit in order to maintain a DMA request which is generated during execution.
3. Read the TCRi register to verify whether the DMAi is in initial state. If the read value is equal to a value which was written to the TCRi register before DMA transfer start, the DMAi is in initial state. (In the case a DMA request occurs after writing to the DMAE bit, the read value is a value written to the TCRi register minus one.) If the read value is a value in the middle of transfer, the DMAi is not in initial state.

24.8.2 DMAC Channel Priority

When a same DMA request source is selected for DMAC channels, the DMA transfer may not be executed in the priority order of DMA0>DMA1>DMA2>DMA3.

24.9 Timers

24.9.1 Timer A

24.9.1.1 Timer A (Timer Mode)

The timer is stopped after reset. Set the mode, count source, counter value, and others using registers TAiMR, TAi, TACS0 to TACS2, and TAPOFS before setting the TAiS bit in the TABSR register to 1 (count starts) (i = 0 to 4).
Always make sure registers TAiMR, TACS0 to TACS2, and TAPOFS are modified while the TAiS bit is 0 (count stops) regardless of whether after reset or not.

While counting is in progress, the counter value can be read out at any time by reading the TAi register. However, if the counter is read at the same time it is reloaded, the value FFFFh is read. Also, if the counter is read before it starts counting after a value is set in the TAi register while not counting, the set value is read.

If a low-level signal is applied to the $\overline{SD}$ pin when the IVPCR1 bit in the TB2SC register = 1 (three-phase output forcible cutoff by input on the $\overline{SD}$ pin enabled), pins TA1OUT, TA2OUT, and TA4OUT go to high-impedance state.

24.9.1.2 Timer A (Event Counter Mode)

The timer is stopped after reset. Set the mode, count source, counter value, and others using the TAiMR register, the TAi register, the UDF register, bits TAZIE, TA0TGL, and TA0TGH in the ONSF register and the TRGSR register, and TAPOS register before setting the TAiS bit in the TABSR register to 1 (count starts) (i = 0 to 4).
Always make sure the TAiMR register, the UDF register, bits TAZIE, TA0TGL, and TA0TGH in the ONSF register, the TRGSR register, and TAPOFS register are modified while the TAiS bit is 0 (count stops) regardless of whether after reset or not.

While counting is in progress, the counter value can be read out at any time by reading the TAi register. However, while reloading, FFFFh can be read in underflow, and 0000h in overflow. When the counter is read before it starts counting after a value is set in the TAi register while not counting, the set value is read.

If a low-level signal is applied to the $\overline{SD}$ pin when the IVPCR1 bit in the TB2SC register = 1 (three-phase output forcible cutoff by input on $\overline{SD}$ pin enabled), pins TA1OUT, TA2OUT, and TA4OUT go to high-impedance state.

24.9.1.3 Timer A (One-Shot Timer Mode)

The timer is stopped after reset. Set the mode, count source, counter value, and others using the TAiMR register, the TAi register, bits TA0TGL and TA0TGH in the ONSF register, the TRGSR register, registers TACS0 to TACS2 and the TAPOFS register before setting the TAiS bit in the TABSR register to 1 (count starts) (i = 0 to 4).
Always make sure the TAiMR register, bits TA0TGL and TA0TGH in the ONSF register, the TRGSR register, registers TACS0 to TACS2, and the TAPOFS register are modified while the TAiS bit is 0 (count stops) regardless of whether after reset or not.

When setting the TAiS bit to 0 (count stops), the followings occur:
- A counter stops counting and a content of reload register is reloaded.
- The TAiOUT pin outputs “L” when the POFSi bit in the TAPOFS register is 0; outputs “H” when 1.
- After one cycle of the CPU clock, the IR bit in the TAiIC register is set to 1 (interrupt requested).

Output in one-shot timer mode synchronizes with a count source internally generated. When an external trigger is selected, one-and-half-cycle delay of a count source as maximum occurs between a trigger input to the TAiIN pin and output in one-shot timer mode.

The IR bit is set to 1 when timer operating mode is set with any of the following procedures:
- Select one-shot timer mode after reset.
- Change an operating mode from timer mode to one-shot timer mode.
- Change an operating mode from event counter mode to one-shot timer mode.

To use the Timer Ai interrupt (the IR bit), set the IR bit to 0 after the changes listed above are made.

When a trigger occurs while counting, a counter reloads the reload register to continue counting after generating a re-trigger and counting down once. To generate a trigger while counting, generate a second trigger between generating the previous trigger and operating longer than one cycle of a timer count source.

If a low-level signal is applied to the $\overline{SD}$ pin when the IVPCR1 bit in the TB2SC register = 1 (three-phase output forcible cutoff by input on the $\overline{SD}$ pin enabled), pins TA1OUT, TA2OUT, and TA4OUT go to high-impedance state.

24.9.1.4 Timer A (Pulse Width Modulation Mode)

The timer is stopped after reset. Set the mode, count source, counter value, and others using the TAiMR register, the TAi register, bits TA0TGL and TA0TGH in the ONSF register, the TRGSR register, registers TACS0 to TACS2, and the TAPOF register before setting the TAiS bit in the TABSR register to 1 (count starts) (i = 0 to 4).
Always make sure the TAiMR register, bits TA0TGL and TA0TGH in the ONSF register, the TRGSR register, registers TACS0 to TACS2, and the TAPOFS register are modified while the TAiS bit is 0 (count stops) regardless of whether after reset or not.

The IR bit is set to 1 when setting a timer operating mode with any of the following procedures:
- Select PWM mode after reset.
- Change an operating mode from timer mode to PWM mode.
- Change an operating mode from event counter mode to PWM mode.

To use the timer Ai interrupt (IR bit), set the IR bit to 0 by program after the changes listed above are made.

When setting the TAiS register to 0 (count stops) during PWM pulse output, the following action occurs.
When the POFSi bit in the TAPOFS register is 0:
- Stop counting.
- When the TAiOUT pin is output “H,” output level is set to “L” and the IR bit is set to 1.
- When the TAiOUT pin is output “L,” both output level and the IR bit remains unchanged.

When the POFSi bit in the TAPOFS register is 1:
- Stop counting.
- When the TAiOUT pin is output “L,” output level is set to “H” and the IR bit is set to 1.
- When the TAiOUT pin is output “H,” both output level and the IR bit remains unchanged.

If a low-level signal is applied to the $\overline{SD}$ pin when the IVPCR1 bit in the TB2SC register = 1 (three-phase output forcible cutoff by input on the $\overline{SD}$ pin enabled), pins TA1OUT, TA2OUT, and TA4OUT go to high-impedance state.

24.9.2 Timer B

24.9.2.1 Timer B (Timer Mode)

The timer is stopped after reset. Set the mode, count source, counter value, and others using registers TBiMR, TBi, and TBCS0 to TBCS3 before setting the TBiS bit in the TABSR or the TBSR register to 1 (count starts) (i = 0 to 5).
Always make sure the TBiMR register and registers TBCS0 to TBCS3 are modified while the TBiS bit is 0 (count stops) regardless of whether after reset or not.

A value of a counter while counting, can be read in the TBi register at any time. FFFFh is read while reloading. If the counter is read before it starts counting after a value is set in the TBi register while not counting, the set value is read.

24.9.2.2 Timer B (Event Counter Mode)

The timer is stopped after reset. Set the mode, count source, counter value, and others using the TBiMR register and TBi register before setting the TBiS bit in the TABSR or the TBSR register to 1 (count starts) (i = 0 to 5).
Always make sure the TBiMR register is modified while the TBiS bit is 0 (count stops) regardless of whether after reset or not.

While counting is in progress, the counter value can be read out at any time by reading the TBi register. However, if this register is read at the same time the counter is reloaded, the read value is always FFFFh. If the TBi register is read after setting a value in it while not counting but before the counter starts counting, the read value is the value set in the register.

24.9.2.3 Timer B (Pulse Period / Pulse Width Measurement Mode)

The timer is stopped after reset. Set the mode, count source, etc. using the TBiMR register before setting the TBiS bit in the TABSR or the TBSR register to 1 (count starts) (i = 0 to 5).
Always make sure the TBiMR register and registers TBCS0 to TBCS3 are modified while the TBiS bit is 0 (count stops) regardless of whether after reset or not. To clear the MR3 bit to 0 by writing to the TBiMR register while the TBiS bit = 1 (count starts), be sure to write the same value as previously written to bits TMOD0, TMOD1, MR0, MR1, TCK0, and TCK1 and a 0 to bit 4.

The IR bit in the TBiIC register goes to 1 (interrupt requested) when an effective edge of a measurement pulse is input or Timer Bi is overflowed (i = 0 to 5). The factor of interrupt request can be determined by use of the MR3 bit in the TBiMR register within the interrupt routine.

If the source of interrupt cannot be identified by the MR3 bit such as when the measurement pulse input and a timer overflow occur at the same time, use another timer to count the number of times Timer B has overflowed.

Use the IR bit in the TBiIC register to detect only overflows. Use the MR3 bit only to determine the interrupt factor.

When a count is started and the first effective edge is input, an indeterminate value is transferred to the reload register. At this time, Timer Bi interrupt request is not generated.

A value of the counter is indeterminate after reset. If a count is started in this state, the MR3 bit may be set to 1 and Timer Bi interrupt request may be generated after a count start before an effective edge input. When a value is set to the TBi register while the TBiS bit is 0 (count stops), the same value is written to the counter.

For pulse width measurement, pulse widths are successively measured. Use program to check whether the measurement result is “H” level width or “L” level width.

24.10 Serial Interface

24.10.1 Clock Synchronous Serial I/O

24.10.1.1 Transmission / Reception

When the $\overline{\text{RTS}}$ function is used with an external clock, $\overline{\text{RTSi}}$ pin (i = 0 to 2, 5 to 7) outputs “L,” which informs the transmitting side that the MCU is ready for a receive operation. The $\overline{\text{RTSi}}$ pin outputs “H” when a receive operation starts. Therefore, a transmit timing and receive timing can be synchronized by connecting the $\overline{\text{RTSi}}$ pin to the $\overline{\text{CTSi}}$ pin of the transmitting side. The $\overline{\text{RTS}}$ function is disabled when an internal clock is selected.

If a low-level signal is applied to the $\overline{\text{SD}}$ pin when the IVPCR1 bit in the TB2SC register = 1 (three-phase output forcible cutoff by input on $\overline{\text{SD}}$ pin enabled), the following pins go to high-impedance state:
P7_2/CLK2/TA1OUT/V, P7_3/$\overline{\text{CTS2}}$/$\overline{\text{RTS2}}$/TA1IN/$\overline{\text{V}}$, P7_4/TA2OUT/W, P7_5/TA2IN/$\overline{\text{W}}$, P8_0/TA4OUT/RXD5/SCL5/U, P8_1/TA4IN/$\overline{\text{CTS5}}$/$\overline{\text{RTS5}}$/$\overline{\text{U}}$

24.10.1.2 Transmission

If an external clock is selected, the following conditions must be met while the external clock is held “H” when the CKPOL bit in the UiC0 register (i = 0 to 2, 5 to 7) is set to 0 (transmit data output at the falling edge and receive data input at the rising edge of the serial clock), or while the external clock is held “L” when the CKPOL bit is set to 1 (transmit data output at the rising edge and receive data input at the falling edge of the serial clock).

- The TE bit in the UiC1 register = 1 (transmission enabled)
- The TI bit in the UiC1 register = 0 (data present in the UiTB register)
- If $\overline{\text{CTS}}$ function is selected, input on the $\overline{\text{CTSi}}$ pin = “L”

24.10.1.3 Reception

In clock synchronous serial I/O mode, the shift clock is generated by activating a transmitter. Set the UARTi-associated registers for a transmit operation even if the MCU is used for receive operation only. Dummy data is output from the TXDi pin (i = 0 to 2, 5 to 7) while receiving.

When an internal clock is selected, the shift clock is generated by setting the TE bit in the UiC1 register to 1 (transmission enabled) and placing dummy data in the UiTB register. When an external clock is selected, set the TE bit to 1 (transmission enabled), place dummy data in the UiTB register, and input an external clock to the CLKi pin to generate the shift clock.

If data is received consecutively, an overrun error occurs when the RI bit in the UiC1 register is set to 1 (data present in the UiRB register) and the next receive data is received in the UARTi receive register. And then, the OER bit in the UiRB register is set to 1 (overrun error occurred). At this time, the UiRB register is undefined. If an overrun error occurs, the IR bit in the SiRIC register remains unchanged.

To receive data consecutively, set dummy data in the low-order byte in the UiTB register per each receive operation.

If an external clock is selected, the following conditions must be met while the external clock is held “H” when the CKPOL bit is set to 0 (transmit data output at the falling edge and receive data input at the rising edge of the serial clock), or while the external clock is held “L” when the CKPOL bit is set to 1 (transmit data output at the rising edge and receive data input at the falling edge of the serial clock).

- The RE bit in the UiC1 register = 1 (reception enabled)
- The TE bit in the UiC1 register = 1 (transmission enabled)
- The TI bit in the UiC1 register = 0 (data present in the UiTB register)

24.10.2 UART (Clock Asynchronous Serial I/O) Mode

24.10.2.1 Transmission / Reception

When the $\overline{\text{RTS}}$ function is used with an external clock, $\overline{\text{RTSi}}$ pin (i = 0 to 2, 5 to 7) outputs “L,” which informs the transmitting side that the MCU is ready for a receive operation. The $\overline{\text{RTSi}}$ pin outputs “H” when a receive operation starts. Therefore, a transmit timing and receive timing can be synchronized by connecting the $\overline{\text{RTSi}}$ pin to the $\overline{\text{CTSi}}$ pin of the transmitting side. The $\overline{\text{RTS}}$ function is disabled when an internal clock is selected.

If a low-level signal is applied to the $\overline{\text{SD}}$ pin when the IVPCR1 bit in the TB2SC register = 1 (three-phase output forcible cutoff by input on $\overline{\text{SD}}$ pin enabled), the following pins go to high-impedance state:
P7_2/CLK2/TA1OUT/V, P7_3/$\overline{\text{CTS2}}$/$\overline{\text{RTS2}}$/TA1IN/$\overline{\text{V}}$, P7_4/TA2OUT/W, P7_5/TA2IN/$\overline{\text{W}}$, P8_0/TA4OUT/RXD5/SCL5/U, P8_1/TA4IN/$\overline{\text{CTS5}}$/$\overline{\text{RTS5}}$/$\overline{\text{U}}$

24.10.2.2 Transmission

If an external clock is selected, the following conditions must be met while the external clock is held “H” when the CKPOL bit in the UiC0 register (i = 0 to 2, 5 to 7) is set to 0 (transmit data output at the falling edge and receive data input at the rising edge of the serial clock), or while the external clock is held “L” when the CKPOL bit is set to 1 (transmit data output at the rising edge and receive data input at the falling edge of the serial clock).

- The TE bit in the UiC1 register = 1 (transmission enabled)
- The TI bit in the UiC1 register = 0 (data present in the UiTB register)
- If $\overline{\text{CTS}}$ function is selected, input on the $\overline{\text{CTSi}}$ pin = “L”

24.10.3 Special Mode 1 (I^2C Mode)

24.10.3.1 Generating Conditions

When generating start, stop, and restart conditions, set the STSPSEL bit in the UiSMR4 register (i = 0 to 2, 5 to 7) to 0 and wait for more than half cycle of the transfer clock before setting each condition generation bit (STAREQ, RSTAREQ, and STPREQ) from 0 to 1.

24.10.3.2 UART5, UART7

When the bits SMD2 to SMD0 in the UiSMR register is set to “010b”, the IICM bit in the UiSMR register is set to 1 and UART5 and UART7 is used in I^2C mode, The SCLi pin level cannot be read properly. When using UART5 and UART7 in I^2C mode, do not read the SCLi pin level. If it is nessesary to read the SCLi pin level, use UARTj (j = 0 to 2 and 6).

24.10.4 Special Mode 4 (SIM Mode)

A transmit interrupt request is generated by setting bits U2IRS and U2ERE in the U2C1 register to 1 (transmission completed) and 1 (error signal output), respectively. Therefore, when using SIM mode, make sure to clear the IR bit to 0 (interrupt not requested) after setting these bits.

24.10.5 SI/O3, SI/O4

The SOUTi default value which is set to the SOUTi pin by the SMi7 bit approximately 10 ns may be output when changing the SMi3 bit from 0 (I/O port) to 1 (SOUTi output and CLKi function) while the SMi2 bit in the SiC to 0 (SOUTi output) and the SMi6 bit is set to 1 (internal clock). And then the SOUTi pin is held high-impedance.

If the output level from the SOUTi pin is a problem when changing the SMi3 bit from 0 to 1, set the default value of the SOUTi pin by the SMi7 bit.

i = 3, 4

24.11 A/D Converter

Set registers ADCON0 (except bit 6), ADCON1, and ADCON2 when A/D conversion is stopped (before a trigger occurs). After A/D conversion is stopped, set the ADSTBY bit from 1 to 0.

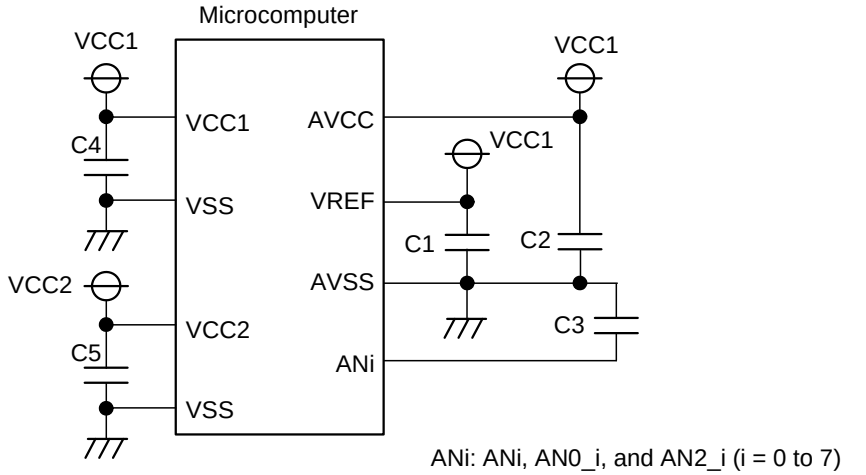
When the ADSTBY bit in the ADCON1 register is changed from 0 (A/D operation stopped) to 1 (A/D operation enabled), wait for 1 ϕAD cycle or longer to start A/D conversion.

To prevent noise-induced device malfunction or latchup, as well as to minimize conversion errors, insert capacitors between pins AVCC, VREF, analog input (ANi (i = 0 to 7), AN0_i, AN2_i), and AVSS. Similarly, insert a capacitor between pins VCC1 and VSS. Figure 24.4 shows an example connection of individual pin.

Make sure the port direction bits corresponding to the pins that are used as analog inputs are set to 0 (input mode).
When the TRG bit in the ADCON0 register = 1 (external trigger), make sure the port direction bit for the $\overline{\text{ADTRG}}$ pin is set to 0 (input mode).

When using key input interrupts, do not use any of the four pins AN4 to AN7 as analog inputs. (A key input interrupt request is generated when the A/D input voltage goes low.)

When changing an A/D operating mode, set bits CH2 to CH0 in the ADCON0 register and bits SCAN1 to SCAN0 in the ADCON1 register again to select analog input pins.



NOTES :
1. C1≥0.47mF, C2≥0.47mF, C3≥100pF, C4≥0.1mF, C5≥0.1mF (reference)
2. Use thick and shortest possible wiring to connect capacitors.

Figure 24.4 Use of Capacitors to Reduce Noise

When A/D conversion is forcibly terminated by setting the ADST bit in the AD0CON0 register to 0 (A/D conversion stops) by program during A/D conversion, the A/D conversion result is undefined. The ADi register not performing A/D conversion may also be undefined. If the ADST bit is set to 0 by program during A/D conversion, do not use values obtained from any ADi registers.

The applied intermediate potential may cause more increase in power consumption to AN4 to AN7 than to other analog input pins (AN0 to AN3, AN0_0 to AN0_7, and AN2_0 to AN2_7) since AN4 to AN7 are used with KI0 to KI3.

When A/D conversion is stopped in one-shot mode or single sweep mode, the ADST bit in the ADCON0 register becomes 0 (A/D conversion stop). Also, when a trigger by $\overline{\text{ADTRG}}$ is selected, the ADST bit becomes 0. Therefore, set the ADST bit to 1 (A/D conversion start) by a program if there is a possibility that a trigger is input subsequently.

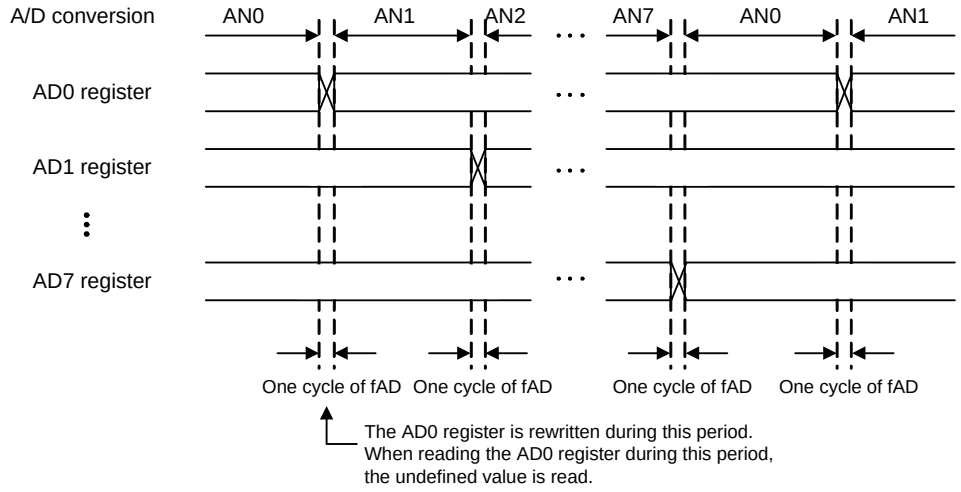
Connect the VREF pin to VCC1 pin. Because the VREF pin is connected to VCC1 pin inside, current flows if potential difference occurs between the pins.

When the ADi register is read before an A/D conversion completes, an undefined value is read. Therefore, read the ADi register after a conversion completes. The followings show measures to detect a completion of an A/D conversion.

- In one shot mode or single sweep mode
  After an A/D conversion the IR bit in the ADIC register becomes 1 (interrupt requested). Read the ADi register after making sure the IR bit is 1.
  When not using the A/D interrupt, set the IR bit to 0 (interrupt not requested) by a program after ADi register is read.
- In repeat mode, repeat sweep mode 0, or repeat sweep mode 1
  The IR bit does not change. At first, read the ADi register after waiting for one conversion done (refer to **18.2 “Conversion Rate”**). After that, when the ADi register is read at a desired timing, the data which was converted before the reading is read.

24.11.1 Repeat Mode, Repeat Sweep Mode 0, and Repeat Sweep Mode 1

In repeat mode, repeat sweep mode 0, and repeat sweep mode 1, when reading the ADi register (i = 0 to 7) during the period when the ADi register value is rewritten, the undefined value may be read. Read the ADi register for several times to determine whether the read value is valid. The period when the undefined value is read is for one cycle of fAD.



The above diagram shows an instance in which the following conditions are met:

- Bits MD1 to MD0 in the ADCON0 register are 11b, and the MD2 bit in the ADCON1 register is 0 (repeat sweep mode 0)
- Bits ADGSEL1 to ADGSEL0 in the ADCON2 register are 00b (AN0 to AN7 groups selected)
- Bits SCAN1 to SCAN0 in the ADCON1 register are 11b (AN0 to AN7(8 pins) selected)

Figure 24.5 Period When the ADi Register Value is Rewritten

24.12 Programmable I/O Ports

If a low-level signal is applied to the $\overline{SD}$ pin when the IVPCR1 bit in the TB2SC register = 1 (three-phase output forcible cutoff by input on the $\overline{SD}$ pin enabled), pins P7_2 to P7_5 and P8_0 and P8_1 go to high-impedance state.

Setting the SM32 bit in the S3C register to 1 causes the P9_2 pin to go to high-impedance state.
Similarly, setting the SM42 bit in the S4C register to 1 causes the P9_6 pin to go to high-impedance state.

24.13 Flash Memory Version

24.13.1 Functions to Inhibit Rewriting Flash Memory

ID codes are stored in addresses 0FFFDFh, 0FFFE3h, 0FFFEBh, 0FFFEFh, 0FFFF3h, 0FFFF7h, and 0FFFFBh. If wrong data are written to theses addresses, the flash memory cannot be read or written in standard serial I/O mode.

The ROMCP register is mapped in address 0FFFFFh. If wrong data is written to this address, the flash memory cannot be read or written in parallel I/O mode.

In the flash memory version of microcomputer, these addresses are allocated to the vector addresses (H) of fixed vectors.

24.13.2 Stop Mode

When the microcomputer enters stop mode, execute the instruction which sets the CM10 bit in the CM1 register to 1 (stop mode) after setting the FMR01 bit in the FMR0 register to 0 (CPU rewrite mode disabled) and disabling the DMA transfer.

24.13.3 Wait Mode

When shifting to wait mode, set the FMR01 bit to 0 (CPU rewrite mode disabled) before executing the WAIT instruction.

24.13.4 Low Power Consumption Mode, On-Chip Oscillator Low Power Consumption Mode

If the CM05 bit in the CM0 register is set to 1 (main clock stop), do not execute the following commands.

- Program
- Block erase
- Lock bit program

24.13.5 Writing Command and Data

Write the command code and data at even addresses.

24.13.6 Program Command

Write xx41h in the first bus cycle and write data to the write address in the second bus cycle and third bus cycle, and an auto program operation (data program and verify) will start. Make sure the address value specified in the first bus cycle is the same even address as the write address specified in the second bus cycle and third bus cycle.

24.13.7 Lock Bit Program Command

Write xx77h in the first bus cycle and write xxD0h in the second bus cycle to the highest-order even address of a block, and the lock bit for the specified block is cleared to 0. Make sure then address value specified in the first bus cycle is the same highest-order block address that is specified in the second bus cycle.

24.13.8 Operation Speed

Before entering CPU rewrite mode (EW0 or EW1 mode), set the CM11 bit in the CM1 register to 0 (main clock), select 10 MHz or less for CPU clock using the CM06 bit in the CM0 register and bits CM17 and CM16 in the CM1 register. Also, set the PM17 bit in the PM1 register to 1 (with wait state).

24.13.9 Instructions Inhibited against Use

The following instructions cannot be used in EW0 mode because the flash memory internal data is referred: UND instruction, INTO instruction, JMPS instruction, JSRS instruction, and BRK instruction.

24.13.10 Interrupts

EW0 Mode

- Any interrupt which has a vector in the relocatable vector table can be used providing that its vector is transferred into the RAM area.
- The $\overline{\text{NMI}}$ and watchdog timer (oscillation stop, re-oscillation detect, and low voltage detect) interrupts can be used because registers FMR0 and FMR1 are initialized when one of those interrupts occurs. The jump addresses for those interrupt routines should be set in the fixed vector table.
- Because the rewrite operation stops when an $\overline{\text{NMI}}$ or watchdog timer (oscillation stop, re-oscillation detect, and low voltage detect) interrupt occurs, the rewrite program must be executed again after exiting the interrupt routine.
- The address match interrupt cannot be used because the flash memory internal data is referred.

EW1 Mode

- Make sure that any interrupt which has a vector in the relocatable vector table or address match interrupt will not be accepted during the auto program or auto erase period.
- Avoid using watchdog timer (oscillation stop, re-oscillation detect, and low voltage detect) interrupts.
- The $\overline{\text{NMI}}$ interrupt can be used because registers FMR0 and FMR1 are initialized when this interrupt occurs. The jump address for the interrupt routine should be set in the fixed vector table.
- Because the rewrite operation is halted when an $\overline{\text{NMI}}$ interrupt occurs, execute the rewrite program again after exiting the interrupt routine.

24.13.11 How to Access

To set the FMR01, FMR02, or FMR11 bit to 1, write 0 and then 1 in succession. Ensure that no interrupts or DMA transfers will occur before writing 1 after writing 0. Perform it when the $\overline{\text{NMI}}$ pin is “H” level if the PM24 bit is 1 ($\overline{\text{NMI}}$ interrupt enabled).

24.13.12 Writing

EW0 Mode

- If the power supply voltage drops while rewriting any block in which the rewrite control program is stored, the rewrite control program may not be correctly rewritten and, consequently, the flash memory becomes unable to be rewritten thereafter. In this case, use standard serial I/O or parallel I/O mode.

EW1 Mode

- Avoid rewriting any block in which the rewrite control program is stored.
- When a software command is executed for another block on the flash memory, the software command may not be executed as expected. This may occur when RAM is written by the rewriting program which is executed in EW1 mode.

Example Program (When the program command is executed)

```
PRG_CMD:
        MOV.W   PRG_ADDR    ,   A0          ;
        MOV.W   PRG_ADDR+2  ,   A1          ;
        STE.W   #0041h      ,   [A1A0]      ;   Program command
        STE.W   WR_DATA0    ,   [A1A0]      ;   The first word data to write
        ADD.W   #4          ,   PRG_ADDR    ;   ←Write to RAM
                                                (This is acknowledged as the second
                                                data to write)
        MOV.W   PRG_ADDR    ,   A0          ;
        STE.W   WR_DATA1    ,   [A1A0]      ;   The second word data to write
                                                (Depending on the value of
                                                WR_DATA1, this may be
                                                acknowledged as next software
                                                command)
                    :
                    :
        JMP     PRG_CMD
```

*PRG_ADDR; RAM address (the executing command address to be stored.)

When rewriting flash memory, execute a rewriting program on the area other than flash memory such as RAM or external area in EW0 mode. When using EW1 mode, do not write to RAM in EW1 mode.

24.13.13 DMA transfer

In EW1 mode, make sure that no DMA transfers will occur while the FMR00 bit in the FMR0 register = 0 (during the auto program or auto erase period).

24.13.14 Programming / Erasing Endurance and Execution Time

As the number of programming / erasing times increases, so does the execution time for software commands (program, block erase, and lock bit program commands).
The software commands are stopped by hardware reset 1, brown-out reset, $\overline{\text{NMI}}$ interrupt, and watchdog timer (oscillation stop, re-oscillation detect, and low voltage detect) interrupt. If a software command is stopped by such reset or interrupt, erase the block in process before reexecuting the stopped command.

24.13.15 When Entering to Boot Mode

When applying high to the P5_0 pin, “L" to the P5_5 and high to the CNVSS pin while applying “L" to the $\overline{\text{RESET}}$ pin to enter boot mode, the following pins output an undefined signal for approximately 4 ns.
Also, when an input signal of the P8_5 pin becomes “L" from high while the $\overline{\text{RESET}}$ pin is applied low, the P5_0 pin is applied high, the P5_5 pin is applied low and the CNVSS pin is applied high, the P7_0 pin outputs an undefined signal for approximately 4 ns.
When connecting a serial programmer by using standard serial I/O mode 1 or 2, the conditions above may be met. Therefore, the following pins may output an undefined signal.

- Subject: P0_0 to P0_7, P1_0 to P1_7, P2_0, P4_4, P7_0
  (The P7_0 pin outputs an undefined signal when the P8_5 pin becomes high to low)

The undefined output from the pins can be avoided by controlling timing of the pins as shown below.
[To avoid the undefined output]

(1) Operate the microcomputer in single-chip mode.
(2) Apply high to the CNVSS pin, high to the P5_0 pin, low to P5_5 and high to the P8_5 pin in single-chip mode.
(3) Apply low to the $\overline{\text{RESET}}$ pin and wait for 1/fOCO-S × 20 or more.
(4) Apply high to the $\overline{\text{RESET}}$ pin.

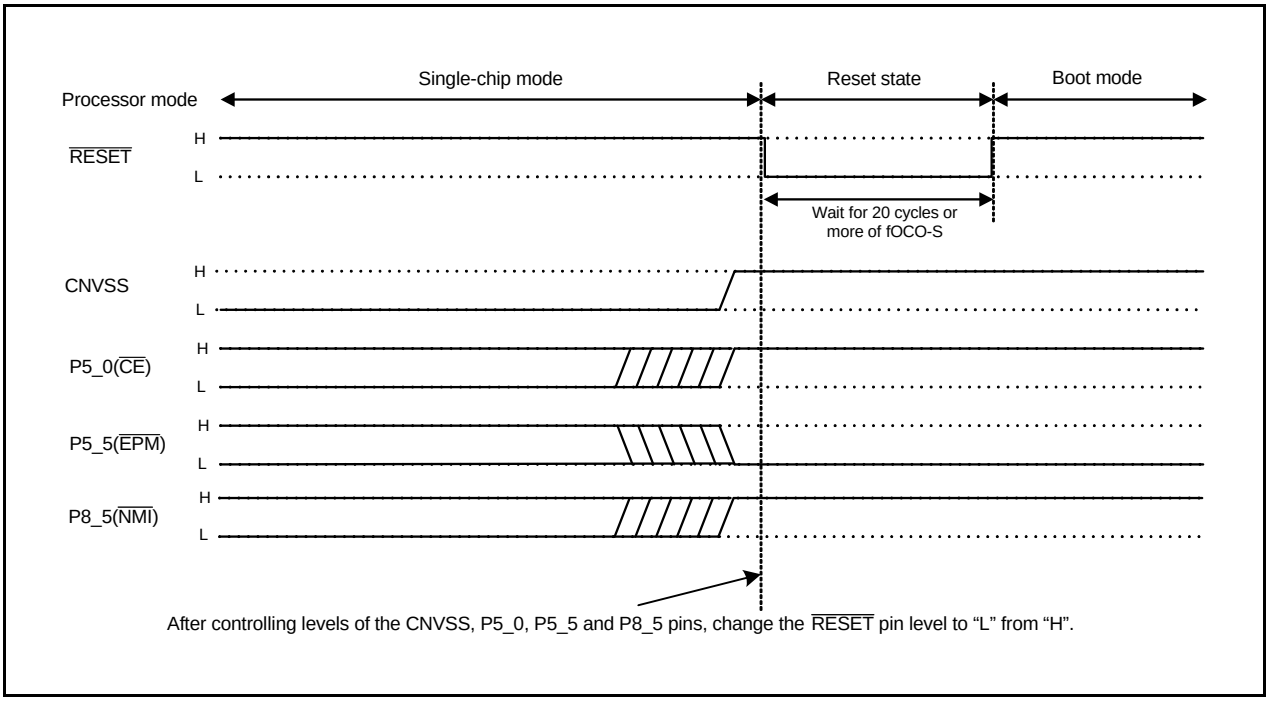


Figure 24.6 Pin Control Timing

24.14 Noise

Connect a bypass capacitor (approximately 0.1 µF) across pins VCC1 and VSS, and pins VCC2 and VSS using the shortest and thicker possible wiring. Figure 24.7 shows the Bypass Capacitor Connection.

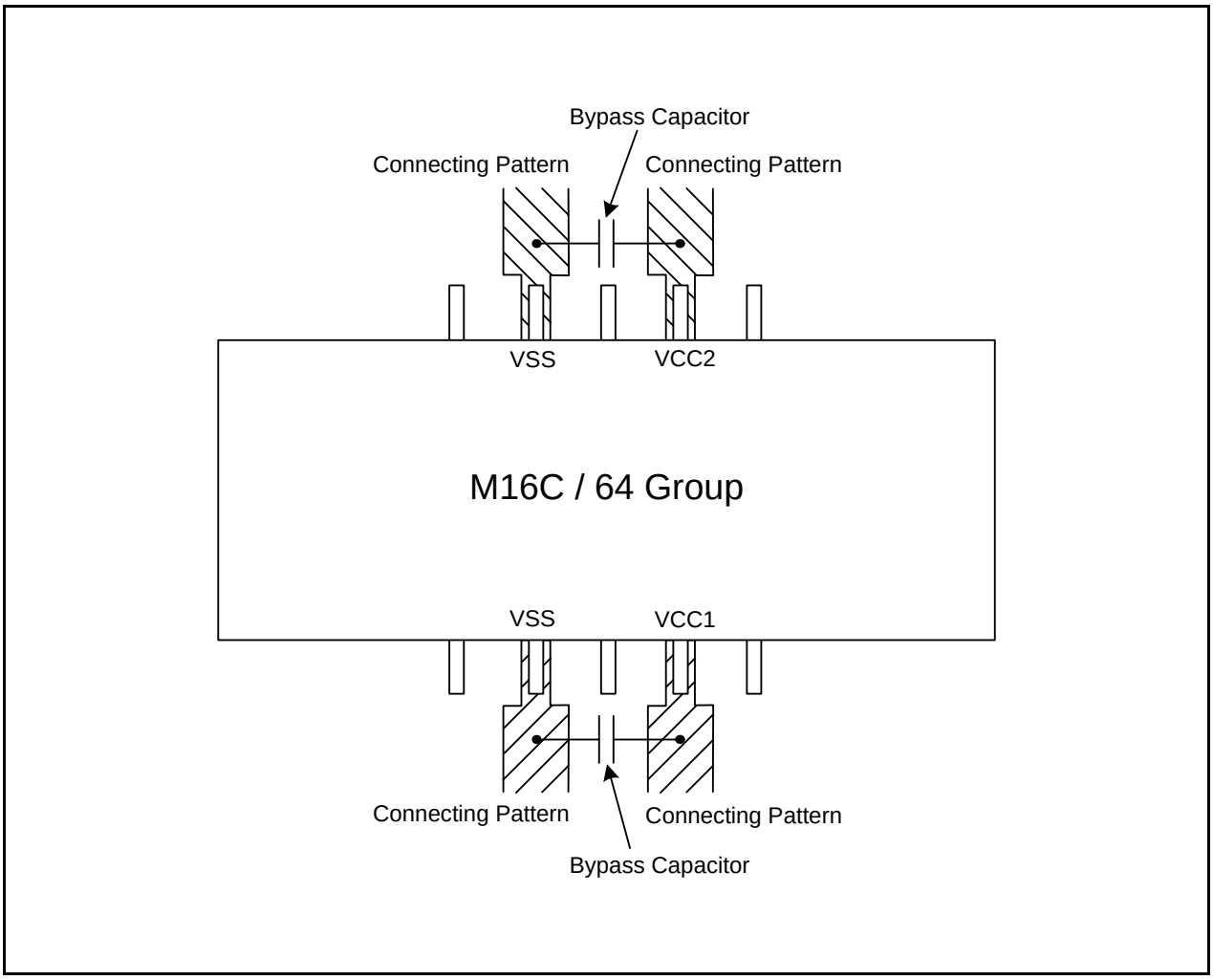


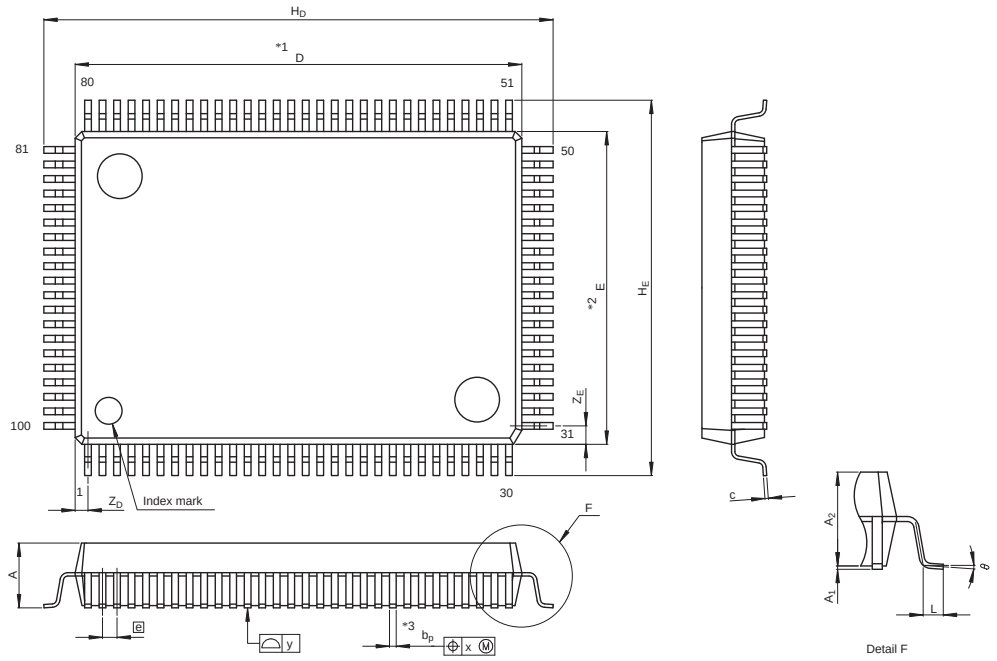
Figure 24.7 Bypass Capacitor Connection

Appendix 1.Package Dimensions

The information on the latest package dimensions or packaging may be obtained from “Packages” on the Renesas Technology Website.

JEITA Package Code	RENESAS Code	Previous Code	MASS[Typ.]
P-QFP100-14x20-0.65	PRQP0100JD-B	100P6F-A	1.8g

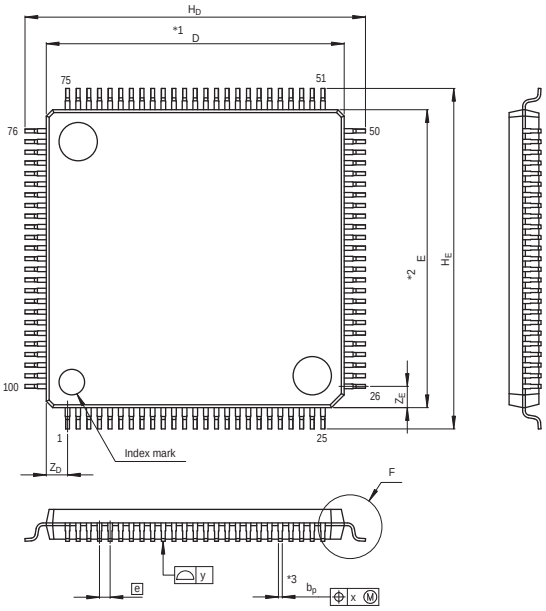
Under development

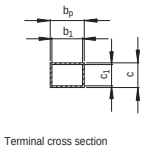


NOTE)
1. DIMENSIONS "*1" AND "*2" DO NOT INCLUDE MOLD FLASH.
2. DIMENSION "*3" DOES NOT INCLUDE TRIM OFFSET.

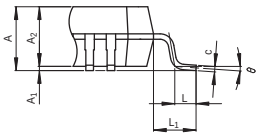
Reference Symbol	Dimension in Millimeters		
	Min	Nom	Max
D	19.8	20.0	20.2
E	13.8	14.0	14.2
A_2	—	2.8	—
H_D	22.5	22.8	23.1
H_E	16.5	16.8	17.1
A	—	—	3.05
A_1	0	0.1	0.2
b_p	0.25	0.3	0.4
c	0.13	0.15	0.2
θ	0°	—	10°
e	—	0.65	—
x	—	—	0.13
y	—	—	0.10
Z_D	—	0.575	—
Z_E	—	0.825	—
L	0.4	0.6	0.8

JEITA Package Code	RENESAS Code	Previous Code	MASS[Typ.]
P-LQFP100-14x14-0.50	PLQP0100KB-A	100P6Q-A / FP-100U / FP-100UV	0.6g





Terminal cross section



Detail F

NOTE)
1. DIMENSIONS "*1" AND "*2" DO NOT INCLUDE MOLD FLASH.
2. DIMENSION "*3" DOES NOT INCLUDE TRIM OFFSET.

Reference Symbol	Dimension in Millimeters		
	Min	Nom	Max
D	13.9	14.0	14.1
E	13.9	14.0	14.1
A_2	—	1.4	—
H_D	15.8	16.0	16.2
H_E	15.8	16.0	16.2
A	—	—	1.7
A_1	0.05	0.1	0.15
b_p	0.15	0.20	0.25
b_1	—	0.18	—
c	0.09	0.145	0.20
c_1	—	0.125	—
θ	0°	—	8°
e	—	0.5	—
x	—	—	0.08
y	—	—	0.08
Z_D	—	1.0	—
Z_E	—	1.0	—
L	0.35	0.5	0.65
L_1	—	1.0	—

Appendix 2.Difference Between M16C/64 and M16C/62P

Table Appendix 2.1 Difference Between M16C/64 and M16C/62P (1)

Item	M16C/62P	M16C/64
Minimum instruction execution time:	41.7ns(f (BCLK)=24MHz, VCC1=3.0V to 5.5V) 100ns(f (BCLK)=10MHz, VCC1=2.7V to 5.5V)	40ns(f (BCLK)=25MHz, VCC1=2.7V to 5.5V)
I/O Port	I/O: 87 (N channel open-drain:2), Input port: 1	I/O: 88 (N channel open-drain:3)
Disabling function of key input interrupt, $\overline{INT6}$, and $\overline{INT7}$ in while using A/D converter	Not available	available
$\overline{NMI}$	Enable after reset is canceled.	Disable after reset is canceled. Selectable valid mode with PM24 bit.
CNVSS	–	After reset is deserted, internal pull-up is valid maximum two cycles in 125kHz on-chip oscillator in single-chip mode.
CLKOUT	Retain status when entering stop mode.	Output "high" when entering stop mode
P8_2 to P8_4($\overline{INT0}$ to $\overline{INT2}$)	Common to peripheral function and port input.	Divide peripheral function and port input. (same configuration as $\overline{INT3}$ to $\overline{INT7}$)
Handling of unused pins	VREF pin: connect the pin to VSS	VREF pin: connect the pin to VCC1
External Bus	–	The usable area has been changed due to placing SFR area (0D000h-0D7FFh) and program ROM 2 area and enhanced data flash area.
DMAC	2ch (25 sources)	4ch (43 sources)
Low-voltage detection CIRCUIT	Vdet3	Vdet0 (the name is changed)
	–	When using low-voltage detection circuit, be sure to set PM25 bit to 1: (clock supply enabled). (PM25 bit: New additional bit.)
Cold start-up/ warm start-up determine flag	Vdet0: unlinked	Vdet0: linked
Frequency of the On-chip oscillator	About 1MHz	About 125kHz
CPU clock source after reset is canceled	Main clock	125kHz on-chip oscillator clock
PLL frequency synthesizer	Multiplying factor: 2,4,6,8	Multiplying factor: 2,4,6,8 Main clock: undivided (through), 2 or 4 provides Before entering clock to PLL frequency synthesizer, make sure clock form is 2 MHz to 5 MHz.
	Multiplying factor modification; only 1time after reset	Multiplying factor modification; unlimited
SFR access wait (when CPU clock is over 16MHz)	2 waits	1wait
Protection of writing to registers	–	New protect bit 6 protects PRG2C register. Protect bit 3 protects VWOC register.

Table Appendix 2.2 Difference Between M16C/64 and M16C/62P (2)

Item	M16C/62P	M16C/64
A/D converter	Operation frequency: 3.3V:f AD = 10MHz(±5LSB) 5.0V:f AD =12MHz(±3LSB)	Operation frequency: 3.0V:f AD =10MHz(±3LSB) 3.3V:f AD =16MHz (±3LSB) 5.0V:f AD =25MHz(±3LSB)
	VREFCUT: Wait 1μs after connecting.	A/D Standby: Start in 1cycle after connecting.
	Selectable 10 bit or 8 bit conversion mode	Fixed 10 bit conversion mode
	Selectable with/without sample and hold function	Fixed sample and hold function
	Available external operational amplifier connection mode	No external operational amplifier connection mode
	Can be used when operating with 2.0V≤VREF≤VCC1	Be sure to use VCC1, AVCC, VREF with same power supply
	ADST bit when using external trigger: After A/D conversion, ADST bit "1" is maintained.	ADST bit when using external trigger: After A/D conversion, ADST bit becomes "0".
	The operation after writing "1" in ADST bit: ADST bit set to "1" shortly.	The operation after writing "1" in ADST bit: After the passage of dummy time period, ADST bit is set to "1".
Timer A, B	Operating clocks: • 1, 2, 8, or 32 in f1 clock • fc32	Operating clocks: • 1, 2, 8, 32, or 64 in f1 clock(one frequency circuit in timer A and B and Three-phase timer) • fc32 • On-chip oscillator (125kHz)
	Fixed PWM output level	PWM output level can be inverted
	Select up count or down count: Selectable with TAjOUT pin (j=0 to 4)	Select up count or down count: Not selectable with TAjout pin (j=0 to 4)
	Timer Bi register (i=0 to 5) in pulse measurement mode / pulse period measurement mode: disable to set the initial value	Timer Bi register (i=0 to 5) in pulse measurement mode / pulse period measurement mode: enable to set the initial value
	Timer B over-flow flag: disable to clear the flag while not counting.	Timer B overflow flag: enable to clear the flag while not counting
	Timer A2 to A4 two-phase pulse signal Processing select bit in up/down flag register is write enable only.	Timer A2 to A4 two-phase pulse signal Processing Select bit in up/down flag register is read and write enable.
Three-phase timer	Three-phase timer output cutoff: $\overline{\text{NMI}}$ pin\	Three-phase timer output cutoff: $\overline{\text{SD}}$ pin
Watchdog timer	Common to start and refresh register	Reset register and Start register are divided. Optional function select address (OFS1) enables select and protect count source.
Serial interface UART	UART3ch (UART 0 to 2)	UART6ch (UART 0 to 2,5 to 7)
	Operating clock: diveded by 1, 2, 8, or 32 in f1 clock	Operating clock: diveded by 1, 2, 8, or 32 (Each UART0 to UART2, UART5 to UART7 has one divider circuit)
SIO	Operating clock: diveded by 1, 2, 8, or 32 in f1 clock	Operating clock: diveded by 1, 2, 8, or 32 in f1 clock (one divider circuit belongs to SI/O3 and SI/O4)
	SOUT output: high impedance	SOUT output: selectable "high impedance" and "last bit level hold" function.

Table Appendix 2.3 Difference Between M16C/64 and M16C/62P (3)

Item	M16C/62P	M16C/64
Interrupt	35 vectors	48 vectors
	6 external interrupts	8 external interrupts (add $\overline{INT6}$, $\overline{INT7}$)
	–	New interrupt source DMA2, DMA3, UART5, UART6, UART7, $\overline{INT6}$, $\overline{INT7}$
Flash memory	Block: (256 Kbytes version) • User area: 4K+4K+8K+8K+8K+32K+64K+64K+64K • Boot ROM area: 4K • Data area: 4K	Block: (256 Kbytes version) • Program ROM 1 area: 64K+64K+64K+64K • Program ROM 2 area: 16K • Data flash: 4K+4K
	–	Flash distinction register (FIDR) is deleted
	–	User ROM area select bit (FMR05) is deleted
	–	New data flash wait bit (FMR17) 1wait is required when connecting to data flash.
	Selectable protect option	Selectable protect option +watchdog timer count source selection mode and count source protection mode
	–	Available slow read mode
	–	Available low-current consumption mode
	–	Available user boot function
	–	Available forced erase function
	–	Available forced erase function
	Erase/write time • For all area: 100 times • Block 1, Block A: 10,000 times • The other blocks: 1,000 times	Erase/write time For all area:100 times
CPU rewrite mode	Program command: 40h Unit: 1 word	Program command: 41h Unit: 2 words
	–	Setting procedure of EW0, EW1 mode has been changed.
	Available all unlock block erase command	No all unlock block erase command
Power supply	Can be used when operating with VCC1≥VCC2≥2.7V	Be sure to use VCC1 and VCC2 with same current source. Note: Make sure to use VREF and AVCC with same current source, too.
Current consumption	14mA (VCC1=5V, f(BCLK)=24MHz) 8mA (VCC1=3V, f(BCLK)=10MHz) 1.8μA (VCC1=3V,f(XCIN)=32kHz, waite mode) 0.7μA (VCC1=3V, stop mode)	20mA (VCC1=5V, f(BCLK)=25MHz) 5.7μA (VCC1=3V, f(XCIN)=32kHz, waite mode) 3.0μA (VCC1=3V, stop mode)
Parallel programmer		Adapter for M16C/64 is required

Note:

1. Please refer to the hardware manual for more information of the details and the electrical characteristics.

REGISTER INDEX

[A]

AD0 to AD7 235
ADCON0, ADCON1 234, 237, 239, 241, 243, 245
ADCON2 235
ADIC 105
AIER 117
AIER2 117

[C]

BCNIC 105, 106
CM0 76
CM1 77
CM2 78
CPSRF 142, 157
CRCD 251
CRCIN 251
CSE 62
CSPR 120
CSR 55

[E]

D4INT 39
DA0, DA1 250
DACON 250
DAR0 to DAR3 129
DBR 67
DM0CON to DM3CON 128
DM0IC 106
DM0IC to DM3IC 105
DM0SL to DM3SL 125
DTT 170

[G]

FMR0 275
FMR1 276
FMR2 277
FMR6 278

[I]

ICTB2 170
IDB0, IDB1 170
IFSR 113
IFSR2A, IFSR3A 114
INT0IC to INT7IC 106
INVC0 168
INVC1 169

[K]

KUPIC 105

[O]

OFS1 ..... 120, 272
ONSF 141

[Q]

P0 to P10 260
PCLKR 79
PCR 114, 262
PD0 to PD10 259
PM0 48
PM1 49
PM2 79
PLC0 80
PRCR 98
PRG2C 50
PUR0, PUR1 261
PUR2 262

[S]

S0RIC to S2RIC, S5RIC to S7RIC 105
S0TIC to S2TIC, S5TIC to S7TIC 105
S34C2 227
S3C, S4C 226
S3BRG, S4BRG 226
S3IC, S4IC 106
S3TRR, S4TRR 226
SAR0 to SAR3 129
RMAD0 to RMAD3 117
RSTFR 46

[U]

U0C0 to U2C0 182
U0C1 to U2C1 183
U0BCNIC, U1BCNIC, U5BCNIC to U7BCNIC 105
U0BRG to U2BRG 181
U0MR to U2MR 181
U0RB to U2RB 180
U0SMR to U2SMR 184
U0SMR2 to U2SMR2 185
U0SMR3 to U2SMR3 185

U0SMR4 to U2SMR4 186
U0TB to U2TB 180
U1BCNIC 106
U5C0 to U7C0 182
U5C1 to U7C1 183
U5BCNICÅ`U7BCNIC 106
U5BRG to U7BRG 181
U5MR to U7MR 181
U5RB to U7RB 180
U5SMR to U7SMR 184
U5SMR2 to U7SMR2 185
U5SMR3 to U7SMR3 185
U5SMR4 to U7SMR4 186
U5TB to U7TB 180
TA0 to TA4 139
TA0IC to TA4IC 105
TA0MR to TA4MR .. 139, 144, 146, 151, 153
TA1, TA2 171
TA11 171
TA1MR, TA2MR 173
TA21 171
TA2MR to TA4MR 148
TA4 171
TA41 171
TA4MR 173
TACS0, TACS1 142
TACS2 143
TABSR 140, 157, 172
TAPOFS 143
TB0 to TB5 156
TB0IC to TB5IC 105
TB0MR to TB5MR 156, 160, 162, 164
TB2 172
TB2MR 173
TB2SC 171
TBCS0 to TBCS3 158
UCON 184
TCR0 to TCR3 129
TBSR 157
UDF 140
TRGSR 141, 172

[W]

VCR1 38
VCR2 38
WDTS 119
VW0C 40

Revision History	M16C/64 Group Hardware Manual

Rev.	Date	Description	
		Page	Summary
0.51	Jun 06, 2007	-	First Edition issued.
0.61	Jun 22, 2007	3	Table 1.2 Specifications (2) is partly revised.
		4	Table 1.3 Product List is partly revised.
0.62	Jul 04, 2007	17	3. Memory (including the figure) is partly revised.
		32	Figure 5.1 Example Reset Circuit is partly revised.
		51	7.3 Internal Memory is partly revised.
		75	Figure 10.1 System Clock Generation Circuit is partly revised.
		163	Figure 15.24 TBiMR Register in Pulse Period and Pulse Width Measurement Mode is partly revised.
		186	Table 17.1 Clock Synchronous Serial I/O Mode Specifications is partly revised.
		220	Figure 17.33 Transmit and Receive Timing in SIM Mode is partly revised.
		224	Figure 17.38 Registers S3C, S4C, S3BRG, S4BRG, S3TRR, and S4TRR is partly revised.
		256	Table 19.2 One-Shot Mode Specifications is partly revised.
		260	Table 19.4 Single Sweep Mode Specifications is partly revised.
		267	Figure 19.9 Analog Input Pin and External Sensor Equivalent Circuit is
		264	22.1 Memory Map is partly revised.
		287	23.1.1 Boot Mode is partly revised.
		265	22.1.2 User Boot Function is added.
		290	23.2.4 Standard Serial I/O Mode Disable Function is added.
		267	22.2.2 ID Code Check Function is added.
		268	22.2.3 Forced Erase Function is added.
		319	Figure 23.20 Pin Connections for Standard Serial I/O Mode (1) is partly revised.
		320	Figure 23.21 Pin Connections for Standard Serial I/O Mode (2) is partly revised.
		321	Figure 23.22 Circuit Application in Standard Serial I/O Mode 1 is partly revised.
		322	Figure 23.23 Circuit Application in Standard Serial I/O Mode 2 is partly revised.
		343	24.5 Power Control is partly revised.
		362	24.11 A/D Converter is partly revised.
0.63	Sep 21, 2007	3	Table 1.2 Specifications (2) is partly revised.
		5	Figure 1.2 Marking Diagram of Flash Memory Version (Top View) is partly revised.
		29	Table 4.12 SFR Information (12) is partly revised.
		79	Figure 10.5 PM2 Register is partly revised.
		92	Table 10.7 Pin Status in Stop Mode is partly revised.
		114	Figure 12.12 Registers IFSR2A, IFSR3A, and PCR is partly revised.
		234	Table 18.2 One-Shot Mode Specifications is partly revised.
		238	Table 18.4 Single Sweep Mode Specifications is partly revised.
		259	Figure 21.11 PCR Register is partly revised.
		263	Table 22.1 Flash Memory Version Specifications is partly revised.

Rev.	Date	Description	
		Page	Summary
		263	Table 22.2 Flash Memory Rewrite Modes Overview is partly revised.
		268	22.1.3 Standard Serial I/O Mode Disable Function is moved to 22.2.4.
		268	Table 22.8 Forced Erase Function is partly revised
		272	Figure 22.5 FMR0 Register is partly revised.
		274	Figure 22.7 FMR2 Register is partly revised.
		303	Figure 23.3 A/D Conversion Characteristics is partly revised.
		304	Table 23.5 Flash Memory Version Electrical Characteristics is partly revised.
0.64	Oct 12, 2007	3	Table 1.2 Specifications (2) is partly revised.
		11	Table 1.6 Pin Functions (1) is partly revised.
		13	Table 1.8 Pin Functions (3) is parly revised.
		32	Figure 5.1 Example Reset Circuit is partly revised.
		92	10.4.3 Stop Mode is partly revised.
		230	Table 18.1 A/D Converter Specifications is partly revised.
		231	Figure 18.1 A/D Converter Block Diagram is partly revised.
		233	Figure 18.3 Registers ADCON2 and AD0 to AD7 is partly revised.
		234	Table 18.2 One-Shot Mode Specifications is partly revised.
		235	Figure 18.4 Registers ADCON0 and ADCON1 (One-shot Mode) is partly revised.
		236	Table 18.3 Repeat Mode Specifications is partly revised.
		237	Figure 18.5 Registers ADCON0 and ADCON1 (Repeat Mode) is partly revised.
		238	Table 18.4 Single Sweep Mode Specifications is partly revised.
		239	Figure 18.6 Registers ADCON0 and ADCON1 (Single Sweep Mode) is partly revised.
		240	Table 18.5 Repeat Sweep Mode 0 Specifications is partly revised.
		241	Figure 18.7 Registers ADCON0 and ADCON1 (Repeat Sweep Mode 0) is partly revised.
		242	Table 18.6 Repeat Sweep Mode 1 Specifications is partly revised.
		243	Figure 18.8 Registers ADCON0 and ADCON1 (Repeat Sweep Mode 1) is partly revised.
		260	Table 21.1 Unassigned Pin Handling in Single-chip Mode is partly revised.
		261	Table 21.2 Unassigned Pin Handling in Memory Expansion Mode and Microprocessor Mode is partly revised.
		262	Figure 21.12 Unassigned Pin Handling is partly revised.
		295	Table 22.13 Pin Functions (Flash Memory Standard Serial I/O Mode) is partly revised.
		301	Table 23.1 Absolute Maximum Ratings is partly revised.
		302	Table 23.2 Recommended Operating Conditions is partly revised.
		303	Table 23.3 A/D Conversion Characteristics is partly revised.
		307	Table 23.9 Electrical Characteristics (1) is partly revised.
		342	24.2.1 VCC1 is added.
		342	24.2.2 CNVSS is added.
		364	Figure 24.4 Use of Capacitors to Reduce Noise is partly revised.
		365	24.11 A/D Converter is partly revised.

Revision History	M16C/64 Group Hardware Manual

Rev.	Date	Description	
		Page	Summary
1.05	Feb 19, 2009	2	Table 1.1 “Specifications (1)” is partly modified.
		9-10	Table 1.4 “Pin Names for 100-Pin Package” is partly modified.
		24	Table 4.7 “SFR Information (7) (1)” is partly modified.
		41	Table 6.1 “Setting Procedures of the Bits for Brown-out Reset” is partly modified.
		48	Figure 7.1 “PM0 Register” is partly modified.
		49	Figure 7.2 “PM1 Register” is partly modified.
		51	Table 7.5 “Program ROM 2 (addresses 10000h to 13FFFh)” is partly modified.
		53	Table 8.1 “Difference between Separate Bus and Multiplexed Bus” is partly modified.
		57	Figure 8.3 “ALE Signal, Address Bus, Data Bus” is partly modified.
		68	Figure 9.2 “Memory Mapping and CS Area in 1-Mbyte Mode (PM13 = 0)” is partly modified.
		69	Figure 9.4 “Memory Mapping and CS Area in 4-Mbyte Mode (PM13 = 0)” is partly modified.
		76	Figure 10.2 “CM0 Register” is partly modified.
		77	Figure 10.3 “CM1 Register” is partly modified.
		79	Figure 10.5 “PCLKR Register and PM2 Register” is partly modified.
		80	Figure 10.6 “PLC0 Register” is partly modified.
		84	Table 10.2 “Example for Setting PLL Clock Frequencies” is partly modified.
		97	10.6.3 “How to Use Oscillation Stop and Re-Oscillation Detect Function” is partly modified.
		104	Table 12.3 “Relocatable Vector Table (2)” is partly modified.
		115	12.7 “NMI Interrupt” is partly modified.
		118	Figure 13.1 “Watchdog Timer Block Diagram” is partly modified.
		119	Figure 13.2 “Registers WDTR, WDTS, and WDC” is partly modified.
		120	Figure 13.3 “CSPR Register and OFS1 Address” is partly modified.
		121	Table 13.2 “Watchdog Timer Specifications (When Count Source Protection Mode is Disabled)” is partly modified.
		135	Figure 15.1 “Timers A and B Count Source” is partly modified.
		142	Figure 15.8 “Registers CPSRF, TACS0, and TACS1” is partly modified.
		144	Table 15.1 “Specifications in Timer Mode” is partly modified.
		145	Table 15.2 “Specifications in Event Counter Mode (When Not Processing Two-Phase Pulse Signal)” is partly modified.
		150	Table 15.4 “Specifications in One-shot Timer Mode” is partly modified.
		152	Table 15.5 “Specifications in PWM Mode” is partly modified.
		164	Figure 15.24 “TBiMR Register in Pulse Period and Pulse Width Measurement Mode” is partly modified.
		171	Figure 16.5 “Registers TA1, TA2, TA4, TA11, TA21, TA41, and TB2SC” is partly modified.
		172	Figure 16.6 “Registers TB2, TRGSR, and TABSR” is partly modified.
		172	Figure 16.6 “Registers TB2, TRGSR, and TABSR” is partly modified.
		180	Figure 17.5 “Registers U0TB to U2TB, U5TB to U7TB, U0RB to U2RB, and U5RB to U7RB” is partly modified.

Rev.	Date	Description	
		Page	Summary
1.05	Feb 19, 2009	181	Figure 17.6 “Registers U0BRG to U2BRG, U5BRG to U7BRG, U0MR to U2MR, and U5MR to U7MR” is partly modified.
		188	Table 17.2 “Registers to Be Used and Settings in Clock Synchronous Serial I/O Mode” is partly modified.
		196	Table 17.6 “Registers to Be Used and Settings in UART Mode” is partly modified.
		199	Table 17.9 “Example of Bit Rates and Settings” is partly modified.
		202	17.1.2.6 “$\overline{\text{CTS}}$ / $\overline{\text{RTS}}$ Function” is partly modified.
		204	Figure 17.24 “I2C Mode Block Diagram” is partly modified.
		205	Table 17.11 “Registers to Be Used and Settings in I2C Mode (1)” is partly modified.
		206	Table 17.12 “Registers to Be Used and Settings in I^2C Mode (2)” is partly modified.
		207	Table 17.13 “I^2C Mode Functions” is partly modified.
		213	Table 17.15 “Special Mode 2 Specifications” is partly modified.
		215	Table 17.16 “Registers to Be Used and Settings in Special Mode 2” is partly modified.
		218	Table 17.17 “Registers to Be Used and Settings in IE Mode” is partly modified.
		238	Table 18.3 “Repeat Mode Specifications” is partly modified.
		241	Figure 18.6 “Registers ADCON0 and ADCON1 (Single Sweep Mode)” is partly modified.
		241	Old 18.5 is replace with newly added 18.5 “External Sensor”.
		262	Figure 21.11 “PCR Register” is partly modified.
		266	Table 22.2 “Flash Memory Rewrite Modes Overview” is partly modified.
		271	22.2.3 “Forced Erase Function” is partly modified.
		271	Table 22.8 “Forced Erase Function” is partly modified.
		272	Figure 22.3 “OFS1 Address” is partly modified.
		273	Table 22.9 “EW0 Mode and EW1 Mode” is partly modified.
		275	Figure 22.5 “FMR0 Register” is partly modified.
		278	Figure 22.8 “FMR6 Register” is partly modified.
		280	Figure 22.9 “Processing Before and After Low-Power Consumption Mode or On-Chip Oscillator Low-Power Consumption Mode” is moved to 22.3.3.4 “FMSTP Bit”.
		282	22.3.3.11 “FMR23 Bit” is partly modified.
		284	Figure 22.12 “Setting and Resetting of EW0 Mode” is partly modified.
		285	22.3.3.13 “FMR61 Bit” is added.
		286	22.3.4.4 “Interrupts (EW1 mode)” is partly modified.
		287	22.3.4.11 “Stop Mode” is partly modified.
		288	Table 22.10 “Software Commands” is partly modified.
		289	22.3.5.4 “Program Command” is partly modified.
		294	22.3.7.1 “Sequencer Status (Bits SR7 and FMR00)” Changed ‘sequence status’ to ‘sequener status’.
		297	Figure 22.19 “Full Status Check and Handling Procedure for Each Error” is partly modified.

Rev.	Date	Description	
		Page	Summary
1.05	Feb 19, 2009	299	Table 22.13 “Pin Functions (Flash Memory Standard Serial I/O Mode)” is partly modified.
		304	22.5 “Parallel I/O Mode” is partly modified.
		305	Table 23.1 “Absolute Maximum Ratings” is partly modified.
		306	Table 23.2 “Recommended Operating Conditions (1)” is partly modified.
		307	Table 23.3 “A/D Conversion Characteristics (1)” is partly modified.
		308	Table 23.4 “D/A Conversion Characteristics (1)” is partly modified.
		308	Table 23.5 “Flash Memory Version Electrical Characteristics (1)” is partly modified.
		308	Table 23.6 “Flash Memory Version Program / Erase Voltage and Read Operation Voltage Characteristics (at Topr = 0 to 60 ×C)” is partly modified.
		309	Table 23.8 “Power Supply Circuit Timing Characteristics” is partly modified.
		310	Figure 23.1 “Power Supply Circuit Timing Diagram” is partly modified.
		311	Table 23.9 “Electrical Characteristics (1) (1)” is partly modified.
		312	Table 23.10 “Electrical Characteristics (2) (1)” is partly modified.
		313	Table 23.11 “External Clock Input (XIN input) (1)” is partly modified.
		314	Table 23.17 “Timer A Input (Counter Increment/Decrement Input in Event Counter Mode)” is removed.
		316	Table 23.24 “Memory Expansion and Microprocessor Modes (for setting with no wait)” is partly modified.
		317	Table 23.25 “Memory Expansion and Microprocessor Modes (for 1- to 3-wait setting and external area access)” is partly modified.
		318	Table 23.26 “Memory Expansion and Microprocessor Modes (for 1- to 3-wait setting, external area access and multiplex bus selection)(5)” is partly modified.
		319	Figure 23.3 “Timing Diagram (1)” is partly modified.
		322	Figure 23.6 “Timing Diagram (4)” is partly modified.
		323	Figure 23.7 “Timing Diagram (5)” is partly modified.
		324	Figure 23.8 “Timing Diagram (6)” is partly modified.
		325	Figure 23.9 “Timing Diagram (7)” is partly modified.
		326	Figure 23.10 “Timing Diagram (8)” is partly modified.
		327	Figure 23.11 “Timing Diagram (9)” is partly modified.
		328	Table 23.27 “Electrical Characteristics (1) (1)” is partly modified.
		329	Table 23.28 “Electrical Characteristics (2) (1)” is partly modified.
		332	Table 23.37 Timer A Input (Two-phase Pulse Input in Event Counter Mode) is removed.
		333	Table 23.42 “Memory Expansion and Microprocessor Modes (for setting with no wait)” is partly modified.
		334	Table 23.43 “Memory Expansion and Microprocessor Modes (for 1- to 3-wait setting and external area access)” is partly modified.
		335	Table 23.44 “Memory Expansion and Microprocessor Modes (for 1- to 3-wait setting, external area access and multiplex bus selection)(5)” is partly modified.

Rev.	Date	Description	
		Page	Summary
1.05	Feb 19, 2009	336	Figure 23.13 “Timing Diagram (1)” is partly modified.
		339	Figure 23.16 “Timing Diagram (4)” is partly modified.
		340	Figure 23.17 “Timing Diagram (5)” is partly modified.
		341	Figure 23.18 “Timing Diagram (6)” is partly modified.
		342	Figure 23.19 “Timing Diagram (7)” is partly modified.
		343	Figure 23.20 “Timing Diagram (8)” is partly modified.
		344	Figure 23.21 “Timing Diagram (9)” is partly modified.
		344	24.7.3 “NMI Interrupt” is partly modified.
		356	24.8.2 “DMAC Channel Priority” is partly modified.
		366	24.10.3.1 “Generating Conditions” and 24.10.3.2 “UART5, UART7” are added.
		368	24.11 “A/D Converter” is partly modified.
		370	24.11.1 “Repeat Mode, Repeat Sweep Mode 0, and Repeat Sweep Mode 1” is added.
		372	24.13.6 “Program Command” is added.
		373	24.13.11 “How to Access” is added.
		374	24.13.12 “Writing” is partly modified.
		375	24.13.15 “When Entering to Boot Mode” is added.
		377	Appendix 1. “Package Dimensions” is partly modified.
	Mar 17, 2009	312	Table 24.10 “Electrical Characteristics (2)” is partly modified.
		329	Table 24.28 “Electrical Characteristics (2)” is partly modified.
		379	Appendix 2. “Difference Between M16C/64 and M16C/62P” is added.

M16C/64 Group Hardware Manual

Publication Date: Jun 06, 2007 Rev.0.51
Mar 17, 2009 Rev.1.05

Published by: Sales Strategic Planning Div.
Renesas Technology Corp.
2-6-2, Otemachi, Chiyoda-ku, Tokyo 100-0004

© 2008. Renesas Technology Corp., All rights reserved. Printed in Japan.

M16C/64 Group
Hardware Manual

Renesas Electronics Corporation
1753, Shimonumabe, Nakahara-ku, Kawasaki-shi, Kanagawa 211-8668 Japan

REJ09B0392-0105

Mouser Electronics

Authorized Distributor

Click to View Pricing, Inventory, Delivery & Lifecycle Information:

Renesas Electronics:

R5F3640DDFB#30